MODEL OF THE SAME SERIES: NP6412

SERVICE MANUAL

REVISION 0

Canon

AUG. 1999

FY8-13GB-000

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

IMPORTANT

THIS DOCUMENTATION IS PUBLISHED BY CANON INC., JAPAN, TO SERVE AS A SOURCE OF REFERENCE FOR WORK IN THE FIELD.
SPECIFICATIONS AND OTHER INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN MAY VARY SLIGHTLY FROM ACTUAL MACHINE VALUES OR THOSE FOUND IN ADVERTISING AND OTHER PRINTED MATTER.

ANY QUESTIONS REGARDING INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN SHOULD BE DIRECTED TO THE COPIER SERVICE DEPARTMENT OF THE SALES COMPANY.
THIS DOCUMENTATION IS INTENDED FOR ALL SALES AREAS, AND MAY CONTAIN INFORMATION NOT APPLICABLE TO CERTAIN AREAS.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

Printed in Japan
Imprimé au Japon

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

Prepared by

OFFICE IMAGING PRODUCTS TECHNICAL SUPPORT DIVISION

CANON INC.

5-1, Hakusan 7-chome, Toride-shi, Ibaraki 302-8501 Japan

INTRODUCTION

This service manual has been prepared for NP6512, NP6612, NP7120, NP7130, and NP7130F, providing basic information used for servicing the machines in the field so as to ensure their quality and performance.

This service manual consists of the following chapters:

Chapter 1 *General Description* introduces the machine's features, specifications, names of parts, and how originals are reproduced.

Chapter 2 *Basic Operation* explains how copies are made on a step-by-step basis.

Chapter 3 *Exposure System* discusses the principles of operation used for the machine's exposure system. It also explains the timing at which exposure-related mechanisms are operated, and shows how they may be disassembled/assembled and adjusted.

Chapter 4 *Image Formation System* discusses the principles of operation used for the machine's image formation system. It also explains the timing at which image formation-related mechanisms are operated, and shows how they may be disassembled/assembled and adjusted.

Chapter 5 *Pick-Up/Feeding System* discusses the principles of operation used for the machine's pickup/feeding system. It also explains the timing at which pickup/feeding-related mechanisms are operated, and shows how they may be disassembled/assembled and adjusted.

Chapter 6 *Fixing System* discusses the principles of operation used for the machine's fixing system. It also explains the timing at which fixing-related mechanisms are operated, and shows how they may be disassembled/assembled and adjusted.

Chapter 7 *Externals/Auxiliary Mechanisms* discusses the principles of operation used for the machine's externals/auxiliary mechanisms. It also explains the timing at which auxiliary mechanism-related mechanisms are operated, and shows how they may be disassembled/assembled and adjusted.

Chapter 8 *ADF* explains the principles of operation of the ADF in view of electrical and mechanical functions and in relation to their timing of operation. It also shows how the unit may be disassembled/assembled and adjusted.

Chapter 9 *Installation* introduces requirements for the site of installation, and shows how the machine may be installed using step-by-step instructions.

Chapter 10 *Maintenance and Servicing* provides tables of periodically replaced parts and consumables/durables and scheduled servicing charts.

Chapter 11 *Troubleshooting* provides tables of maintenance/inspection, standards/adjustments, and problem identification (image fault/malfunction).

Appendix contains a general timing chart and general circuit diagrams.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

The following rules apply throughout this Service Manual:

1. Each chapter contains sections explaining the purpose of specific functions and the relationship between electrical and mechanical systems with reference to the timing of operation.
   In the diagrams, ⊣■■■⊢ represents the path of mechanical drive—where a signal name accompanies the symbol ⟶▶, the arrow indicates the direction of the electric signal.
   The expression “turn on the power” means flipping on the power switch, closing the front door, and closing the delivery unit door, which results in supplying the machine with power.
2. In the digital circuits, ‘1’ is used to indicate that the voltage level of a given signal is “High,” while ‘0’ is used to indicate “Low.” (The voltage value, however, differs from circuit to circuit.)
   In practically all cases, the internal mechanisms of a microprocessor cannot be checked in the field. Therefore, the operations of the microprocessors used in the machines are not discussed: they are explained in terms of from sensors to the input of the DC controller PCB and from the output of the DC controller PCB to the loads.

The descriptions in this Service Manual are subject to change without notice for product improvement or other reasons, and major changes will be communicated in the form of Service Information bulletins.

All service persons are expected to have a good understanding of the contents of this Service Manual and all relevant Service Information bulletins and be able to identify and isolate faults in the machine.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

- This service manual covers the models shown in the following table. Be sure to have a good understanding of the difference from model to model before referring to this manual.

Model	Type code	Default ratio	ADF as standard	Cassette
NP6512	TWA	2R2E		250 sheets
NP6612	TXA	2R2E	√	250 sheets
NP7120	PUB	2R2E		Universal
NP7120	PUC	2R2E		Universal
NP7130	NVF	3R1E		500 sheets
NP7130	PTZ	2R2E		500 sheets
NP7130F	NVH	3R1E	√	500 sheets

The notation "√" indicates that the item in question is available.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 GENERAL DESCRIPTION

I. FEATURES 1-1
II. SPECIFICATIONS 1-2
A. Copier 1-2
B. ADF 1-6
III. NAMES OF PARTS 1-8
A. External View 1-8
B. Cross Section 1-11
IV. USING THE MACHINE 1-13
A. Control Panel 1-13
B. User mode 1-15
V. ROUTINE MAINTENANCE BY THE USER 1-16
VI. IMAGE FORMATION 1-19
A. Outline 1-19

CHAPTER 2 BASIC OPERATION

I. BASIC OPERATIONS 2-1
A. Functional Construction 2-1
B. Outline of Electrical Circuitry 2-2
C. Basic Sequence of Operations 2-3
D. Controlling the Main Motor (M1) 2-5
E. Inputs to and Outputs from the DC Controller 2-7

CHAPTER 3 EXPOSURE SYSTEM

I. OPERATIONS 3-1
A. Outline 3-1
B. Varying the Reproduction Ratio 3-2
C. Lens Drive System 3-3
D. Scanner Drive System 3-4
II. EXPOSURE SYSTEM 3-9
A. Controlling the Scanning Lamp 3-9
III. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY 3-13
A. Scanner Drive Assembly 3-14
B. Lens Drive Assembly 3-32
C. Exposure System 3-38

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CHAPTER 4 IMAGE FORMATION SYSTEM

I. IMAGE FORMATION SYSTEM ... 4-1
- A. Outline ... 4-1
- B. Timing Chart for the Image Formation System ... 4-3
- C. Primary Charging Roller Bias Control ... 4-4
- D. Controlling the Transfer Roller Bias ... 4-9
- E. Controlling the Developing/ Separation Static Eliminator Bias ... 4-12
- F. Measuring the Density of Originals ... 4-18
- G. Controlling the Pre-Exposure Lamp ... 4-24
- H. Controlling the Side Blanking Mechanism ... 4-26

II. DEVELOPING ASSEMBLY /CLEANING ASSEMBLY ... 4-27
- A. Outline ... 4-27
- B. Detecting the Level of Toner ... 4-28
- C. Detecting Waste Toner ... 4-30
- D. Primary Charging Roller Cleaning Control ... 4-31

III. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY ... 4-33
- A. Drum Unit ... 4-34
- B. Transfer Charging Assembly ... 4-38
- C. Blank Exposure ... 4-39
- D. Developing Assembly ... 4-43

CHAPTER 5 PICK-UP/FEEDING SYSTEM

I. PICKUP/FEEDING SYSTEM ... 5-1
- A. Outline ... 5-1
- B. Controlling the Pickup Roller ... 5-2
- C. Controlling the Movement of Paper ... 5-6
- D. Detecting Jams ... 5-8

II. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY ... 5-13
- A. Pickup Assembly ... 5-14
- B. Multifeeder Assembly ... 5-21
- C. Feeding Assembly ... 5-24
- D. Registration Roller Assembly ... 5-25
- E. Delivery Assembly ... 5-30

CHAPTER 6 FIXING SYSTEM

I. OPERATIONS ... 6-1
- A. Outline ... 6-1
- B. Controlling the Fixing Temperature ... 6-3

II. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY ... 6-9
- A. Fixing Assembly ... 6-10

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

CHAPTER 7 EXTERNALS/AUXILIARY MECHANISMS

I. FANS 7-1
II. POWER SUPPLY SYSTEM 7-3
A. Outline of the Power Supply System 7-3
B. Power Supply Circuit 7-4
C. Detecting an Error on the Composite Power Supply PCB 7-6
D. Protecting the Power Supply Circuit 7-6
III. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY 7-7
A. External Covers 7-8
B. Control Panel 7-15
C. Copyboard Glass 7-16
D. Main Motor/Main Drive Assembly 7-17
E. Electrical System 7-21

CHAPTER 8 ADF

I. ADF 8-1
A. Outline 8-1
B Basic Construction 8-2
C. Basic Operations 8-4
D. Detecting an Original 8-6
E. Pickup Operation 8-8
F. Delivery 8-12
G. Controlling the Pickup Motor 8-14
H. Controlling the Belt Motor .. 8-15
I. Detecting Original Jams 8-16
J. Power Supply 8-17
II. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY 8-18
A. Removing the ADF 8-19
B. External Covers 8-21
C. Drive System 8-23
D. Feeding System 8-26
E. Electrical System 8-33

CHAPTER 9 INSTALLATION

I. SELECTING THE SITE 9-1
II. UNPACKING AND INSTALLATION 9-2
A. Unpacking and Installation 9-2
B. Placing Copy Paper 9-18
III. MOVING THE MACHINE 9-21

CHAPTER 10 MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

I. PERIODICALLY REPLACED PARTS 10-1
II. DURABLES AND CONSUMABLES 10-1
III. SCHEDULED SERVICING 10-1

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CHAPTER 11 TROUBLESHOOTING

I. MAINTENANCE AND INSPECTION 11-3
A. Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 11-3
B. Points to Note for Servicing 11-4
II. STANDARDS AND ADJUSTMENTS 11-5
A. Mechanical 11-5
B. ADF 11-30
C. Electrical 11-41
III. TROUBLESHOOTING IMAGE FAULTS 11-52
A. Making Initial Checks 11-52
B. Sample Image Faults 11-56
C. Troubleshooting Image Faults 11-57
IV. TROUBLESHOOTING MALFUNCTIONS 11-65
A. Troubleshooting Malfunctions 11-65
V. TROUBLESHOOTING FEEDING PROBLEMS 11-77
A. Copy Paper Jam 11-77
B. Faulty Feeding 11-80
VI. ARRANGEMENT AND FUNCTIONS OF ELECTRICAL PARTS 11-81
A. Sensors and Solenoids 11-81
B. Switches 11-82
C. Lamp, Heater, Motor, Etc. 11-83
D. PCBs 11-84
E. ADF 11-85
F. Variable Resistors (VR) and Check Pins by PCB 11-86
VII. SERVICE MODE 11-88
A. Outline 11-88
B. Using Service Mode 11-88
C. Adjustment Mode (30) 11-91
D. Operation/Inspection Mode (40) 11-92
E. Machine Settings Mode (50) 11-93
F. Counter Mode (60) 11-93
VIII. SELF DIAGNOSIS 11-94

APPENDIX

A. GENERAL TIMING CHART A-1
B. SIGNALS AND ABBREVIATIONS A-3
C. GENERAL CIRCUIT DIAGRAM . A-5
D. DC CONTROLLER CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-7
E. ADF CONTROLLER CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-15
F. COMPOSITE POWER SUPPLY CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-19
G. CONTROL PANEL CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-29
H. AE SENSOR CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-31
I. SENSOR CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-32
J. NOISE FILTER CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-33
K. HIGH VOLTAGE CONTACT CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-34
L. BLANK EXPOSURE (front) CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-35
M. BLANK EXPOSURE (rear) CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-36
N. PRE-EXPOSURE CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-37
O. SPECIAL TOOLS A-38
P. SOLVENTS/OILS A-39

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

CHAPTER 1

GENERAL DESCRIPTION

This chapter provides specifications of the machine, instructions on how to operate the machine, and an outline of copying process.

I. FEATURES 1-1
II. SPECIFICATIONS 1-2
  A. Copier 1-2
  B. ADF 1-6
III. NAMES OF PARTS 1-8
  A. External View 1-8
  B. Cross Section 1-11
IV. USING THE MACHINE 1-13
  A. Control Panel 1-13
  B. User mode 1-15
V. ROUTINE MAINTENANCE BY THE USER 1-16
VI. IMAGE FORMATION 1-19
  A. Outline 1-19

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

I. FEATURES

1. Personal Copier with a Zoom Function and a Fixed Copyboard

- You can choose either a default enlargement/reduction ratio or any ratio between 70% and 141% in 1% increments.

2. Ecology-Conscious

- The use of a roller charging method has resulted in a considerable reduction of ozone: 0.01 ppm or less on the average, 0.02 ppm or less at maximum (1/100 to 1/1000 compared with existing Canon machines).

3. SURF Fixing Assembly

- The wait time is 0 sec (at 20°C room temperature), enabling speedy copying work immediately after power-on.

4. Various Paper Sizes

- The paper may be between A4 (LGL) and A5 (STMT)(*Using the universal cassette).
- In manual feed mode, paper may be as large as A4 (LGL) or as small as a business card.

5. Large Paper Source

- The source of paper may contain as many as 550 sheets of paper (500-sheet cassette type).

6. Separate top unit.

- The machine's top unit may be opened to make jam removal easy.

7. ADF Type

- Continuous copying is possible with the use of the ADF.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

II. SPECIFICATIONS

A. Copier

1. Type

Item	Descriptions
Body	Desk top
Copyboard	Fixed
Source of light	Halogen lamp (80 V/110 W for 120V-model; 150 V/160 W for 220/240 V-model)
Lens	Fixed focal point lens
Photosensitive medium	OPC drum (24-mm dia.)

Table 1-201

2. Mechanisms

Item	Descriptions
Reproduction	Indirect static reproduction
Charging	Roller (direct charging)
Exposure	Slit (moving light source)
Copy density adjustment	Auto or manual
Development	Dry (toner projection)
Pickup	Cassette (1 pc.) Multifeeder
Separation	Curvature separation + static eliminator
Fixing	Flat heater
Cleaning	Blade
Original orientation	Center reference (copyboard)

Table 1-202

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3. Performance

Item	Descriptions
Original type	Sheet, book, 3-D object (2kg max.)
Maximum original size	A4 (297 × 210 mm)/LGL (216 × 356 mm)
Reproduction ratio	Inch/AB-configuration: 2R2E Inch-configuration: 3R1E
Zoom	70% to 141% (in 1% increments)
Wait time	0 sec (at 20°C room temperature)
First copy time	10 sec or less (at 20°C room temperature; Direct, non-AE, from the cassette)
Continuous copying	100 (max.)
Copy size	A4/LGL (297 × 210 mm/216 × 356 mm max.) Business card (90 × 55 mm, min.)
Copy paper type	Cassette: Plain paper (64 to 80 g/m^2), tracing paper (SM-1, A4R/B5R), colored paper, recycled paper (64 to 80 g/m^2; A4R/B5R), eco paper (80 g/m^2; A4R) Manual Feeder: Plain paper (52 to 128 g/m^2), tracing paper (SM-1, GNT-80[*1]; A4R/B5R), transparency[*1,*3] (A4R/LTRR[*2]), colored paper, business card (200 g/m^2 or less), label sheet[*1] (A4R/LTRR), recycled paper (64 to 80 g/m^2; A4R/B5R), eco paper (80 g/m^2; A4R), postcard[*2] Double-Sided/Overlay Copying[*4]: Plain paper (64 to 128 g/m^2), colored paper, business card (200 g/m^2 or less), recycled paper (64 to 80 g/m^2; A4R/B5R), eco paper (80 g/m^2; A4R), postcard
Cassette	With claws Universal cassette (250 sheets of 80 g/m^2 paper; A4/LGL to A5/STMT) 250-sheet cassette (250 sheets of 80 g/m^2) 500-sheet cassette (500 sheets of 80 g/m^2)
Multifeeder tray	5 mm deep (approx.; 50 sheets of 80 g/m^2)
Copy tray	100 sheets (A4; 80 g/m^2)
Non-image width	Leading edge: 2.0 ±1.5 mm (Direct; 4.0 mm or less otherwise) Left/right: 0.0 +2.0, -0.0 mm (0 +4.0, -0.0 mm for LTR)
Auto power-off	Provided (5 min, approx.; fixed)[*5]

Table 1-203

*1. Applies only to single pickup if the multifeeder is used.
*2. Applies only to vertical feeding.
*3. Upon delivery, be sure to remove each from the copy tray.
*4. Be sure to remove any curling before feeding for a second time.
*5. If stopped because paper ran out during copying operation, 1 hr.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

4. Others

Item	Descriptions
Operating condition Temperature Humidity Atmospheric pressure	 7.5°C to 32.5°C/45.5°F to 90.5°F 5% to 85% RH 607.95 to 1013.25 hPa (0.6 to 1 atm)
Power source	120 V 60 Hz 220/240 V 50 Hz
Serial number	NVFxxxxx PTZxxxxx NVHxxxxx PUBxxxxx PUCxxxxx TWAxxxxx TXAxxxxx
Maximum power consumption	0.9 kW or less Standby: 1.2 W (approx.; about 5 min; reference only) Copying: 0.4 kWh (approx.; reference only)
Noise	Standby: - (sound power level by ISO) Copying: 66 dB or less (sound power level by ISO)
Ozone	0.01 ppm or less (average; 0.02 ppm or less, max.)
Dimensions (WxDxH)	Copyboard Type 484.9 × 448.2 × 297.5 mm[*1]/329.0 mm[*2] 19.1 in. × 17.6 in. × 11.7 in.[*1]/13.0 in.[*2] ADF Type 484.9 × 448.2 × 358.3 mm[*1]/389.8 mm[*2] 19.1 in. × 17.6 in. × 14.1 in.[*1]/15.3 in.[*2]
Weight (including the cassette)	Copyboard Type 20.6 kg[*1]/45.3 lb[*1], 22.5 kg[*2]/49.5 lb[*2] ADF Type 24.4 kg[*1]/53.7 lb[*1], 26.3 kg[*2]/57.9 lb[*2]
Consumables	Copy paper: Keep wrapped, and protect against humidity. Toner: Avoid direct sunlight, and store at 40°C/104°F, 85% or less.

Table 1-204

*1. 250-sheet cassette type
*2. 500-sheet cassette type

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5. Default Ratios

Item	2R2E (Inch/AB-configuration)	3R1E (Inch-configuration)
Direct	1:1.000	1:1.000
Reduce I	1:0.707	1:0.707
Reduce II		1:0.786
Reduce III	1:0816	
Reduce IV		1:0.860
Enlarge I	1:1.154	
Enlarge II	1:1.414	1:1.414

Table 1-205

6. Copying Speed

Copying speed at Direct	Reproduction ratio	Copy size	Number of copies (Multifeeder*1) (copies/min)
13	Direct	LTRR	13 (9)
		LGL	11 (8)
		STMTR	13 (9)
	Reduce I (70.7%)	MIN	13 (9)
	Reduce II (78.6%)	LGL → LTRR	13 (9)
	Reduce IV (86.0%)	MARJIN	13 (9)
	Enlarge II (141.4%)	MAX	10 (9)
12	Direct	A4R	12 (9)
		B5R	12 (9)
		A5R	12 (9)
	Reduce I (70.7%)	A4R → A5R	12 (9)
	Reduce III (81.6%)	B5R → A5R	12 (9)
	Enlarge I (115.4%)	B5R → A4R	12 (9)
	Enlarge II (141.4%)	A5R→ A4R	10 (9)

Table 1-206

*1. The number of copies starting with the pickup operation that follows the delivery of the 19th copy in a continuous copying job. (See p.5-5)

The specifications are subject to change for product improvement.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

B. ADF

Item	Descriptions
Original pickup	Auto pickup/delivery
Original orientation	Face-down
Original position	Center reference
Original separation	Top separation
Original type	Single-sided (50 to 128 g/m^2) A5 (STMT) to A4R (LTRR), LGL Length: 139.7 to 355.6 mm (feeding direction) Width: 139.7 to 215.9 mm
Stack	30 sheets (80 g/m^2 or less; about 3 mm in height)
Original processing mode	Single-sided original to single-sided copy
Original size detection	Yes (in feeding direction)
Mixed original sizes	No
Original detection	Yes
Original feeding speed	446 mm/sec
Communication with host	IPC
Dimensions	Width: 474 mm/18.7 in. (659 mm/25.9 in. with the tray open) Depth: 394 mm/15.5in. Height: 74 mm/2.9 in. (216 mm/8.5 in. with the tray open)
Weight	5 kg/11 lb (approx.)
Power source	24 VDC and 5 VDC (from the host)
Maximum power consumption	40 W or less
Operating environment	Temperature: same as the host Humidity: same as the host

Table 1-207

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

*1. The following may not be used as an original:
- Sheet with a staple, clip, or glue.
- Sheet with a cut, hole, or tear.
- Sheet with holes for binding.
- Sheet with a carbon back.
- Sheet with a cut-and-paste piece.
- Sheet with curling, bending, or wrinkling.

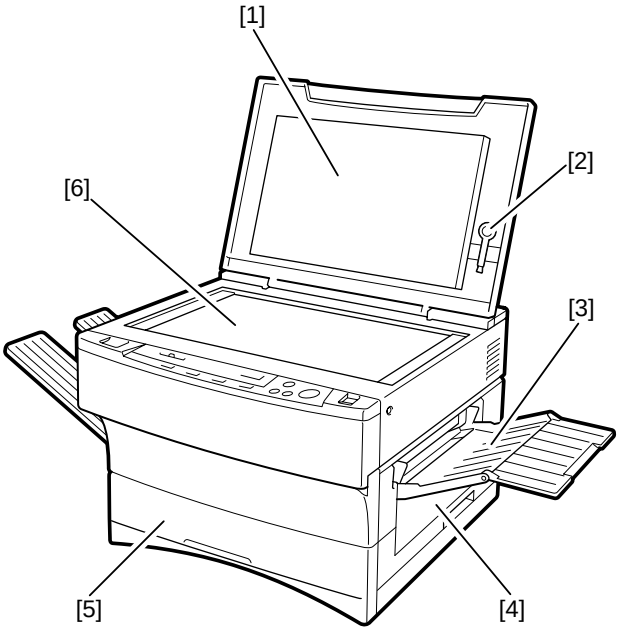
The specifications are subject to change for product improvement.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

III. NAMES OF PARTS

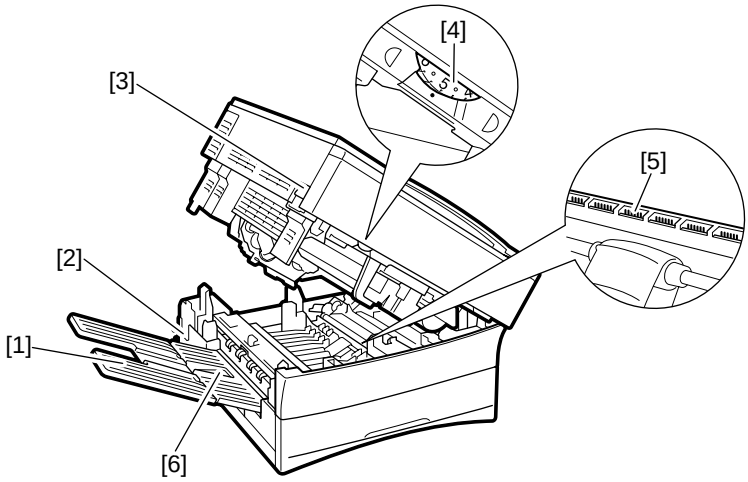
A. External View

1. Copyboard Type



[1] Copyboard cover
[2] Static eliminator cleaner
[3] Manual feed tray
[4] Right door
[5] Cassette
[6] Copyboard glass

Figure 1-301

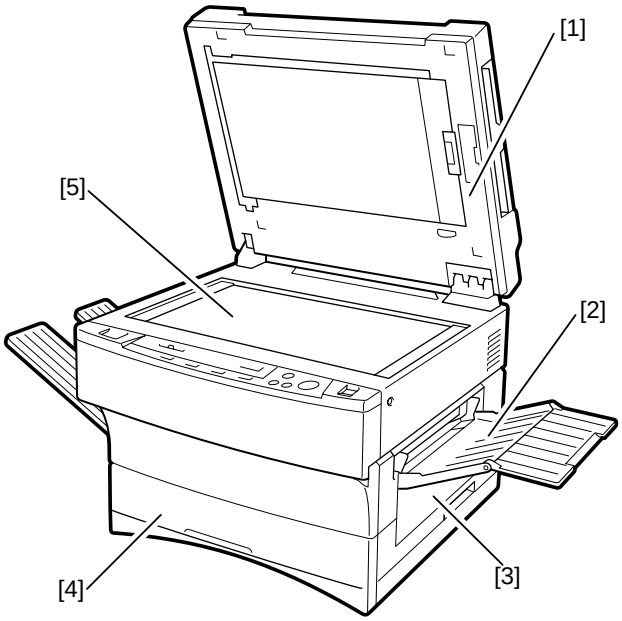


[1] Copy tray
[2] Power cord connector
[3] Open/close lever
[4] Copy density correction dial
[5] Static eliminator
[6] Delivery guide plate

Figure 1-302

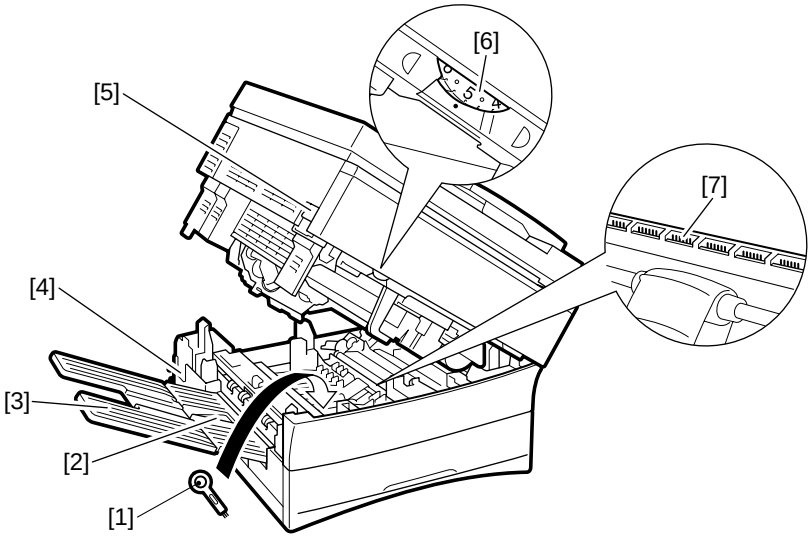
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. ADF Type



[1] ADF
[2] Manual feed tray
[3] Right door
[4] Cassette
[5] Copyboard glass

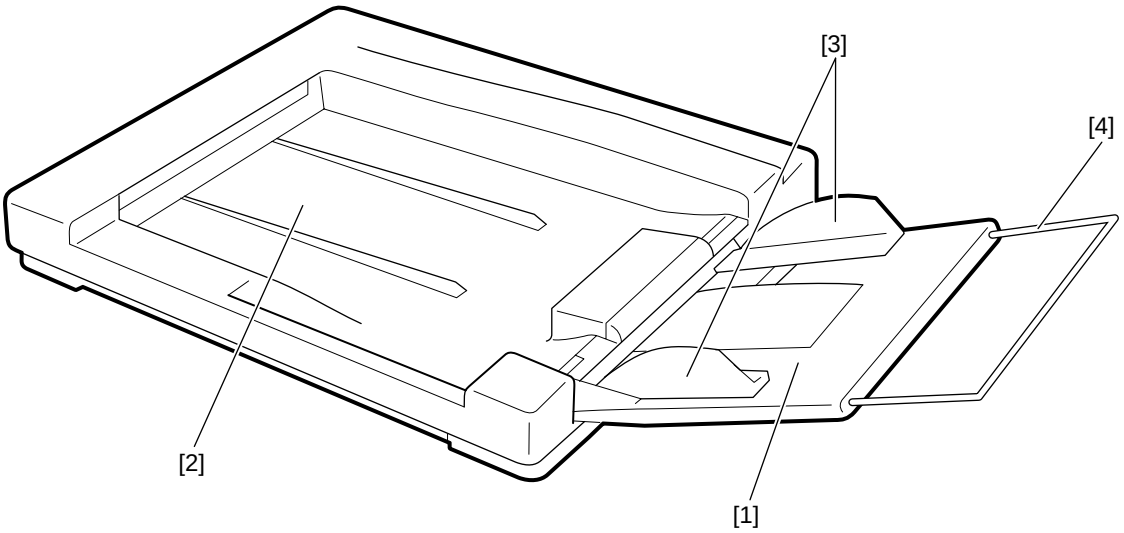
Figure 1-303



[1] Static eliminator cleaner
[2] Delivery guide plate
[3] Copy tray
[4] Power cord connector
[5] Open/close lever
[6] Copy density correction dial
[7] Static eliminator

Figure 1-304

3. ADF



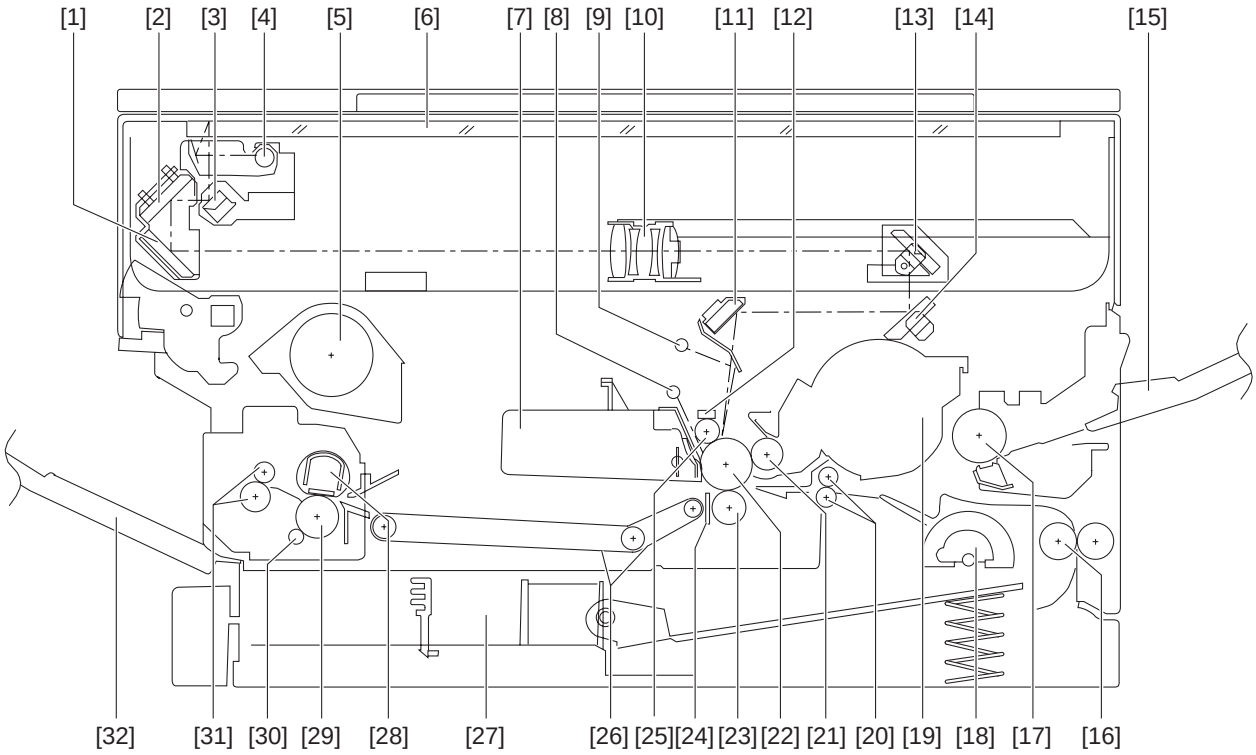
[1] Original tray
[2] Original delivery tray
[3] Slide guide
[4] Auxiliary tray

Figure 1-305

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

B. Cross Section

1. Body

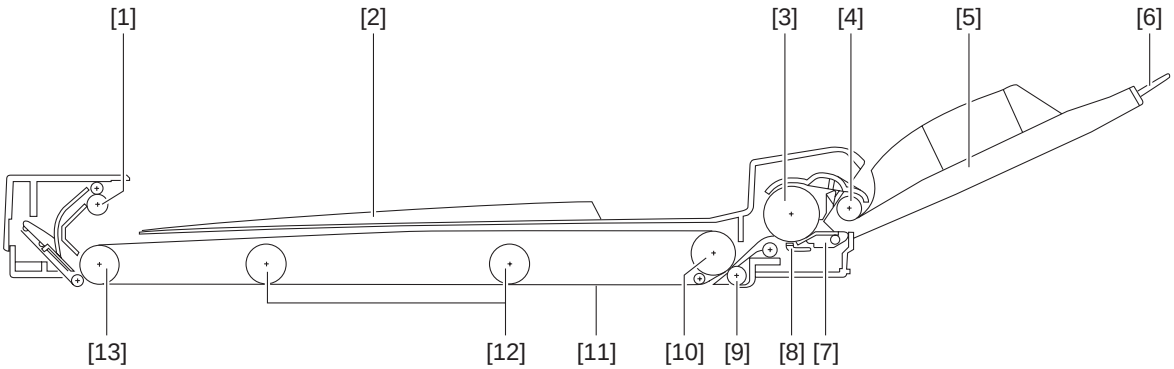


[1] No. 3 mirror
[2] No. 2 mirror
[3] No. 1 mirror
[4] Scanning lamp
[5] Heat exhaust fan
[6] Copyboard glass
[7] Drum Unit
[8] Pre-exposure lamp
[9] Side blanking lamp
[10] Lens
[11] No. 6 mirror
[12] Primary charging roller cleaning pad
[13] No. 4 mirror
[14] No. 5 mirror
[15] Multifeeder tray
[16] Vertical path roller
[17] Multifeeder pickup roller
[18] Cassette pickup roller
[19] Developing assembly
[20] Registration roller
[21] Developing cylinder
[22] Photosensitive drum
[23] Transfer roller
[24] Static eliminator
[25] Primary charging roller
[26] Feed belt
[27] Cassette
[28] Fixing upper unit
[29] Fixing lower roller
[30] Cleaning roller
[31] Delivery roller
[32] Copy tray

Figure 1-306

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

2. ADF



[1] Delivery roller
[2] Copy tray
[3] Pickup roller 2
[4] Pickup roller 1
[5] Copyboard tray
[6] Auxiliary tray
[7] Guide plate
[8] Separation pad
[9] Registration roller
[10] Feed belt drive roller
[11] Feed belt
[12] Feed belt roller
[13] Feed belt link slave roller

Figure 1-307

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

IV. USING THE MACHINE

A. Control Panel

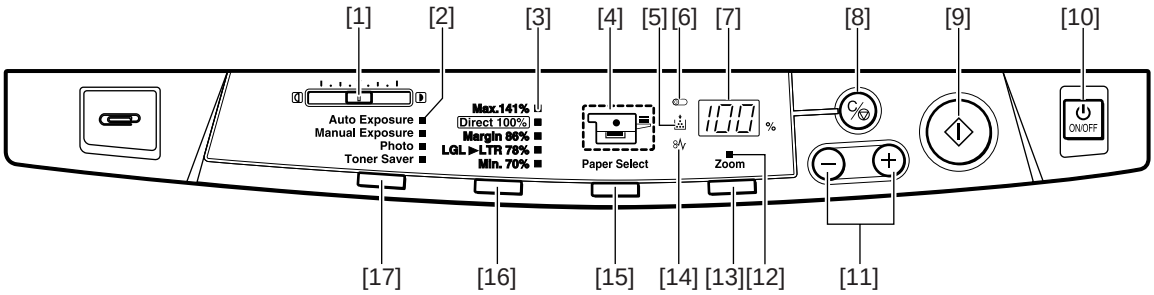


Figure 1-401

No.	Name	Description	Remarks
1	Copy density adjusting lever	Adjusts the density of copies manually.	
2	Copy density mode indicator	Indicates the selected copy density mode.	
3	Default ratio indicator	Indicates the selected default ratio.	
4	Paper selection indicator	Indicates the selected cassette/ manual feed tray. If there is no paper loaded, it flashes.	
5	Replace toner cartridge indicator	Flashes when the toner cartridge must be replaced	
6	Replace drum unit indicator	Flashes to indicate that the drum unit must be replaced. If also flashes when it is necessary to have waste toner disposed of.	
7	Count/ratio indicator	• Indicates the number of copies or reproduction ratio. • The symbol "%" turns on when indicating a ratio.	100 (max.; continuous copying)
8	Clear/stop key	Stops copying or returns copying mode to standard mode.	Standard Mode Ratio: 100% Count: 1 Paper source: cassette Copy density: auto mode

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

No.	Name	Description	Remarks
9	Copy start key	Starts copying.	
10	Power switch	Turns on and off the power.	
11	Count/zoom set key	Sets the number of copies or a zoom ratio.	
12	Zoom indicator	Turns on when zoom mode is selected.	
13	Zoom key	Selects/deselects zoom mode.	May be between 70% and 141% in 1% increments.
14	Jam indicator	Flashes in response to a jam.	
15	Paper selection key	Selects the cassette/ manual feed tray.	
16	Default ratio key	Selects a default reproduction ratio.	
17	Copy density mode selection key	Selects copying density mode.	

Table 1-401

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

B. User mode

Indication	Function	Description
U1	Primary charging roller cleaning	Use it to clean the primary charging roller. (See p. 4-31.)
U5*	DF recovery mode on/off	Use it to enable/disable recovery mode with the DF in use: 00: disable. 01: enable.
U6*	Feeder cleaning	Use it to clean the feeder. (See p. 1-16.)
U7	Installation/drum replacement mode	Use it at time of installation or replacement of the drum unit. (See p. 9-14.) • Indications '71': Enter 'PRIMARY'. '72': Enter 'IP_OFST'. '73': Enter the drum counter reading (in units of 1000 sheets). If no input is entered, '0' will be assumed. '74': Measures APVC and stirs toner.
U9	Reserved.	----------

*Only if an ADF is installed.

Table 1-402

V. ROUTINE MAINTENANCE BY THE USER

Instruct the user to clean the following if images tend to be soiled or copy paper tends to jam often.

1. Soiled Images

a. Copyboard Glass/Copyboard Cover
Clean the cover with a moist cloth (with water or mild detergent solution); then, dry wipe it.

b. Feeding Belt (ADF type)

b.1 Cleaning in Feeder Cleaning Mode

1) Turn on the machine, and hold down the Copy Density Mode Selection key for 4 sec or more.
   - The count/ratio indicator will indicate ‘U6’.

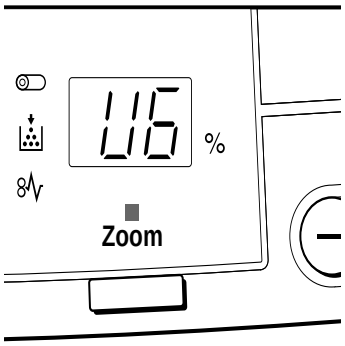


Figure 1-501

2) Place about 10 sheets of blank copy paper (A4/LTR) on the original tray of the ADF.
3) Press the Copy Start key.
   - Copy paper will be fed from the original tray.
   - The indicator flashes ‘U6’ while the feeder is being cleaned.
4) Press the Copy Density Mode Selection key to end the mode.

Caution:

- You cannot start feeder cleaning mode while the machine is making copies or if an error exists.
- The auto power-off mechanism does not operate while feeder cleaning mode is being executed.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

b.2 Cleaning by Hand

1) Wipe the feed belt with a moist cloth (water or mild detergent solution) in the direction of the arrow in the figure; then, dry wipe it.

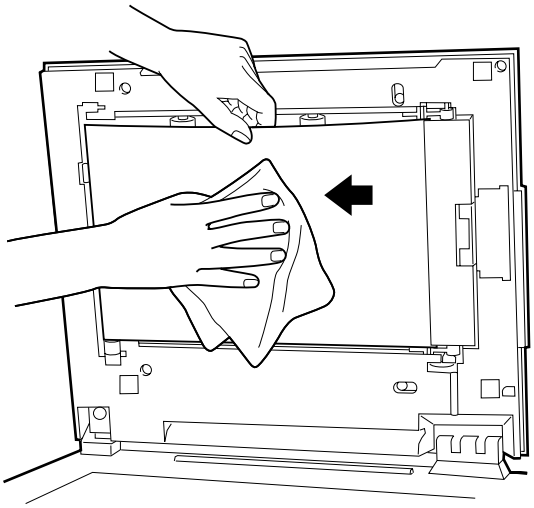


Figure 1-502

2. If Jams Occur Frequently

a. Static Eliminator

1) Remove the static eliminator cleaner from the machine.

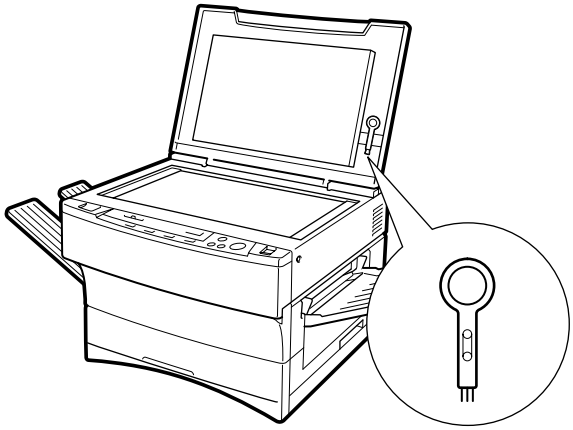


Figure 1-503 (Copyboard type)

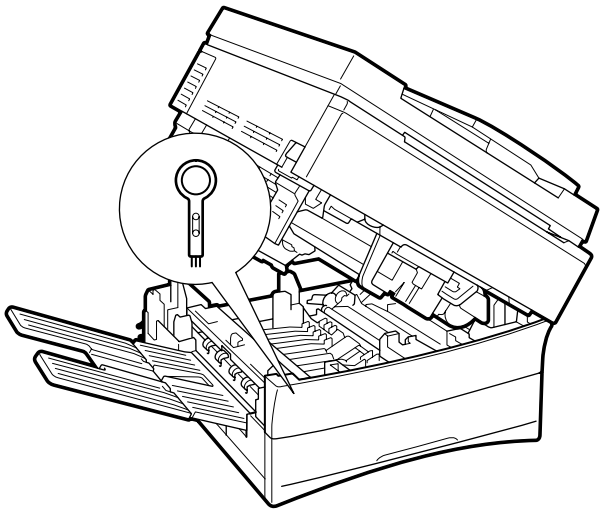


Figure 1-504 (ADF type)

2) Pull the open/close lever to open the machine.
3) Using the static eliminator cleaner, clean the static eliminator.
   - Brush out the paper lint or the like from the groove of the static eliminator.

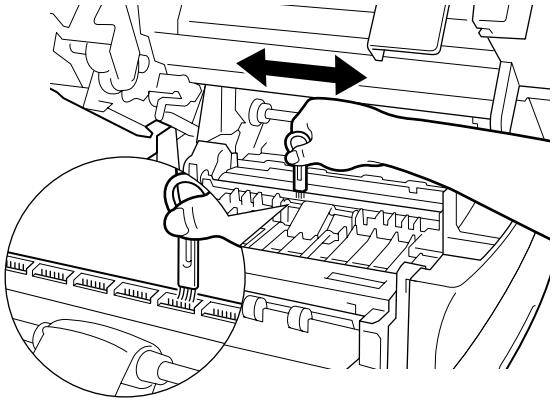


Figure 1-505

4) Close the machine as soon as you have finished cleaning. (Work briskly.)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

VI. IMAGE FORMATION

A. Outline

The construction of the machine is as follows:

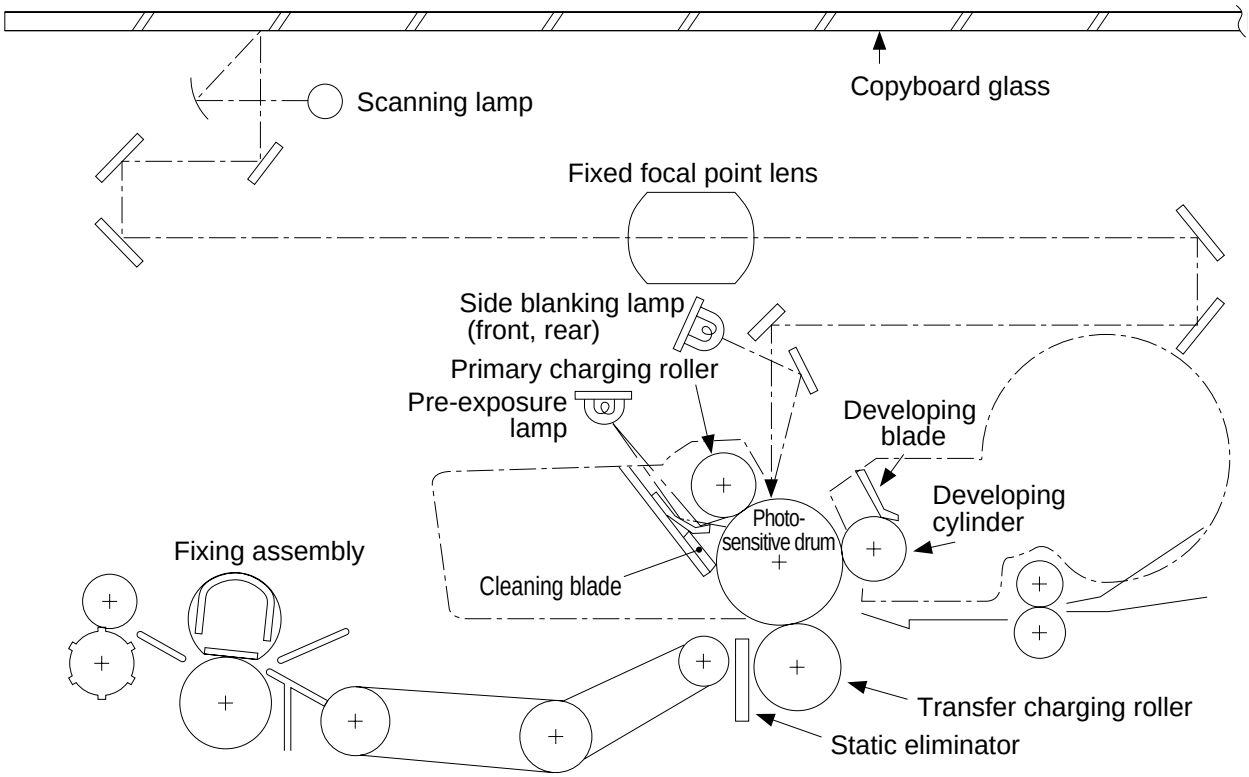


Figure 1-601

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

The machine's image formation process consists of the following seven steps:

Step 1 Pre-exposure
Step 2 Primary charging (negative DC)
Step 3 Image exposure
Step 4 Development (AC + negative DC)
Step 5 Transfer (negative DC)
Step 6 Separation (curvature separation + static eliminator; positive DC)
Step 7 Fixing
Step 8 Drum cleaning

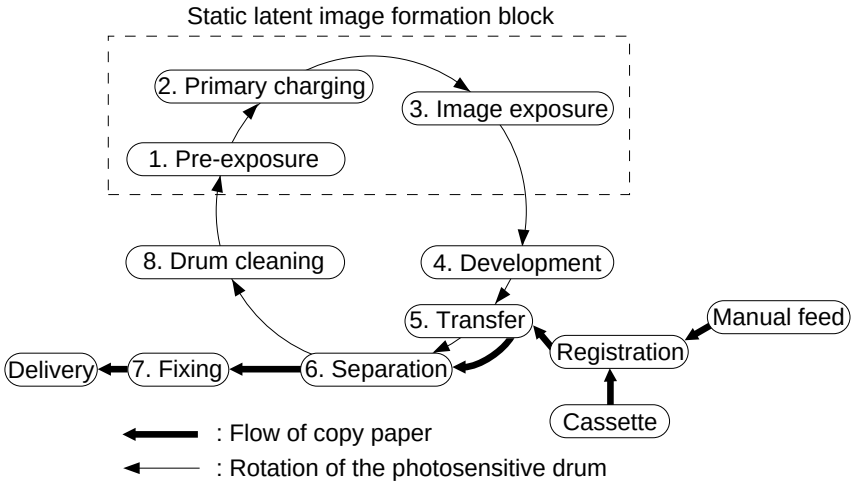


Figure 1-602

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

CHAPTER 2

BASIC OPERATION

This chapter provides descriptions on basic operations, functions of each operation, relationships between electrical and mechanical systems, and timing at which each associated part is turned on.

Process speed	96 mm/sec

I. BASIC OPERATIONS 2-1
- A. Functional Construction 2-1
- B. Outline of Electrical Circuitry 2-2
- C. Basic Sequence of Operations 2-3
- D. Controlling the Main Motor (M1) 2-5
- E. Inputs to and Outputs from the DC Controller 2-7

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

I. BASIC OPERATIONS

A. Functional Construction

The machine consists of four functional blocks: pickup/feeding system, exposure system, image formation system, and control system.

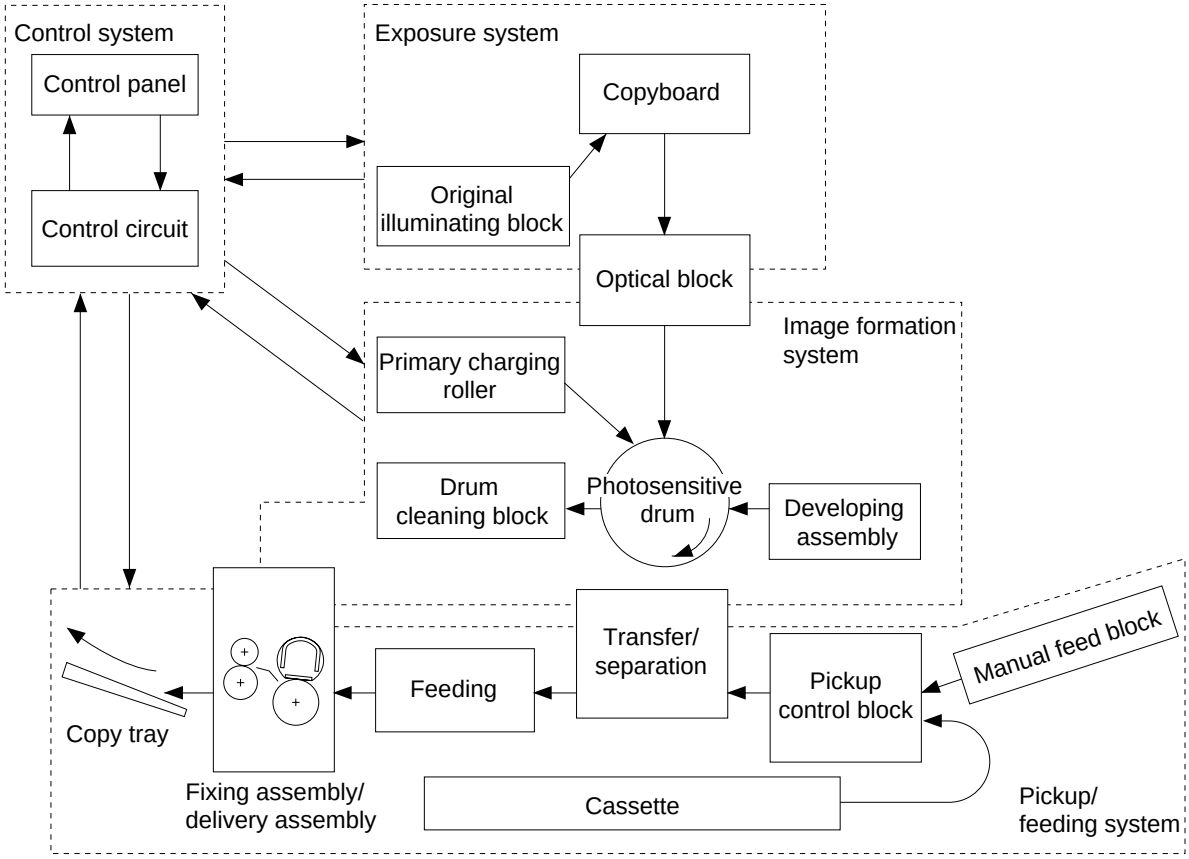


Figure 2-101

B. Outline of Electrical Circuitry

The machine's major electric mechanisms are controlled by the microprocessor mounted on the DC controller PCB, which reads input signals from sensors and operating keys according to the instructions of the program stored in advance and sends signals used to drive motors, solenoids, lamps, and other loads as needed.

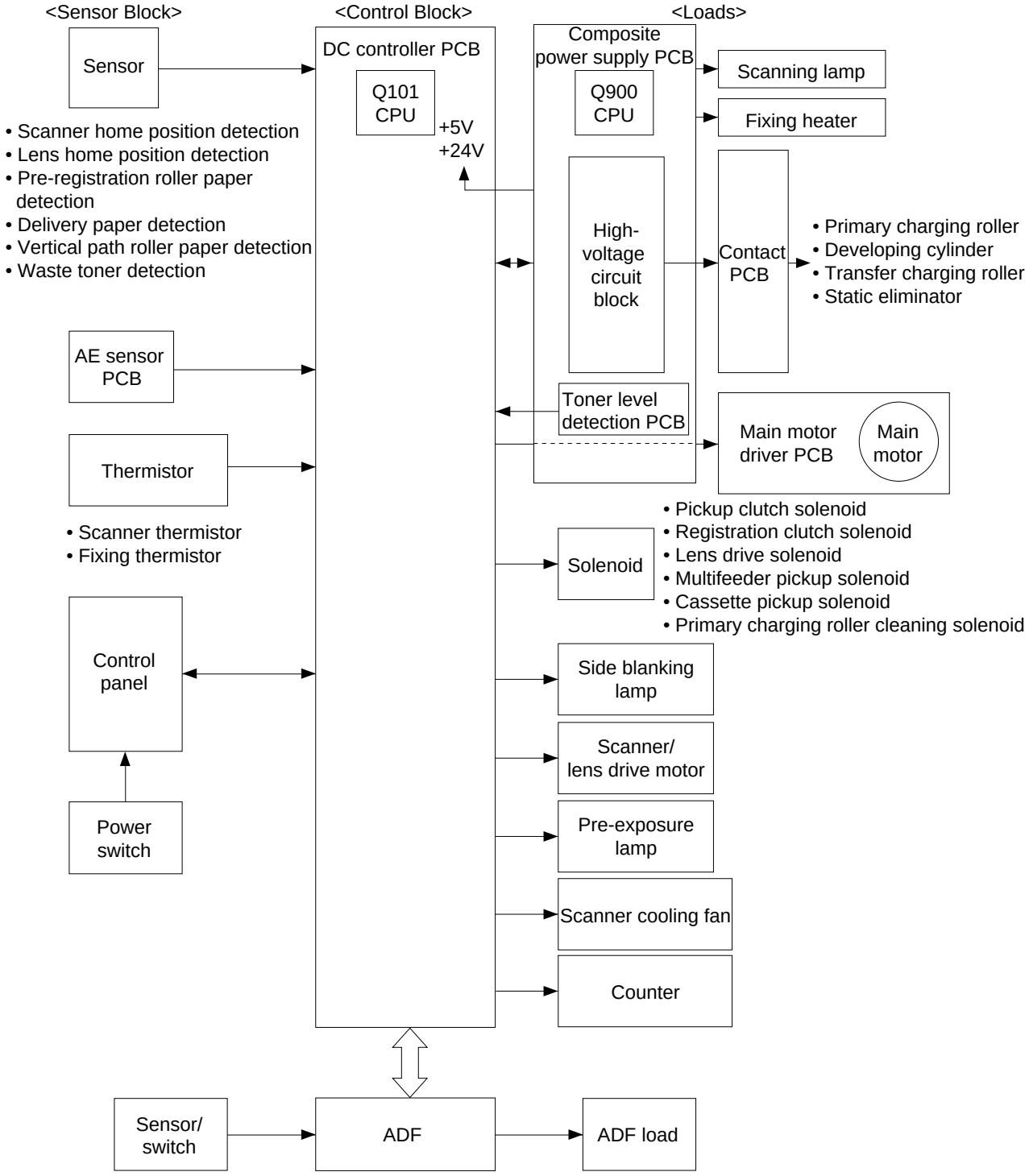
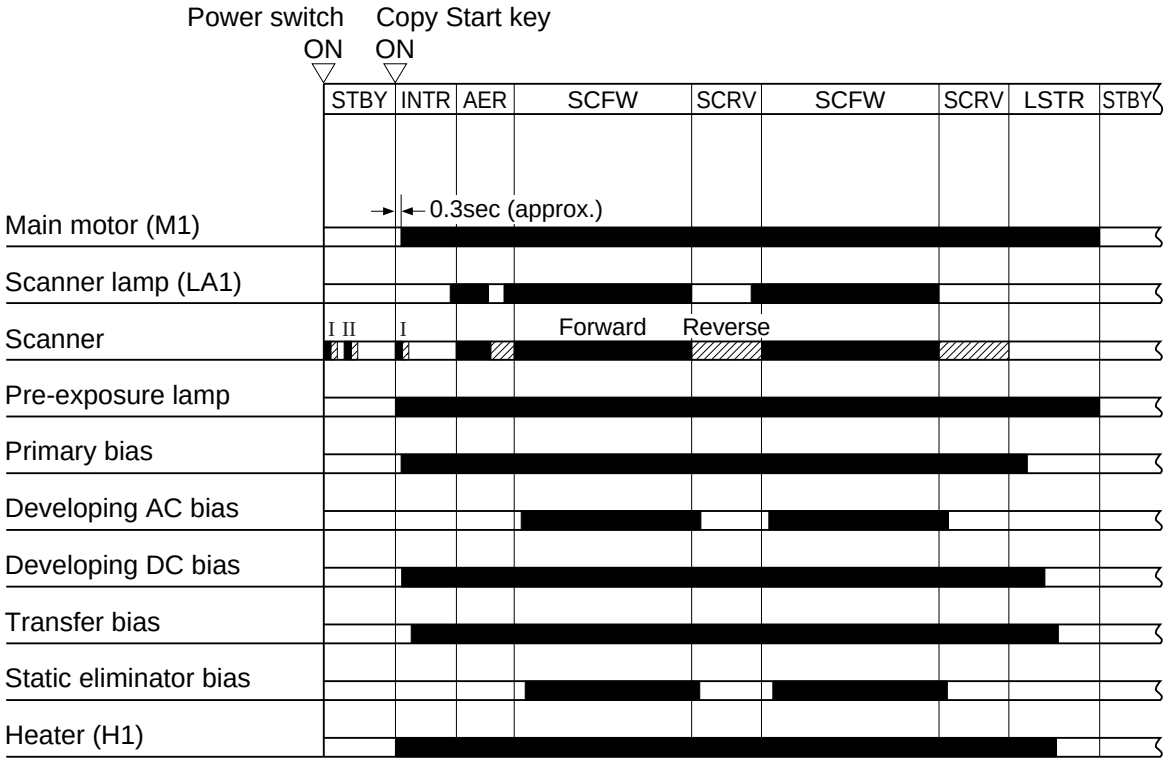


Figure 2-102

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

C. Basic Sequence of Operations

• A4R, Direct, 2 Copies, Continuous, Cassette



I: Scanner home position detection
II: Lens home position detection

Figure 2-103

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

Period		Description
STBY (standby)	• From when he power switch is turned on to when the Copy Start key is pressed. • From when LSTR ends to when the Copy Start key is pressed.	Waits until the Copy Start key is pressed.
INTR (initial rotation)	From when the Copy Start key is pressed to when the scanner moves forward.	Removes residual charges from the photosensitive drum, thereby ensuring a stable drum sensitivity.
AER (AE rotation)	While the scanner moves forward about 10 cm and then moves it in reverse.	Measures the density of the original.
SCFW (scanner forward)	While the scanner is moving forward. • The distance varies according to the selected copy size and reproduction ratio. • The forward speed varies according to the selected reproduction ratio.	Illuminates the original by the scanning lamp, and the reflected optical image is projected to the photosensitive drum through mirrors and lenses.
SCRV (scanner reverse)	While the scanner is moving in reverse. • The reverse speed is about 3.3 as fast as the forward speed used in Direct.	Moves the scanner to the home position in preparation for the next copying run.
LSTR (last rotation)	From when SCRV ends to when the main motor stops.	Neutralizes the drum surface potential as post-processing.

Table 2-101

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

D. Controlling the Main Motor (M1)

1. Outline

Table 2-102 shows the functions of the main motor control circuit, and Figure 2-104 is a block diagram of the circuit.

Item	Description
Power supply	24 VDC from the composite power supply.
Drive signal	Signal (MMD) from the DC controller PCB.
Moving/drive parts	Photosensitive drum, primary charging roller, developing assembly, transfer charging roller, pickup roller, vertical path roller, registration roller, feeding assembly, fixing assembly, delivery roller, heat exhaust fan
Control	Executes on/off control. Executes constant speed rotation control.
Error detection	Issues 'E010'.

Table 2-102

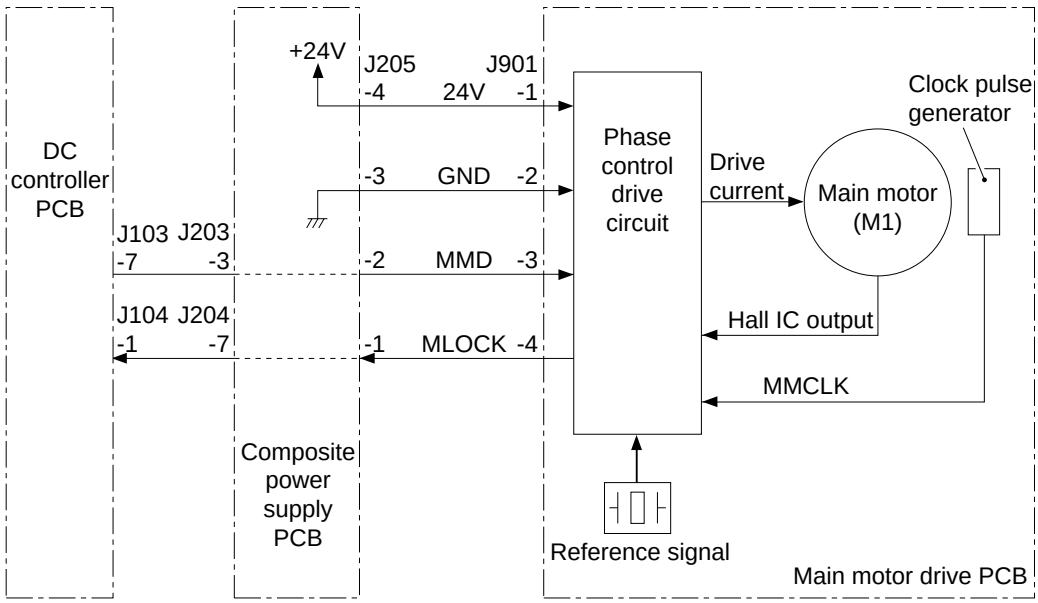


Figure 2-104

2. Operations

The main motor (M1) is a DC motor with a built-in clock pulse generator, which generates clock pulses (MMCLK) in relation to the rotation of the motor while the motor is rotating.

The speed control circuit controls the main motor (M1) so that it rotates at a specific speed by matching the frequency of these clock pulses and that of the reference signals.

When the main motor drive signal (MMD) from the DC controller circuit goes '1', the motor diver drive circuit turns on, causing the main motor (M1) to rotate at a specific speed.

While the main motor is rotating at a specific speed, the main motor driver PCB keeps sending the constant speed state signal (MLOCK=0) to the DC controller PCB. If the rotation of the motor starts to have fluctuations, the MLOCK signal goes '1'.

Related Error Code

E010
While the main motor drive signal is generated, the rotation of the main motor deviates from a specific number for 1 sec or more.

a. Turning On/Off the Main Motor

When the main motor drive signal (MMD) from the DC controller circuit goes '1', the main motor driver turns on to rotate the main motor (M1).

b. Rotating the Main Motor at a Constant Speed

The drive circuit on the motor driver PCB controls the main motor so that the phase of the frequency of the clock pulse signals (MMCLK) occurring when the motor rotates and that of the frequency of the reference signals match. The main motor driver PCB sends the constant speed state signal (MLOCK=0) to the DC controller circuit.

c. Detecting an Error (E010)

If the rotation of the main motor starts to have fluctuations for some reason, the MLOCK signal goes '1'. If the signal remains '1' for about 1 sec, the DC controller will find the condition to be a fault in the main motor, and will stop the main motor and, at the same time, indicate 'E010' in the display.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

E. Inputs to and Outputs from the DC Controller

1. Inputs to the DC Control (1/2)

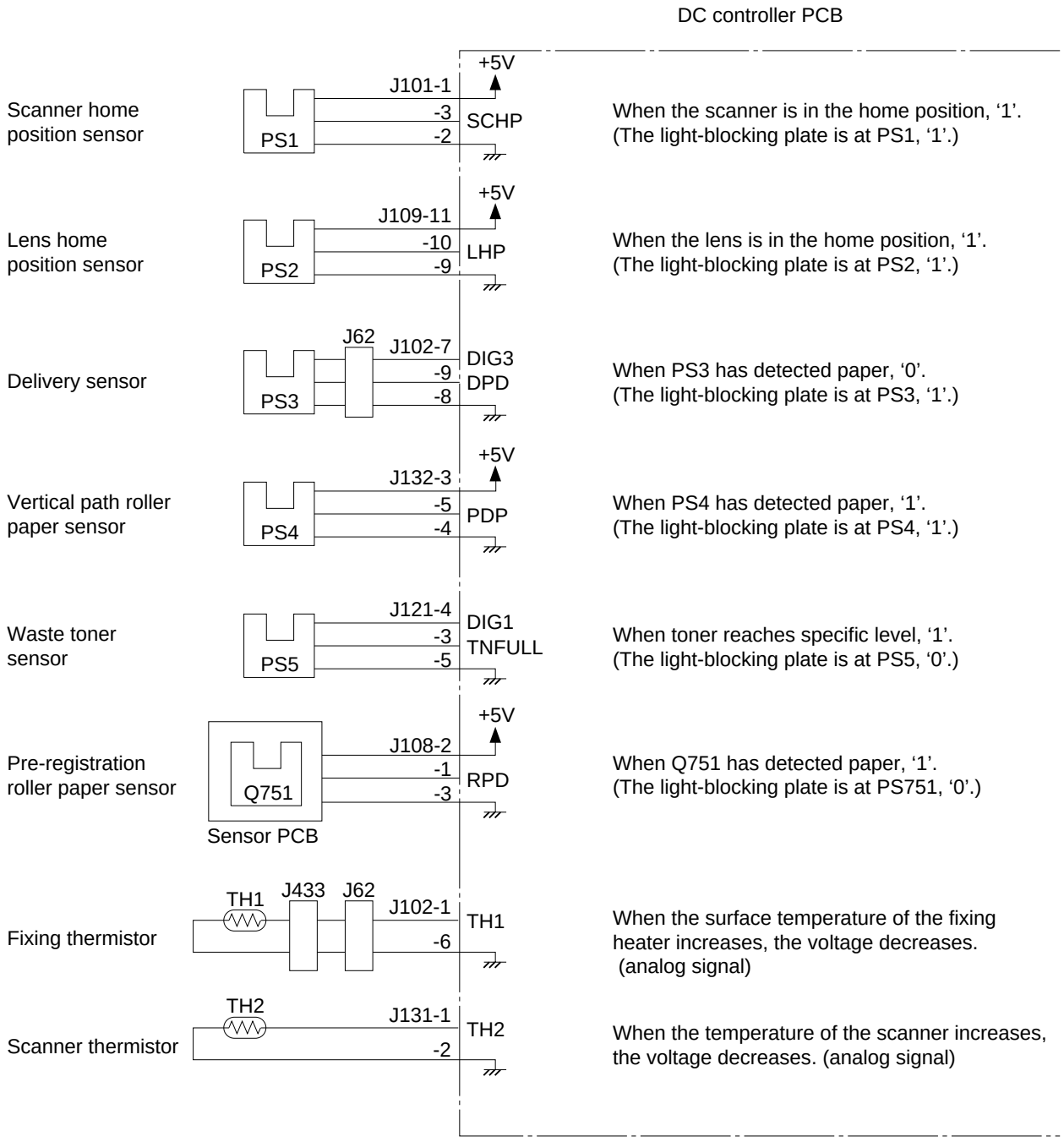


Figure 2-105

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

2. Inputs to the DC Controller (2/2)

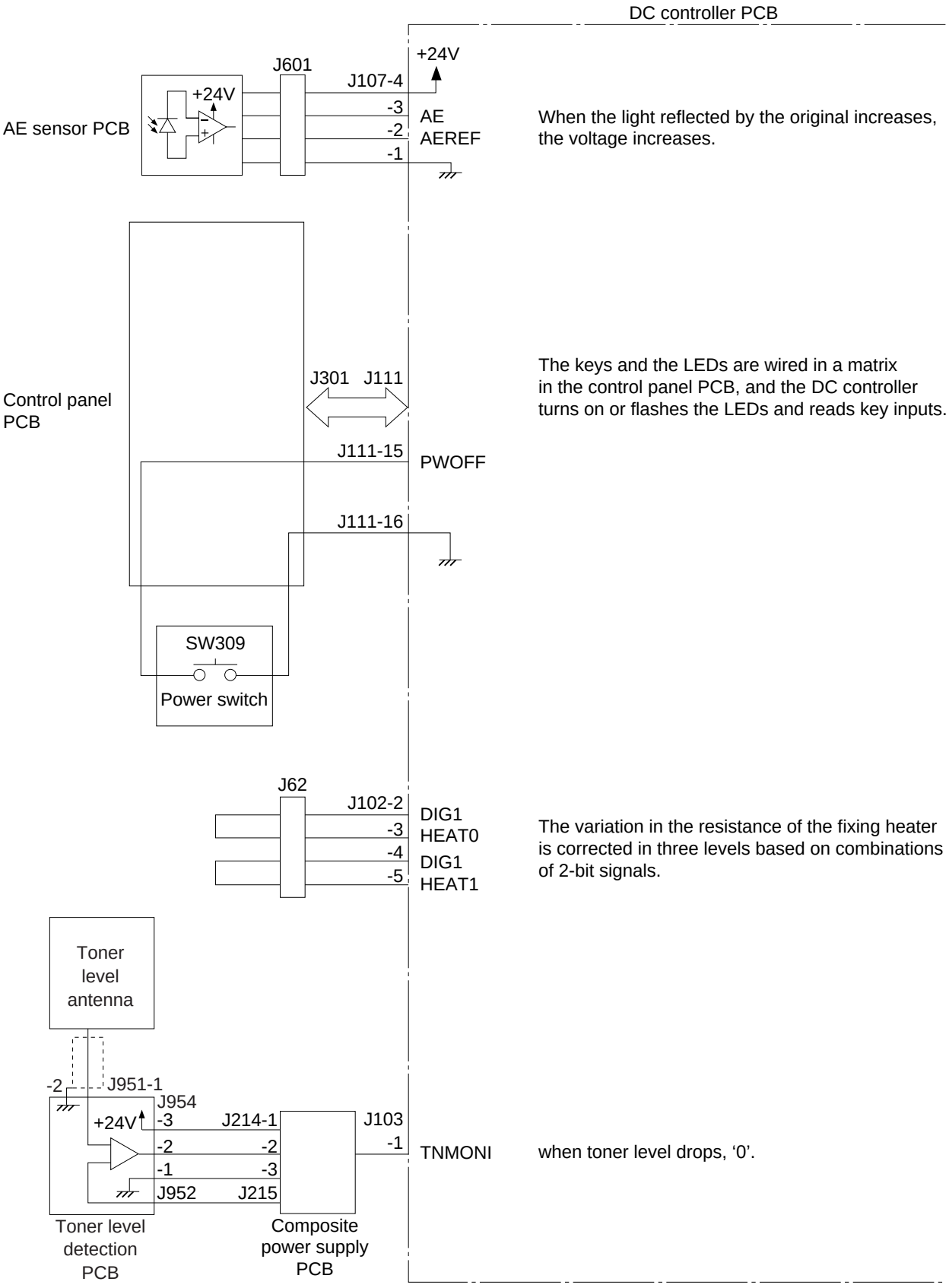


Figure 2-106

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3. Outputs from the DC Controller (1/2)

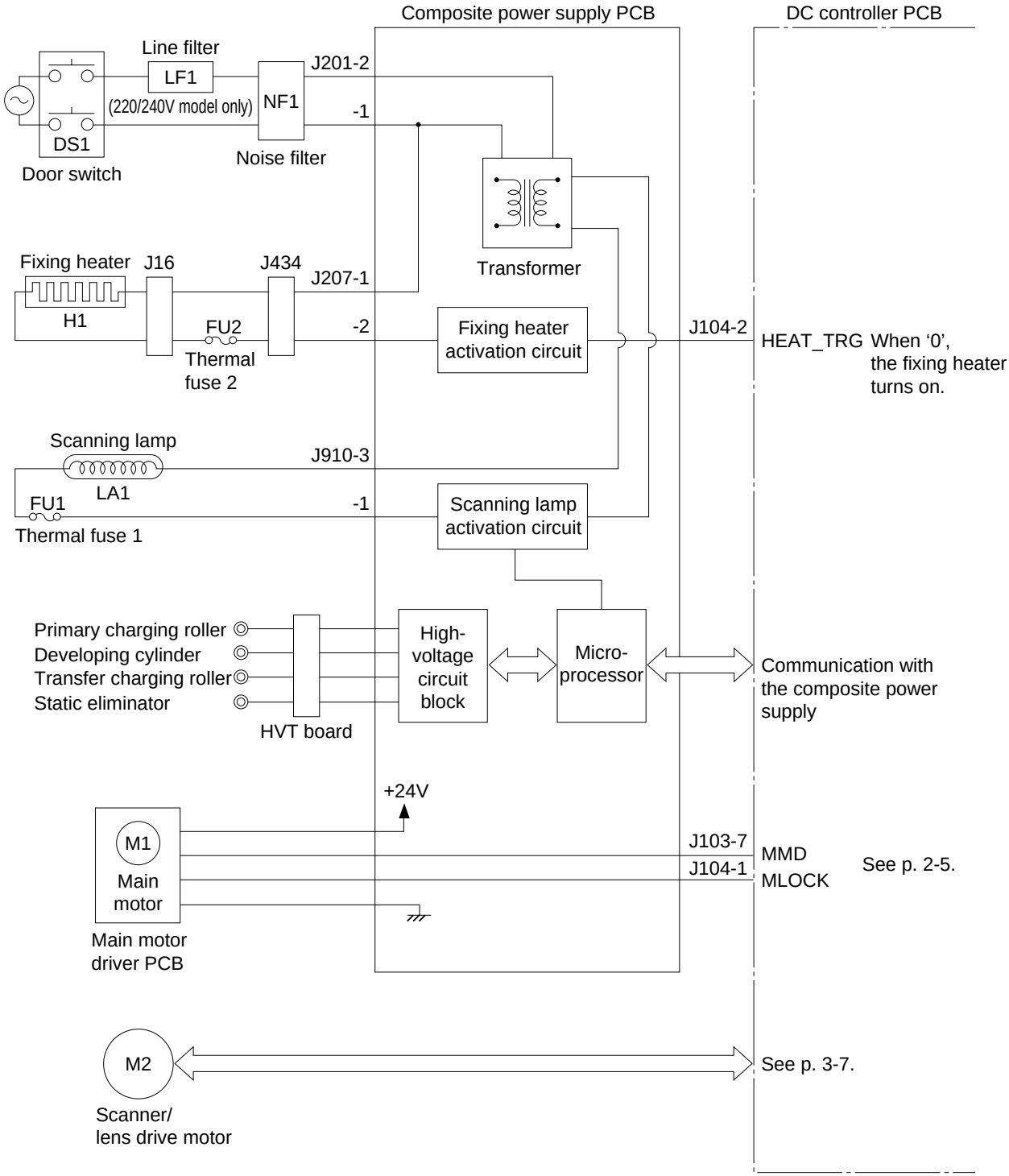


Figure 2-107

4. Outputs from the DC Control PCB (2/2)

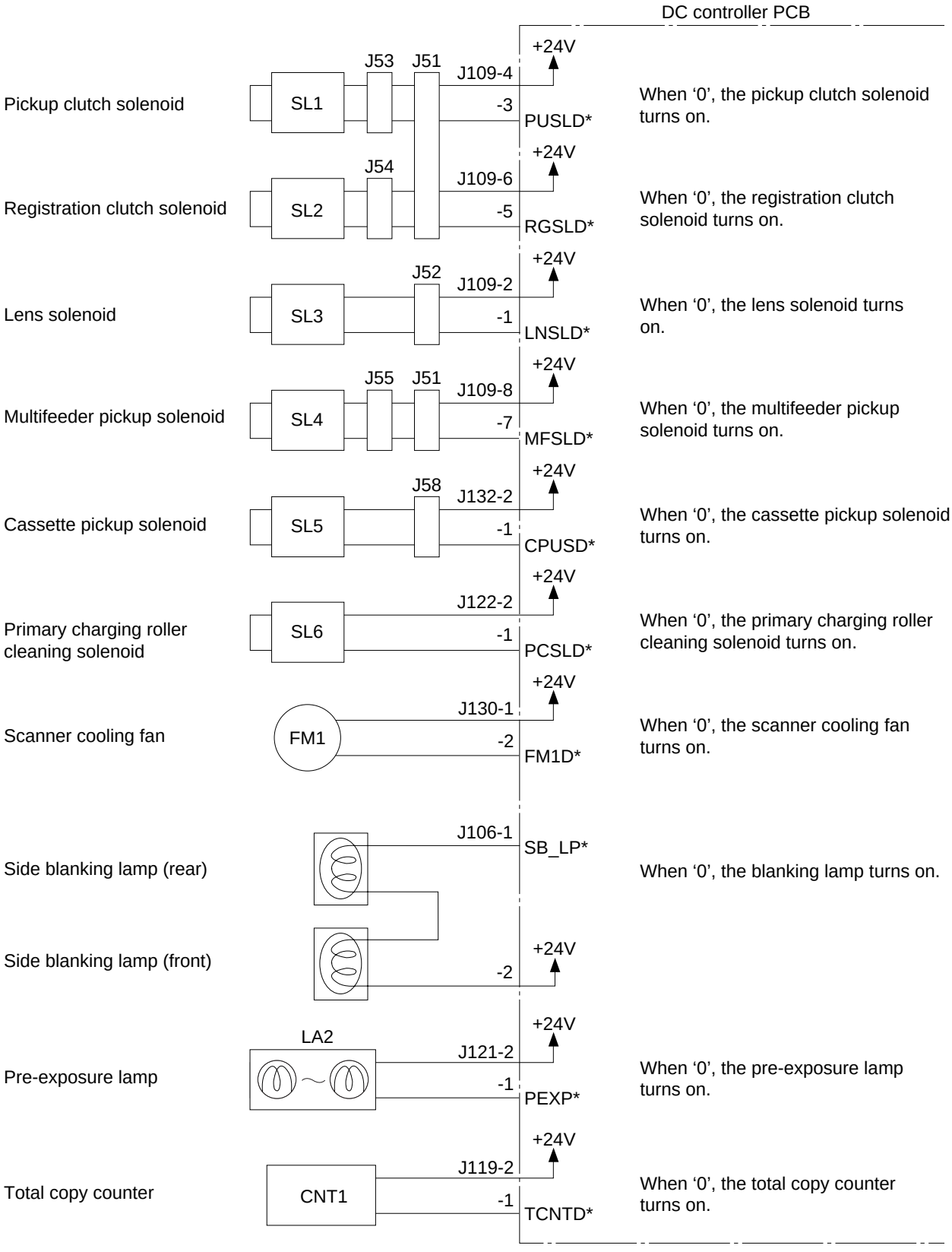


Figure 2-108

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5. Inputs to and Outputs from the ADF

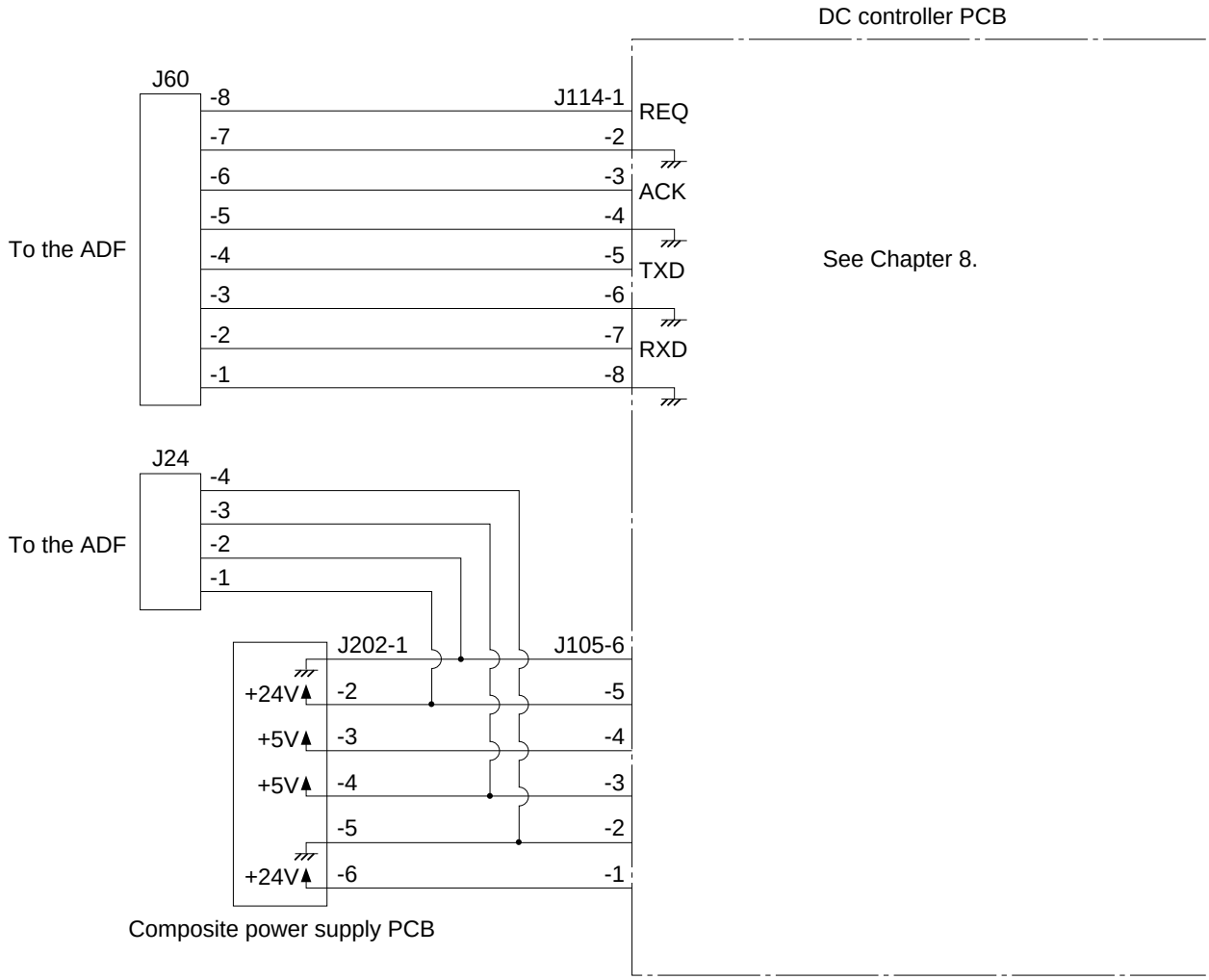


Figure 2-109

CHAPTER 3

EXPOSURE SYSTEM

This chapter discusses the principles of operation used for the machine's lens drive unit and scanner drive unit. It also explains the timing at which these drive units are operated, and shows how they may be disassembled/assmbled and adjusted.

I. OPERATIONS 3-1
  A. Outline 3-1
  B. Varying the Reproduction Ratio 3-2
  C. Lens Drive System 3-3
  D. Scanner Drive System 3-4
II. EXPOSURE SYSTEM 3-9
  A. Controlling the Scanning Lamp 3-9
III. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY 3-13
  A. Scanner Drive Assembly 3-14
  B. Lens Drive Assembly 3-32
  C. Exposure System 3-38

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

I. OPERATIONS

A. Outline

Table 3-101 shows the major functions of the exposure system.

Item	Description
Lamp	Halogen
Scanning	By moving the No. 1 mirror mount
Scanner position detection	By a sensor (scanner home position sensor; PS1)
Ratio variation	Main scanning direction:by varying the optical length Sub scanning direction:by varying the speed of the No. 1 mirror mount
Lens drive control	Scanner/lens drive motor (M2) Fixed focal point lens unit Mobile No. 4/5 mirror unit
Scanner drive control	Scanner/lens drive motor (M2) Scanner thermistor (TH2)
Protective function	By a fuse (blows in response to overheating of the scanning lamp to cut power to the lamp) • Thermal fuse (FU1; blows at 128°C)

Table 3-101

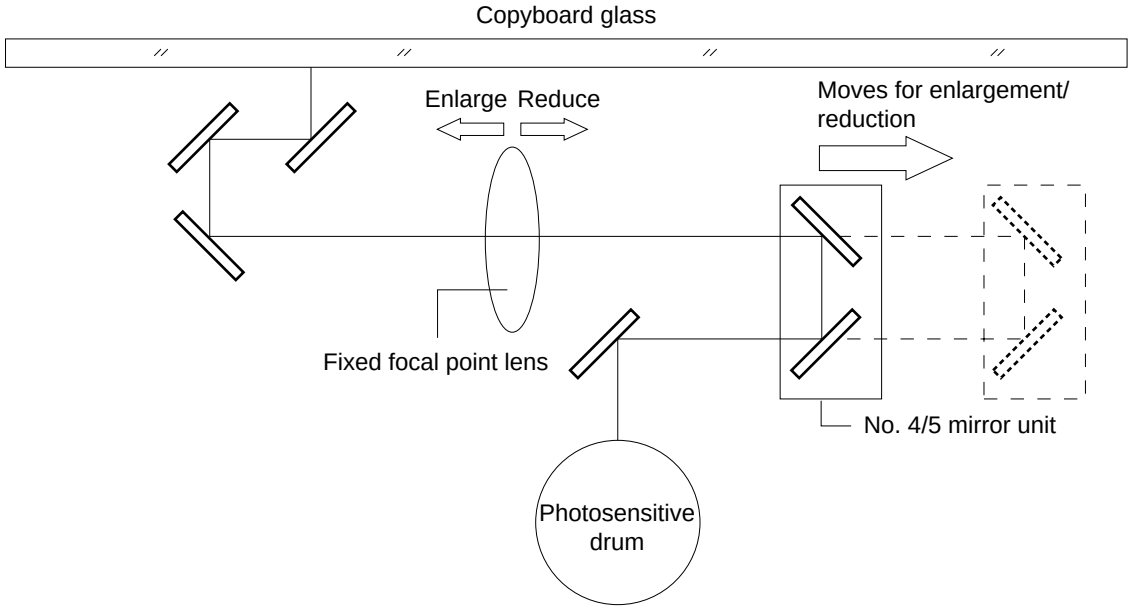


Figure 3-101

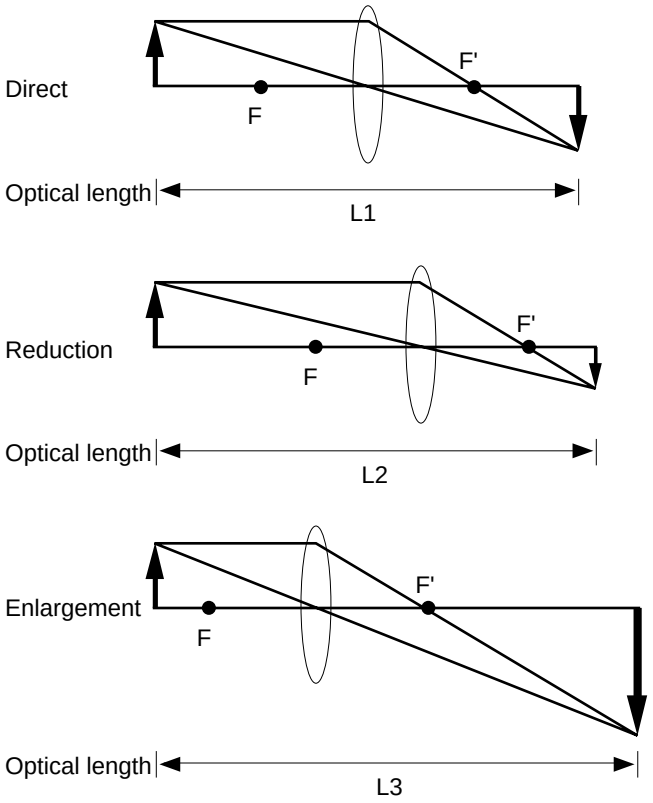
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

B. Varying the Reproduction Ratio

The reproduction ratio in the drum axial direction (main scanning direction) is varied by the lens drive system, and that in the drum peripheral direction (sub scanning direction) is changed by the scanner drive system.

In the lens drive system, the positions of the fixed focal point lens and the No. 4/5 mirror are changed to vary the reproduction ratio.

In the scanner system, the relative speed of the No. 1 mirror mount is made higher (for reduction) or lower (for enlargement) than the drum peripheral speed.



Optical length: L1 < L2, L1 < L3

Figure 3-102

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

C. Lens Drive System

1. Outline

The lens drive system is driven by the scanner/lens drive motor (M2). When the lens solenoid (SL3) turns on, the switching gear is pushed in the direction of ⇨. In this condition, when the scanner/lens drive motor rotates in reverse direction (↷), the lens unit will move in the direction of reduction (➡) by the work of the gear and the lens cable.

At the same time, the No. 4/5 mirror unit operates according to the distance over which the lens unit is moved by the work of the gear and the cam, thereby varying the optical length.

At this time, the blanking lamp also moves in conjunction with the lens to blank out the appropriate front/rear widths to suit the selected reduction ratio.

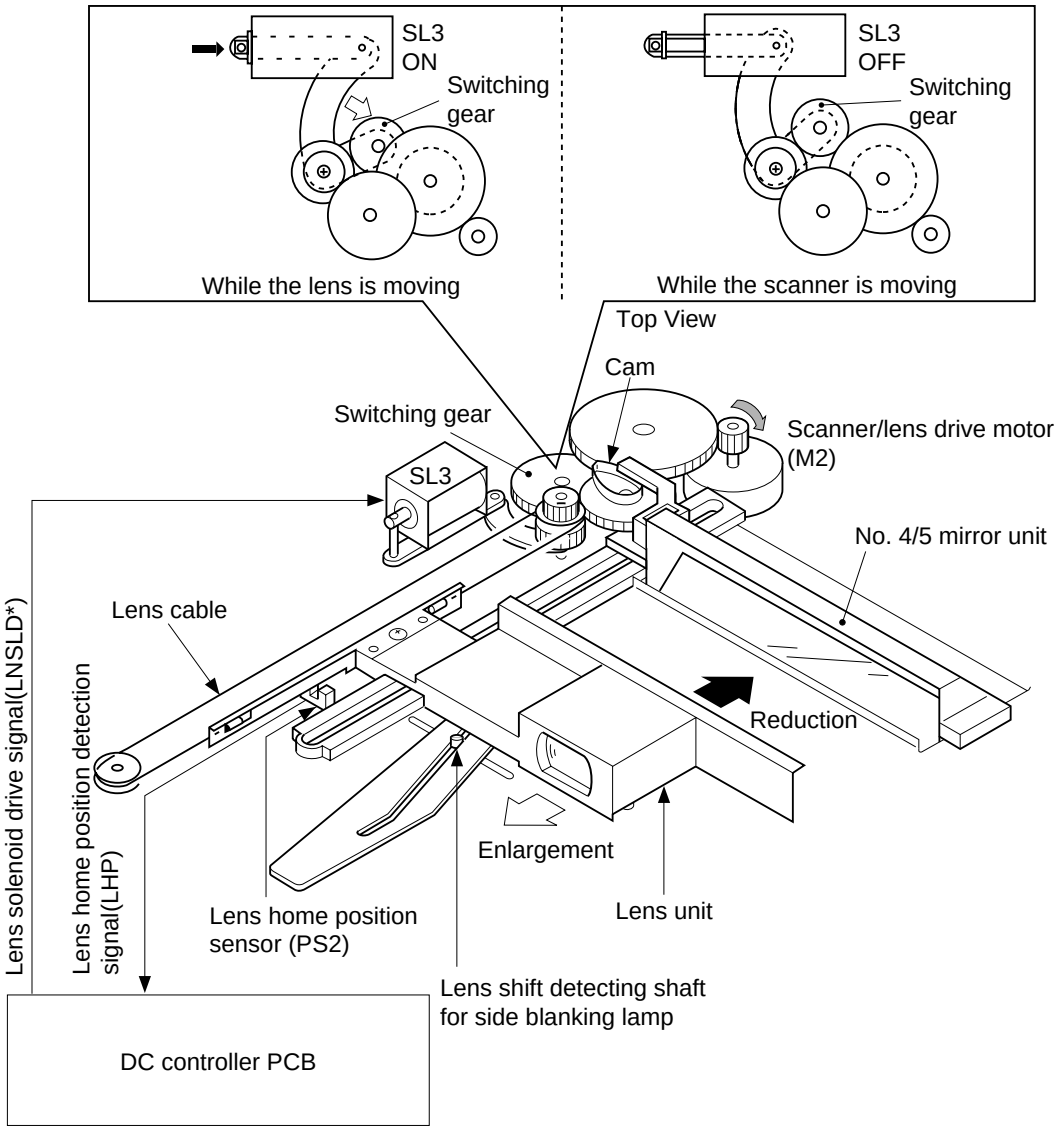


Figure 3-103

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

D. Scanner Drive System

1. Outline

The scanner is driven by the scanner/lens drive motor (M2), whose direction of rotation changes to move the scanner forward or in reverse.

When moving the scanner forward, the speed of rotation of the motor varies according to the selected reproduction ratio on a continuous basis; when moving the scanner in reverse, on the other hand, its speed remains the same regardless of the selected reproduction ratio in normal copying (312mm/sec, about 3.3 as fast as when moving the scanner forward in Direct).

The distance over which the scanner is moved varies according to the length of copy paper and the selected reproduction ratio.

The scanner/lens drive motor dives the lens drive system as well as the scanner.

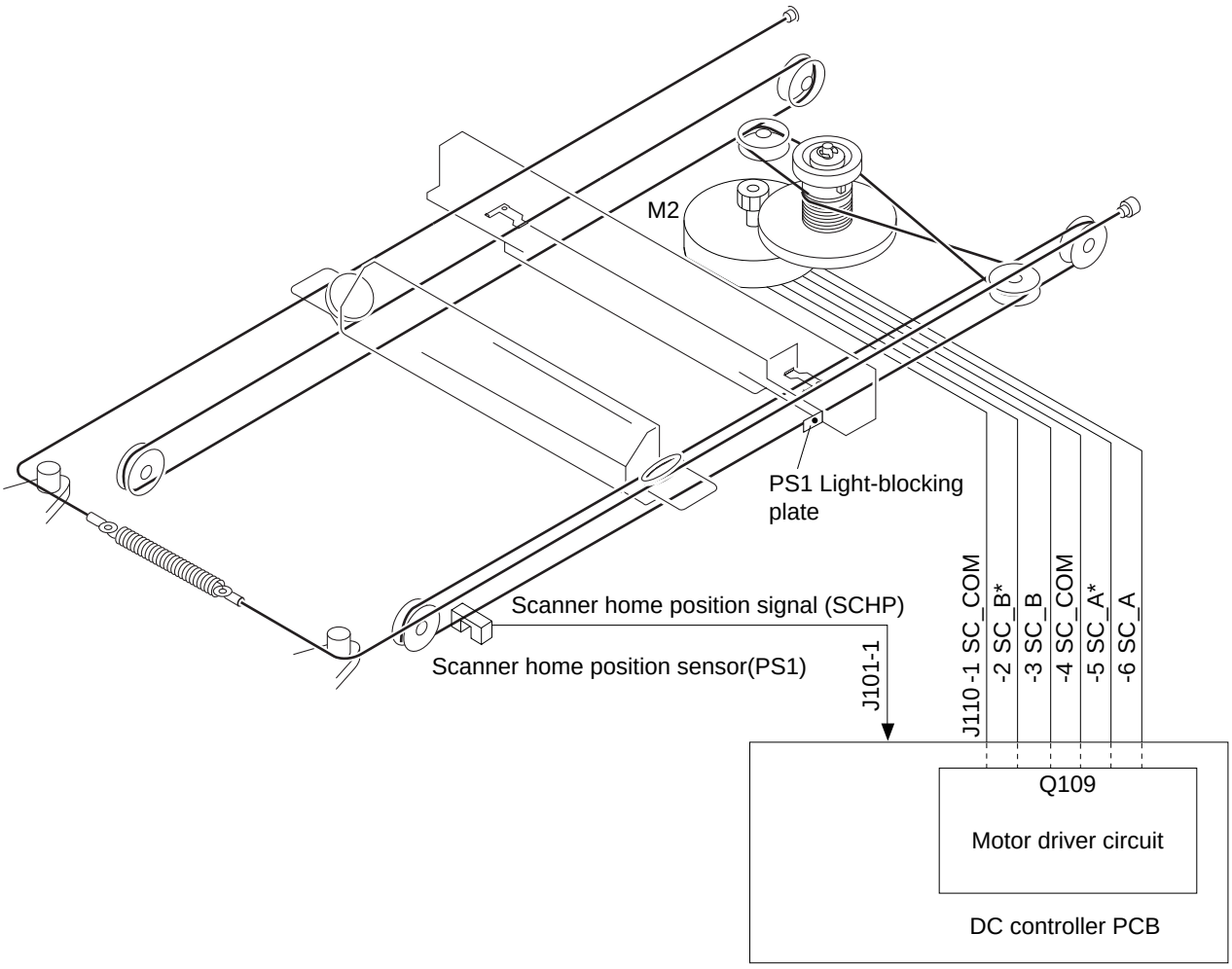


Figure 3-104

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Relationship between Scanner Sensor and Signal

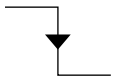
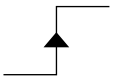
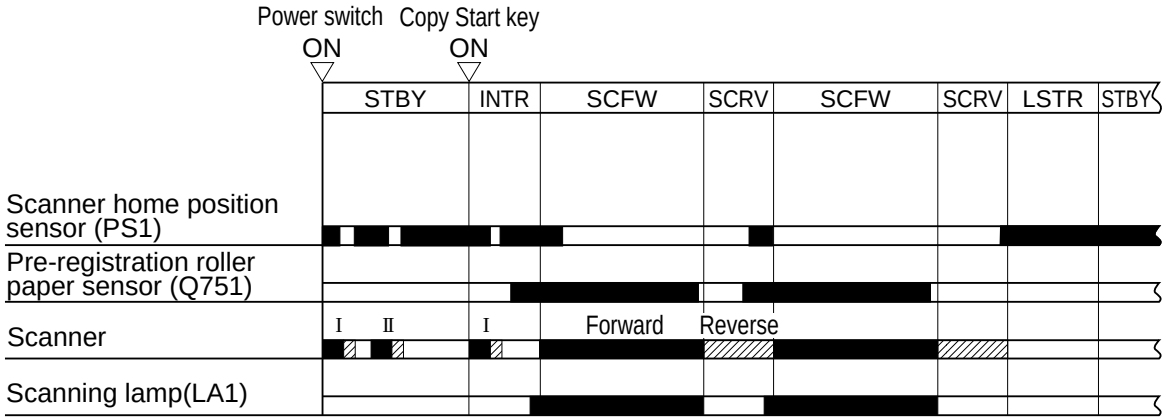
Scanner sensor	Signal	Scanner		Description
		Forward	Reverse	
PS1(scanner home position sensor)	SCHP			• Provides a means of reference for determining forward movement distance.
				• Stops the scanner moving in reverse in 0.1 sec.

Table 3-102

3. Basic Sequence of Operations (scanner)



I: Scanner home position detection
II: Lens home position detection

Figure 3-105

The microprocessor on the DC controller PCB controls the forward movement distance of the scanner with reference to the falling edge of the scanner home position signal. The forward movement distance of the scanner varies according to the length of copy paper and reproduction ratio. If the ratio is less than 130%, the scanner is moved forward as if for A4 (297 mm); if it is 130% or more, the scanner is moved forward as if for LTR (279 mm).

*For descriptions on how length is detected, see p. 5-7.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

4. Controlling the Copying Speed

The machine uses a halogen lamp for scanning, and the heat of the lamp increases the temperature of the copyboard.

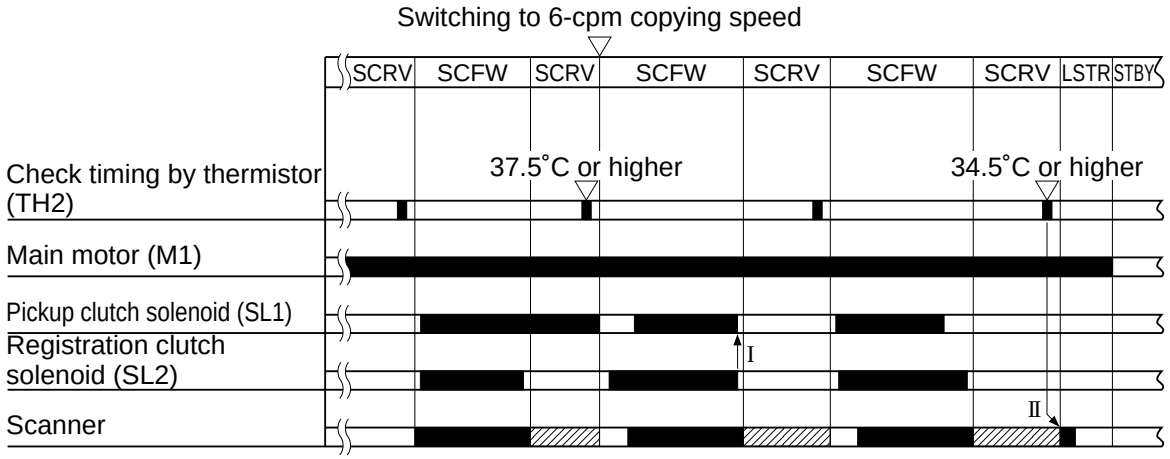
To prevent possible overheating of the copyboard glass, the temperature of the scanner is monitored by a thermistor (TH2); if its reading reaches 37.5°C or higher, the copying speed is reduced to 6 cpm.

If this mechanism turns on during continuous copying, it remains on until the end of the copying job.

At the end of copying, if the reading of the thermistor is 34.5°C or higher, the No. 1 mirror mount is moved forward 105 mm from the home position and stopped, thereby lowering the temperature of the copyboard fast.

Reference:

While the copying speed is controlled to 6 cpm, the speed of the reverse movement of the scanner is reduced to prevent overheating of the copyboard glass. (about 75 mm/sec)



I: When the registration clutch solenoid (SL2) is off, the pickup clutch solenoid is turned off to prevent overheating of the pickup clutch solenoid (SL1).

II: By the time the Copy Start key is pressed or the power switch is turned off and then on again next time, the scanner is moved to and stopped at 105 mm forward from the home position.

Figure 3-106

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5. Controlling the Scanner/Lens Drive Motor

a. Outline

The scanner/lens drive motor (M2) is a 4-phase stepping motor. The timing at which the drive power (SC-COM) and pulses (SC-A, SCA*, SC-B, SC-B*) are generated is controlled to turn on/off the scanner/lens drive motor (M2) or to switch the direction of its rotation.

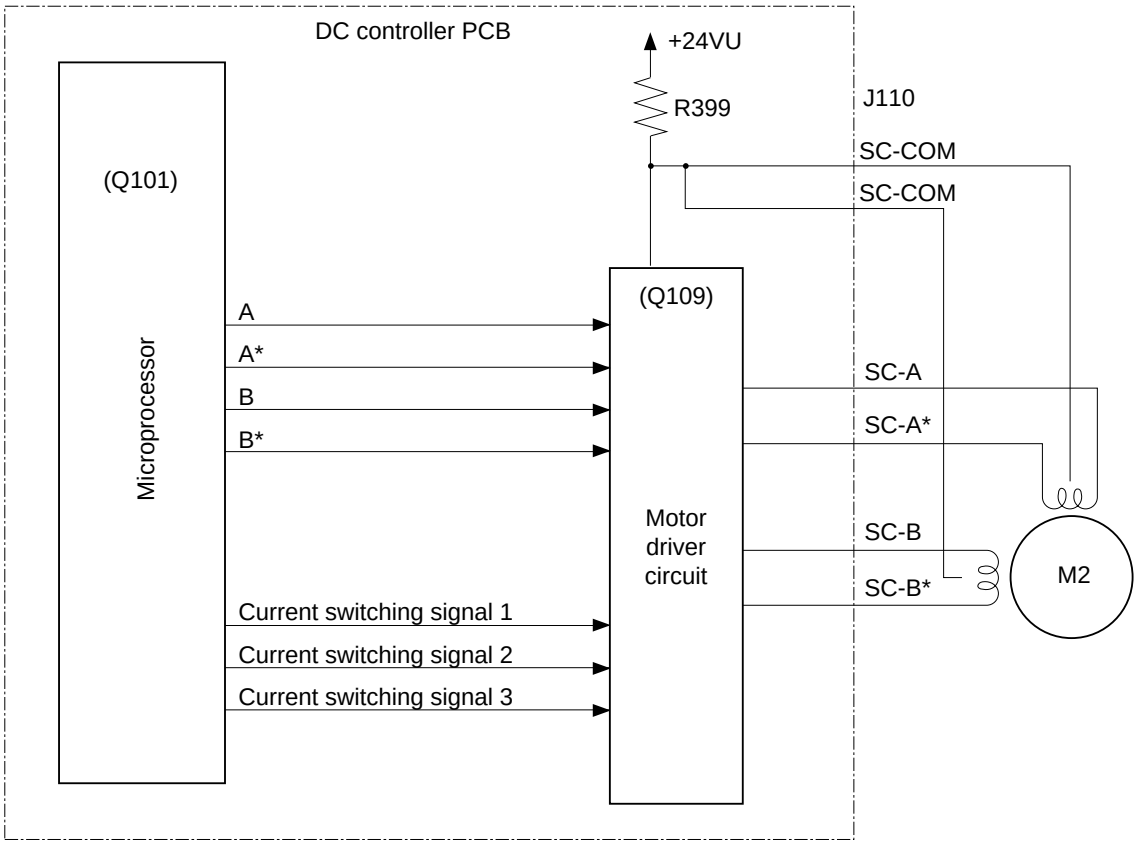


Figure 3-107

b. Operations

The microprocessor (Q101) mounted on the DC controller PCB receives instructions from the control panel PCB copying mode settings (e.g., reproduction ratio). In response, it applies drive pulses to the scanner/lens drive motor (M2) through the motor driver circuit.

The scanner motor is a 4-phase stepping motor, and changes the direction and speed of its rotation according to the sequence and frequency of drive pulses (SC-A*through SC-B*).

The motor drive voltage is switched on and off by pulse signals (A through B*) generated by the microprocessor (Q101). Any of these pulse signals is generated when the motor is in operation, while no pulse signal is generated when the motor is at rest.

The current switching signals from 1 to 3 generated by the microprocessor (Q101) are used to control the current flowing to the motor so that it varies according to the state of the scanner and the lens.

	Starting the lens	Moving the lens	Reversing the scanner	Forwarding the scanner
Current switching signal 1	0	0	0	1
Current switching signal 2	0	0	1	1
Current switching signal 3	0	1	1	1

c. Detecting Overcurrent for the Scanner/Lens Drive Motor

If overcurrent flows to the scanner/lens drive motor for some reason, the fuse (R339) on the DC controller PCB will blow to cut the power to the motor.

Caution:

The fuse (R339) will not recover once it has blown.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

II. EXPOSURE SYSTEM

A. Controlling the Scanning Lamp

1. Outline

Figure 3-201 shows the circuit used to control the scanning lamp, and has the following functions:

- Turning on/off the scanning lamp.
- Controlling the intensity of the scanning lamp.
- Monitoring the state (on/off) of the scanning lamp.

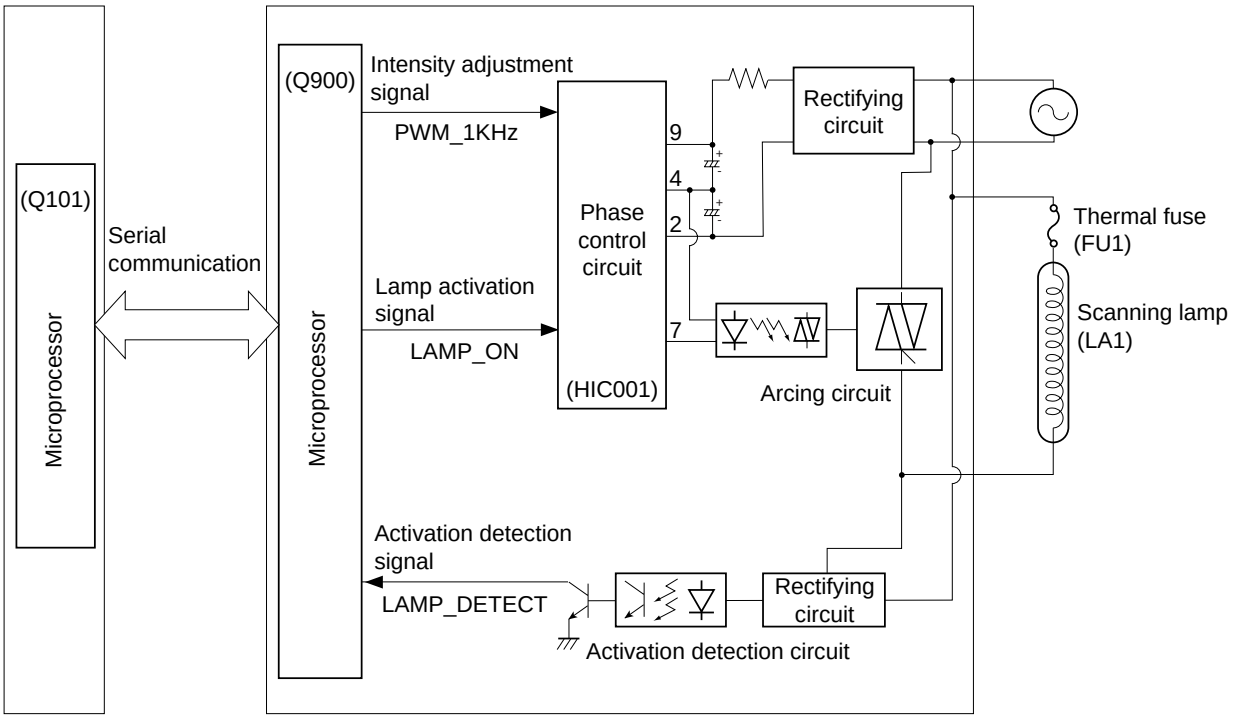


Figure 3-201

2. Operations

a. Turning On/Off the Scanning Lamp

The DC controller PCB and the composite power supply exchange signals in serial communication to control the scanning lamp. According to the scanner lamp active voltage signal, the microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB controls the intensity adjustment signal (PWM_1KHz) and the lamp activation signal (LAMP_ON) to turn on/off the scanning lamp (LA1).

When LAMP_ON is '0',

↳The phase control circuit turns on.

↳The arcing circuit turns on.

↳The scanning lamp turns on.

When LAMP_ON is '1',

↳The phase control circuit turns off.

↳The arcing circuit turns off.

↳The scanning lamp turns off.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

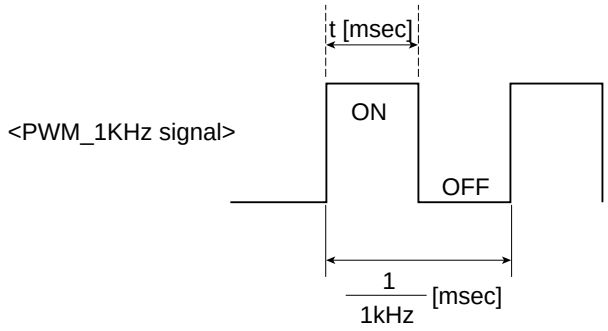
b. Controlling the Intensity of the Scanning Lamp

The intensity of the lamp is controlled by the scanning lamp active voltage signal sent by the DC controller PCB in serial.

The microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB sends the intensity adjustment signal (PWM_1KHz) in response to the scanning lamp active voltage signal. In turn, the phase control circuit (HIC001) controls the voltage supplied to the scanning lamp.

The PWM_1KHz signal varies according to settings made in service mode. In relation to the settings, the composite power supply PCB executes phase control so that variation will be between 10% and 90% in terms of pulse duty ratios and between 50.5 and 80 V for the 120V model (between 85.7 and 145.8 V for the 220/240V model) in terms of actual value.

The intensity during AE exposure remains a specific level, which is 56 V for the 120 V model (108.5 V for the 220/240V model) in terms of actual values.



$$\text{Pulse duty} = t / \frac{1}{1k} \times 100\ [\%]$$

Figure 3-202

Related Service Mode	
38 (LAMP_ADJ)	Use it to adjust the intensity of the scanning lamp.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

c. Monitoring the Activation of the Scanning Lamp

The activation detection signal (LAMP_DETECT) is sent to the microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB as long as the scanning lamp remains on.

The composite power supply PCB sends the lamp activation signal to the DC controller PCB in serial by way of monitoring the activation of the scanning lamp (LA1).

Related Error Code

E220
• The lamp activation detection signal is not detected for 1 sec or more although the scanning lamp activation signal has been sent. • The lamp activation detection signal has been detected for 1 sec or more although the scanning lamp activation signal is not sent.

If an error has been detected, the power switch will be turned off after indicating an error code for 2 sec.

d. Scanning Lamp Intensity Auto Correction Control (ALVC control)

The machine automatically corrects the activation voltage of the scanning lamp to make up for the change in copy image quality caused by deterioration/wear of the photosensitive drum.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

III. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY

As needed, disassemble/assemble the machine with the following in mind:

1. ⚠ Before starting the work, turn off the power switch and disconnect the power plug for safety.
2. Unless otherwise instructed, assemble the parts by reversing the steps used to disassemble it.
3. Identify the screws by type (length, diameter) and location.
4. Use the washers where necessary. (The screws used to mount the grounding wire and Varistors come with a washer to ensure electrical continuity.)
5. As necessary, cut the harness band.
6. As a rule, do not operate the machine with any of its part removed.
7. A few of the screws used are special screws (with wider thread intervals). Do not use any screws indiscriminately.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

A. Scanner Drive Assembly

1. Removing the Scanner/Lens Drive Motor

1) Remove the front lower cover.
(See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.A.2. “Removing the Front Lower Cover.”)
2) Remove the developing assembly.
(See Chapter 4.Ⅱ.D.2. “Removing the Developing assembly.”)
3) Remove the copyboard glass.
(See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.C.1. “Removing the Copyboard Glass.”)
4) Remove the four screws [1], and detach the lens cover [2].

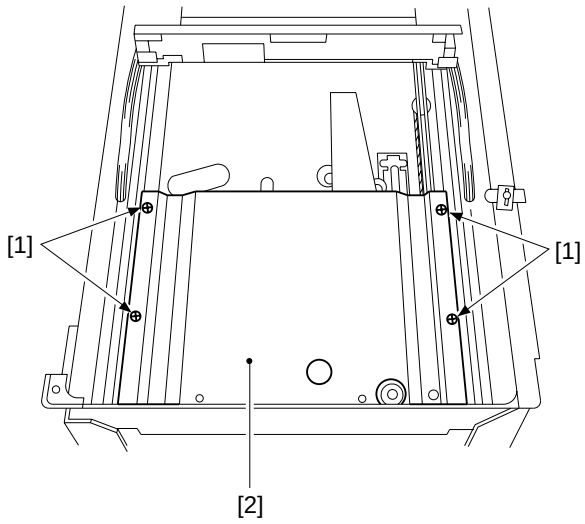


Figure 3-301

5) Disconnect the connector (J110) [3] from the DC controller PCB.

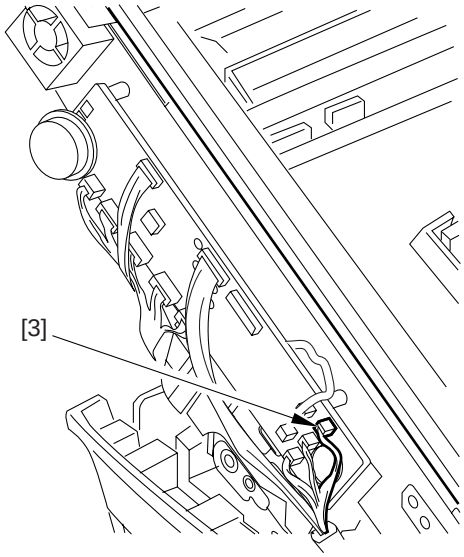


Figure 3-302

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

6) Open the machine's top unit farther, and hold it in position using the handle (about 30 mm in diameter) of a screwdriver.

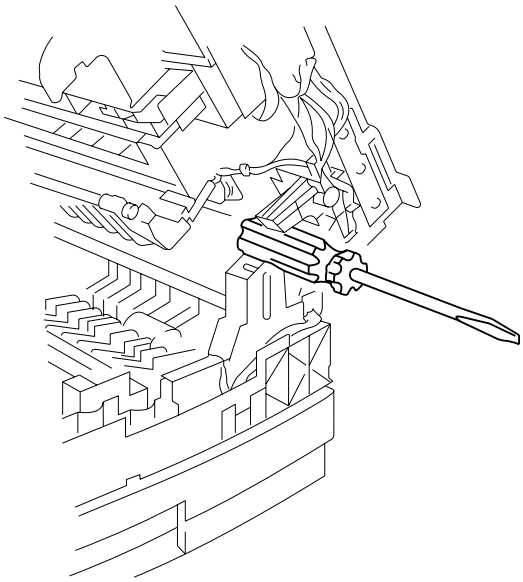


Figure 3-303

7) Remove the two fixing screws [4] from the scanner/lens drive motor [5].

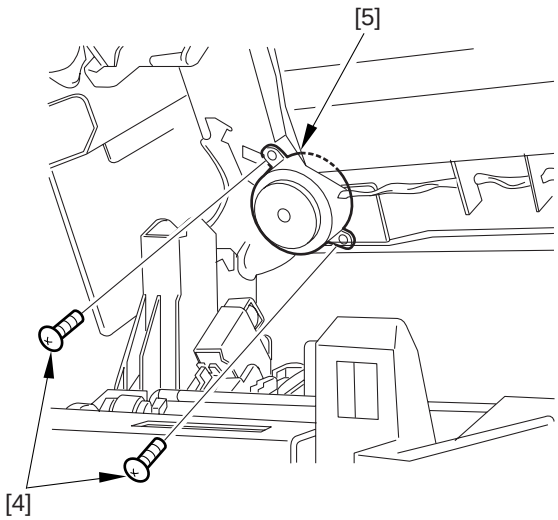


Figure 3-304

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

8) Free the top unit (by removing the screw-driver), and close the top unit.
9) Remove the E-ring [6]; then, lift the cable drive pulley [7] slightly, and detach the scanner/lens drive motor [5].

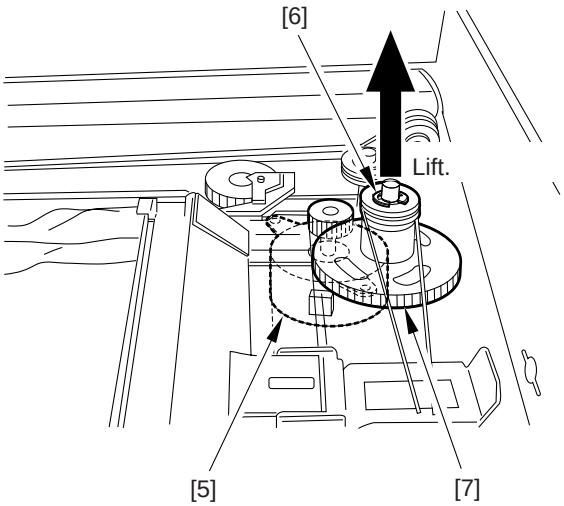


Figure 3-305

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Outline of the Scanner Drive Cable

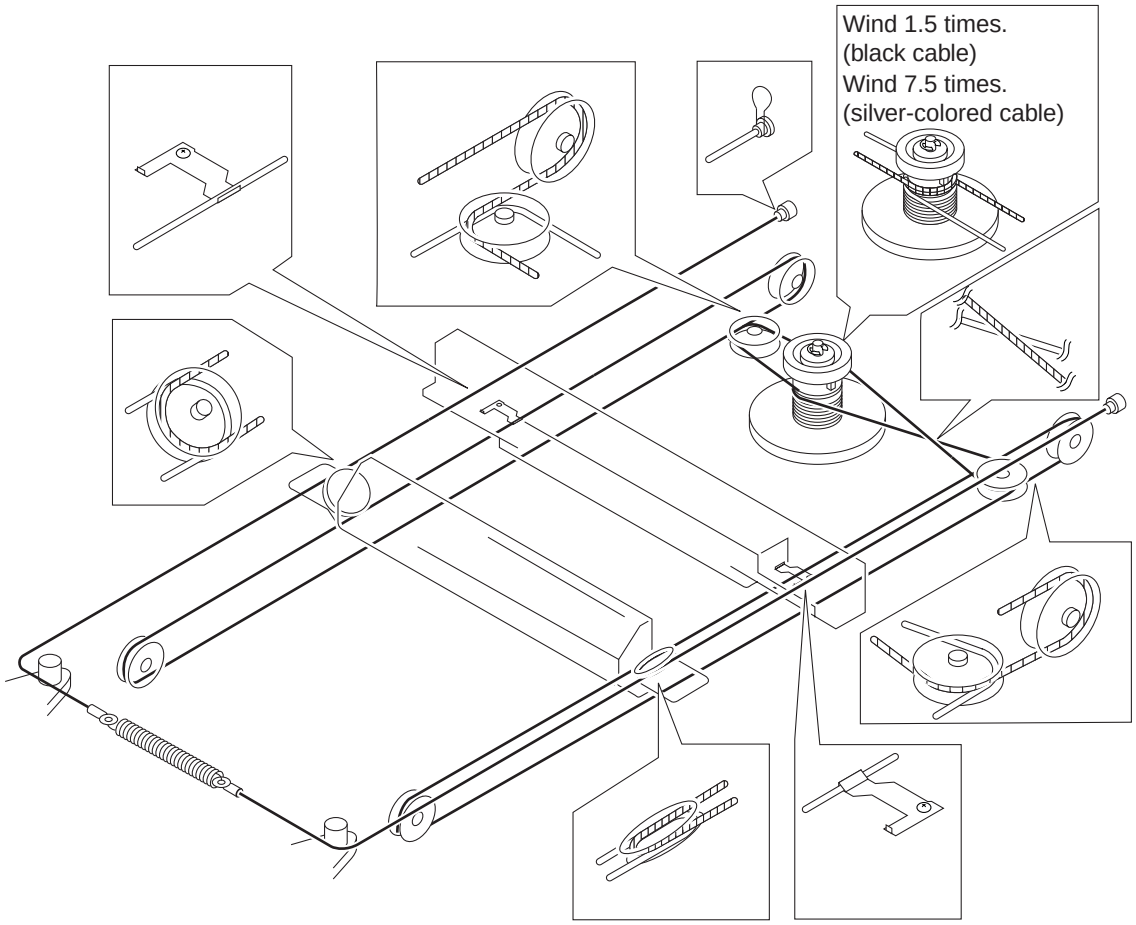


Figure 3-306

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

3. Routing the Scanner Drive Cable

a. Before Starting the Work

Prepare the following:

- Mirror positioning tool
- Cable clip
- Adhesive tape

1) Set the mirror positioning tool as shown.

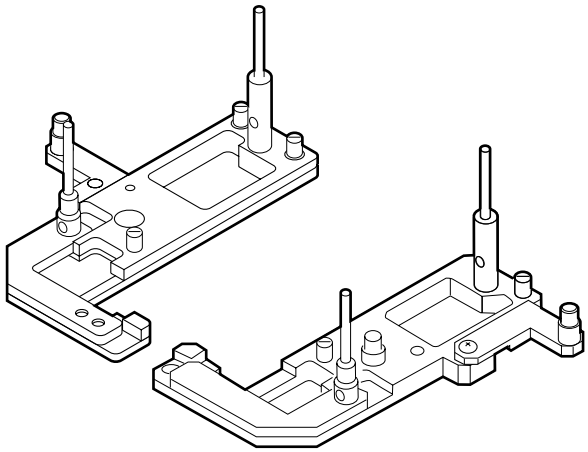


Figure 3-307

2) Prepare about five strips of adhesive tape (each one about 20 × 50 mm).
3) Remove the copyboard glass. (See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.C.1. “Removing the Copyboard Glass.”)
4) Disconnect the connectors (J101, J131) [1] from the DC controller PCB.

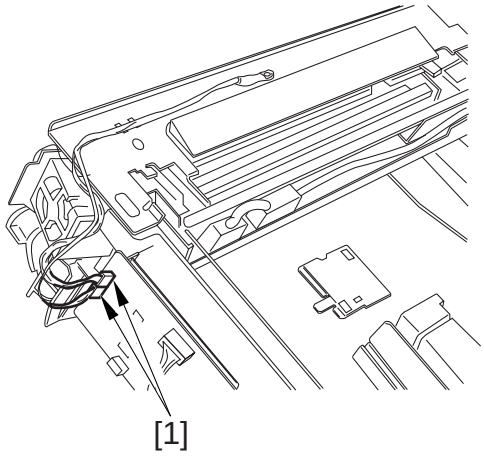


Figure 3-308

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5) If the machine is equipped with an ADF, free the hook [2], and disconnect the two relay connectors [3] from the left upper stay [4].

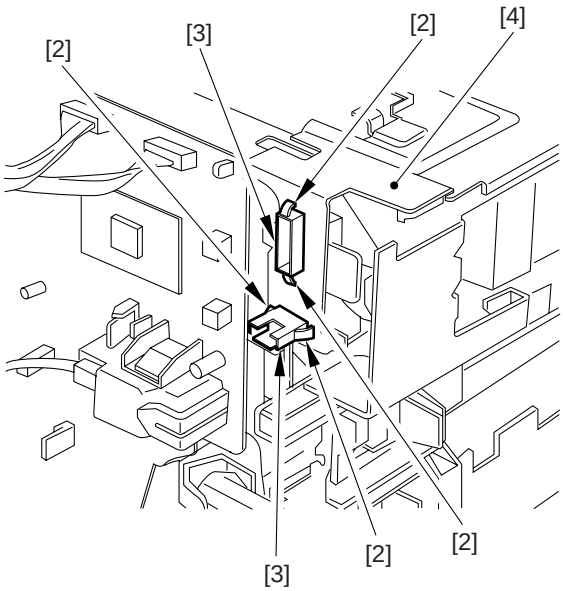


Figure 3-309

6) Remove the three screws [5], and detach the left upper stay [4].

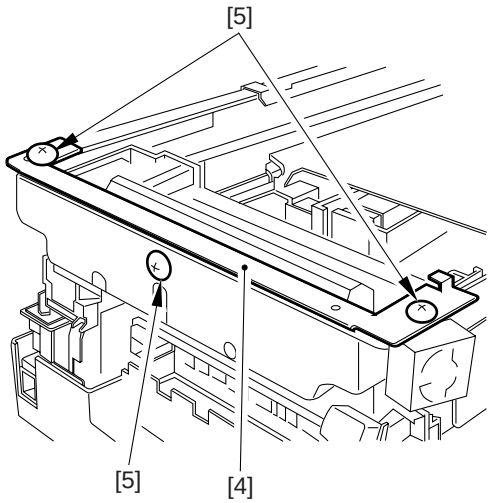


Figure 3-310

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

7) Remove the four screws [6], and detach the lens cover [7].

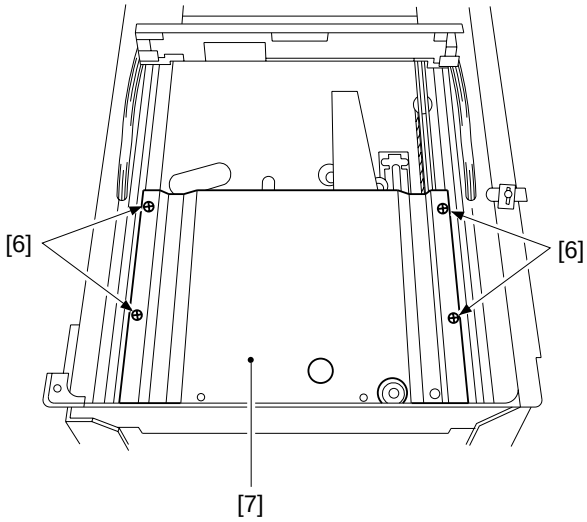


Figure 3-311

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

b. Routing the Reversing Cable

1) Wind the reversing cables (silver-colored) [2] on the cable drive pulley [1] 7.5 times with the longer end on top; then, secure it in position with a cable clip [3].

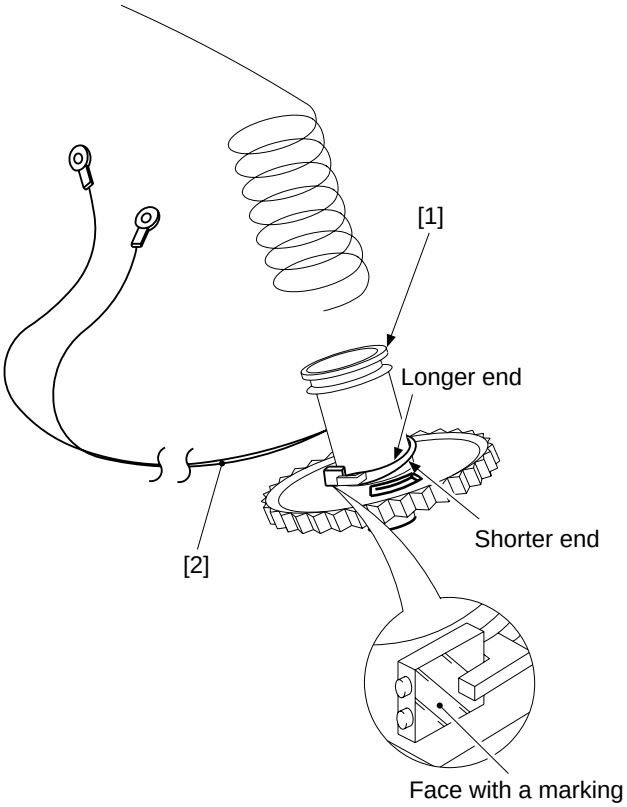


Figure 3-312

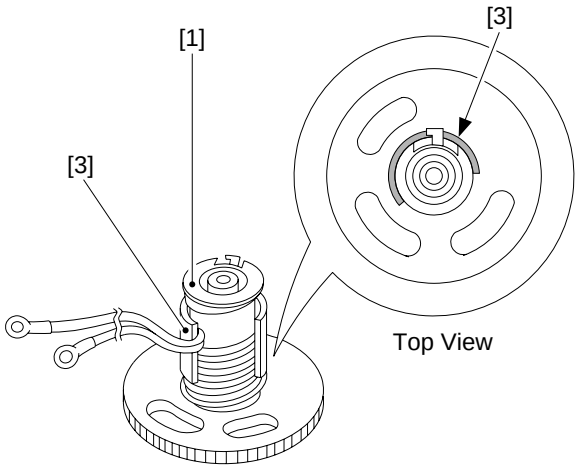


Figure 3-313

2) Put the cable drive pulley [1] into the shaft [4], and secure it in position with an E-ring [5].
When putting the cable drive pulley into the shaft, be sure that the hook is at the front.

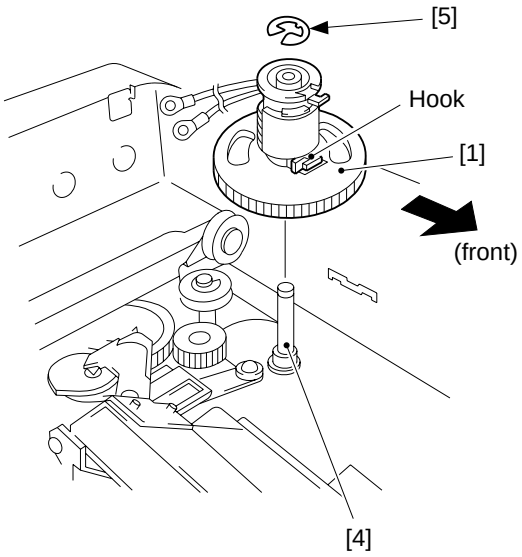


Figure 3-314

3) Hook the shorter end [6] on the pulley [7].

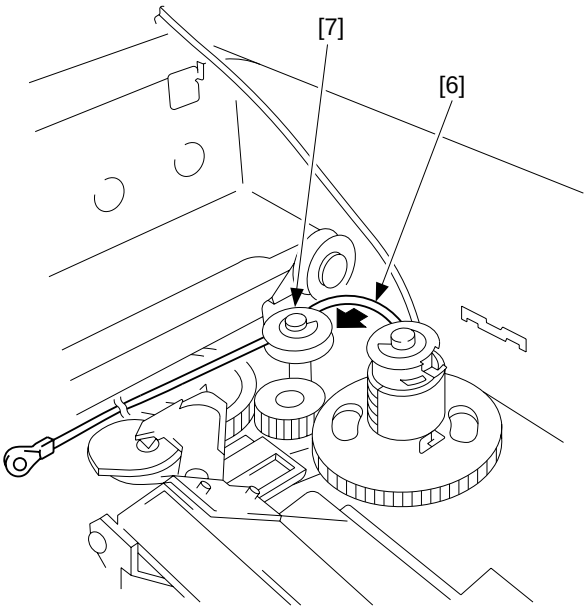


Figure 3-315

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4) Lead the shorter end [6] under the No. 1 mirror mount [8] and the No. 2/3 mirror mount [9]; then, hook it on the left rear pulley [10] and the pulley [11] of the No. 2/3 mirror mount.

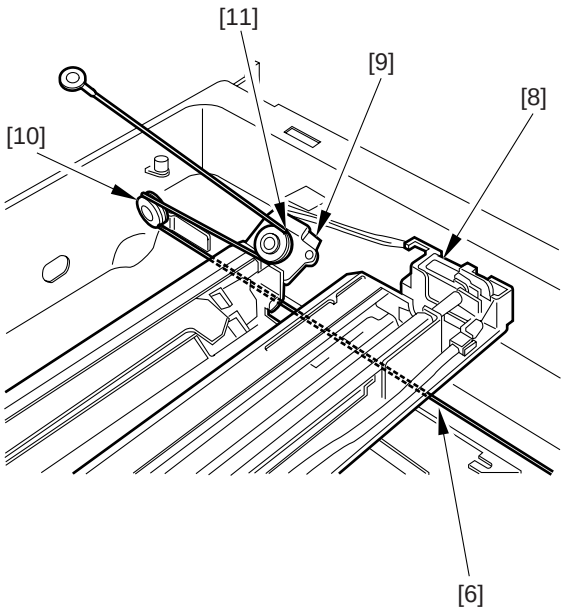


Figure 3-316

5) After fitting the shorter end [6] on the cable hook [12], secure its end with adhesive tape [13].
Be sure that the secured end of the cable is found where the hole in the left side plate and the tip of the cable matches.

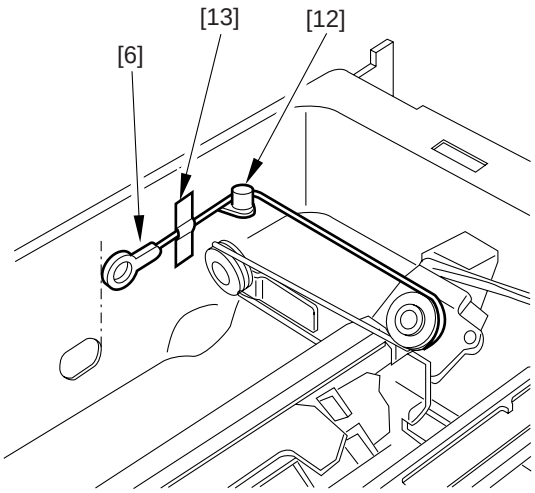


Figure 3-317

6) Lead the longer end [14] along the cable drive pulley, and hook it on the pulley [15] on the right front side.

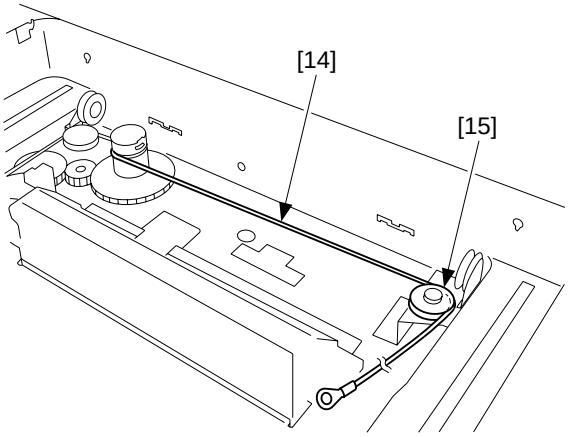


Figure 3-318

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

7) Lead the longer end [14] under the No. 1 mirror mount [8] and the No. 2/3 mirror mount [9]; then, hook it on the pulley [16] on the left front side and the pulley [17] of the No. 2/3 mirror mount.

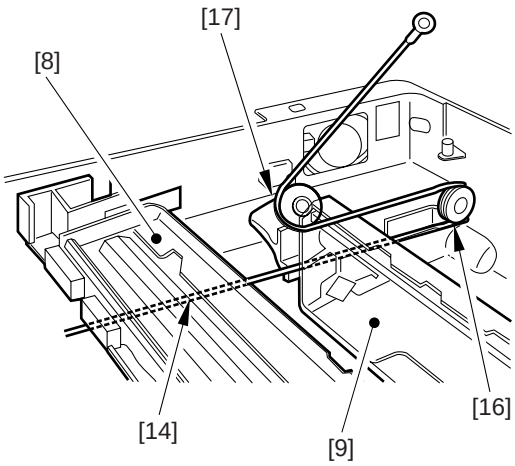


Figure 3-319

8) Hook the longer end [14] on the cable hook [18]; then, secure its end to the left side with adhesive tape [19].
Be sure that the secured end of the cable is found where the hole in the left side plate and the tip of the cable matches.

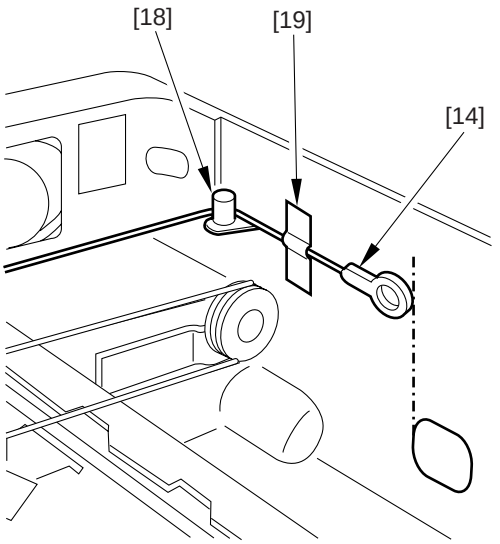


Figure 3-320

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

c. Routing the Forwarding Cable

1) Fit the longer end forwarding cable (black) [2] on the top hook of the cable drive pulley [1], and wind it 1.5 times. Then, secure the shorter end [3] as shown with adhesive tape [4].

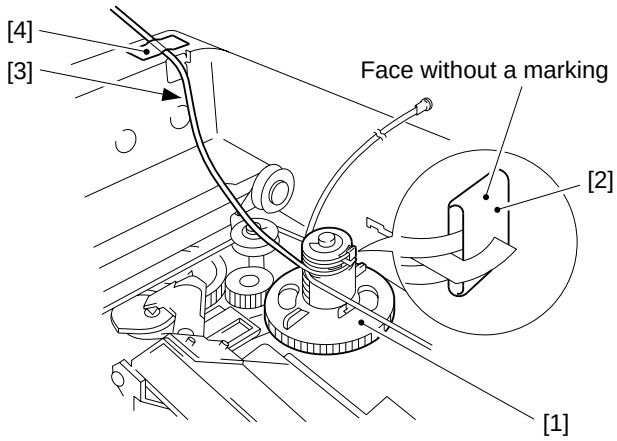


Figure 3-321

2) Lead the longer end [5] along the cable drive pulley [1] as shown, and hook it on the pulley [6] on the right front side.

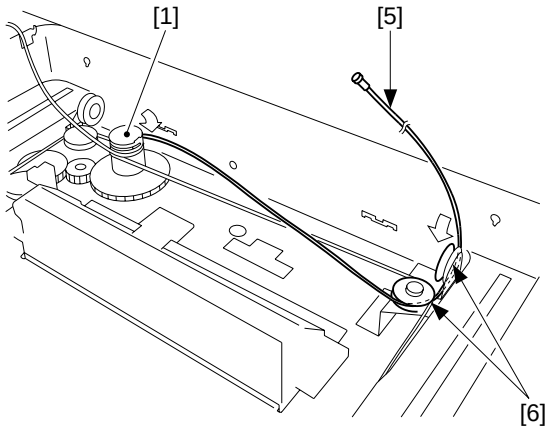


Figure 3-322

3) Lead the longer end [5] under the No. 1 mirror mount [7]; then, hook it on the pulley [8] of the No. 2/3 mirror mount, and lead it between the No. 1 mirror mount [7] and the scanning lamp [9].

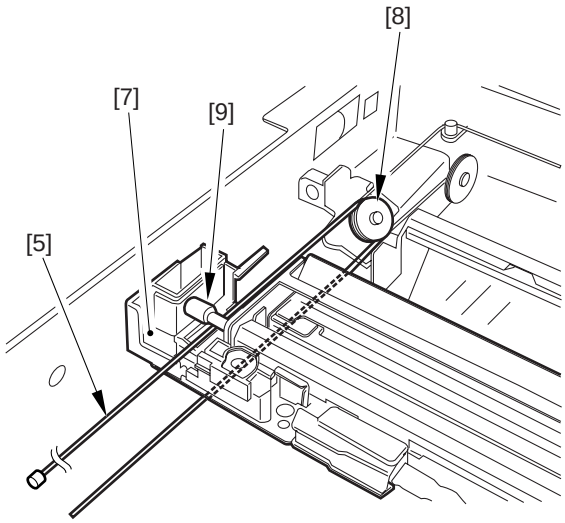


Figure 3-323

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

4) Hook the end of the longer end [5] on the hole [10] on the right side.

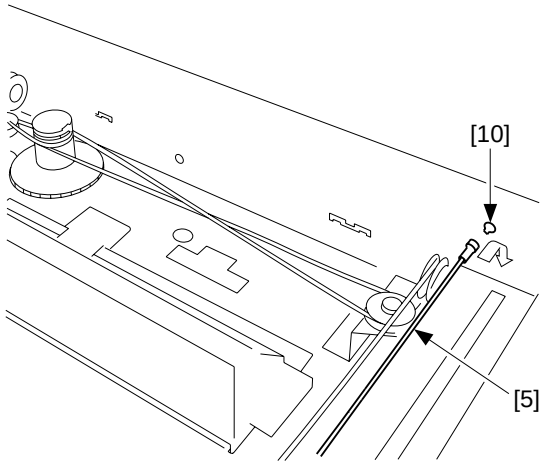


Figure 3-324

5) Free the shorter end [3], and hook it on the pulley [11] on the right rear side.

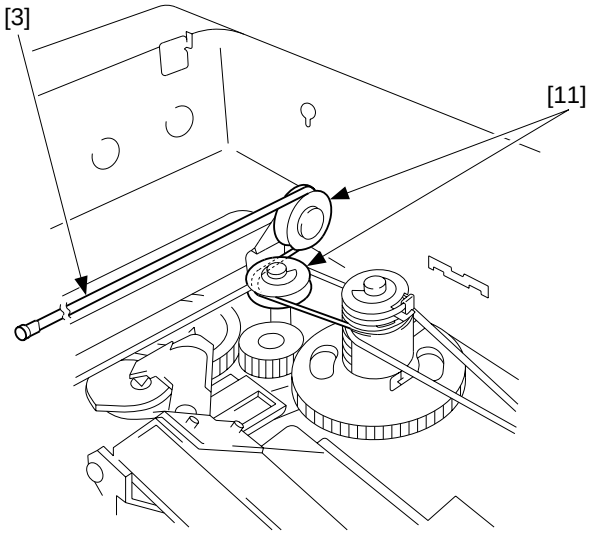


Figure 3-325

6) Lead the shorter end [3] under the No. 1 mirror mount [7], and hook it on the pulley [12] of the No. 2/3 mirror mount as shown; then, lead it between the No. 1 mirror mount [7] and the scanning lamp [9].

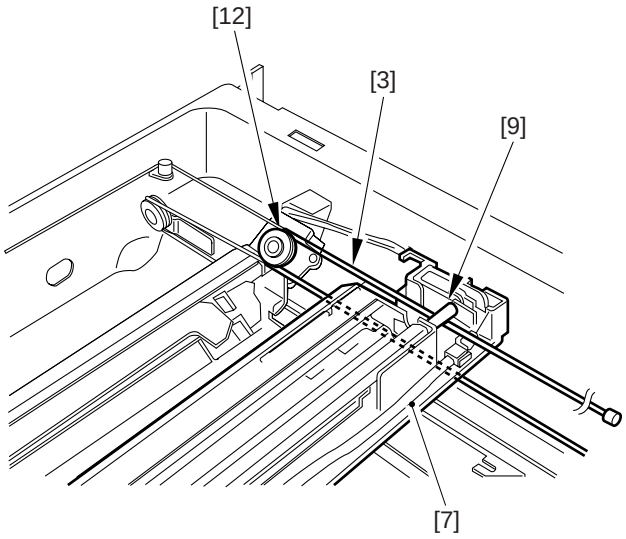


Figure 3-326

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

7) Hook the end of the shorter end [3] on the hole [13] on the right side.

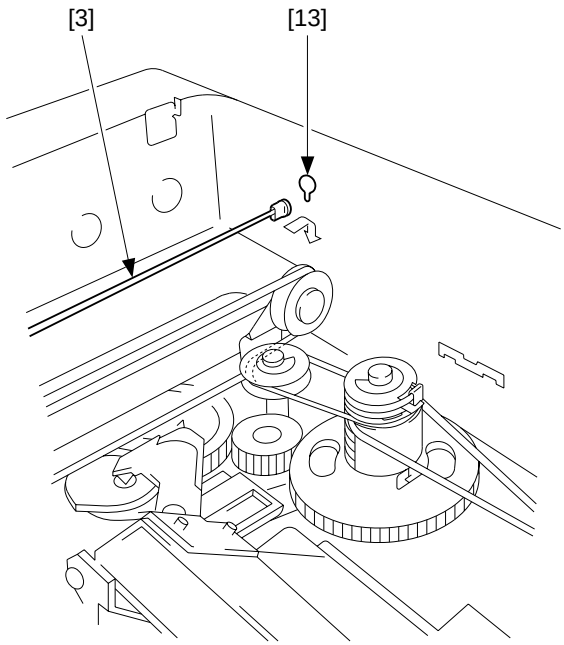


Figure 3-327

8) Free the shorter end [3] and the longer end [5] (reversing cable), and connect both with a spring [14]; then, fit the stopper [15].

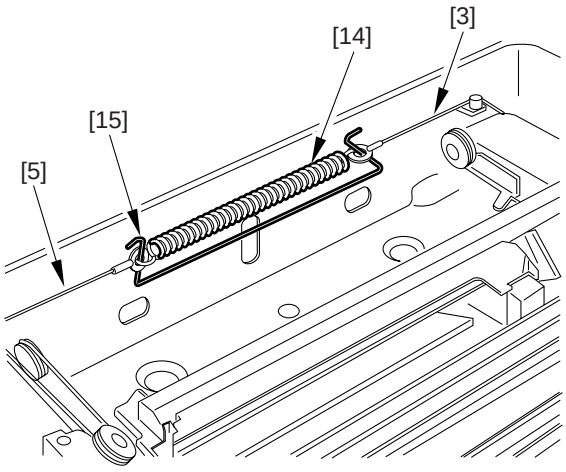


Figure 3-328

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

9) Detach the pulley clip [16] from the cable drive pulley [1].

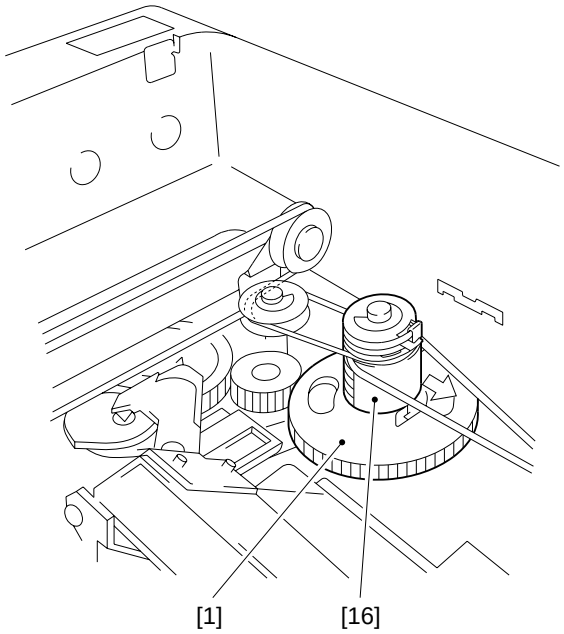


Figure 3-329

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

d. Positioning the No. 1 Mirror Mount

1) Fix the rear and the front of the No. 1 mirror mount [1] temporarily to the metal fixing [2] of the forwarding cable.

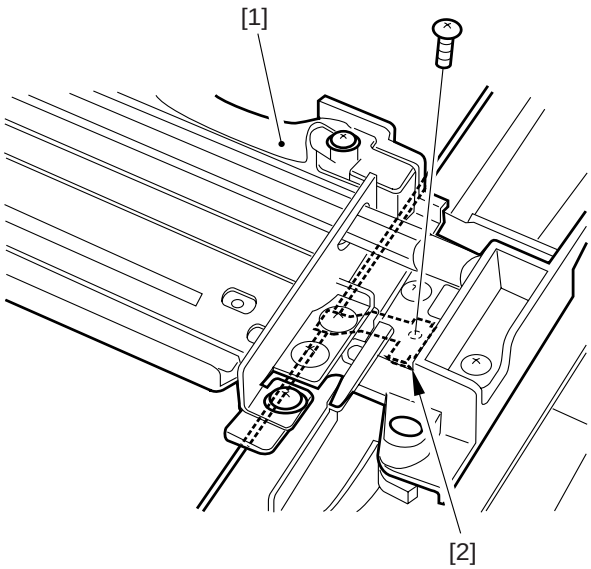


Figure 3-330 (front)

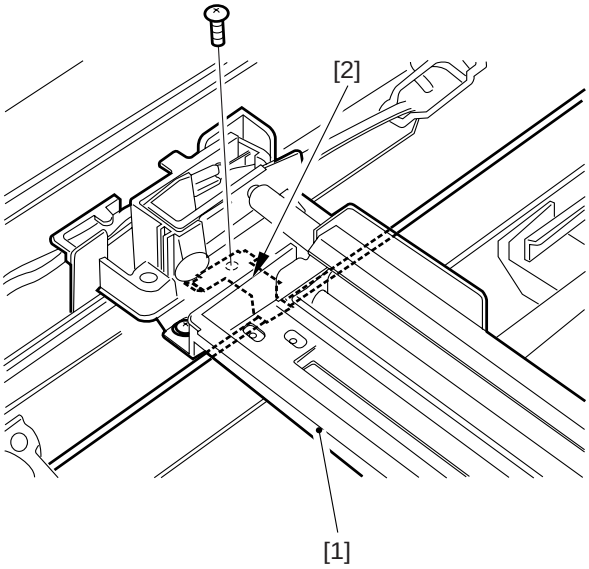


Figure 3-331 (rear)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

2) Turn the cable drive pulley [4] so that the three shafts [3] of the mirror positioning tool for rear and front is as shown.

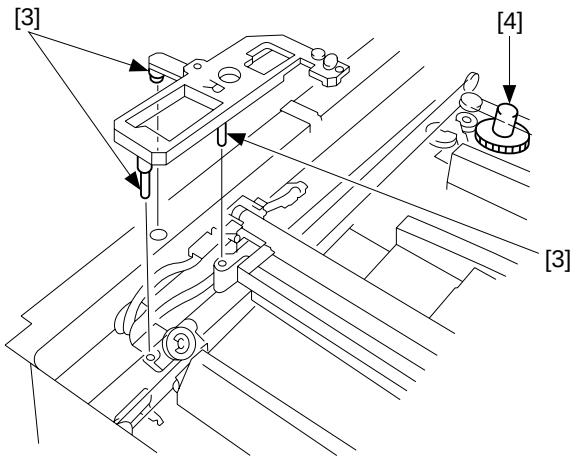


Figure 3-332 (rear)

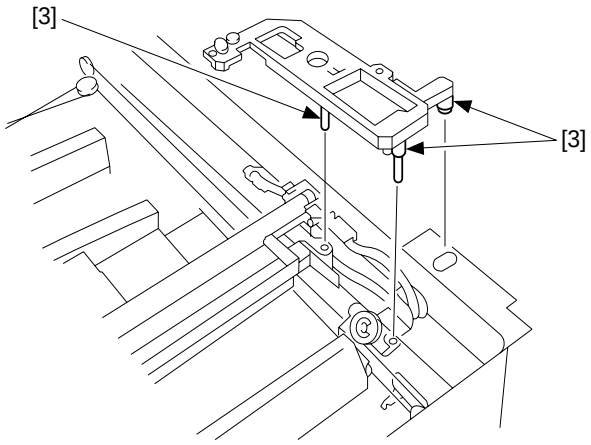


Figure 3-333 (front)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3) While keeping the condition of step 2), tighten the positioning screw on the rear and front of the No. 1 mirror mount [1].

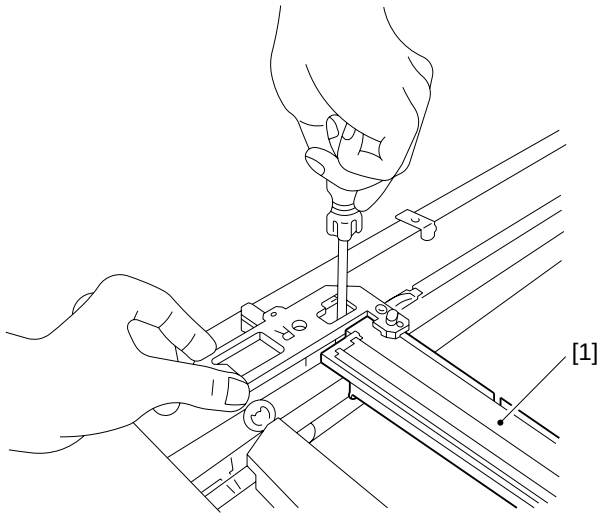


Figure 3-334 (rear)

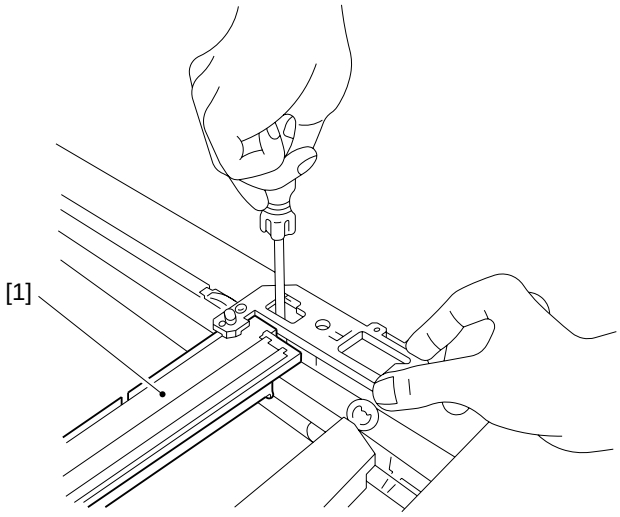


Figure 3-335 (front)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

B. Lens Drive Assembly

1. Removing the Lens Cable

1) Turn on the power; when the lens has moved to the Direct position, disconnect the power plug.
2) Remove the copyboard glass. (See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.C.1. “Removing the Copyboard Glass.”)
3) Remove the main drive assembly. (See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.D.2. “Removing the Main Drive Assembly.”)
4) Remove the four screws [1], and detach the lens cover [2].

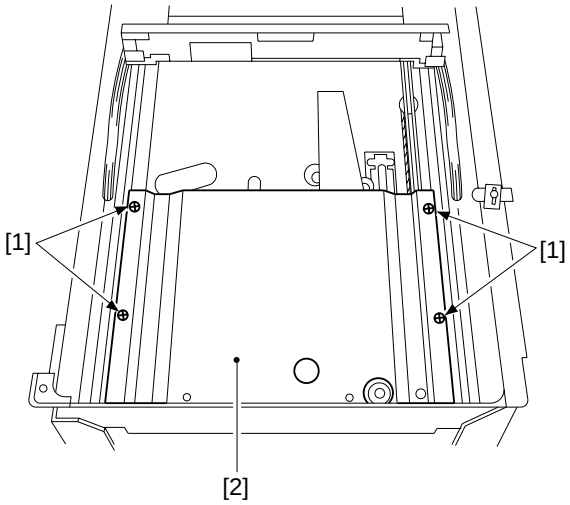


Figure 3-336

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5) Mark the position of the lens cable fixing plate [3] and the lens mount [4] with a scriber.

Caution:
When routing the lens cable, be sure to refer to the marking made with a scriber.

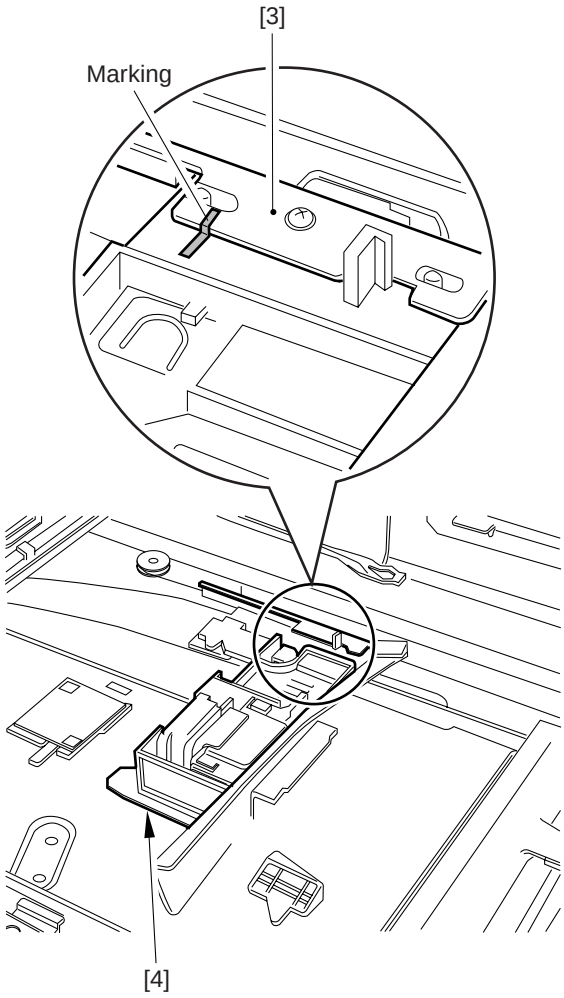


Figure 3-337

6) Disengage the lever [5] of the No. 4/5 mirror mount and the gear [6].

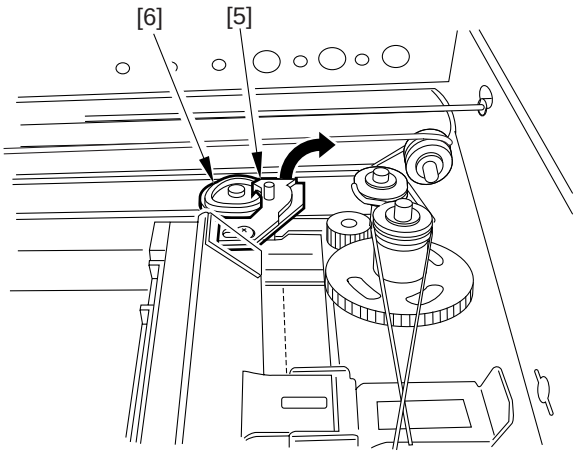


Figure 3-338

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

7) Remove the screw [7], and detach the cam gear [6] and the cable retainer [8].

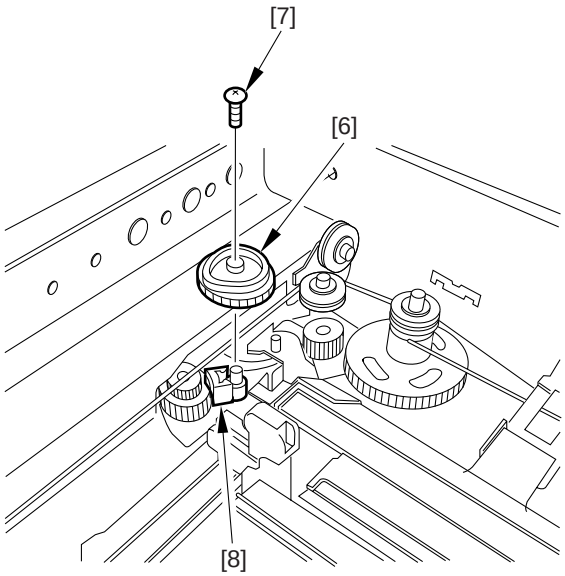


Figure 3-339

8) Holding the middle of the No. 1 mirror mount [9], move it to the center of the machine.

Caution:
Do not hold the reflecting plate.

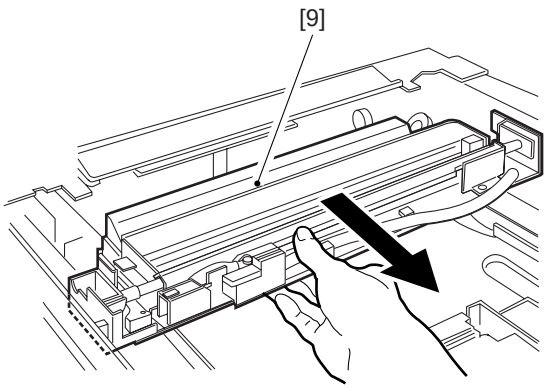


Figure 3-340

9) Remove the spring [10].

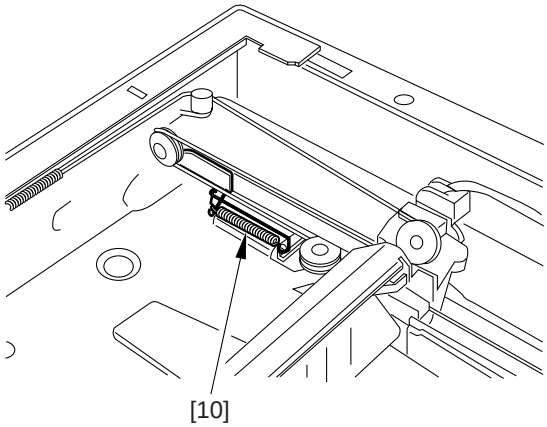


Figure 3-341

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

10) Remove the screw [11], and detach the lens cable fixing plate [12].

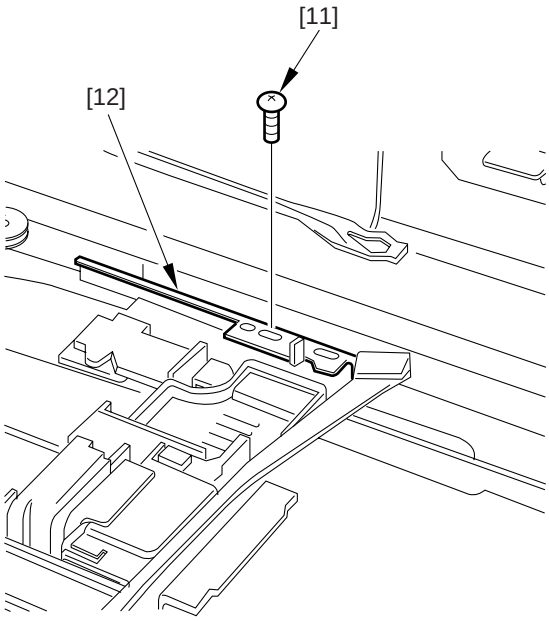


Figure 3-342

11) Free the lens cable [13] from the lens cable fixing plate [12]; then, detach the lens cable from the machine.

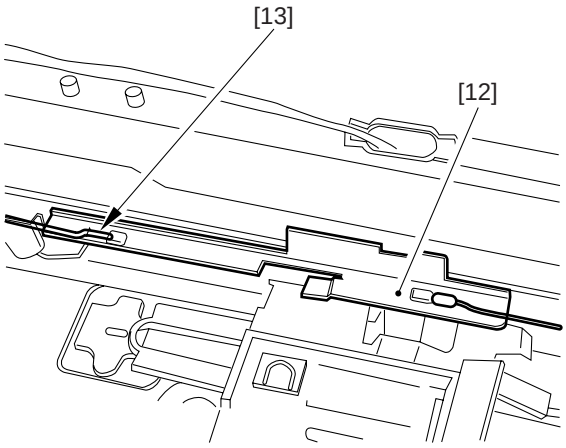


Figure 3-343

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

2. Routing the Lens Cable

1) After routing the lens cable, keep the lever [1] of the No. 4/5 mirror mount disengaged from the cam gear [2] (so that the lever will not come into contact when the cam gear rotates).

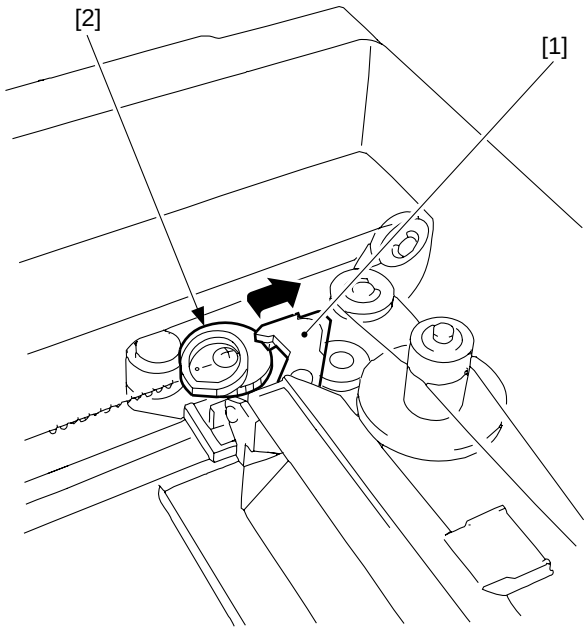


Figure 3-344

2) While keeping the condition in step 1), turn on the power; when the No. 1 mirror mount and the lens stopped moving, turn off the power.
   - The lens will move to the Direct position.
3) Check to make sure that the tip of the lever [1] of the No. 4/5 mirror mount and the marking [3] on the top face of the cam gear [2] match; then, engage the lever [1] and the cam gear [2].

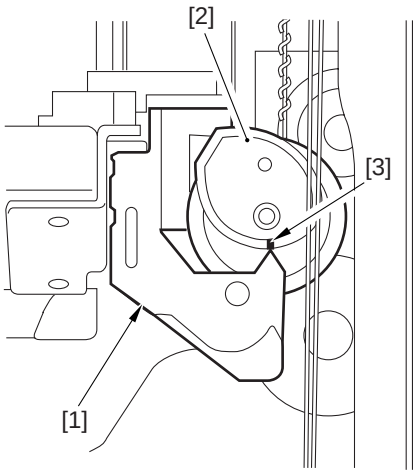


Figure 3-345

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4) If the tip of the lever [1] and the marking on the cam gear [2] do not match, remove the fixing screw [4] of the cam gear [2] and detach the cam gear; then, mount the cam gear once again so that the marking on it and the tip of the lever match.

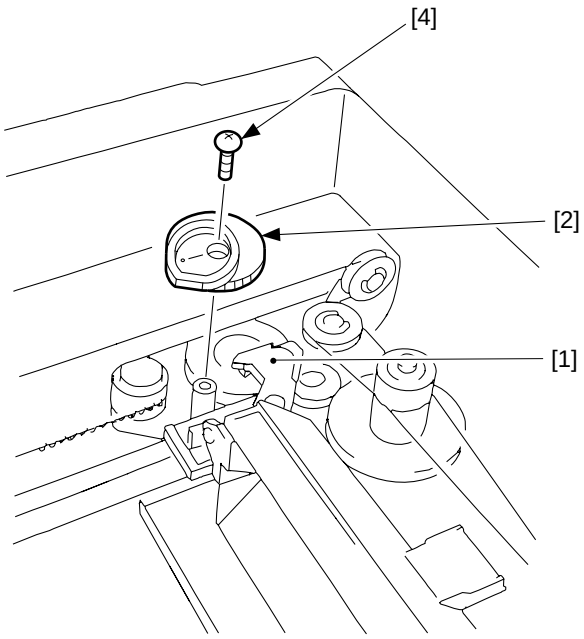


Figure 3-346

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

C. Exposure System

1. Removing the Scanning Lamp

1) Disconnect the power plug.
2) Remove the copyboard glass.
   (See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.C.1. “Removing the Copyboard Glass.”)
3) Holding the middle of the No. 1 mirror mount [1], move the No. 1 mirror mount [1] to the right by about 5 cm.

Caution:
Do not hold the reflecting plate.

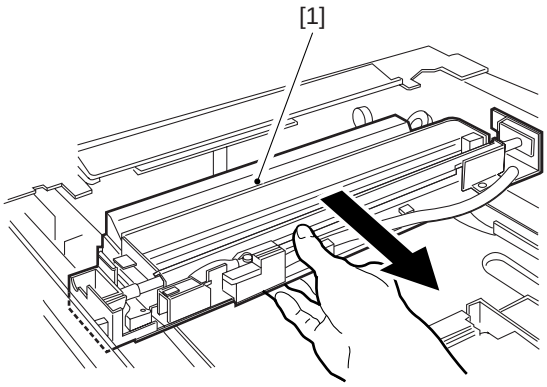


Figure 3-347

4) Free the harness [3] from the guide [2]; then, remove the screw [4], and detach the reflecting plate [5].

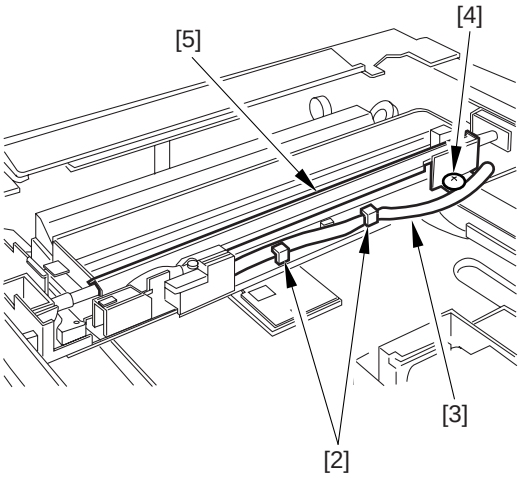


Figure 3-348

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5) While pushing the electrode mount [6] found at the rear of the machine in the direction of the arrow, detach the scanning lamp [7].

Caution:

1. Do not start the work if the scanning lamp is hot.
2. Do not leave fingerprints on the surface of the scanning lamp.
3. If the surface of the scanning lamp is soiled, dry wipe it.

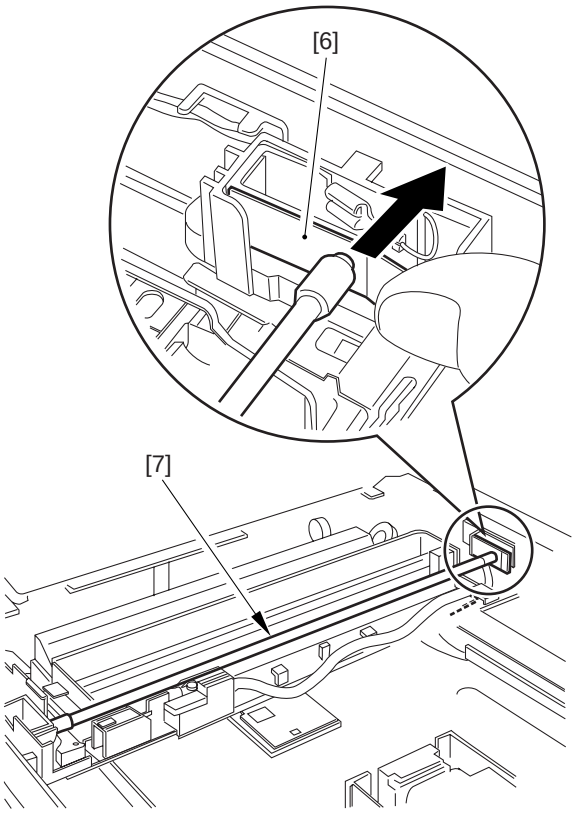


Figure 3-349

2. Points to Note When Mounting the Lamp

When mounting the scanning lamp, be sure that the logo mark (or the name of the manufacturer) is toward the front. Further, be sure that the protrusion near the middle of the lamp is as shown.

Caution:

- Do not touch the lamp portion.
- If you have replaced the scanning lamp, be sure to perform intensity adjustment (p. 11-42) and AE adjustment (p. 11-44).

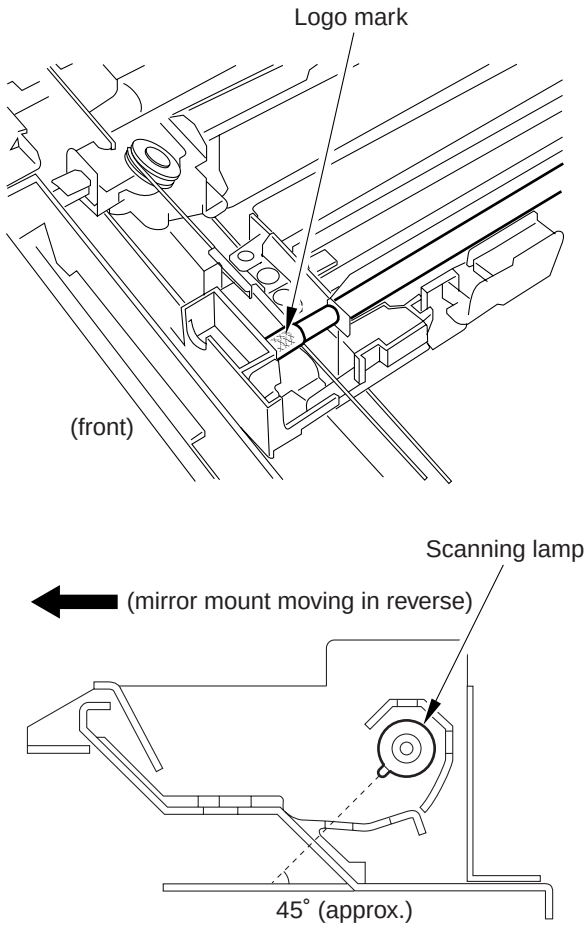


Figure 3-350

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3. Removing the Thermal Fuse

1) Disconnect the power plug.
2) Remove the copyboard glass.
   (See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.C.1. “Removing the Copyboard Glass.”)
3) Remove the two screws [1], and detach the thermal fuse [2].

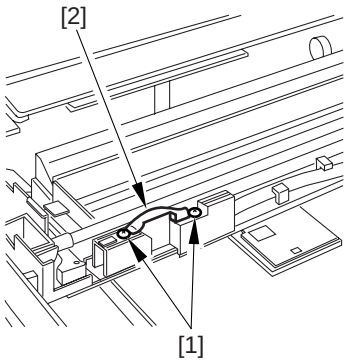


Figure 3-351

4. Points to Note When Mounting the Fuse

When mounting the thermal fuse, be sure that the thermal fuse is oriented as shown.

Make sure that the fuse is in contact with the reflecting plate.

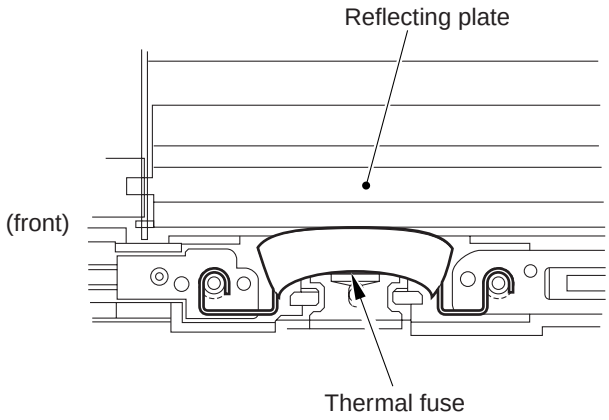


Figure 3-352

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

5. Removing the Thermistor Unit

1) Remove the top cover.
(See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.A.1. “Removing the Top Cover.”)
2) Disconnect the connector (J131) [1] from the DC controller PCB; remove the screw [2], and detach the thermistor unit [3].

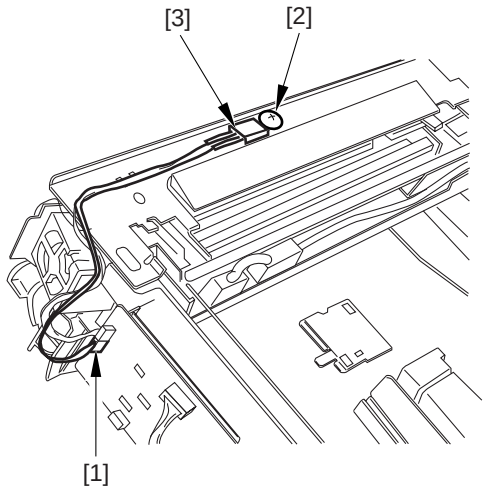


Figure 3-353

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

CHAPTER 4

IMAGE FORMATION SYSTEM

This chapter discusses the principles of how images are formed. It also explains the timing at which the various units involved in image formation are operated, and shows how they may be disassembled/assembled and adjusted.

I. IMAGE FORMATION SYSTEM ... 4-1
- A. Outline ... 4-1
- B. Timing Chart for the Image Formation System ... 4-3
- C. Primary Charging Roller Bias Control ... 4-4
- D. Controlling the Transfer Roller Bias ... 4-9
- E. Controlling the Developing/ Separation Static Eliminator Bias ... 4-12
- F. Measuring the Density of Originals ... 4-18
- G. Controlling the Pre-Exposure Lamp ... 4-24
- H. Controlling the Side Blanking Mechanism ... 4-26

II. DEVELOPING ASSEMBLY /CLEANING ASSEMBLY ... 4-27
- A. Outline ... 4-27
- B. Detecting the Level of Toner ... 4-28
- C. Detecting Waste Toner ... 4-30
- D. Primary Charging Roller Cleaning Control ... 4-31

III. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY ... 4-33
- A. Drum Unit ... 4-34
- B. Transfer Charging Assembly ... 4-38
- C. Blank Exposure ... 4-39
- D. Developing Assembly ... 4-43

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

I. IMAGE FORMATION SYSTEM

A. Outline

The major functions of the image formation system are as follows:

Item	Description
Primary charging roller bias control	DC constant voltage control: on/off DC voltage level switching DC voltage level auto correction
Transfer roller bias control	DC constant voltage control: on/off DC constant current control (ATVC, cleaning bias) Voltage level control Polarity switching control
Developing/separation static eliminator bias control	DC constant voltage control: on/off AC constant voltage control: on/off DC voltage level control
Density control	Developing DC bias control
Pre-exposure control	Pre-exposure lamp
Blank exposure control	Side blanking exposure lamp
Toner level detection	Level detection by a waste toner sensor
Waste toner case full detection	Detection by a waste toner sensor
Primary charging roller cleaning	Auto cleaning by the cleaning pad

Table 4-101

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

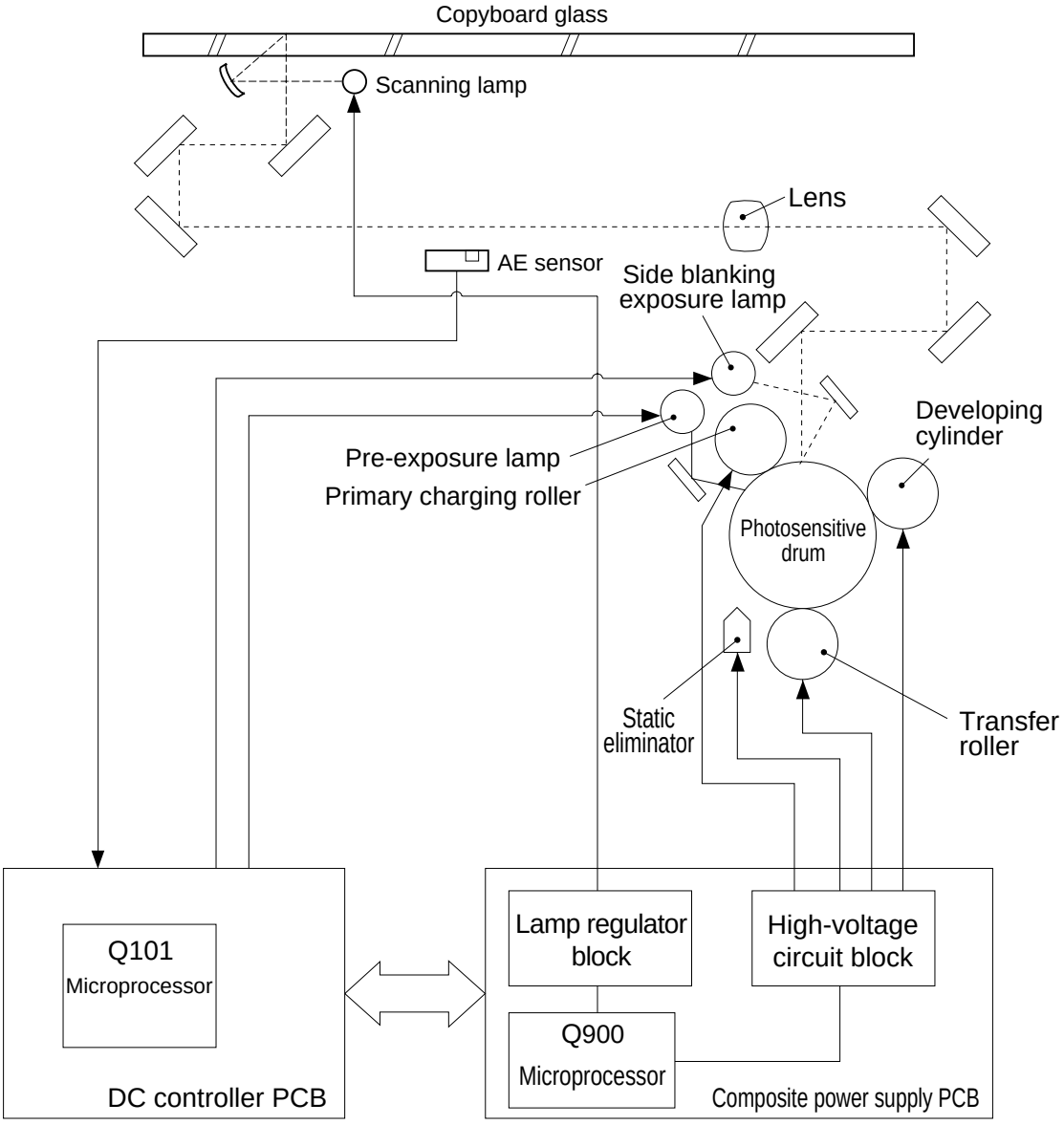


Figure 4-101

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

B. Timing Chart for the Image Formation System

Basic Sequence of Operations (Direct, 2 copies, continuous)

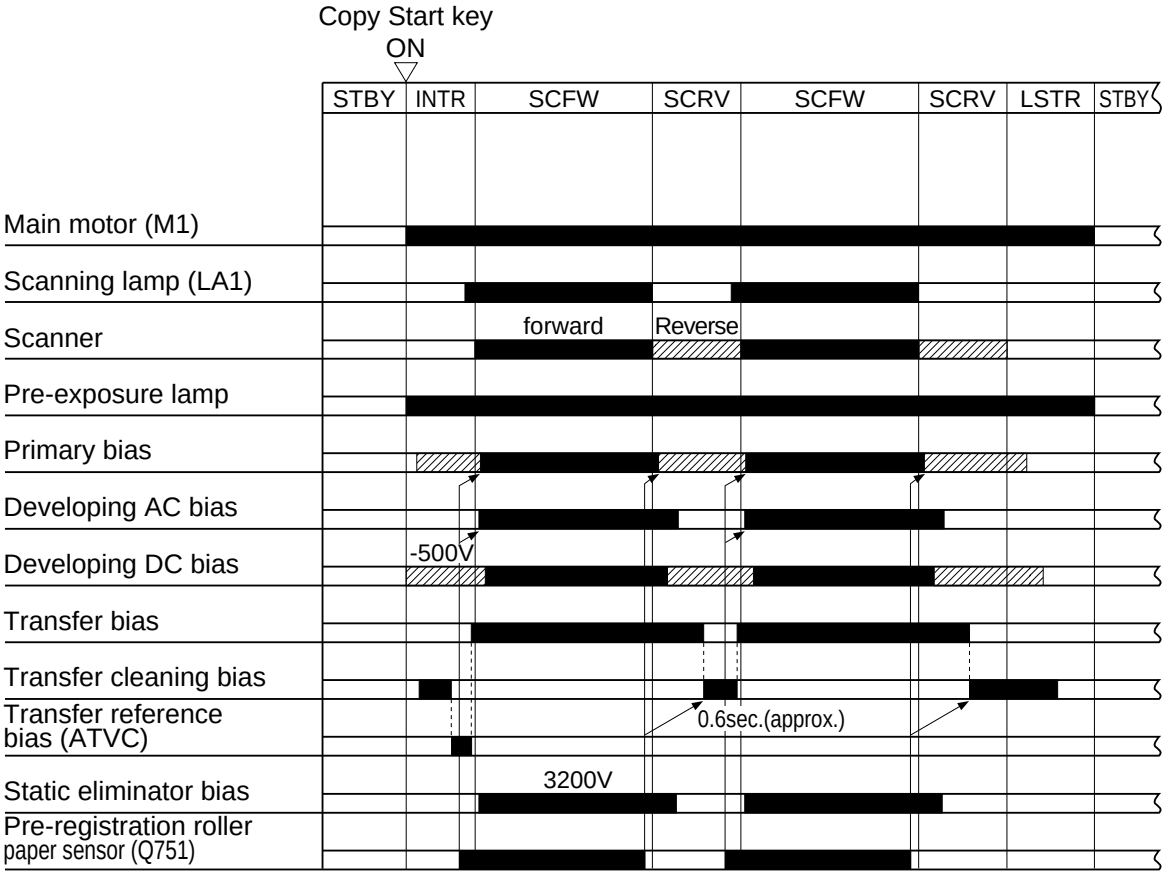


Figure 4-102

C. Primary Charging Roller Bias Control

1. Outline

Figure 4-103 shows the circuit used to control the voltage applied to the primary charging roller, and has the following functions:

- Turning on and off the DC bias.
- Controls the DC bias to a constant voltage.
- Switching the level of the DC bias.
- Corrects the level of the DC bias automatically.

The level of the DC bias applied to the primary charging roller is switched between image area and non-image area.

Reference:

The level of the DC bias is as follows:

Image area: -1376 V ± (correction value by APVC) ± (correction value * by density mode)

Non-image area: -900 V ± (correction value by APVC); area between sheets

-1000 V ± (correction value by APVC); cleaning area by transfer

-600 V ± (correction value by APVC); trailing edge area

*See p. 4-16.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

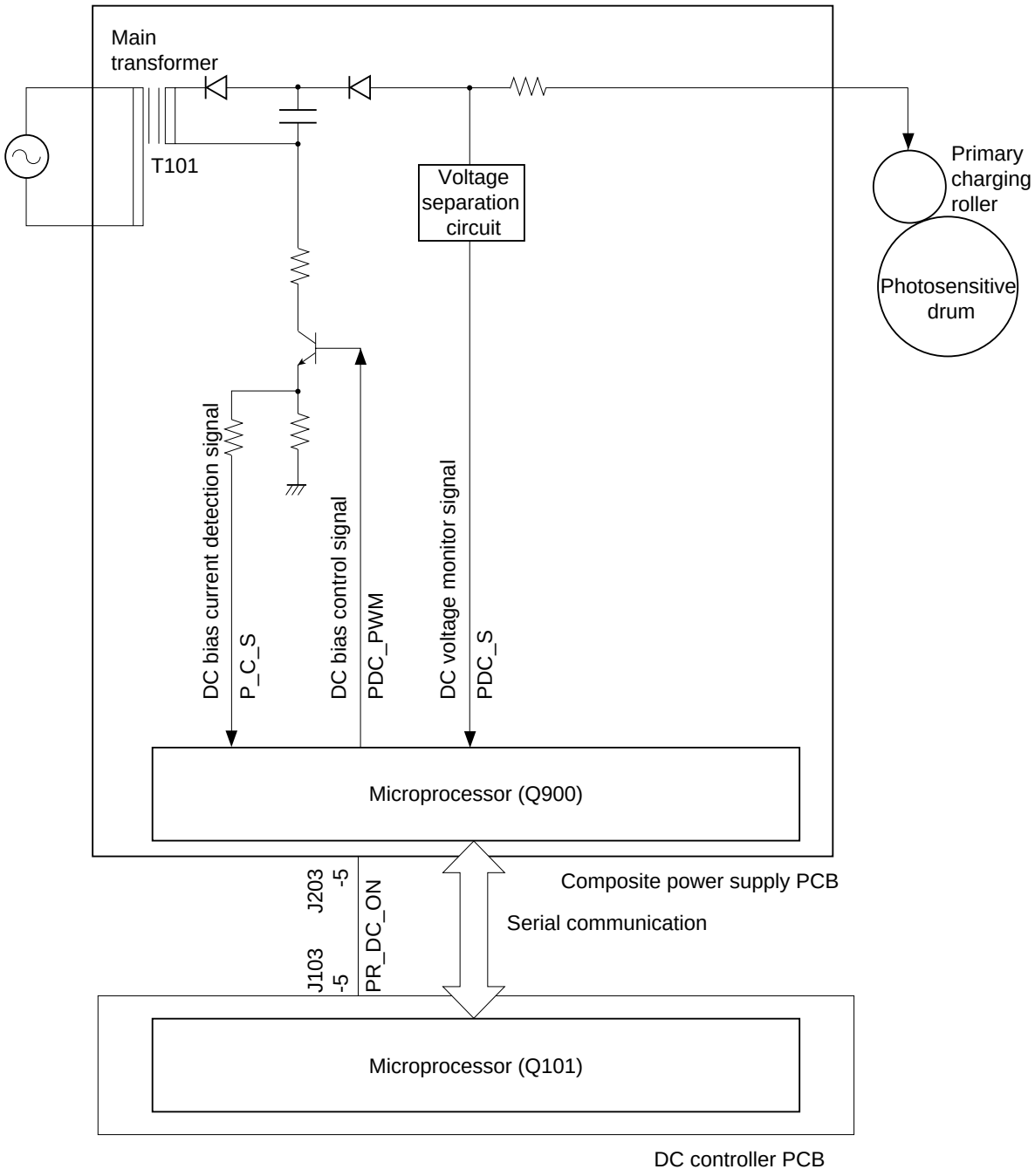

Main transformer
T101
Voltage separation circuit
Primary charging roller
Photosensitive drum
DC bias current detection signal
P_C_S
DC bias control signal
PDC_PWM
DC voltage monitor signal
PDC_S
Microprocessor (Q900)
J203 -5
J103 -5
PR_DC_ON
Composite power supply PCB
Serial communication
Microprocessor (Q101)
DC controller PCB

Figure 4-103

2. Operations

a. Turning On and Off the DC Bias

The DC bias applied to the primary charging roller is turned on or off by the serial communication signal and the primary charging bias ON signal (PR_DC_ON) from the DC controller PCB.

When the Copy Start key is pressed, the DC bias ON signal (serial) and the primary charging bias ON signal (PR_DC_ON) are sent. The microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB generates the DC bias control signal (PDC_PWM) based on the combination of the serial signal and the PR_DC_ON signal, applying a DC bias to the primary charging roller.

	DC bias ON signal (8-bit signal communication)		PR_DC_ON (J103-5)
	bit0	bit1	
DC bias ON (image area)	1	–	0
DC bias ON (non-image area)*1	1	0	1
DC bias ON (non-image area)*2	1	1	1
DC bias ON (APVC)	0	–	0
DC bias OFF	0	0	1

*1: Area between sheets
*2: Cleaning area by transfer / trailing edge area

Table 4-102 Relationship between DC Bias Output and Signal

b. Controlling the DC Bias to a Specific Voltage/Current

The DC bias applied to the primary charging roller is controlled by the microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB so that it remains a specific level.

When a DC bias is generated, the microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB detects the DC voltage monitor signal (PDC_S), compares its level against the reference level, and varies the DC bias control signal (PDC_PWM) according to the difference so as to ensure that it remains specific level.

Reference:

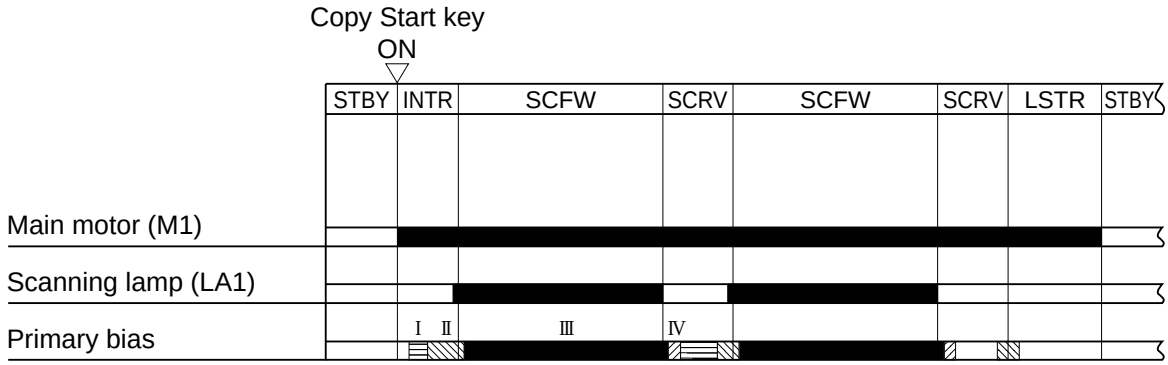
The DC bias control signal varies its pulse duty ratio to change the level of the DC bias.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

c. Switching the DC Bias Level

The machine changes the level of its DC bias according to the following: copying image area, sheet-to-sheet distance, and image trailing edge margin. In addition, it is also switched while a cleaning bias is applied by the transfer roller, during which the primary charging roller applies a negative DC bias to prevent the photosensitive drum from being charged to a positive potential.

The level of the DC bias is switched by the DC bias ON signal (serial) from the DC controller PCB. In response to this signal, the microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB changes the DC bias control signal (PDC_PWM) to switch the level of the DC bias applied to the primary charging roller. (See Table 4-102.)



I: Area between sheets
II: Cleaning area by transfer
III: Image area
IV: Trailing edge area

Figure 4-104

d. Primary Charging Roller Bias Application Voltage Level and Scanning Lamp Activation Voltage Level Automatic Correction Control (APVC, ALVC control)

The quality of copy images can vary in relation to changes in latent static images, which are affected by the following:

- Changes in the sensitivity of the drum
- Changes in the amount of charging of the primary charging roller

These changes occur because of changes in the installation environment (temperature, humidity) or deterioration, wear, and dirt of related parts.

In the machine, these changes tend to increase the light area potential (VL) and the dark area potential (VD).

To correct these changes, the level of voltage applied to the primary charging roller is corrected (APVC control) and, at the same time, the level of the voltage used to turn on the scanning lamp is corrected (ALVC control). These control mechanisms serve to ensure a specific degree of light area potential (VL) and dark area potential (VD) at all times.

The following indicates the timing of auto correction and the flow of operation:

<Timing>
At power-on, During INTR

<Flow>

A voltage of -1376 V is applied to the primary charging roller for about 1.3 sec.

↓

The current at the time is detected by the current detection circuit, and is communicated to the microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB.

↓

The microprocessor (Q101) on the DC controller receives the current level from the composite power supply, and determines the voltage used to activate the scanning lamp and the voltage of the primary charging roller bias.*

* The control mechanism uses the return current stored in memory in advance by the DC controller PCB and the correction table for activation voltage/application voltage.

Caution:
If you have replaced the composite power supply PCB, be sure to enter the APVC value indicated on the composite power supply PCB using service mode (Nos. 34, 35). Then, be sure to execute 'U7' in user mode (installation/drum replacement mode).

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

D. Controlling the Transfer Roller Bias

1. Outline

The circuit shown in Figure 4-105 is used to control the voltage applied to the transfer charging roller, and has the following functions:

- Turning on and off the transfer bias.
- Controlling the transfer bias to a constant voltage.
- Correcting the transfer bias voltage level (ATVC)
- Switching the transfer bias polarity (cleaning bias)

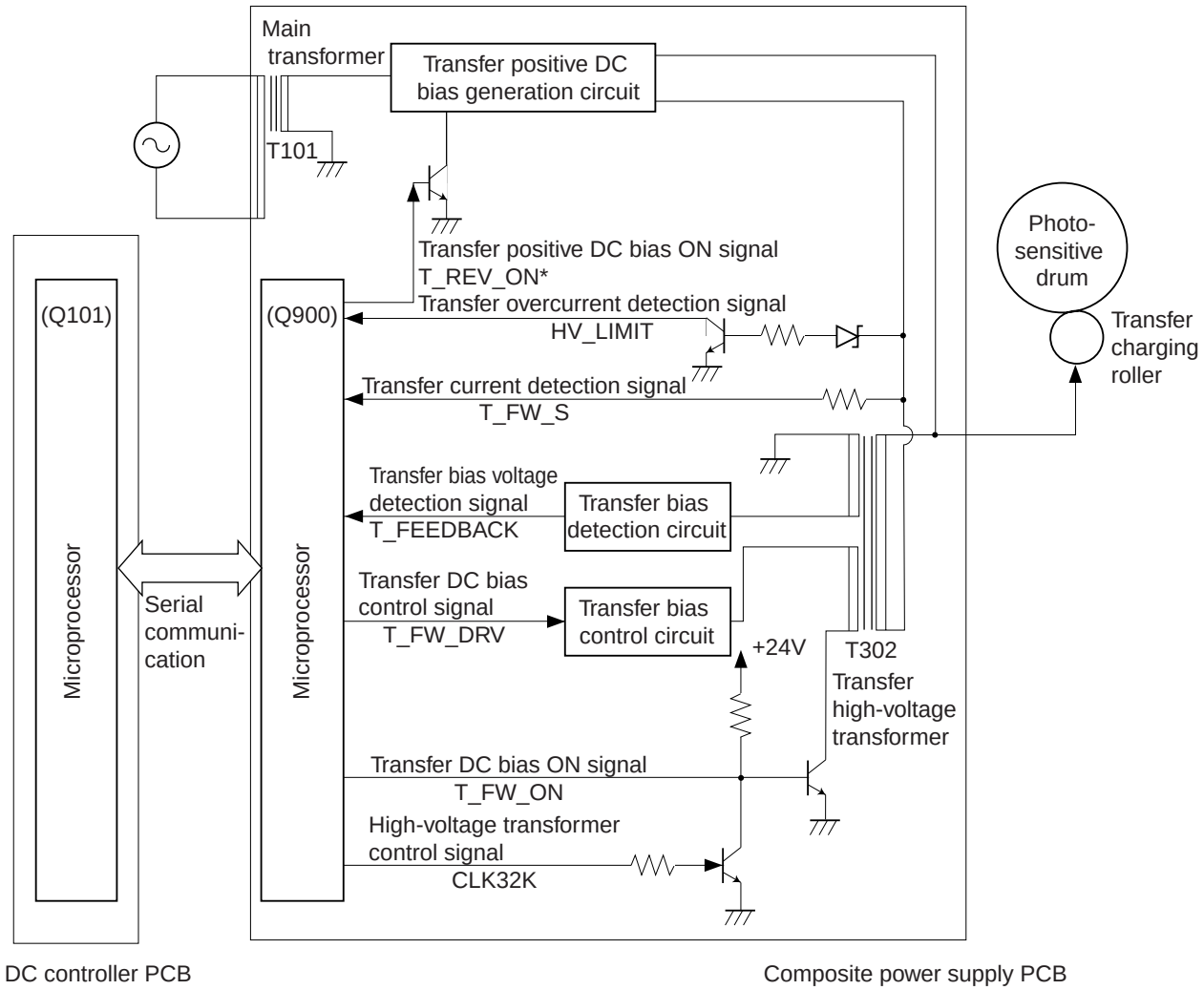


Figure 4-105

2. Operations

a. Turning On and Off the Transfer Bias

The transfer bias applied to the transfer charging roller is turned on and off by the serial communication signal from the DC controller PCB.

When the transfer bias ON signal (serial signal) is generated by the DC controller PCB, the microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB generates the high-voltage transformer control signal (CLK32K), transfer DC bias ON signal (T_FW_ON), and transfer DC bias control signal (T_FW_DRV), thereby applying the transfer bias to the transfer charging roller.

	Transfer bias ON signal (serial communication)		T-FW_ON signal	T_REV_ON* signal
	bit2	bit3		
Negative transfer bias ON	1	0	1	1
Positive transfer bias ON (cleaning bias)	1	1	1	0
Transfer bias OFF	0	0	0	1
ATVC	0	1	1	1

Table 4-103 Relationship between Transfer Bias Output and Signals

b. Controlling the Transfer Bias to a Specific Voltage

The transfer bias applied to the transfer charging roller is controlled to a specific level by the microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB.

When a transfer bias is generated, the microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB checks the transfer bias voltage detection signal (T_FEEDBACK), compares it against the reference value, and varies the transfer DC bias control signal (T_FW_DRV) according to the difference to ensure that the transfer bias remains a specific level at all times.

Reference:

The level of transfer bias applied to the transfer roller during a copying run is between -7.5 and -3.0 kV.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

c. Correcting the Transfer Bias Voltage Level (ATVC control)

The machine automatically corrects the application voltage level of the transfer bias to correct the changes in the transfer efficiency caused by the deterioration of the transfer roller or the changes in the environment.

A current of a specific level (-14.6 µA) is applied to the transfer charging roller during initial rotation executed each time the Copy Start key is pressed. The microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB checks the transfer current detection signal (T_FW_S), and varies the transfer bias applied to the transfer charging roller so that it will be an appropriate level.

Reference:

While the transfer charging roller makes a single rotation, the microprocessor (Q900) checks the transfer current detection signal four times, and determines the level of the transfer bias to apply using the average of the readings.

d. Switching the Polarity of the Transfer Bias (cleaning bias)

The machine uses a direct charging method, allowing toner to move from the photosensitive drum to the transfer roller as when a jam occurs if left unattended.

To remove excess toner, a positive voltage is applied to the transfer roller as follows, thereby returning the toner from the roller to the drum:

<Timing>

- While initial rotation is executed after the Copy Start key is pressed
- Part of the period in which the scanner is moved in reverse
- Part of the period in which last rotation is executed

The polarity of the transfer bias is switched by the transfer bias ON signal (serial signal) generated by the DC controller PCB.

In response to the signal, the microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB causes the transfer positive DC bias On signal (T_REV_ON*) to go '0', so that the positive component of the transfer bias (constant current control, +1.56µA / 2.5kVmax.) will be applied to the transfer roller. (See Table 4-103.)

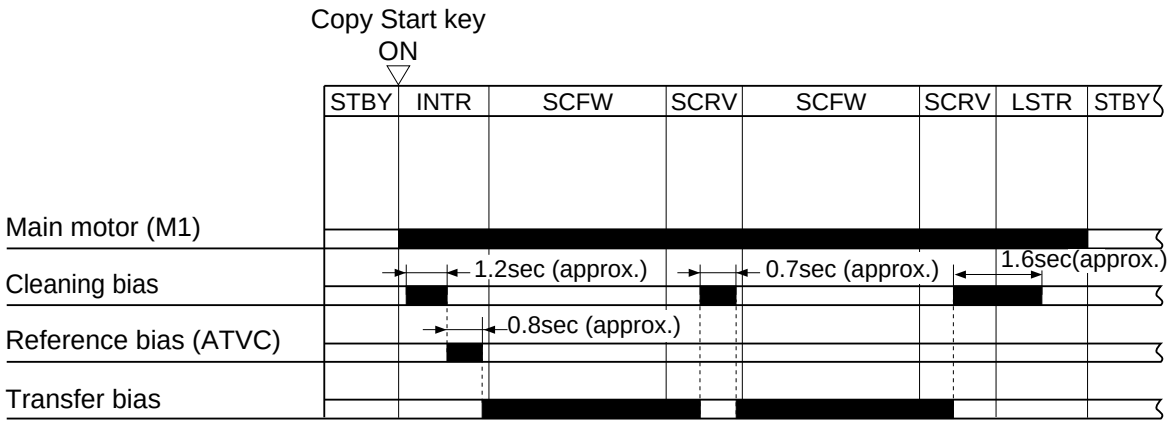


Figure 4-106

E. Controlling the Developing/Separation Static Eliminator Bias

1. Outline

The circuit shown in Figure 4-107 is used to control the voltage applied to the developing assembly and the separation static eliminator, and has the following functions:

- Turning on and off the developing DC bias
- Turning on and off the AC bias (turning on and off the static eliminator bias)
- Controlling the voltage level of the developing DC bias

Both AC bias and DC bias are applied to the developing cylinder while copies are being made. When the photosensitive drum rotates and yet developing is not under way, about -500 VDC is applied to the developing cylinder regardless of the position of the density adjusting lever, thereby preventing adhesion of excess toner on the photosensitive drum.

Reference:

Developing DC bias: -40 ~ -550V

Developing AC bias: 1350Vpp±100Vpp

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

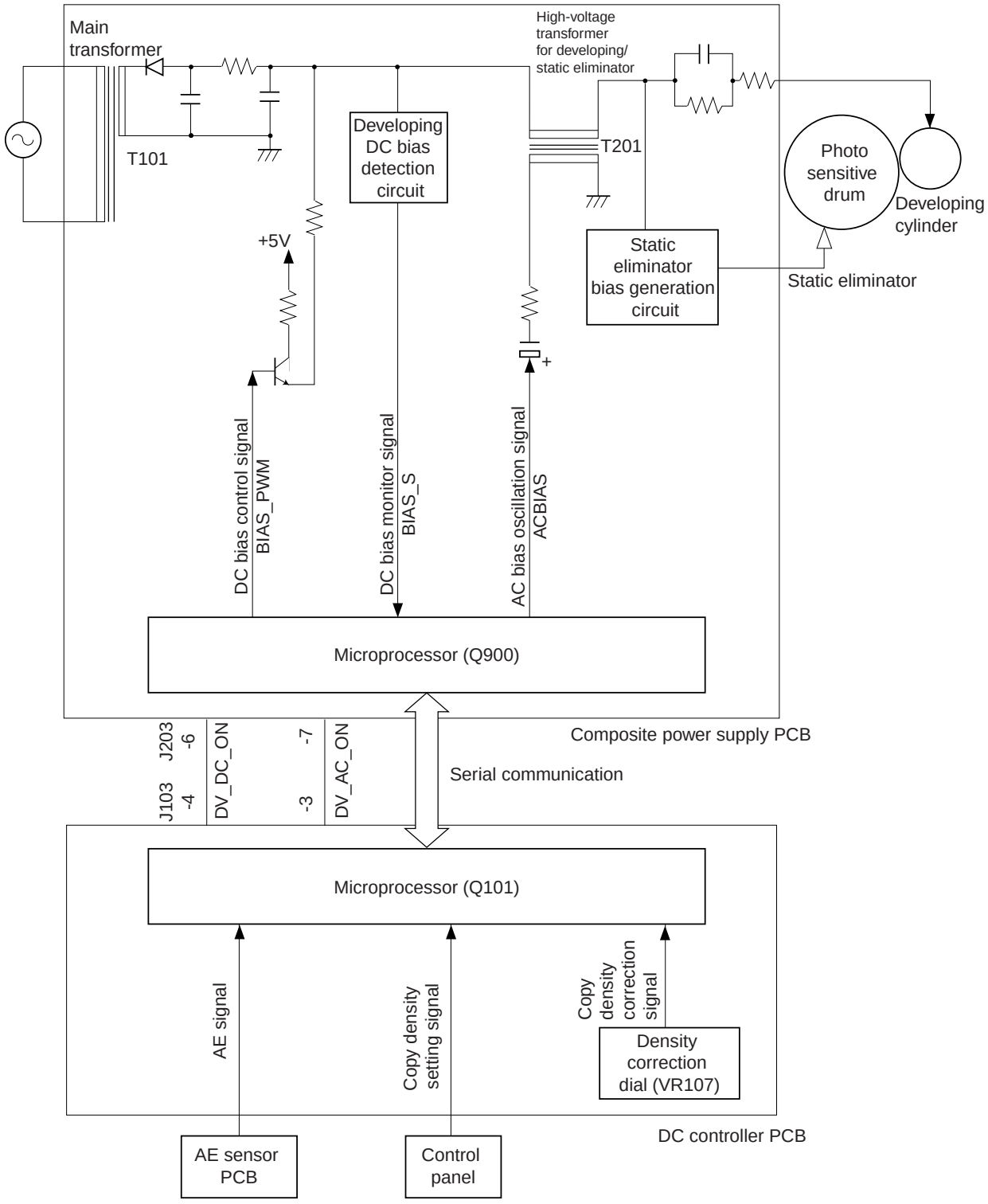

Main transformer
T101
High-voltage transformer for developing/ static eliminator
T201
Developing DC bias detection circuit
Photo sensitive drum
Developing cylinder
+5V
Static eliminator bias generation circuit
Static eliminator
DC bias control signal
BIAS_PWM
DC bias monitor signal
BIAS_S
AC bias oscillation signal
ACBIAS
Microprocessor (Q900)
Composite power supply PCB
J203 -6
DV_DC_ON
-7
DV_AC_ON
J103 -4
-3
Serial communication
Microprocessor (Q101)
AE signal
Copy density setting signal
Copy density correction signal
Density correction dial (VR107)
DC controller PCB
AE sensor PCB
Control panel

Figure 4-107

2. Turning On and Off the DC Bias

The DC bias applied to the developing cylinder is turned on and off by the signal communication signal and the developing DC bias ON signal (DV_DC_ON) generated by the DC controller PCB.

When the developing DCON signal (serial signal) and the developing DC bias ON sign (DV_DC_ON) are generated by the DC controller PCB, the microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB sends the DC bias control signal (BIAS_PWM), thereby applying a DC bias to the developing cylinder.

	Developing DCON signal (Serial communication)		DV_DC_ON (J103-4)
	bit5	bit6	
DC bias ON	–	1	0
DC bias ON (- 500V)	0	1	1
DC bias OFF	0	0	1

Table 4-104 Relationship between Developing DC Bias and Signals

3. Turning On and Off the AC Bias

The AC bias is turned on and off by the developing AC bias ON signal (DV_AC_ON) generated by the DC controller PCB.

The DC controller PCB sends the developing AC bias ON signal (DV_AC_ON) to the composite power supply PCB a specific period of time after copy paper has moved past the registration sensor. The microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB generates the AC bias oscillation signal (ACBIAS) so that an AC bias is applied to the developing cylinder.

The AC bias is modified/rectified and then supplied to the static eliminator (static eliminator bias, about 3.2 kV).

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4. Developing DC Bias Voltage Level Control

The DC bias control signal (BIAS_PWM) is varied according to the following settings so as to vary the DC component of the developing bias, thereby controlling the copy density:

- Density lever setting (for manual density adjustment)
- AE sensor output (auto density adjustment)
- Copy mode settings (toner save mode/photo mode)
- Density correction dial (VR107) setting

You can use the density correction dial (VR107) on the DC controller PCB to vary the developing DC bias. Change the bias if copies tend to be foggy or light images because of shifts in the sensitivity of the photosensitive drum. The dial is used when manual density adjustment or auto density adjustment (AE) is executed.

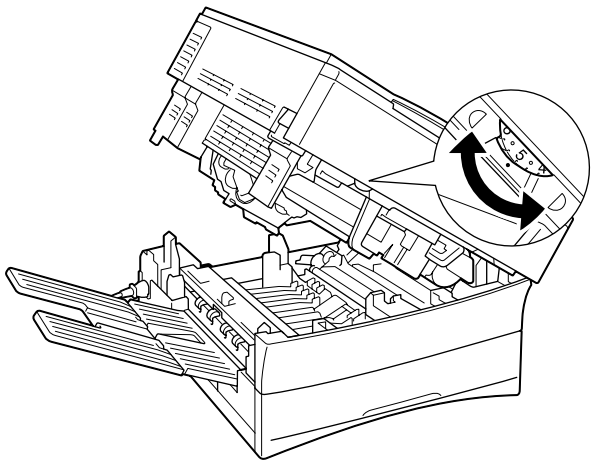


Figure 4-108

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

The DC controller PCB keeps track of the number of copies made since replacement of the drum unit (drum counter reading, which is initialized when 'U7' in user mode is executed, i.e., installation/drum replacement mode).

To prevent deterioration of copy images, the developing DC bias, voltage supplied to the scanning lamp, and primary charging DC bias are corrected as follows when the drum counter reading exceeds '20000'.

	Normal mode		Toner save mode		Photo mode	
	I	II	I	II	I	II
Developing bias	+15V	-30V	-5V	-50V	+85V	+85V
Lamp supply voltage	---	+3.2V*1 (+5.7V*2)	-2.7V*1 (-4.7V*2)	+1.2V*1 (+2.2V*2)	-2.7V*1 (-4.7V*2)	-2.7V*1 (-4.7V*2)
Primary DC bias	+32V	-80V	+112V	-----	+112V	+112V

* The DC bias value in the table is a correction value based on the value in Figure 4-109 and 4-110.

Table 4-105 Relationship between Copying Mode and Correction Value

I: If the drum counter reading is lower than '20000'.
II: If the drum counter reading is '20000' or higher.

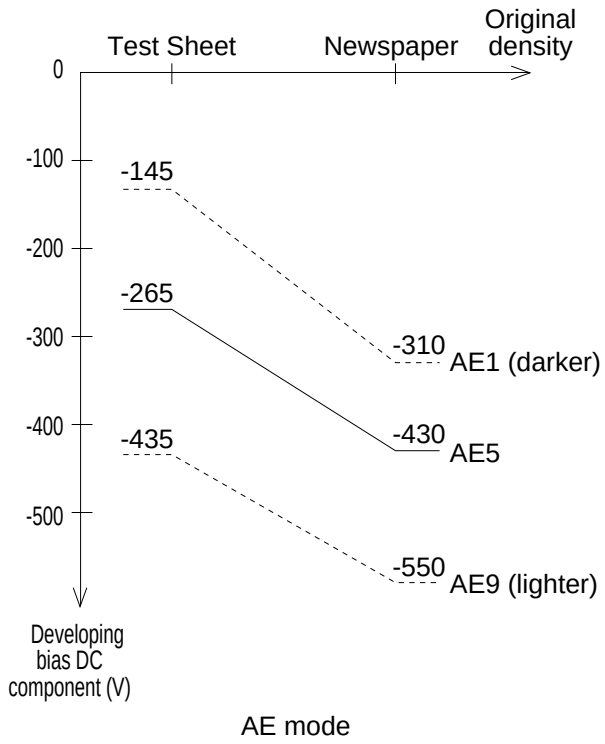
*1: 120V type.
*2: 220/240V type.

Related Service Mode

60	Counter for the drum unit currentry in use
61	Counter for the most recent drum unit
62	Counter for the second most recent drum unit

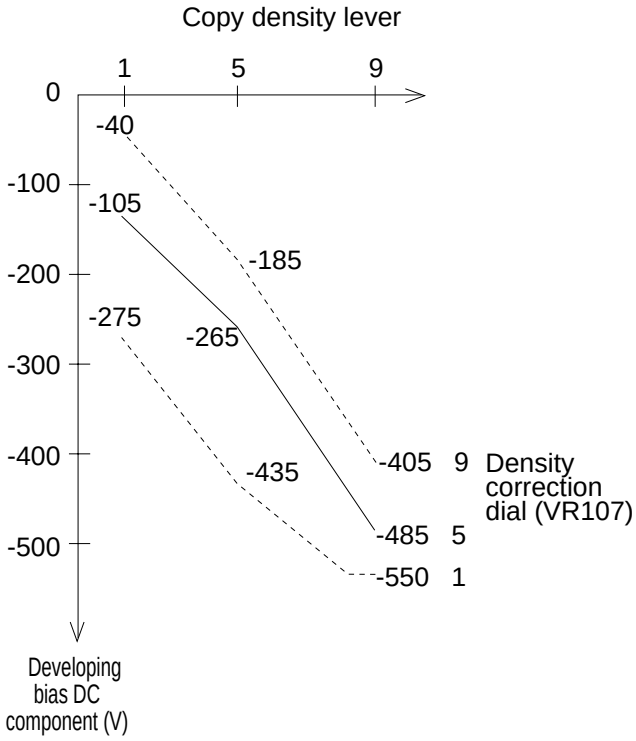
Figures 4-109 and 4-110 show the changes in the DC bias caused by changes in the output of the AE sensor during auto density adjustment and the density adjusting lever settings during manual adjustment.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)



AE mode

Figure 4-109



Manual Density Mode

Figure 4-110

F. Measuring the Density of Originals

1. Outline

The machine is equipped with an auto density adjustment (AE) mechanism designed to control the DC component of the developing bias.

The AE mechanism enables production of copies free of fogging as long as the original is more or less uniform in density by varying the DC component of the developing bias according to the density of the original.

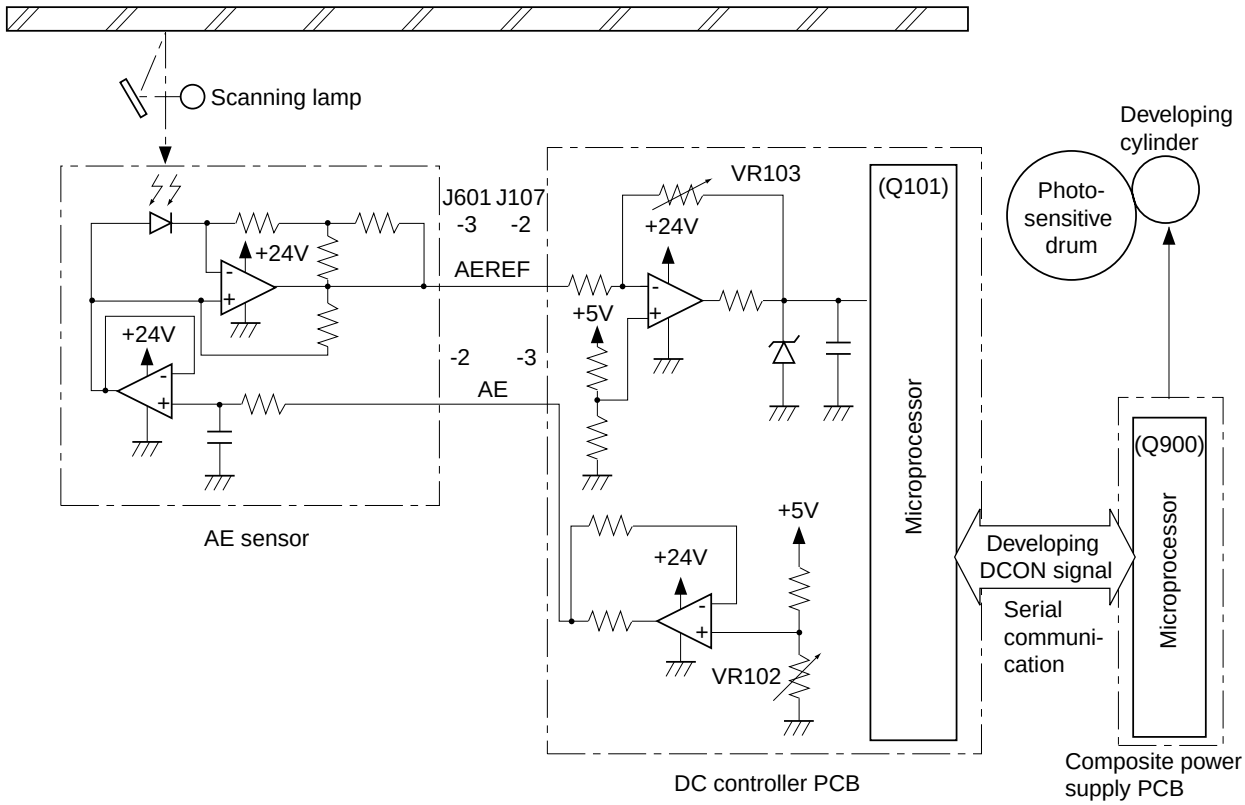


Figure 4-111

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Operations

When measuring the density of an original, the scanner turns on the scanning lamp, and moves to a point 115 mm from the home position. At this time, the AE sensor reads the level of light reflected by the area shown in Figure 4-112, and sends the AE signal (AE) to the DC controller PCB.

In response, the DC controller PCB sends the developing DCON signal (serial communication) to the composite power supply PCB according to the level of the AE signal. The microprocessor (Q900) on the composite power supply PCB controls the level of the DC bias applied to the developing cylinder based on the level of this signal.

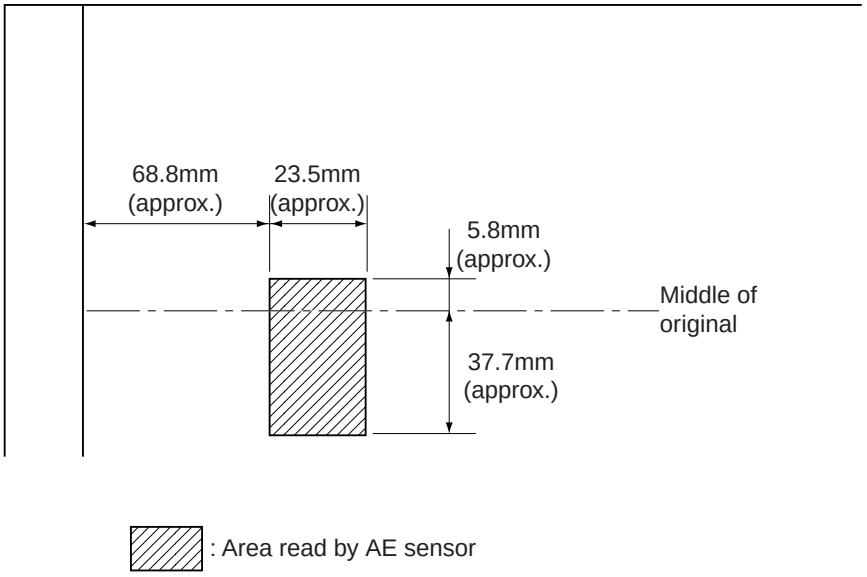


Figure 4-112

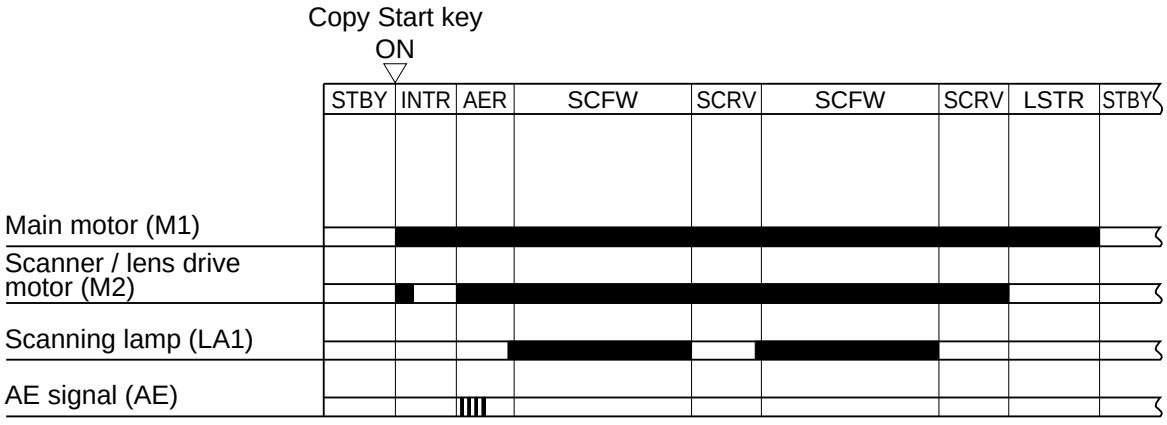


Figure 4-113

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

3. AE Adjustment (VR102, VR103)

If you have replaced the scanning lamp or the AE sensor PCB, be sure to make the following adjustments:

Making Adjustments

Before the Work

- Obtain a newspaper more or less even in density. (Avoid ones with photos or large characters.)
- Obtain five sheets of white sheets of paper
- Check to make sure that the intensity of the scanning lamp has been adjusted properly when you have replaced the scanning lamp.
- Set the density correction dial (VR107) to the middle setting.

1) Open the top unit; then, remove the two screws [1], and detach the front upper cover [2].

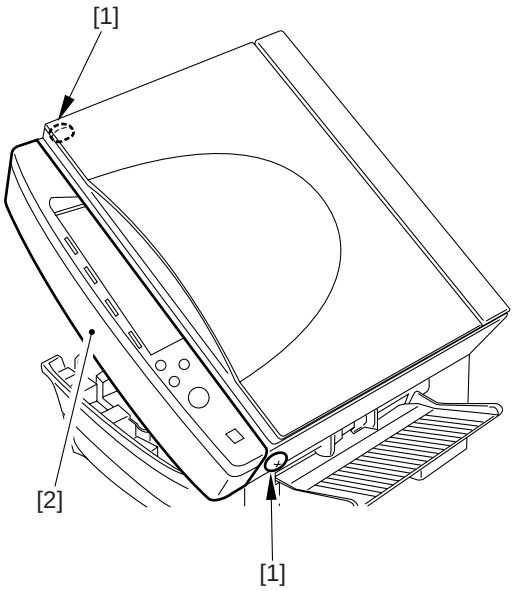


Figure 4-114

Caution:

The flexible cable for the control panel is connected to the upper front cover; disconnect the cable from the DC controller PCB.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2) Close the top unit, and connect the flexible cable from the control panel to the DC controller PCB; then, turn on the power switch.
3) Check to make sure that AE mode has been enabled, and short JP103 and JP104 on the DC control PCB with a screwdriver or the like.
   • The display will indicate 'F'.

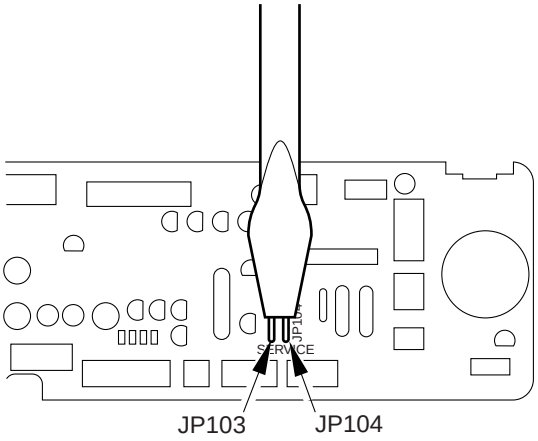


Figure 4-115

4) While the display is indicating 'F', stop shorting JP103 and JP104.
5) Select '40' in service mode.
   • The display will indicate '40'.
6) Press the Copy Start key.
   • The scanner will move forward, and the scanning lamp will turn on.
7) Turn VR103 on the DC controller PCB fully clockwise.

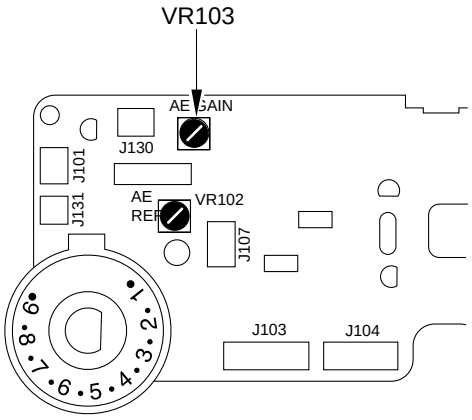


Figure 4-116

8) Place a newspaper on the copyboard, and close the copyboard cover.
9) Turn VR102 so that the display indicates ‘A3’ through ‘Ad’.

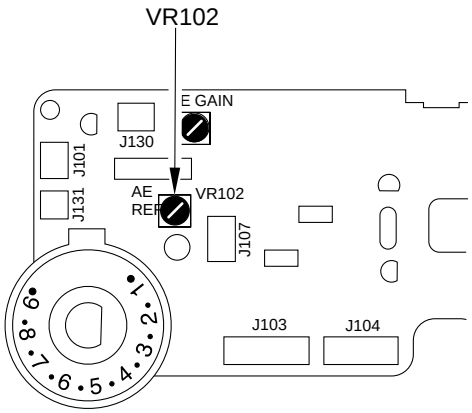


Figure 4-117

10) Remove the newspaper from the copyboard, and place five sheets of copy paper on the copyboard glass in its place; then, close the copyboard cover.
11) Turn VR103 on the DC controller PCB so that the display on the control panel indicates ‘52’ through ‘5c’.

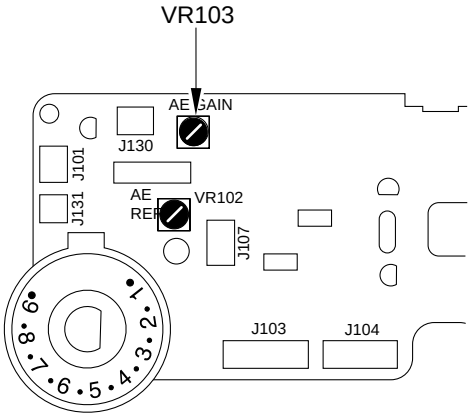


Figure 4-118

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

12) Repeat steps 8) through 11) so that the values of both VR102 and VR103 are target values.

Caution:
If you cannot set VR102 and VR103 to the target values at the same time, turn VR103 fully counterclockwise, and go back to step 8) and make adjustments once again.

13) Make a copy, and check to make sure that it is free of fogging and the characters are dark enough.
    - If the copy is foggy or its characters are not dark enough, go back to step 1) and start over.
    - If the results are still not good after adjustment for a second time, use the density correction dial (VR107).

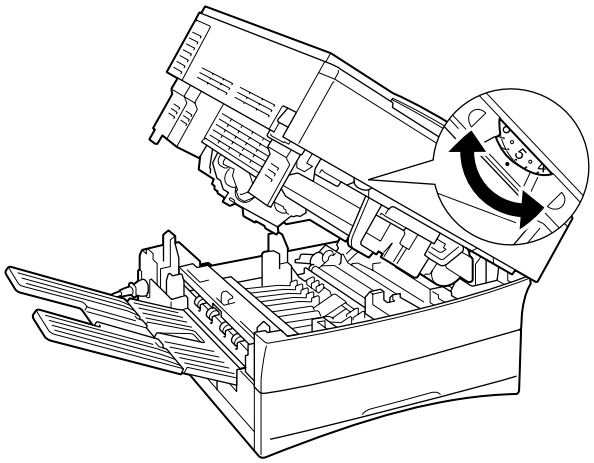


Figure 4-119

G. Controlling the Pre-Exposure Lamp

1. Outline

The machine is equipped with a pre-exposure lamp to ensure stable generation of images by removing residual charge from the photosensitive drum.

2. Operations

a. Controlling the Intensity of the Pre-Exposure Lamp

The intensity of the pre-exposure lamp is controlled based on the settings of '33' (IP_OFST) and '37' (PREX_LP) made in service mode.

The microprocessor (Q101) on the DC controller PCB controls the pre-exposure lamp control signal (PEXP*) according to the levels of IP_OFST and PREX_LP so as to vary the voltage supplied to the pre-exposure lamp.

Related Service Mode

33 (IP_OFST)	Corrects the current used during APVC measurement.
37 (PREX_LP)	Adjusts the intensity of the pre-exposure lamp.

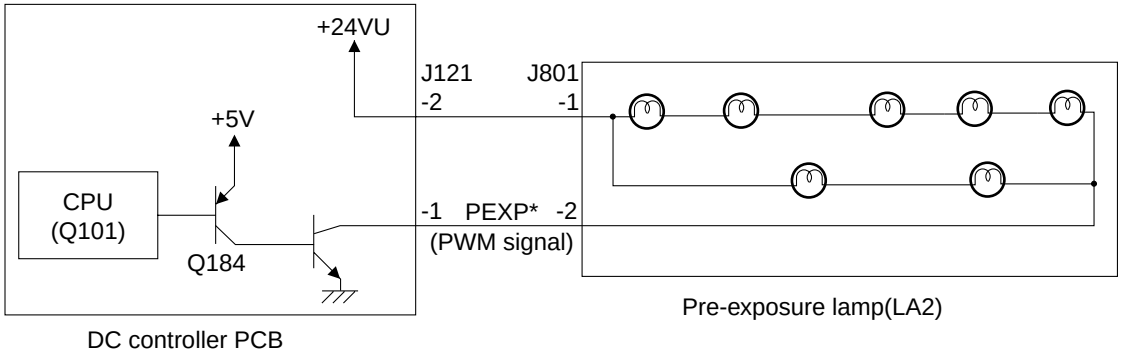


Figure 4-120

Reference:

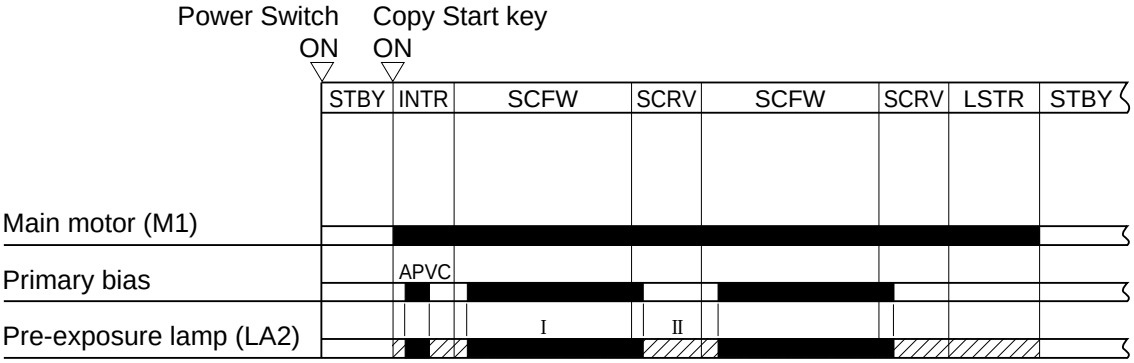
The levels of PREX_LP and IP_OFST are adjusted and stored at the factory. If you have replaced the pre-exposure lamp or the drum unit, be sure to enter the values recorded on the label attached to each part.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

b. Changing the Intensity

The machine changes the intensity of the pre-exposure lamp between image areas and non-image areas.

Except for APVC measurement and non-image areas, the voltage used to turn on the pre-exposure lamp is dropped to prevent overheating inside the machine.



I: Image area
II: Non-image area

Figure 4-121

H. Controlling the Side Blanking Mechanism

1. Outline

The machine is equipped with a side blanking lamp at the front and the rear used to prevent adhesion of excess toner when making reduced copies.

2. Operations

To blank out the non-image area in reduce mode, the side blanking lamp is moved in relation to the distance over which the lens moves as detected by the lens shift detecting shaft.

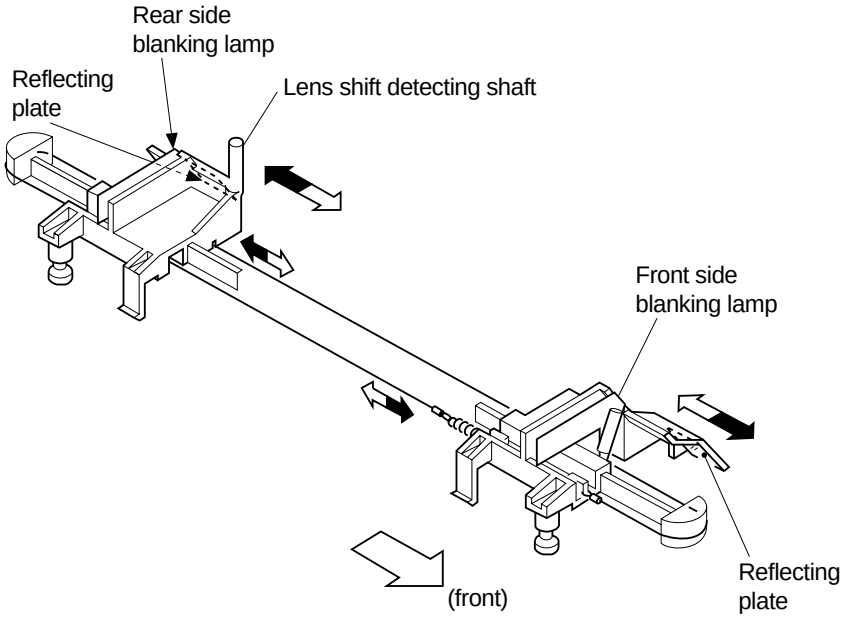
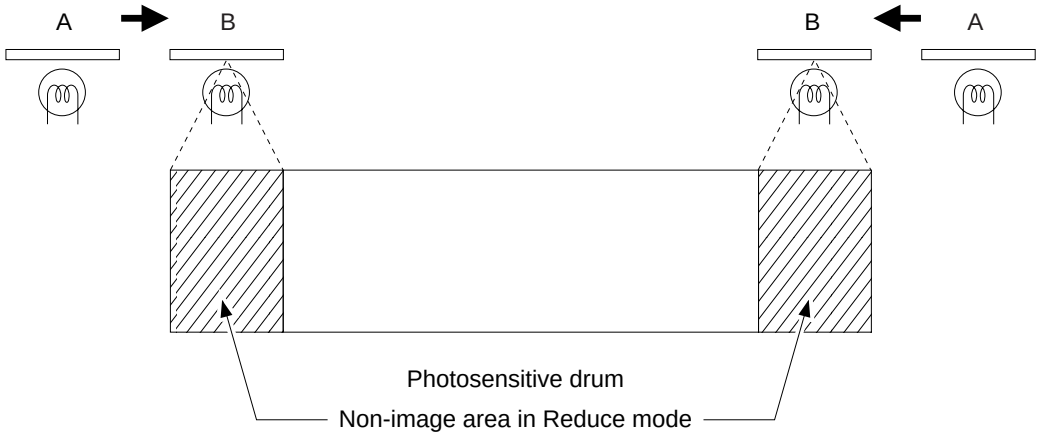


Figure 4-122



A: Position of the side blanking lamp in Direct and Reduce mode
B: Position of the side blanking lamp in Reduce mode

Figure 4-123

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

II. DEVELOPING ASSEMBLY/CLEANING ASSEMBLY

A. Outline

The machine's developing assembly may be locked into or out of position by means of a locking lever.

The developing cylinder inside the developing assembly and the waste toner feeding blade of the drum unit are rotated by the drive of the main motor (M1).

The level of toner inside the developing assembly is monitored by the toner level antenna; when the level drops below a specific value, the Replace Toner Cartridge message will start to flash on the control panel.

The waste toner collected by the cleaning blade is held inside the drum unit, and is sent to the rear of the drum unit by the toner feed blade.

The primary charging roller is cleaned by the cleaning pad operated by the cleaning solenoid (SL6).

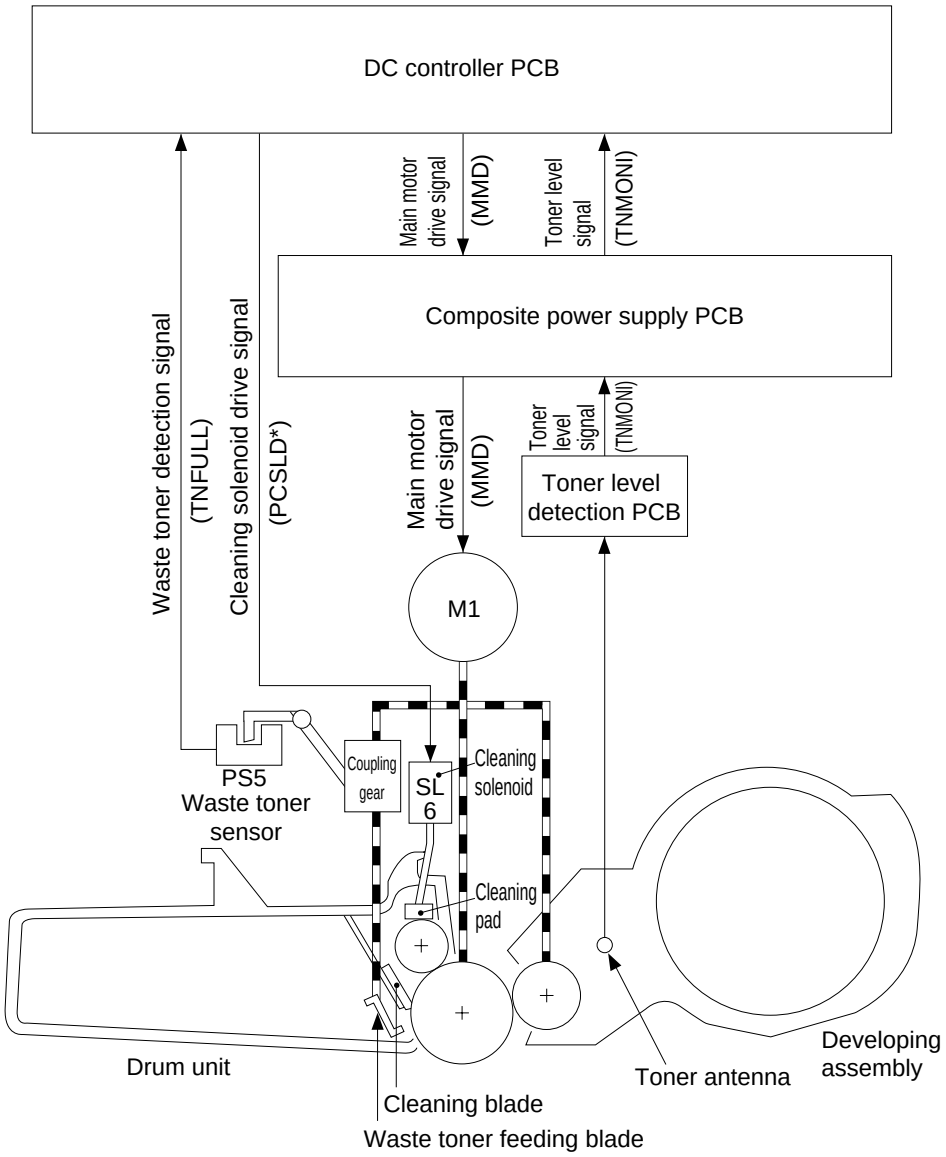


Figure 4-201

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

B. Detecting the Level of Toner

1. Outline

The level of toner inside the developing assembly is monitored by the toner level antenna and the toner level detection circuit.

The toner level antenna is mounted inside the developing assembly, and an AC bias is applied to the developing cylinder.

The developing cylinder and the antenna are staticaly bonded, and the level of toner is detected with reference to the changes in the degree of the bond.

2. Operation

The amount of static between the developing cylinder and the toner level antenna changes according to the level of toner inside the developing assembly. The AC bias occurring in relation to the level of toner inside the developing assembly is checked by the toner level antenna, and the result is sent to the toner level detection circuit. An AC bias of the same level as the bias applied to the developing cylinder is also sent to the toner level detection circuit as a reference signal.

The toner level detection circuit compares the signal (AC bias level) from the toner level antenna against the reference signal to find out the level of toner.

In the absence of toner, the level of the signal from the toner level antenna will be lower than that of the reference signal.

During copying operation, the DC controller PCB checks the toner signal every 0.25 msec, treating data collected of 100 checks (equivalent of one A4 copy) as a single block. If it finds that the data indicating levels suggesting the absence of toner is 90% or more, it will identify the block in question as indicating the absence of toner.

If six such blocks occur in succession, the absence of toner will be identified, and the Replace Toner Cartridge message will be flashed on the control panel.

The toner signal detected during copying operation is stored in memory on the DC controller PCB, and the data will be retained for accumulation even when the power switch is turned off and on.

All copying operations are prohibited while the Replace Toner Cartridge message is flashed. If the absence of toner is detected during a continuous copying job, the ongoing operation will be stopped when as many as five copies have been made after the detection of the absence of toner.

The Replace Toner Cartridge message will go out when the power switch is turned off and then on, enabling copying operation once again. The level of toner is checked during last rotation executed after copying operation once; if the absence of toner is detected, the message will be flashed once again.

As many as 100 copies may be made after the detection of the absence of toner; however, subsequent copying will be prohibited unless toner has been replenished.

If the cumulative number of copies reaches 100 during a continuous copying job, copying will be stopped thereafter.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

Reference:

When you are turning on the power switch after making 100 copies following the detection of the absence of toner, execute toner stirring mode (about 1 min max.) to find out whether toner has been replenished.

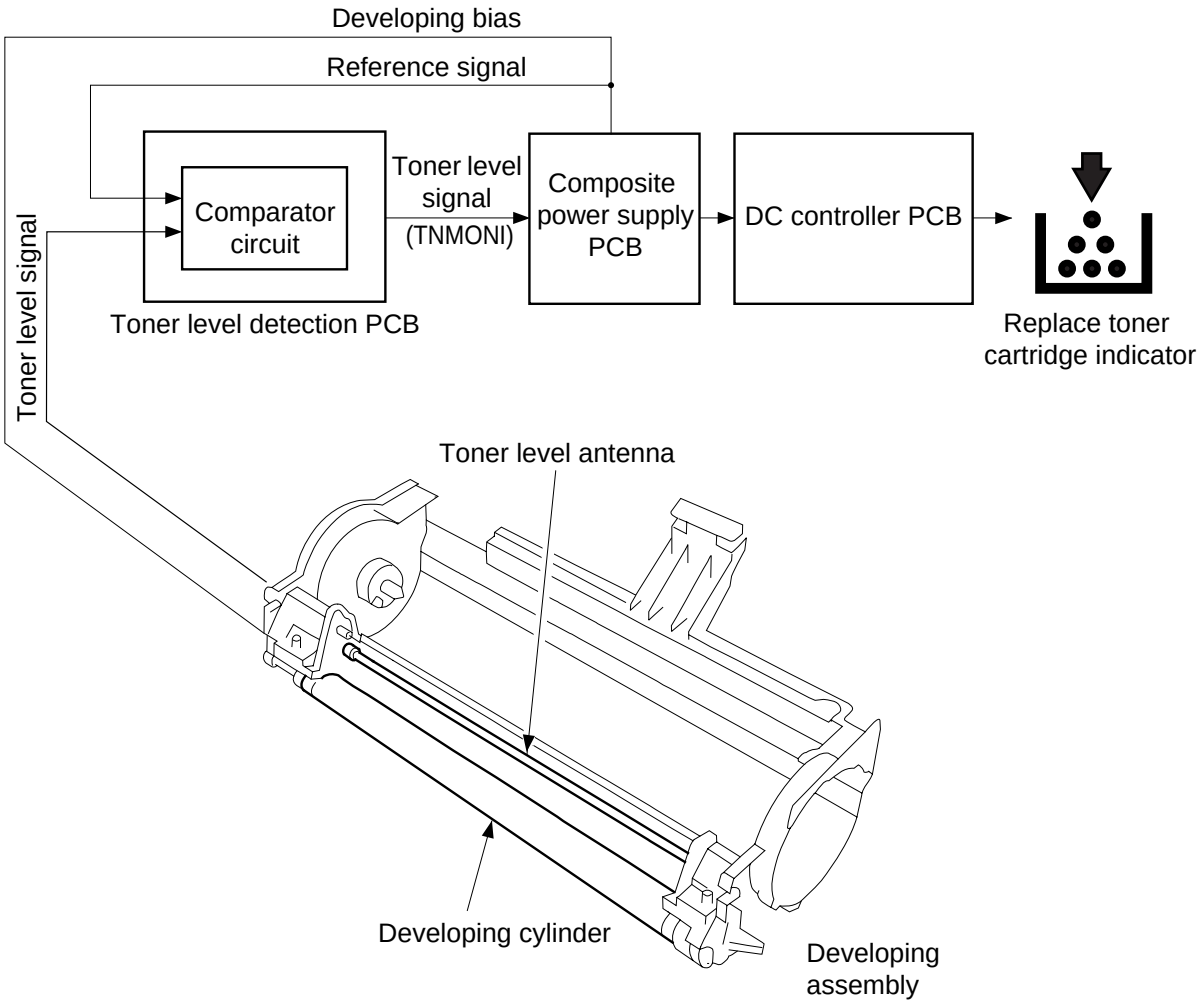


Figure 4-202

C. Detecting Waste Toner

The drive occurring as the result of rotation of the photosensitive drum is transmitted to the drum gear, coupling gear, and waste toner feed blade drive gear in sequence. The waste toner collected by the cleaning blade is sent to the rear of the inside of the drum unit.

The coupling gear is forced against the drum gear and the waste toner feed blade by means of a spring, and serves to transmit the drive from the main motor to the toner feed blade drive gear through the drum gear.

When the inside of the drum unit becomes full of waste toner and, as a result, the rotation of the waste toner feed blade starts to drag, the engagement of the waste toner feed blade drive gear and the coupling gear breaks, moving the detecting lever of the waste toner sensor (PS5). This condition will cause the DC controller PCB to find out that the drum unit is full of waste toner, consequently flashing the Replace Durm Unit message on the control panel.

Copying operation will still be possible even while the Replace the Drum Unit message is flashing. The DC controller PCB does not retain the memory of the level of waste toner, and the message will not come back when the power has been turned off and then on again.

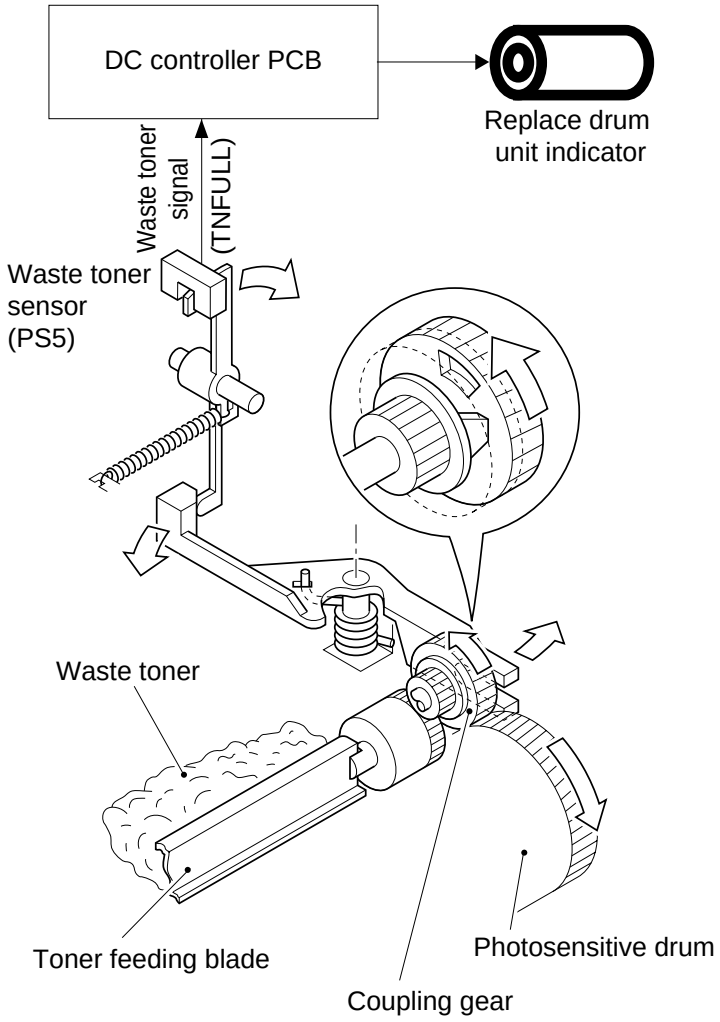


Figure 4-203

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

D. Primary Charging Roller Cleaning Control

1. Outline

The machine is equipped with an automatic cleaning mechanism used to remove toner and paper lint sticking to the primary charging roller.

2. Operations

The primary charging roller is cleaned by turning on the primary charging roller cleaning solenoid (SL6), thereby forcing the cleaning pad against the roller.

The cleaning pad is forced against the roller for about 1.5 sec. While the roller is being cleaned, all other high-voltage outputs are turned off except the developing DC bias (cleaning bias).

Cleaning is executed for the following three independent conditions:

• Condition 1

During last rotation after making 10 copies (cumulative).

For this condition, cleaning is executed only once between when the power is turned on and when it is turned off. The number of copies made after these ten will be stored in memory by the DC controller PCB and added to the number of copies made after the power is turned on next time.

• Condition 2

During last rotation after making 20 copies (cumulative).

For this condition, there is no limit to the number of times cleaning is executed, and the cumulative number is cleared when the power is turned off and then on.

• Condition 3

When user mode ‘U1’ has been executed.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

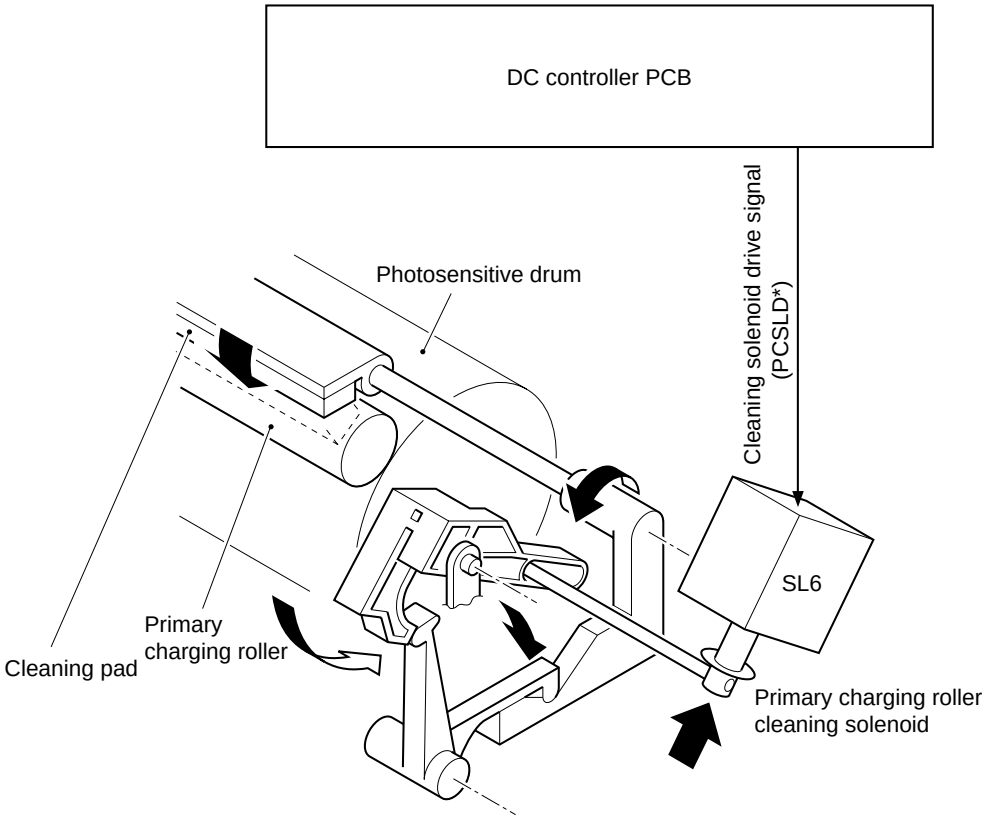


Figure 4-204

3. Timing of Cleaning

• Condition 1

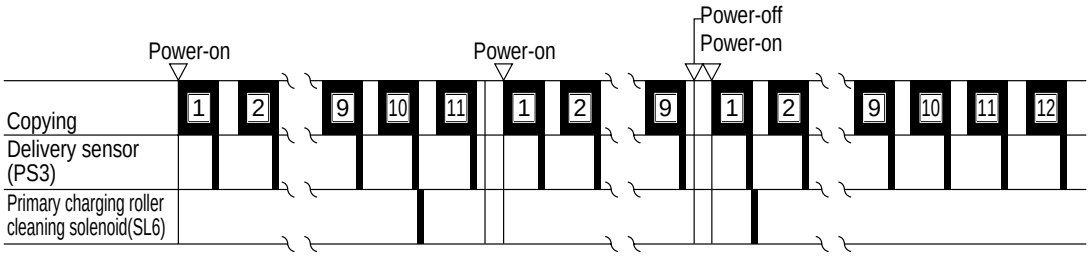


Figure 4-205

• Condition 2

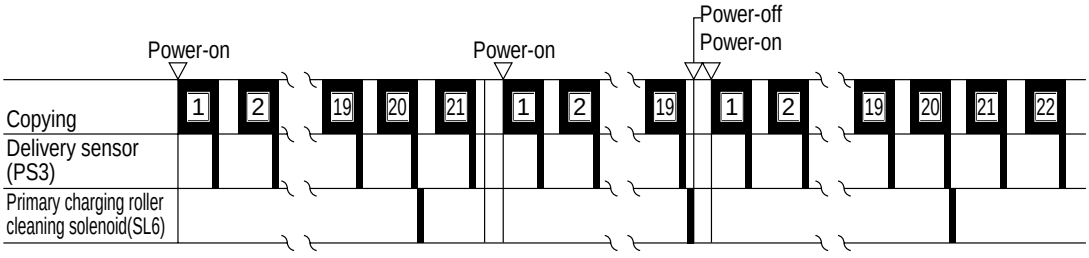


Figure 4-206

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

III. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY

As needed, disassemble/assemble the machine with the following in mind:

1. ⚠ Before starting the work, turn off the power switch and disconnect the power plug for safety.
2. Unless otherwise instructed, assemble the parts by reversing the steps used to disassemble it.
3. Identify the screws by type (length, diameter) and location.
4. Use the washers where necessary. (The screws used to mount the grounding wire and Varistors come with a washer to ensure electrical continuity.)
5. As necessary, cut the harness band.
6. As a rule, do not operate the machine with any of its part removed.
7. A few of the screws used are special screws (with wider thread intervals). Do not use any screws indiscriminately.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

A. Drum Unit

1. Outline

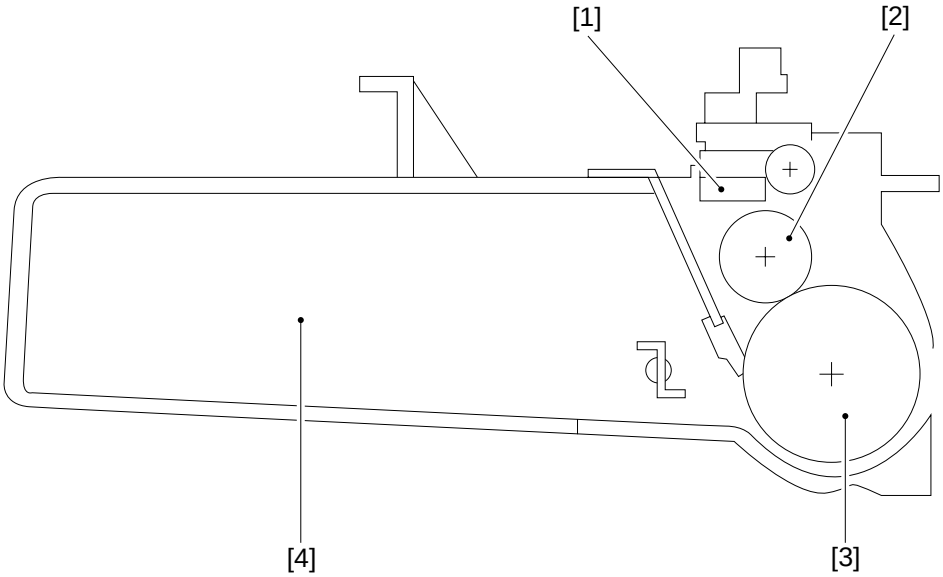


Figure 4-301

[1] Primary charging roller cleaning pad
[2] Primary charging roller
[3] Photosensitive drum
[4] Drum cleaner assembly

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Removing the Drum Unit

1) Open the machine's top unit.
2) Turn the developing locking lever [1] counterclockwise.

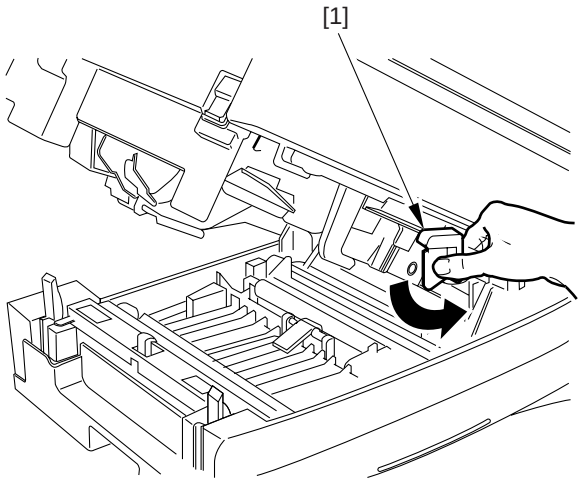


Figure 4-302

3) Turn the fixing lever [2] of the drum unit counterclockwise.

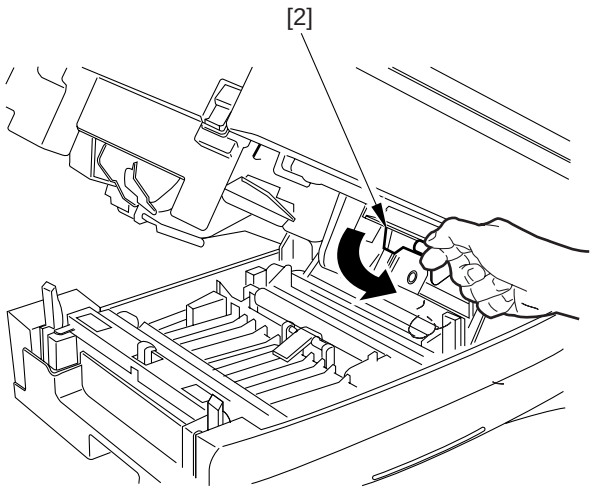


Figure 4-303

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

4) Pull out the drum unit [3] slowly to the front.

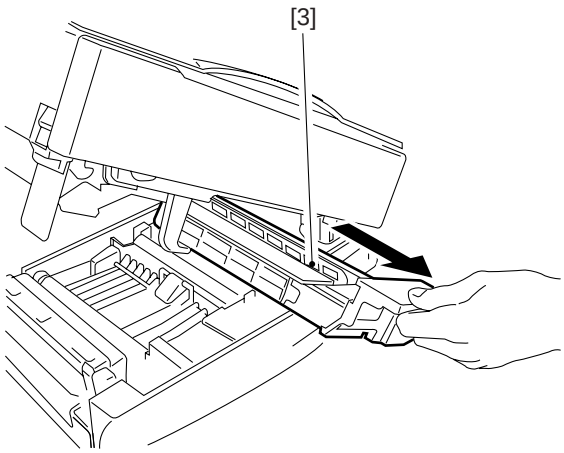


Figure 4-304

Caution:
1. Take care not to damage the photosensitive drum.
2. The photosensitive drum is highly susceptible to light. Exposure even to room light can lead to white spots or black bands on the copies.
3. Do not make a copy without the drum unit installed. Otherwise, excess loads can cause the gears of the drive system to skip teeth, generating abnormal noise.

3. Cleaning

If the surface of the photosensitive drum is soiled, wipe it with a flannel cloth coated with toner. (Do not use paper, lint-free or otherwise.)

Caution:
Do not dry wipe the drum or do not use a solvent.
Do not use drum cleaning powder.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4. After Replacing the Drum Unit

1) Record the date and the counter reading in the label [1] shown in the figure, and attach the label to the front cover of the new drum unit.

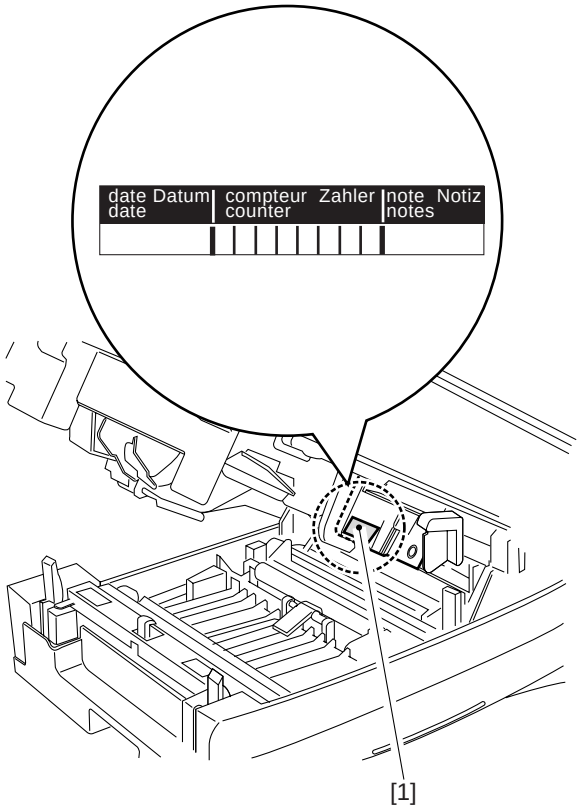


Figure 4-305

2) Execute 'U7', 'installation/drum unit replacement mode', and enter the setting recorded on the service label attached to the drum unit.

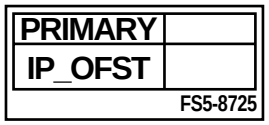


Figure 4-306

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

B. Transfer Charging Assembly

1. Removing the Transfer Charging Roller

1) Open the machine's top unit.
2) Remove the screw [1].
3) While freeing the claw [2] of the bushing, detach the transfer charging roller [3].

Caution:

Do not touch the surface of the roller. Be sure the surface is free of dirt.

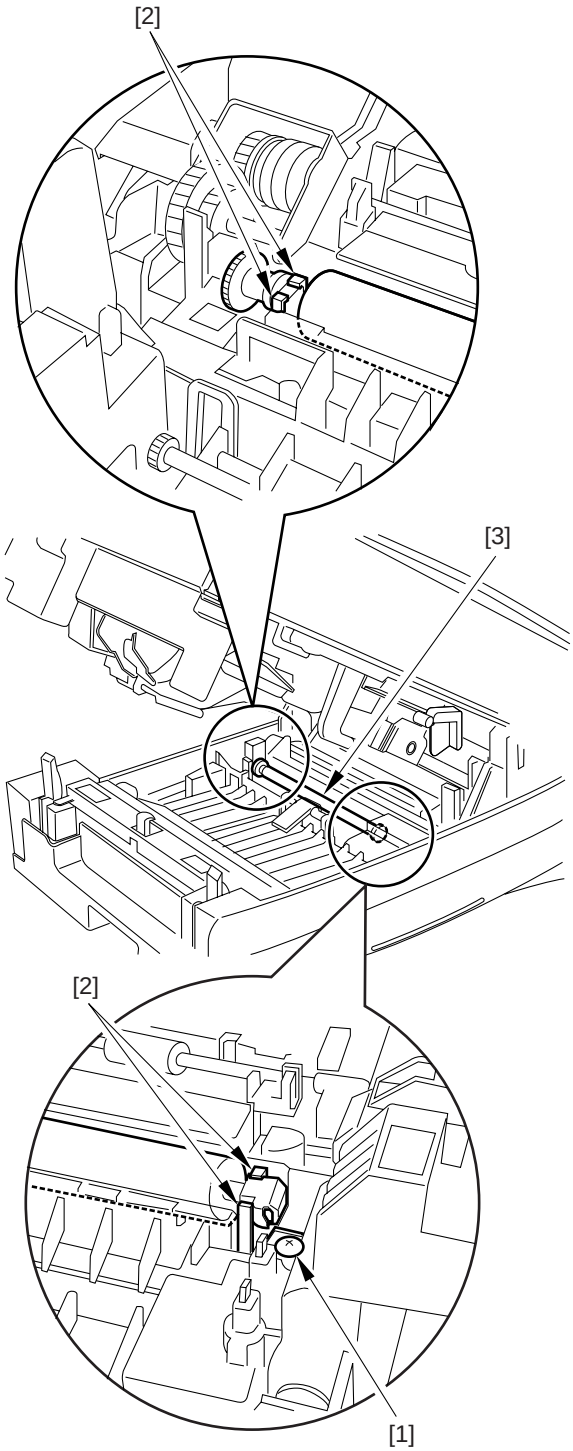


Figure 4-307

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

C. Blank Exposure

1. Removing the Blanking Exposure Unit

1) Set the machine to the maximum ratio (141%) as follows:
   - Turn on the power, and select a default ratio of 141%.
   - Press the Copy Start key.
   - When the lens has moved to the farthest left, turn off the power.
   - Disconnect the power plug.
2) Remove the front lower cover.
   (See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.A.2. “Removing the Front Lower Cover.”)
3) Remove the drum unit.
   (See A.2. “Removing the Drum unit.”)
4) Remove the DC controller PCB.
   (See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.E.1. “Removing the DC controller PCB.”)
5) Remove the composite power supply PCB.
   (See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.E.2. “Removing the Composite Power Supply PCB.”)
6) Remove the two screws [1].

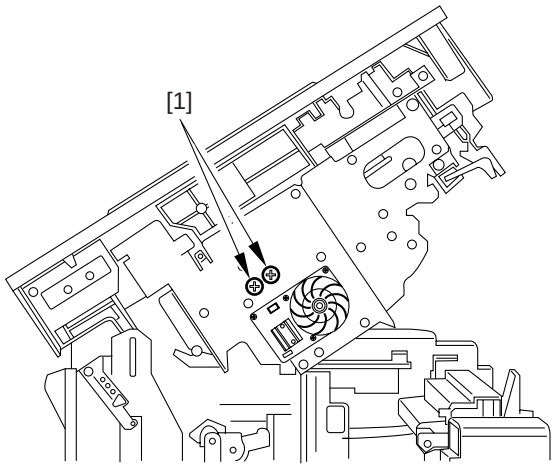


Figure 4-308

7) Remove the developing assembly.
   (See D.2. “Removing the Developing Assembly.”)

8) Open the machine's top unit farther, and hold it in place with the handle of a screwdriver (about 30 mm in diameter).

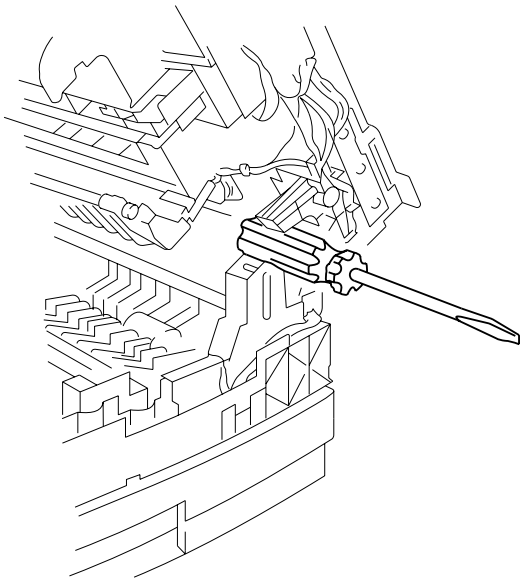


Figure 4-309

9) Remove the four screws [3], and disconnect the connector [4]; then, detach the blanking exposure unit. [5].

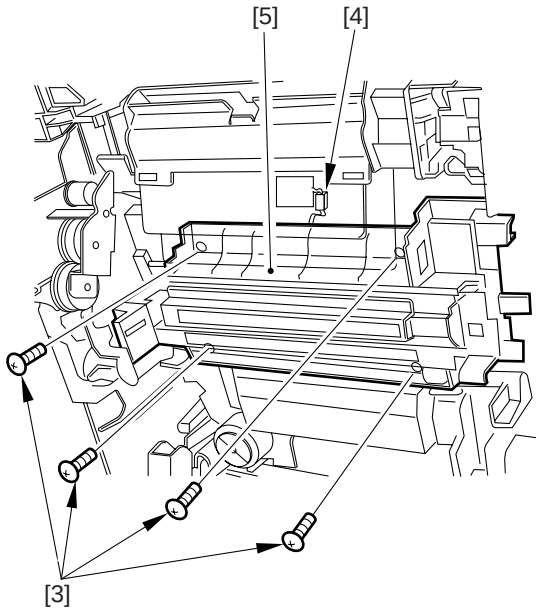


Figure 4-310

Caution:

When mounting the blanking exposure unit, check to make sure that the blanking exposure unit PCBs are at the extreme ends and that the lens is positioned at the farthest left (141% position).

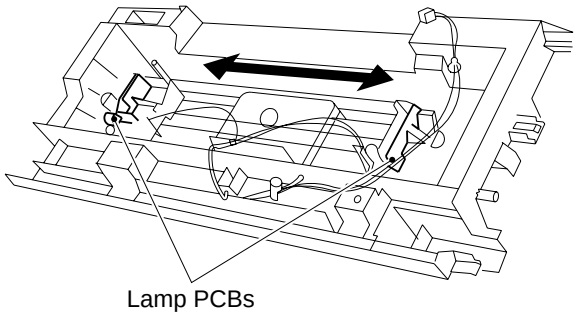


Figure 4-311

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Removing the Pre-Exposure Lamp PCB Unit

1) Remove the drum unit.
(See A.2. “Removing the Drum unit.”)
2) Disengage the two claws [1], and remove the pre-exposure lamp unit [2].

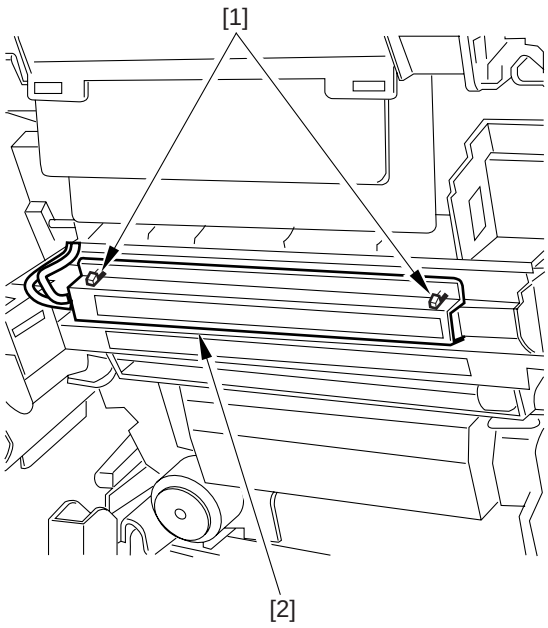


Figure 4-312

3) Remove the screw [3], and remove the pre-exposure lamp unit cover [4].

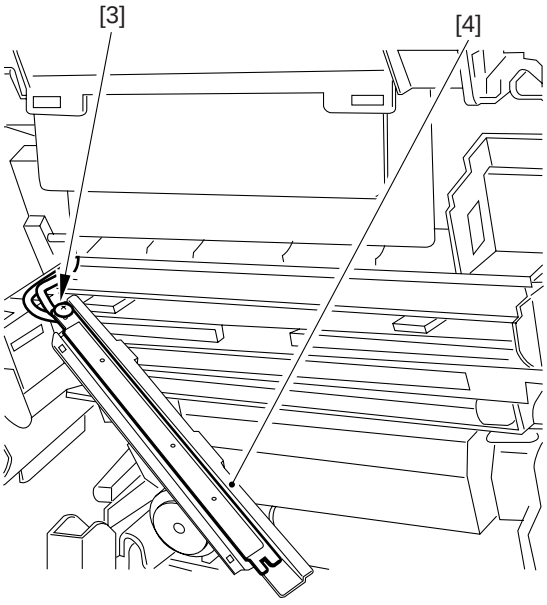


Figure 4-313

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

4) Disconnect the connector [5] (J801), and remove the pre-exposure lamp PCB unit [6].

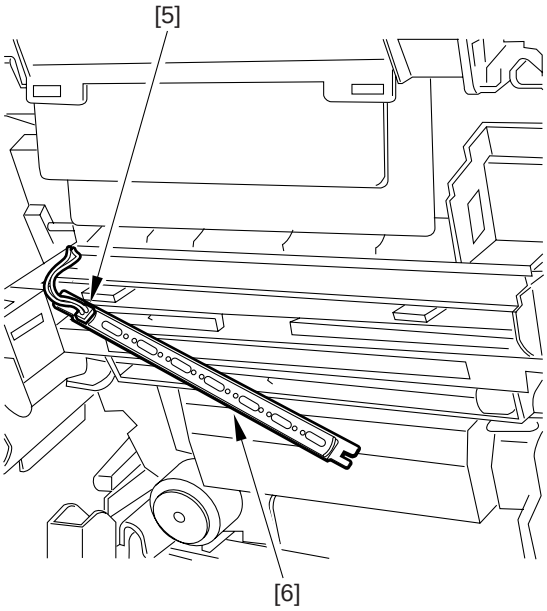


Figure 4-314

Caution:

Perform the following whenever you have replaced the pre-exposure lamp PCB unit.

1) Enter the setting recorded on the service label attached on the back of the PCB using '37' of service mode.

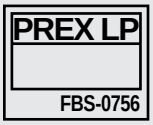


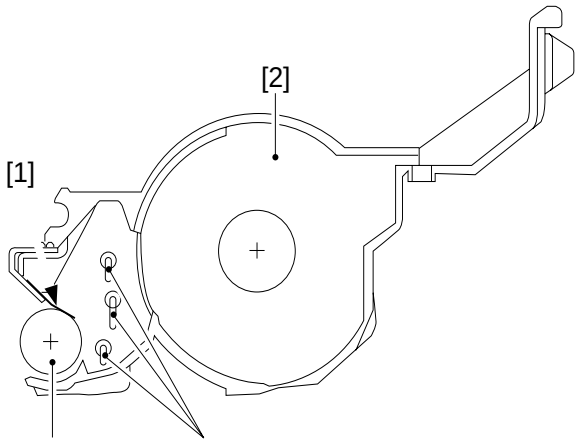
Figure 4-315

2) After entering the setting, execute 'U7' in user mode.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

D. Developing Assembly

1. Construction



[1] Blade [3] Stirring rod
[2] Hopper assembly [4] Developing cylinder

Figure 4-316

2. Removing the Developing Assembly

1) Open the machine's top unit, and remove the two screws [1]; then, remove the front upper cover [2].

Caution:

The flexible cable for the control panel is connected to the front upper cover; disconnect the flexible cable from the DC controller.

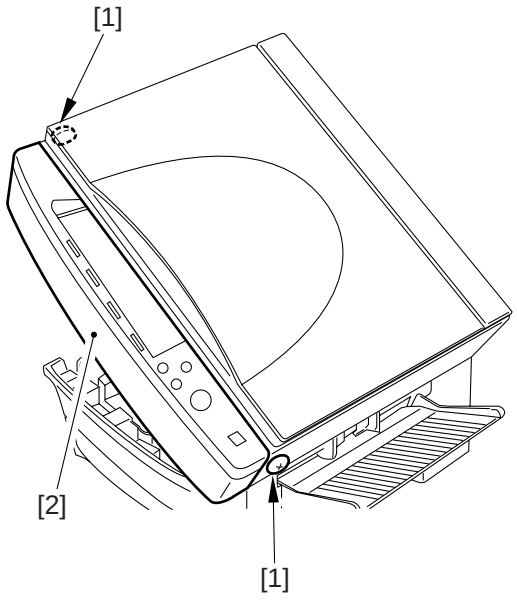


Figure 4-317

2) Remove the drum unit.
(See A.2. “Removing the Drum unit.”)
3) Turn the toner cartridge [3] clockwise.

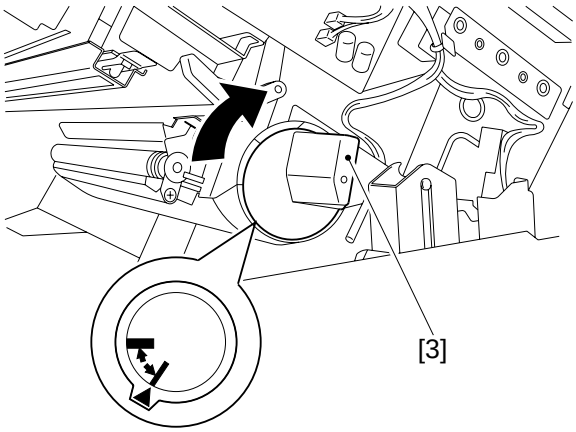


Figure 4-318

4) Put a hand under the developing assembly [4], and turn the locking lever [5] counter-clockwise.
• Turning the locking lever disengages the developing assembly.

Caution:
Take care not to touch the developing cylinder.

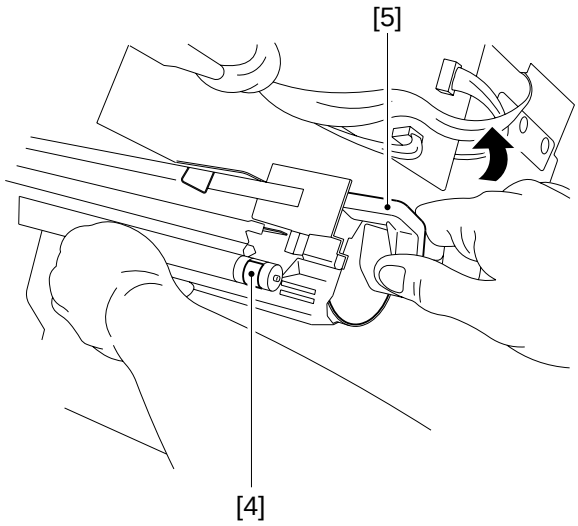


Figure 4-319

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3. Installing the Developing Assembly

1) Insert the hook [1] of the developing assembly into the hole [2] the machine's top unit.

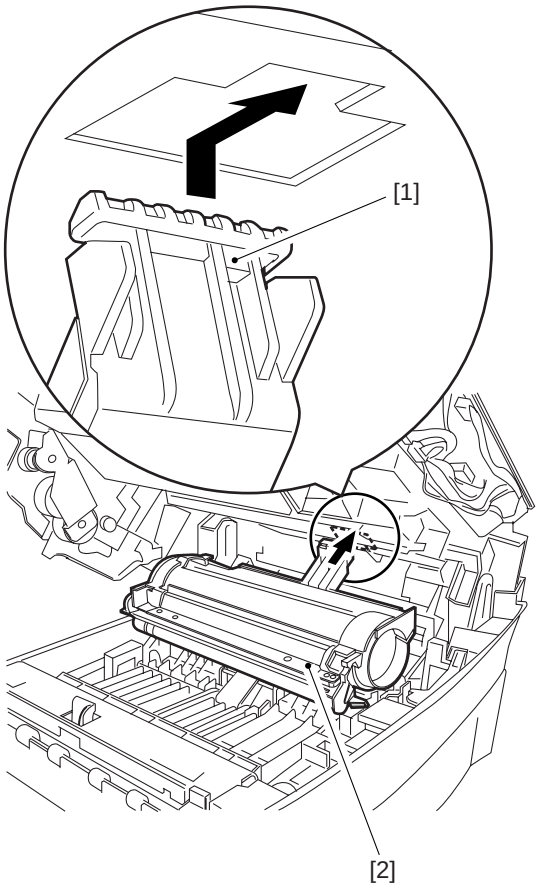


Figure 4-320

2) While working as in step 1), lift the developing assembly and butt the groove [4] of the developing assembly against the hooks [3] at the rear and the front.

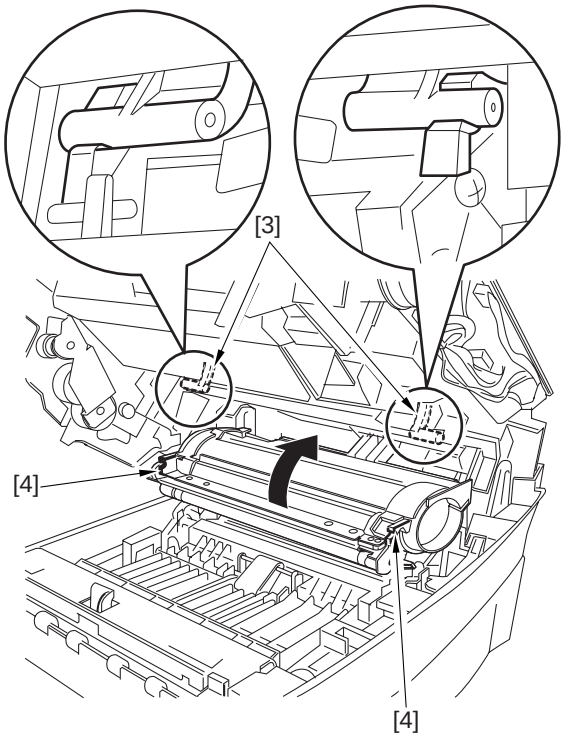


Figure 4-321

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

3) While working as in step 2), turn the locking lever [5] clockwise for a single notch.
   • The developing unit will be fixed in position while it remains unlocked.

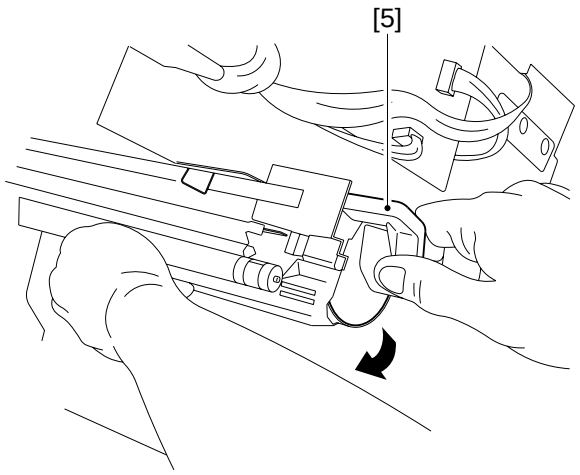


Figure 4-322

4. Removing the Developing Cylinder

1) Remove the developing assembly.
   (See D.2. “Removing the Developing Assembly.”)
2) Turn the toner cartridge [1] clockwise, and pull it out slowly toward the front.

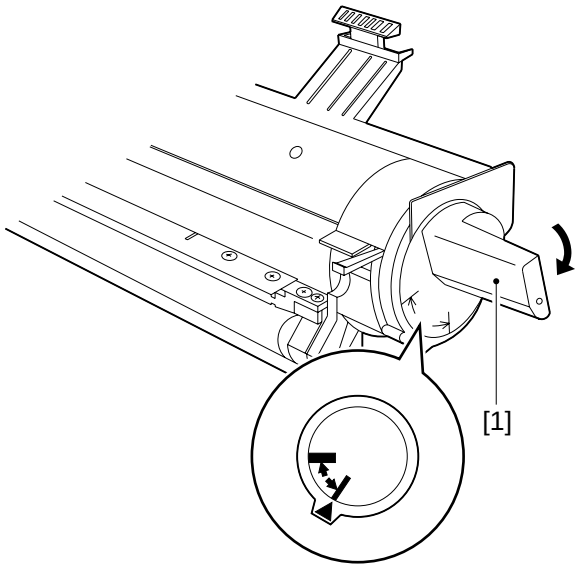


Figure 4-323

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3) Clean the area around the toner cartridge you have removed.

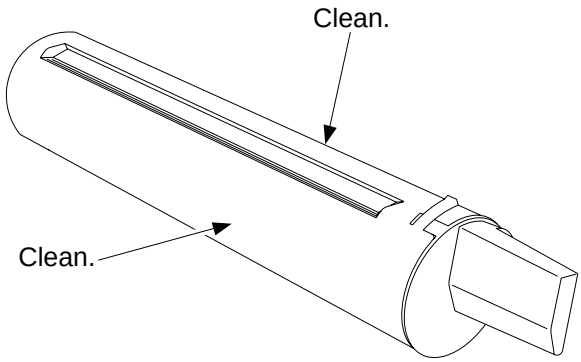


Figure 4-324

4) Remove the five screws [2], and remove the cover [3].

Caution:

Take care not to damage the developing cylinder and the blade when removing the cover.

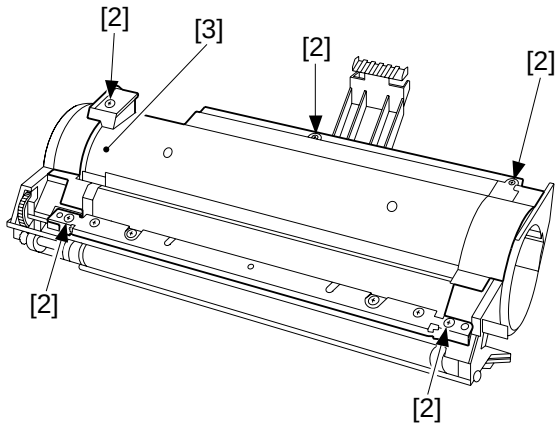


Figure 4-325

5) Place a newspaper on the floor, and pour out the toner from the developing cylinder.

6) Remove the two screws [4], and remove the gear support plate [5] from the rear.

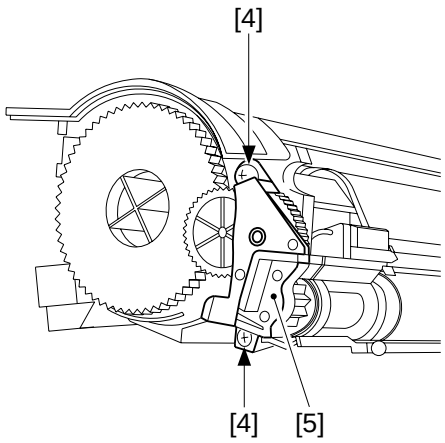


Figure 4-326

7) Remove the two screws [6], and remove the developing cylinder support plate [7] at the front.

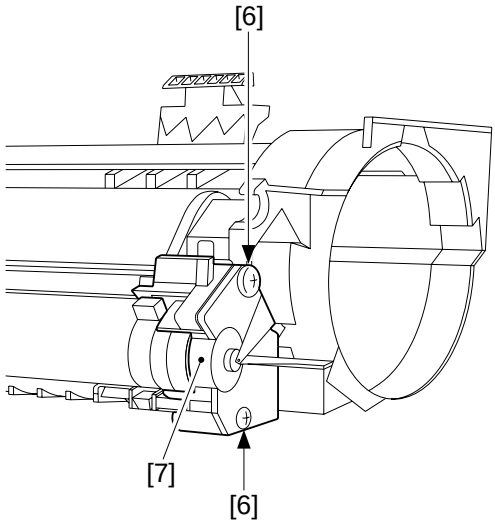


Figure 4-327

8) Remove the gear [8], gear [9], bearing [10], and spacer [11]; then, remove the developing cylinder [12].

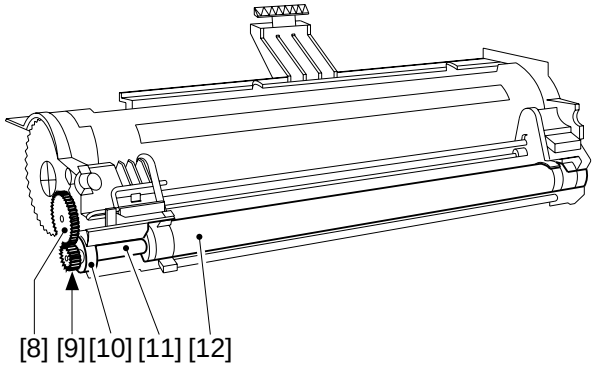


Figure 4-328

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5. Points to Note When Installing the Developing Cylinder

a. Clean the compartment in the developing assembly used to store the toner cartridge.

b. Do not leave fingerprints or oils on the surface of the developing cylinder. If necessary, dry wipe the surface with lint-free paper.

c. When installing the developing assembly cover, perform the following:

1) Apply a thin coating of toner on the blade [1] with a flannel cloth.

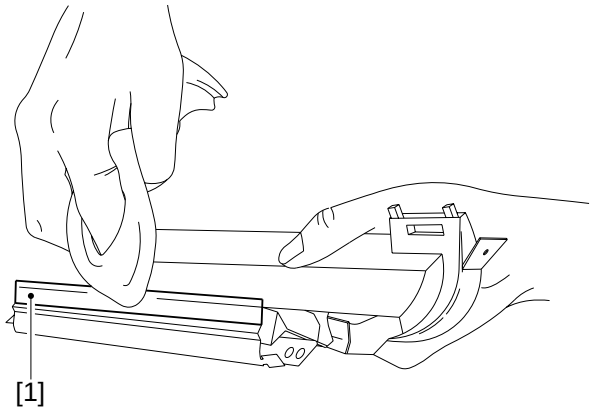


Figure 4-329

2) Install the developing assembly cover, and tighten the five screws lightly; then, tighten the screws in the order shown in the figure.

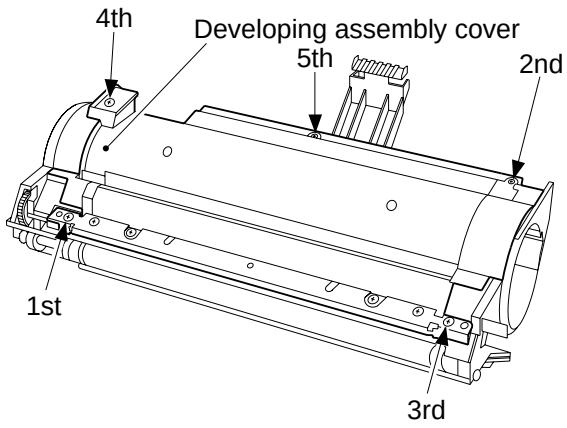


Figure 4-330

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

3) Turn the drive gear [4] slowly in the direction shown in the figure to give the developing cylinder a full turn.

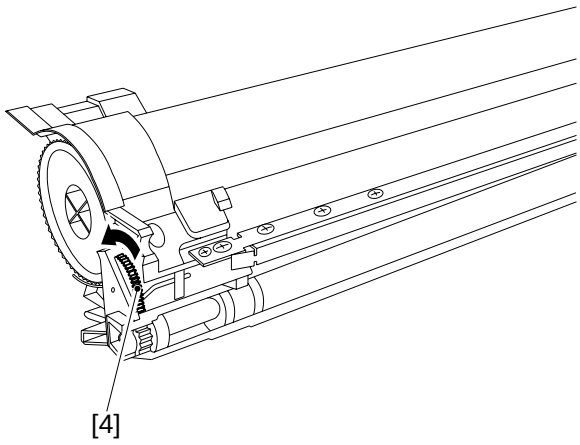


Figure 4-331

6. Points to Note When Installing the Drive Gear

a. Assemble the gears so that all three stirring rods [1] face the same direction.

Caution:

If any of the stirring rods does not face the same direction, the interference among the rods can prevent stirring operation.

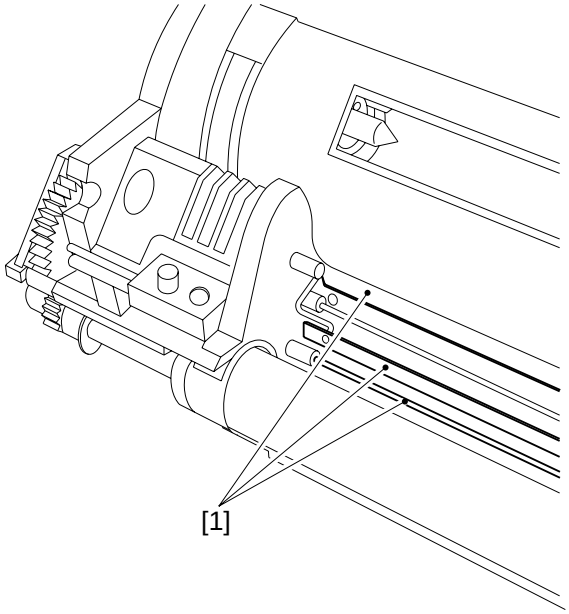


Figure 4-332

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

CHAPTER 5

PICK-UP/FEEDING SYSTEM

This chapter explains the principles used from when copy paper is picked up to when a copy is delivered in view of the functions of electrical and mechanical units and in relation to their timing of operation. It also shows how these units may be disassembled/assembled and adjusted.

I. PICKUP/FEEDING SYSTEM 5-1
- A. Outline 5-1
- B. Controlling the Pickup Roller 5-2
- C. Controlling the Movement of Paper 5-6
- D. Detecting Jams 5-8

II. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY 5-13
- A. Pickup Assembly 5-14
- B. Multifeeder Assembly 5-21
- C. Feeding Assembly 5-24
- D. Registration Roller Assembly 5-25
- E. Delivery Assembly 5-30

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

I. PICKUP/FEEDING SYSTEM

A. Outline

The machine moves paper using a center reference method, in which paper is moved in the middle of the pickup/feeding path, and is equipped with a cassette, and multifeeder as the source of paper.

From the cassette, or multifeeder, copy paper is picked up and is controlled by the registration roller so that its leading edge will match the leading edge of the image on the photosensitive drum; it is then moved through the transfer, separation, feeding, and fixing assemblies to reach the copy tray.

The machine is equipped with three sensors used to monitor the movement of copy paper.

Notation	Name	Remarks
PS3	Delivery sensor	
PS4	Vertical path roller paper sensor	
Q751	Pre-registration roller paper sensor	

Table 5-101

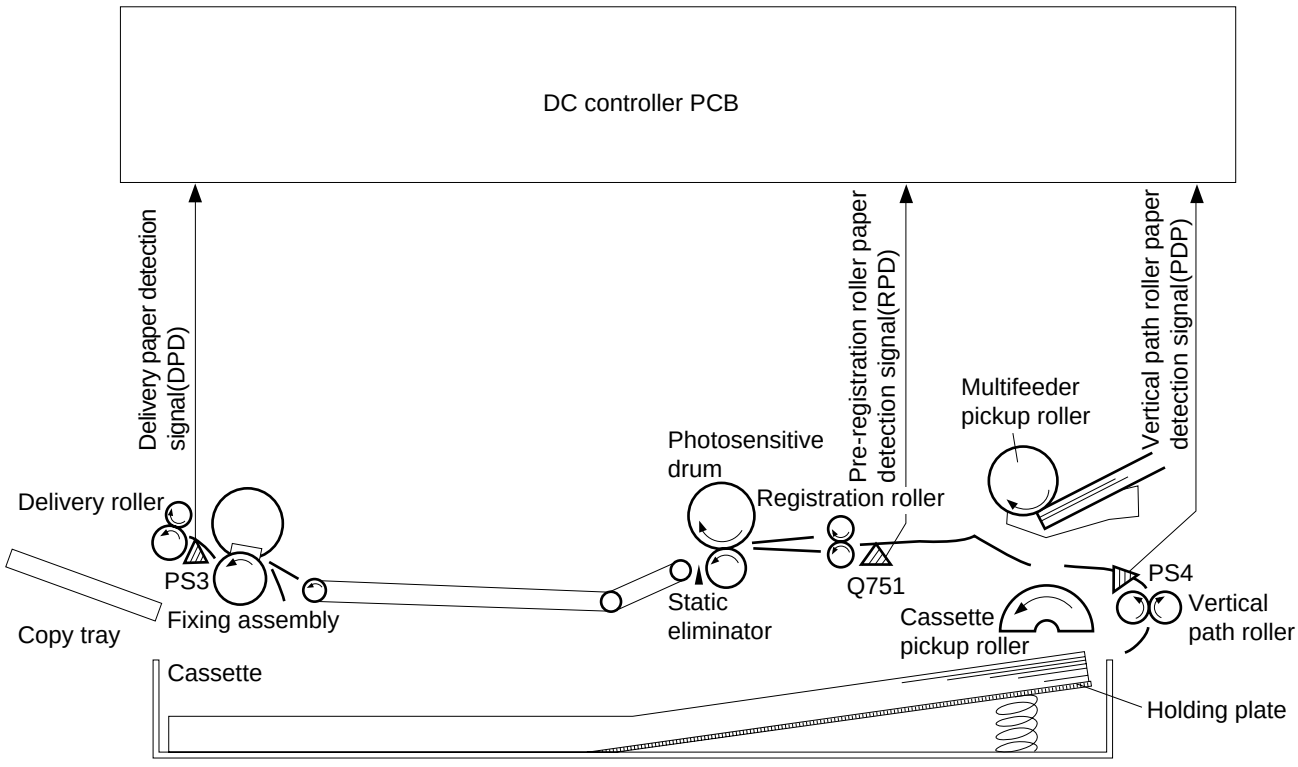


Figure 5-101

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

B. Controlling the Pickup Roller

1. Outline

The machine has two types of pickup rollers, i.e., cassette pickup roller, and multifeeder pickup roller, and each of these rollers are operated by the drive of the main motor switched by means of a gear unit. (In other words, only one roller is driven at any one time.)

2. Controlling the Cassette Pickup Roller

The cassette pickup roller is controlled by a spring clutch, control ring, pickup clutch solenoid (SL1), and cassette pickup solenoid (SL5).

When the pickup clutch solenoid turns on, the claw moves away from the control ring, allowing the drive to move to the pickup gear assembly through the spring clutch. Then, when the cassette pickup solenoid turns on, the drive reaches the cassette pickup roller.

When the cassette pickup roller starts to rotate, copy paper is picked up from the cassette and is sent as far as the registration roller by way of the vertical path roller. The registration roller controls paper so that its leading edge will match the leading edge of the image on the photosensitive drum.

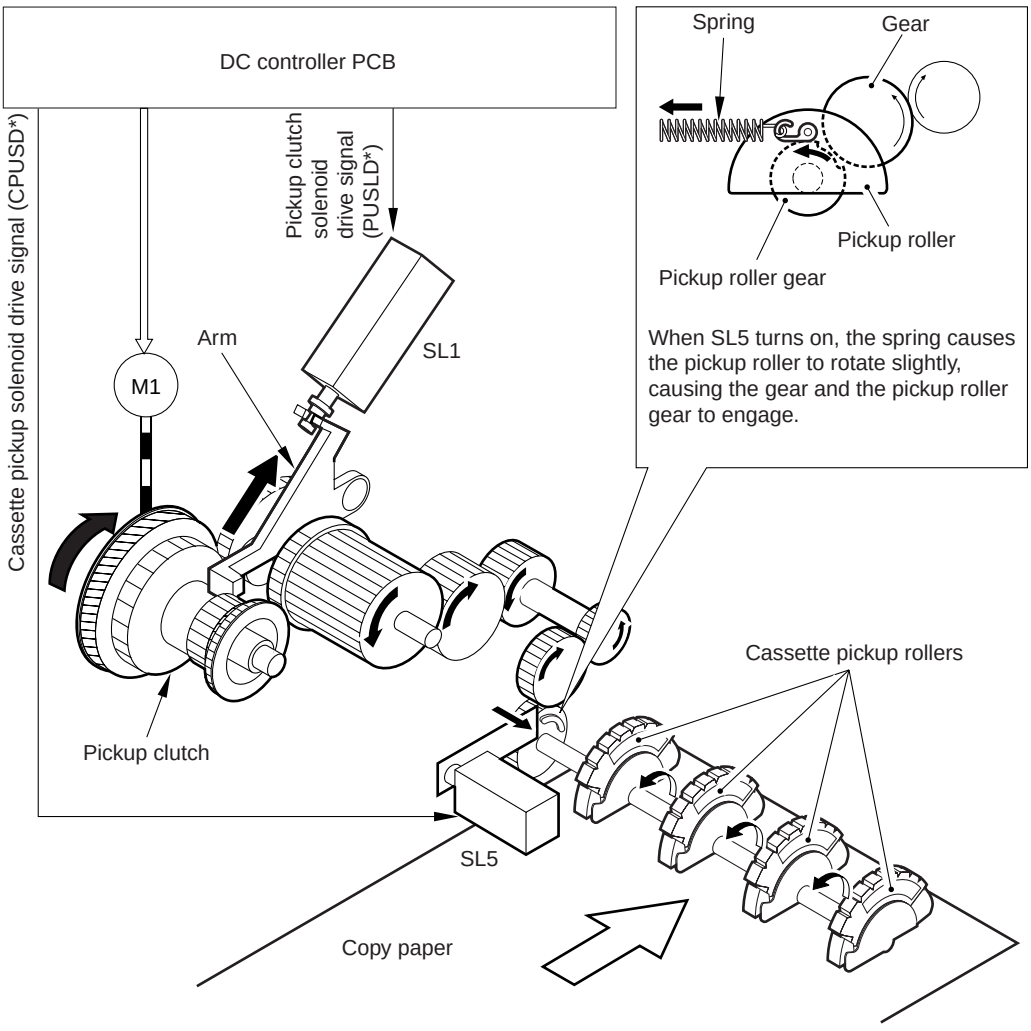


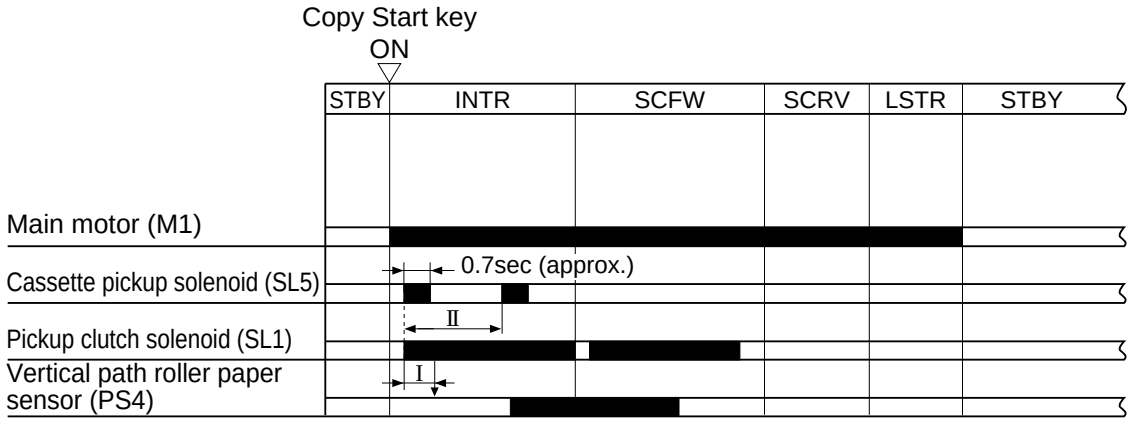
Figure 5-102

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3. Re-Pickup (cassette pickup)

If the vertical path roller paper sensor (PS4) does not detect copy paper within a specific period of time after the cassette pickup roller has started to rotate, the pickup roller is rotated once again to execute pickup operation, thereby ensuring correct pickup (as for recycled paper).

If the vertical path roller paper sensor does not detect copy paper after re-pickup, the machine will assume the absence of copy paper and will indicate "E" in the count/ratio indicator in the control panel. (This mechanism substitutes a paper detecting mechanism.)



I: Re-pickup operation is executed if the vertical path roller paper sensor (PS4) does not detect copy paper within 0.5 sec after the pickup clutch solenoid (SL1) has turned don.

II: The cassette pickup solenoid (SL5) turns on once again about 1.3 sec after the pickup clutch solenoid (SL1) turns on.

Figure 5-103

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

4. Controlling the Multifeeder Pickup Roller

The multifeeder pickup roller is controlled by a spring clutch, control ring, pickup clutch solenoid (SL1), gear unit, and multifeeder pickup solenoid (SL4).

When the multifeeder pickup solenoid (SL4) turns on, the drive of the main motor (M1) reaches the cam gear. When the cam gear starts to rotate in response, the lifter, which is in contact with the cam, moves up the gear unit and, at the same time, pushes down the paper guide plate. The cam gear makes a 180° turn (approximate), and stops at the toothless section.

When the pickup solenoid turns on in this condition, the claw leaves the control ring, and the drive of the main motor (M1) reaches the multifeeder pickup roller.

When the multifeeder pickup roller rotates, paper is picked up and sent as far as the registration roller, which controls the paper so that its leading edge will match the leading edge of the image on the photosensitive drum.

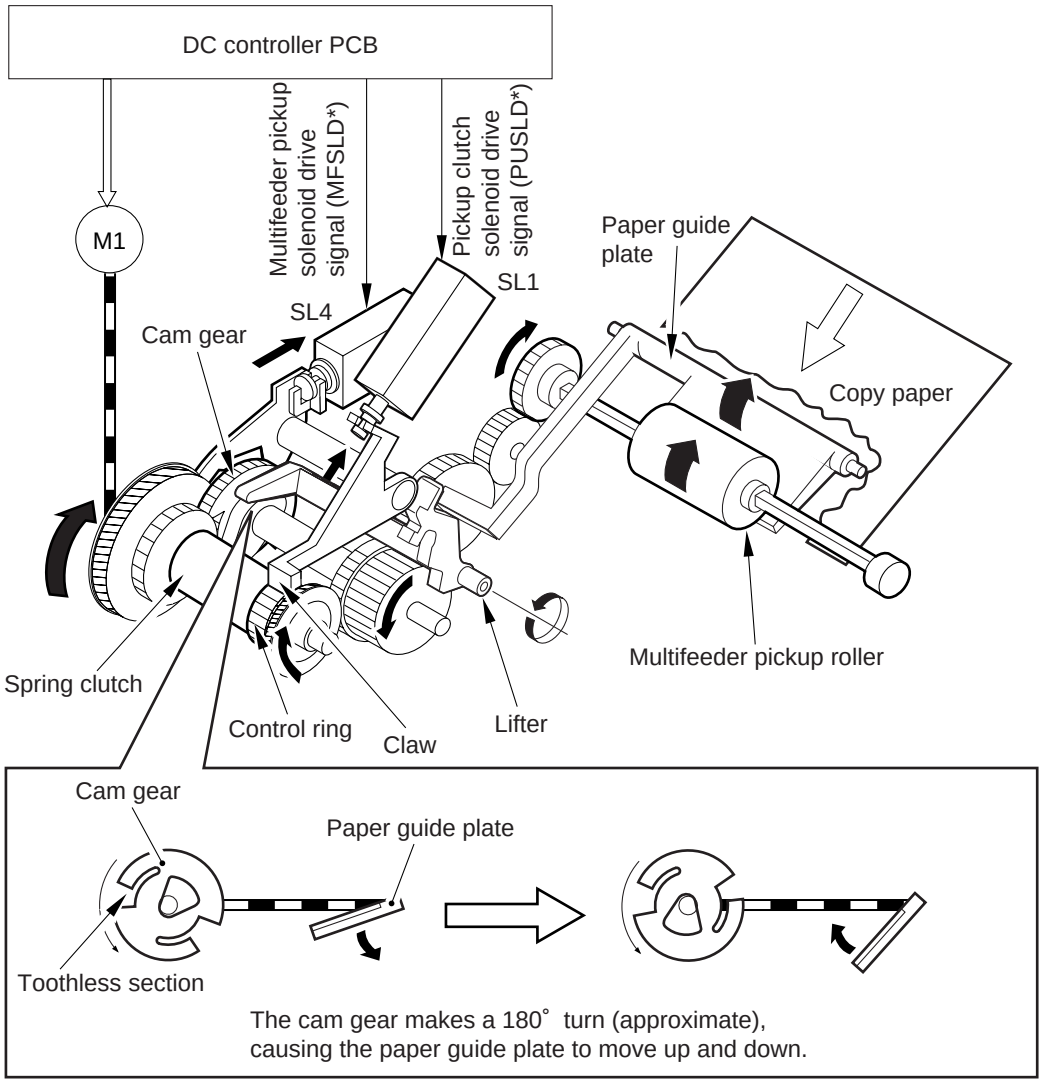


Figure 5-104

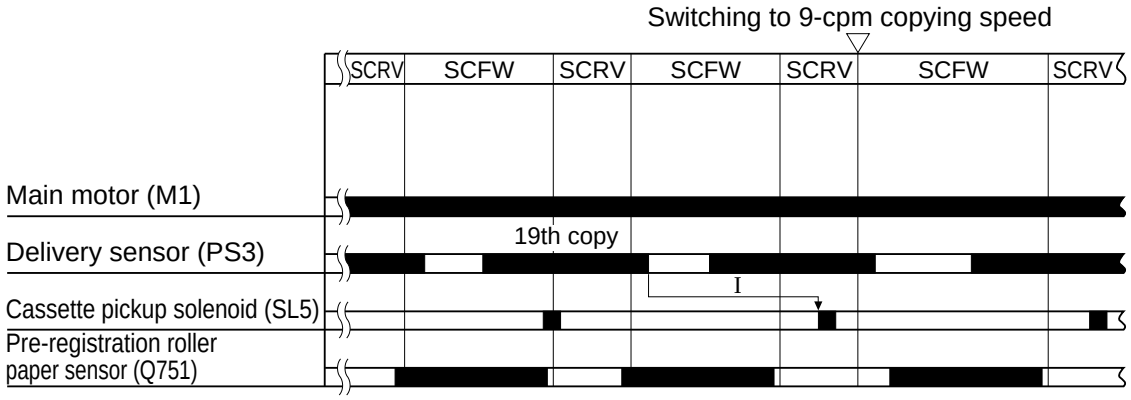
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5. Controlling the Copying Speed in Multifeeder Mode

The machine does not possess a copy paper width detecting function and, therefore, the temperature of the ends of the fixing assembly increases when copies are made continuously on paper narrower than A4/LTR.

When the multifeeder is used for continuous copying, a delay is initiated after picking up the 19th sheet so as to increase the sheet-to-sheet distance for the sheets that follow, controlling the copying speed to 9 cpm.

If the copying speed is controlled (to 6 cpm) by a mechanism to prevent overheating of the copyboard, this control will not be executed, and moreover if the temperature of the copyboard increases during 9-cpm control, 6-cpm control will be initiated.



I: A switch to 9-cpm copying speed is made after delivering the 19th copy in a continuous copying job.

Figure 5-105

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

C. Controlling the Movement of Paper

1. Controlling the Registration Roller

The registration roller is controlled by a spring clutch, control ring, pre-registration roller paper sensor (Q751), and registration clutch solenoid (SL2).

The microprocessor on the DC controller PCB turns on the registration clutch solenoid at a specific timing in response to the paper detection signal from the pre-registration roller paper sensor. When the registration clutch solenoid turns on, the claw will leave the control ring, and the drive of the main motor will reach the registration roller to move the copy paper to the photosensitive drum.

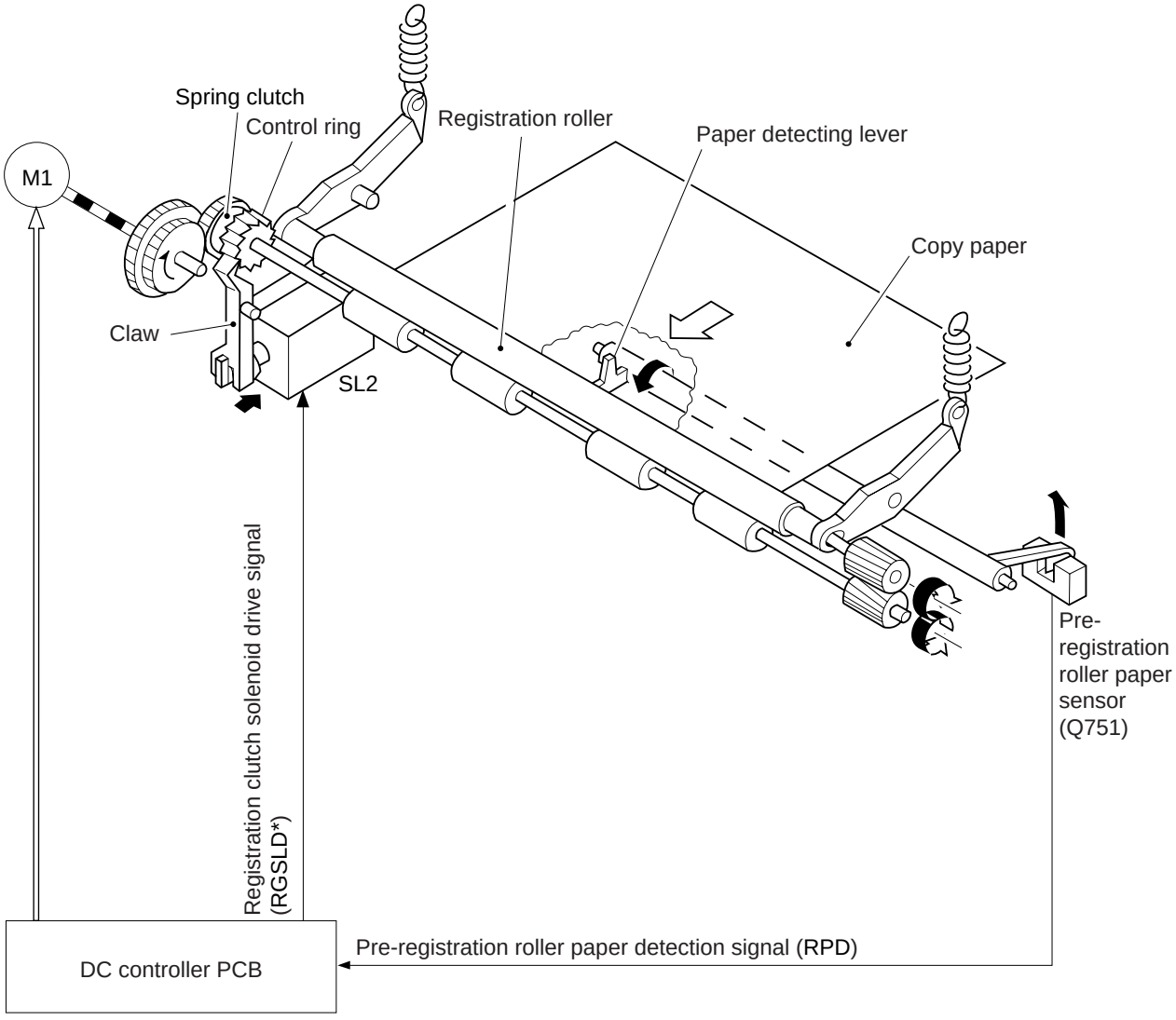


Figure 5-106

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Pickup/Feeding Timing Chart

a. Pickup from the Cassette (A4, 2 copies)

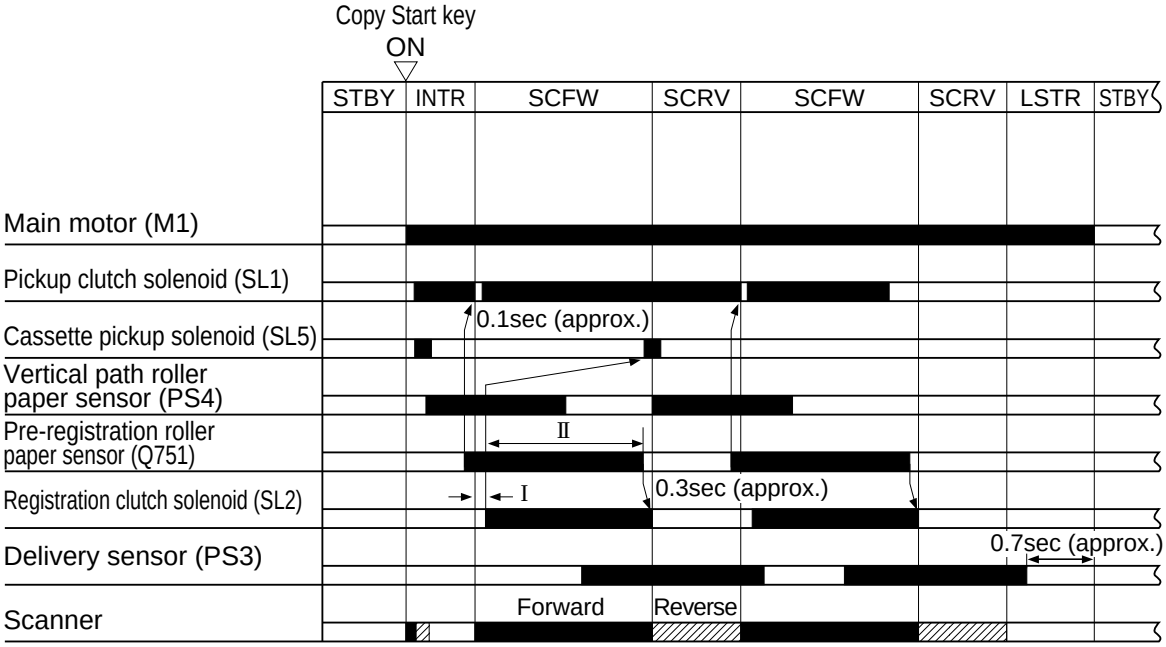
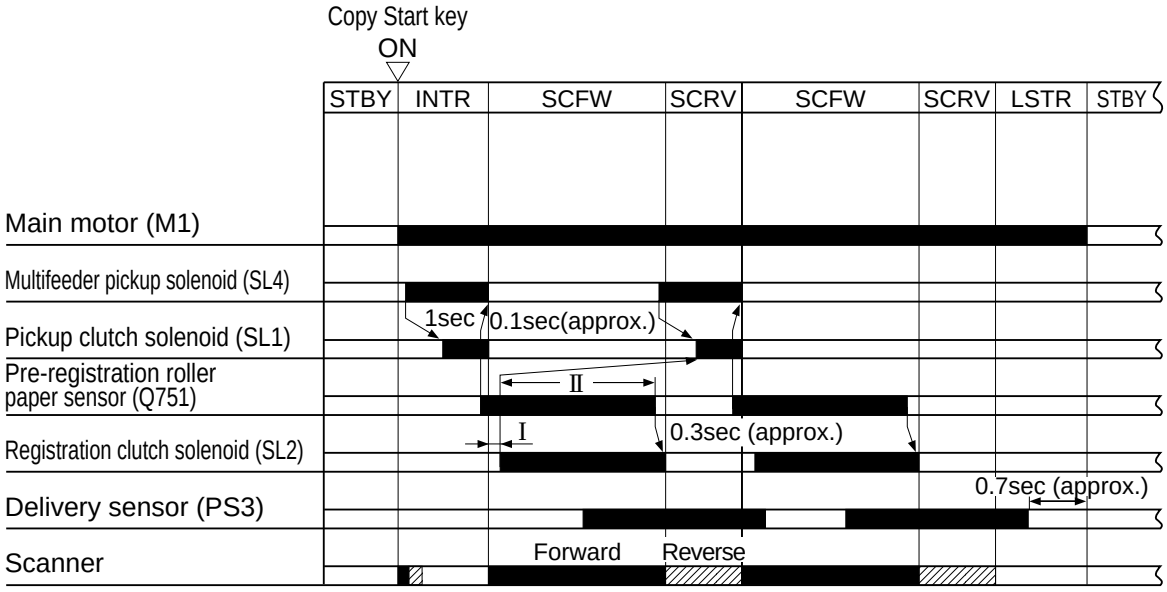


Figure 5-107

b. Pickup from the Multifeeder (A4, 2 copies)



I: Varied by value under '30' of service mode (registration adjustment).

II: Used for measuring the length of copy paper.

length of copy paper (mm) = 96 (mm/s) × II (s) + 11 (mm) -10 (mm)

96 (mm/s): speed at which copy paper is moved.

11 (mm): distance between pre-registration roller paper sensor and registration roller.

10 (mm): length of actuator of the pre-registration roller paper sensor.

Figure 5-108

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

D. Detecting Jams

The machine is equipped with three paper sensors used to find out the presence/absence of copy paper and whether copy paper is moving properly.

- Vertical path roller paper sensor (PS4)
- Pre-registration roller paper sensor (Q751)
- Delivery sensor (PS3)

The presence/absence of a jam is checked with reference to the presence/absence of paper over a specific sensor at such times as programmed in the microprocessor.

The machine keeps a record of the remaining number of copies to make or the copy mode effective at time of a jam.

The microprocessor possesses the following seven types of no paper/jam detection sequence; if any of its sensors detects copy paper at power-on, the machine will identify the condition as a jam.

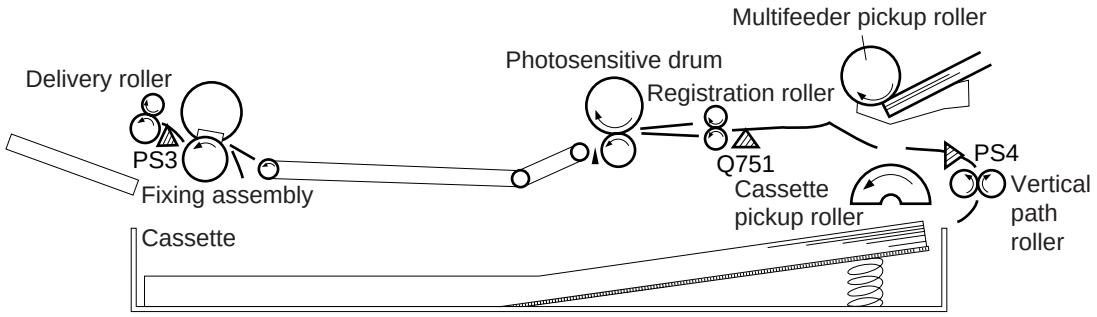


Figure 5-109

1. Multifeeder Pickup Assembly (no paper, pickup delay jam)

If copy paper does not reach the pre-registration roller paper sensor within a specific period of time in multifeeder mode, the condition will be identified as the absence of paper; the machine will stop the main motor in about 1.5 sec, and indicate the Add Paper message.

If the pre-registration roller paper sensor detects copy paper during this 1.5 sec period (approximate), the machine will identify the condition as a pickup delay jam, and flash the Jam indicator.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

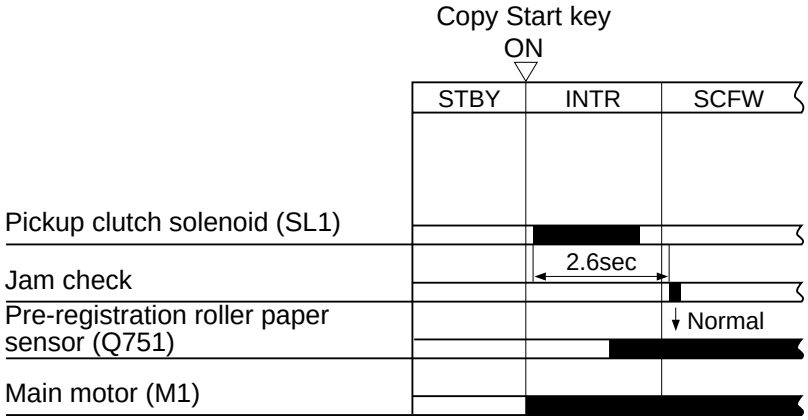


Figure 5-110 (normal)

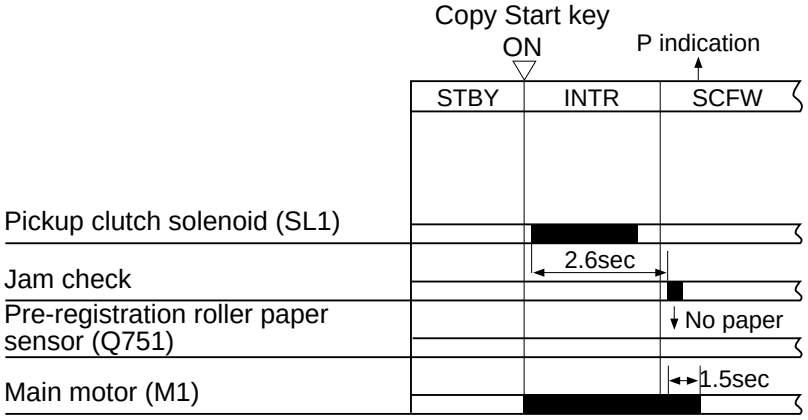


Figure 5-111 (no paper)

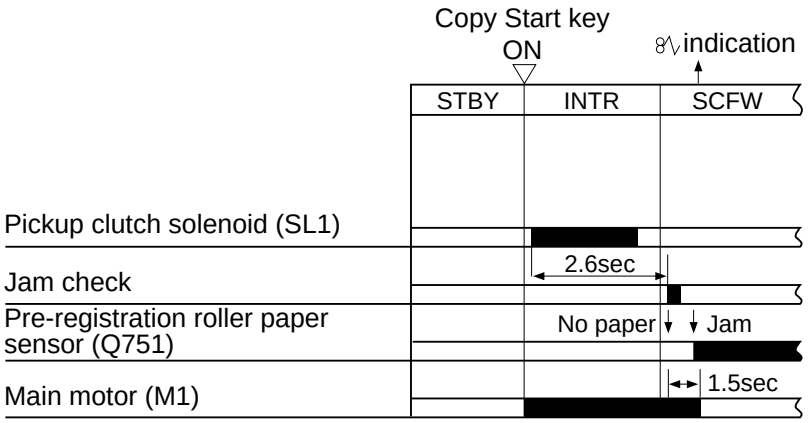


Figure 5-112 (jam)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

2. Absence of Paper in the Cassette Pickup Assembly

When re-pickup operation is executed (from the cassette), the absence of paper will be identified if copy paper does not reach the vertical path roller paper sensor within a specific period of time. In response, the machine will stop the main motor in about 1.5 sec, and indicate the Add Paper message.

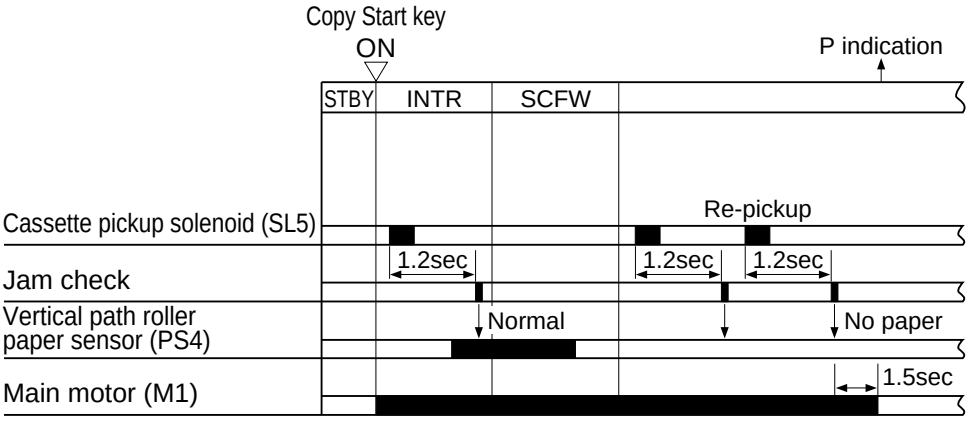


Figure 5-113

3. Vertical Path Stationary Jam

If copy paper fails to move past the vertical path roller paper sensor within a specific period of time because of faulty feeding, the machine will identify the condition as a vertical path stationary jam, stop the operation, and flash the Jam indicator.

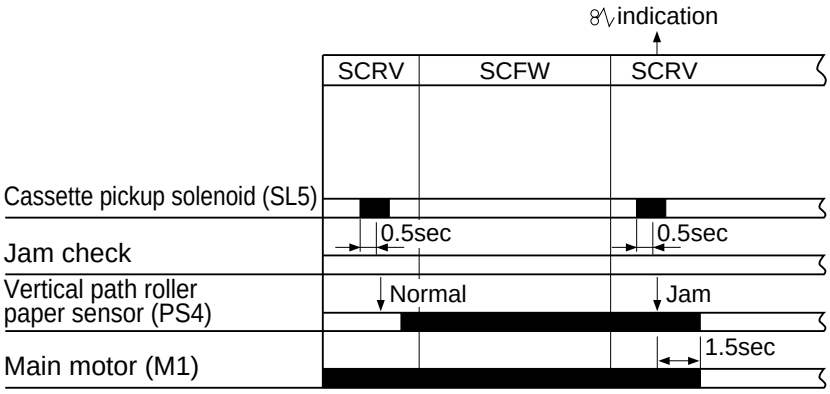


Figure 5-114

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4. Registration Paper Delay Jam

After reaching the vertical path roller paper sensor, if copy paper fails to reach the pre-registration roller paper sensor within a specific period of time, the machine will identify the condition as a registration paper delay jam, stop the operation immediately, and flash the Jam indicator.

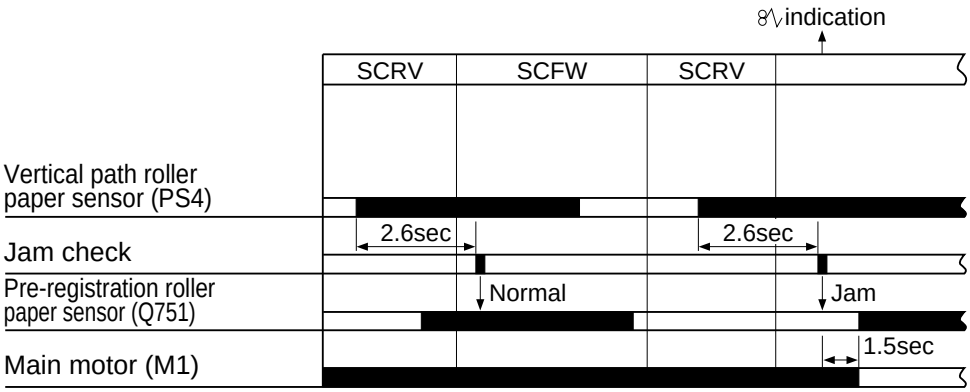


Figure 5-115

5. Registration Paper Stationary Jam

If copy paper does not move past the pre-registration roller paper sensor within a specific period of time because of feeding faults, the machine will identify the condition as a registration paper stationary jam, stop the operation immediately, and flash the Jam indicator.

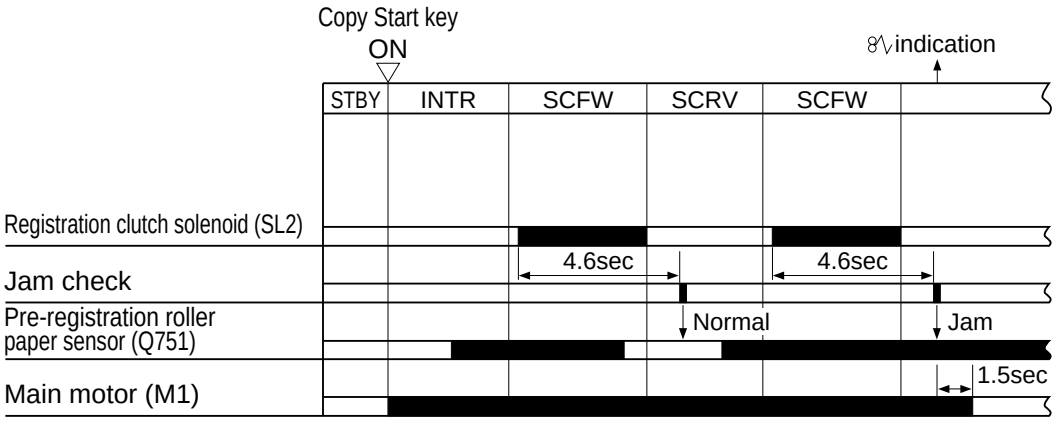


Figure 5-116

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

6. Delivery Delay Jam

If copy paper does not reach the delivery sensor within a specific period of time because of feeding faults, the machine will identify the condition as a delivery delay jam, stop the operation immediately, and flash the Jam indicator.

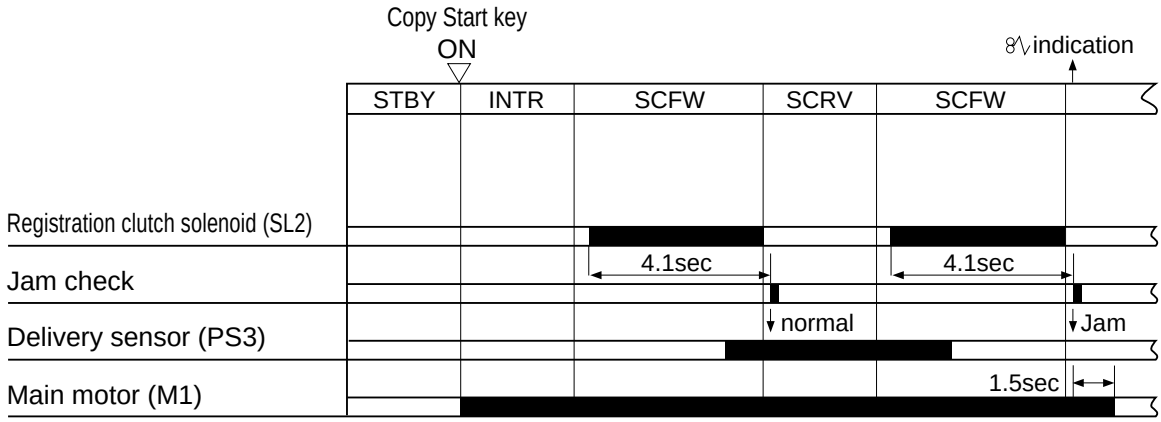


Figure 5-117

7. Delivery Stationary Jam

If copy paper does not move past the delivery sensor within a specific period of time because of feeding faults, the machine will identify the condition as a delivery stationary jam, stop the operation immediately, and flash the Jam indicator.

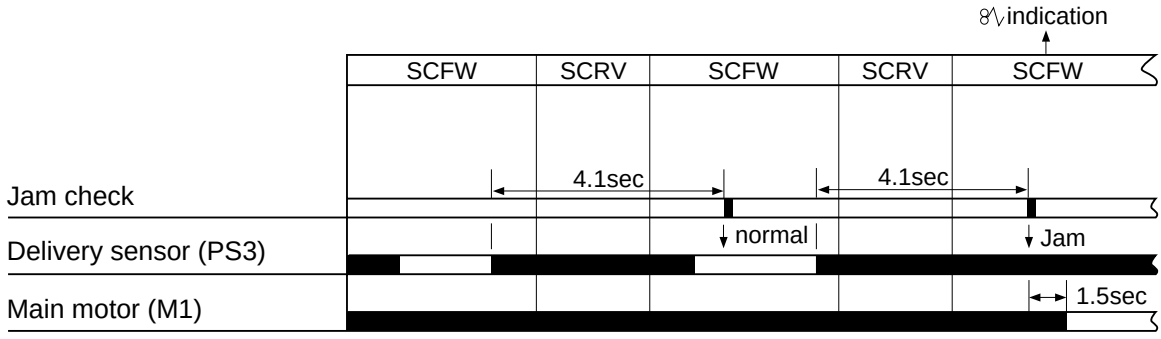


Figure 5-118

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

II. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY

As needed, disassemble/assemble the machine with the following in mind:

1. ⚠ Before starting the work, turn off the power switch and disconnect the power plug for safety.
2. Unless otherwise instructed, assemble the parts by reversing the steps used to disassemble it.
3. Identify the screws by type (length, diameter) and location.
4. Use the washers where necessary. (The screws used to mount the grounding wire and Varistors come with a washer to ensure electrical continuity.)
5. As necessary, cut the harness band.
6. As a rule, do not operate the machine with any of its part removed.
7. A few of the screws used are special screws (with wider thread intervals). Do not use any screws indiscriminately.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

A. Pickup Assembly

1. Removing the Pickup Roller

1) Pull out the casssette.
2) Remove the front lower cover.
   (See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.A.2. “Removing the Front Lower Cover.”)
3) Open the machines' top unit farther, and hold it in place with the handle of a screwdriver (about 30 mm in diameter).

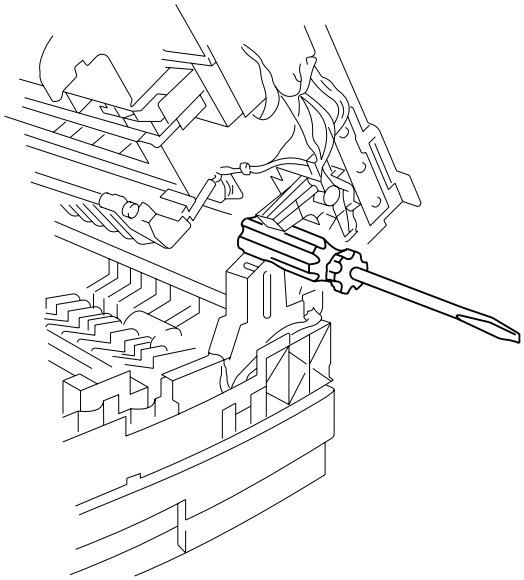


Figure 5-201

4) Remove the screw [1], and free the two claws [2]; then, detach the feeding assembly cover [3].

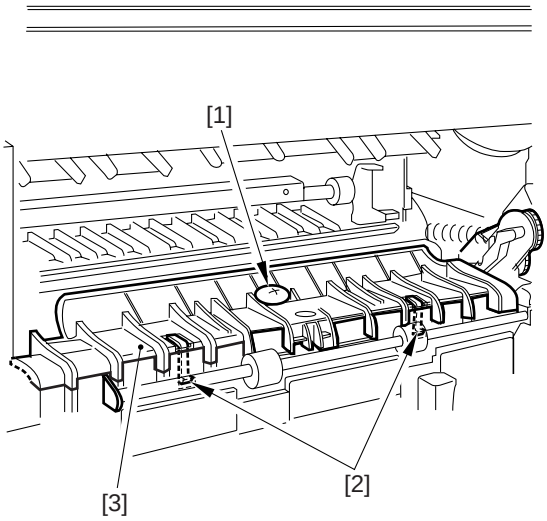


Figure 5-202

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5) While pulling the guide plate [4] of the cassette pickup solenoid in the direction of the arrow, turn the gear [5] slightly in the direction of the arrow to disengage the guide plate [4] and the gear [6].

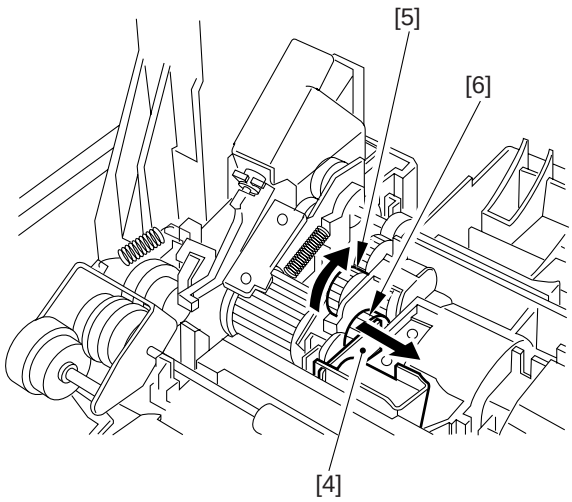


Figure 5-203

6) While pulling the plunger [7] of the pickup solenoid, turn the gear [8] in the direction of the arrow so that the pickup roller [9] is oriented as shown.

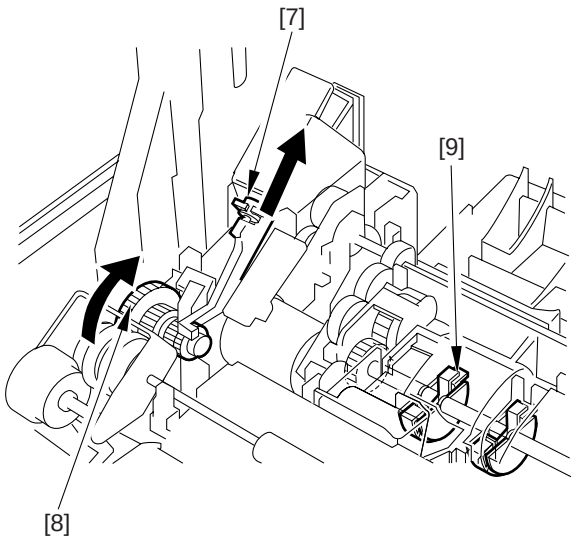


Figure 5-204

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

7) Using a hex wrench or the like, push the hook [10] of the pickup roller through the hole to remove the pickup roller [11].

Caution:
When removing the pickup roller, be sure to push the claw while holding the shaft in place so as to prevent the pickup roller shaft from freeing itself.

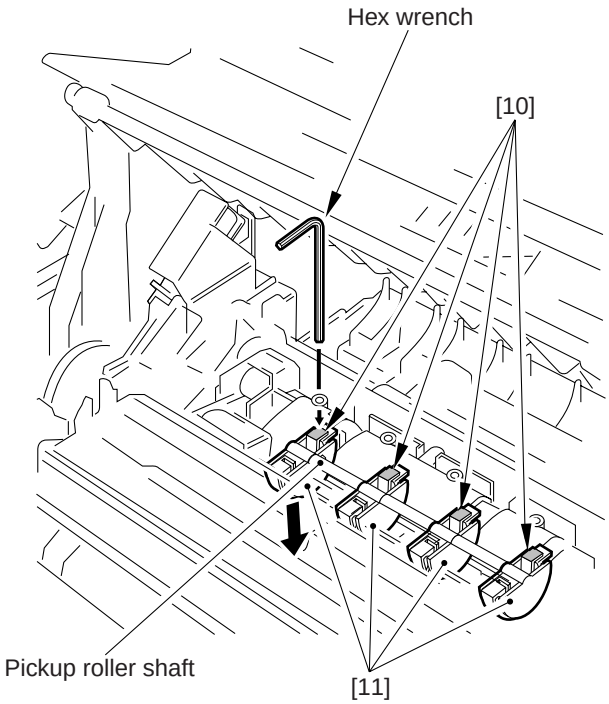


Figure 5-205

Caution:
When mounting the multifeeder unit, perform the next steps first:
1) Turn on the power switch; then, select the multifeeder, and press the Copy Start key.
2) When the pickup gear unit has moved up as far as it can, turn off the power switch.
3) Mount the multifeeder; then, make a copy using the multifeeder.

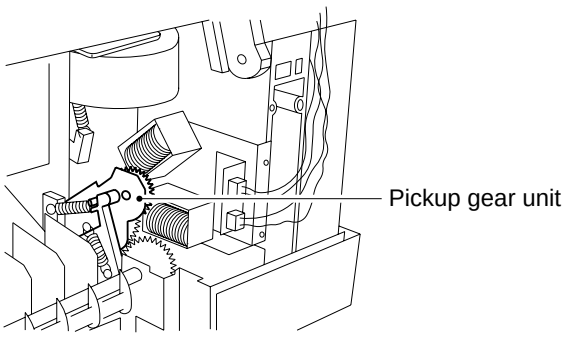


Figure 5-206

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Removing the Pickup Clutch

1) Remove the front lower cover.
(See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.A.2. “Removing the Front Lower Cover.”)
2) Remove the registration roller unit.
(See D.1. “Removing the Registration Roller Unit.”)
3) Open the machine's top unit farther, and hold it in place with the handle of a screwdriver (about 30 mm in diameter).

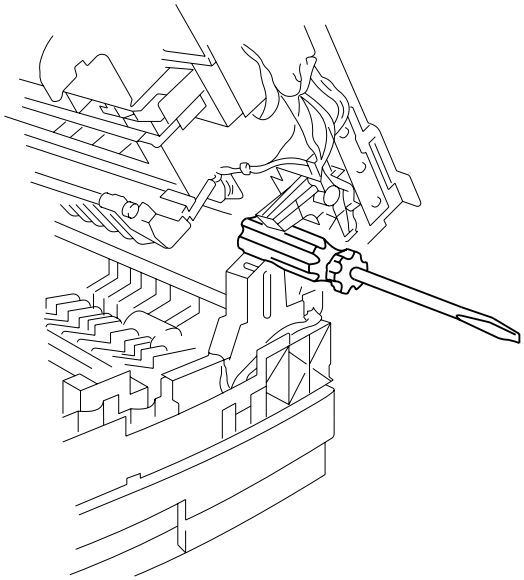


Figure 5-207

4) Disconnect the two connectors [1], and remove the two screws [2] then, detach the solenoid unit [3].

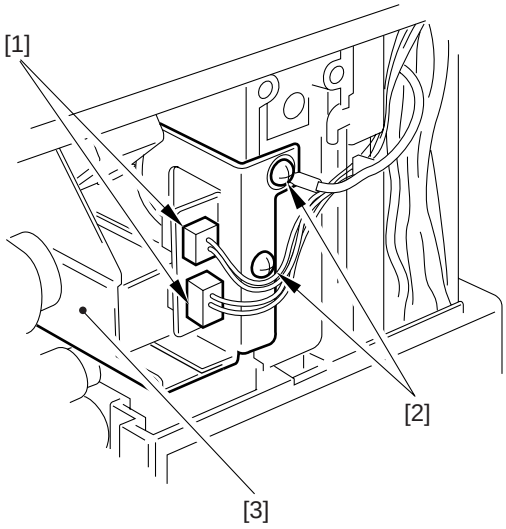


Figure 5-208

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

5) While freeing the two claws [4], remove the pickup clutch unit [5].

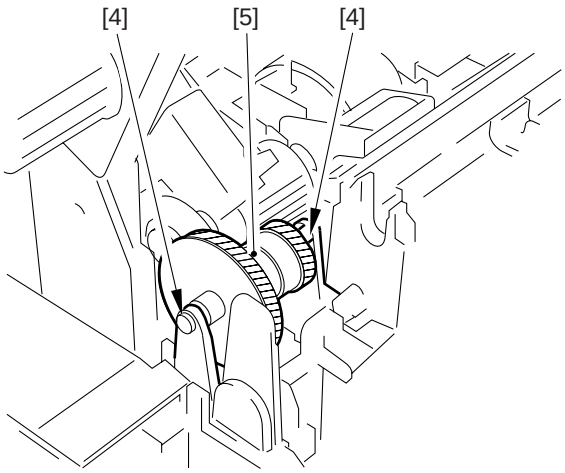


Figure 5-209

6) Remove the E-ring [6], and detach the pickup clutch [7].

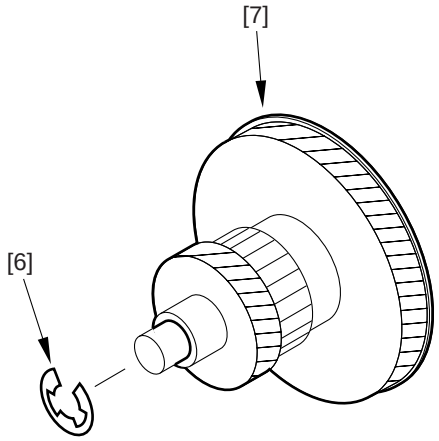


Figure 5-210

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3. Removing the Vertical Path Roller

1) Remove the front lower cover.
(See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.A.2. “Removing the Front Lower Cover.”)
2) Open the machine's top unit farther, and hold it in place with the handle of a screwdriver (about 30 mm in diameter).

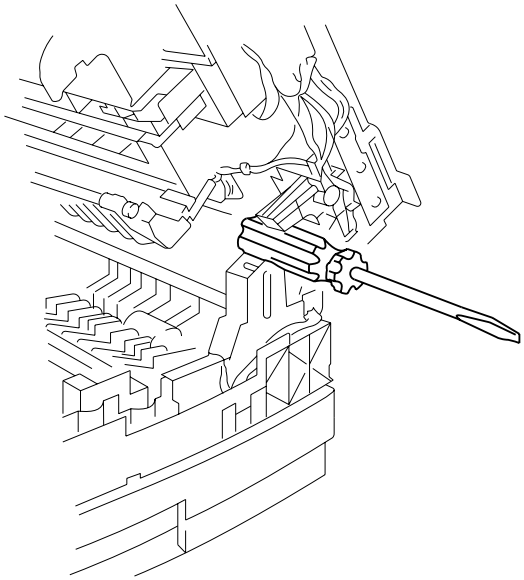


Figure 5-211

3) Remove the screw [1], and free the two claws [2]; then, detach the feeding assembly cover [3].

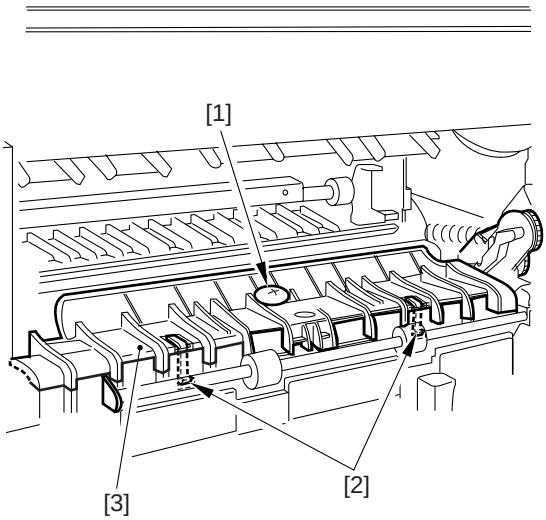


Figure 5-212

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

4) While lifting the sensor lever [4], remove the vertical path roller [5].

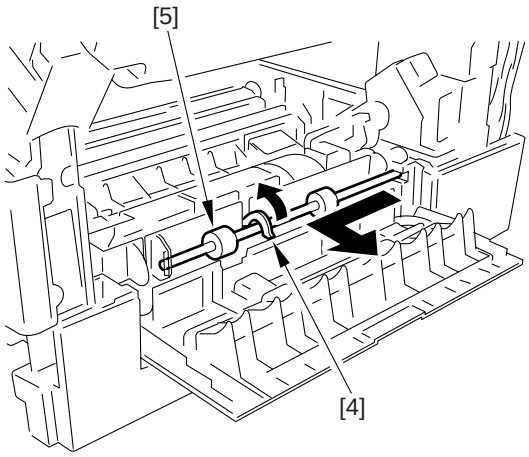


Figure 5-213

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

B. Multifeeder Assembly

1. Removing the Multifeeder Unit

1) Open the right door.
2) Remove the two screws [1], and detach the multifeeder unit [2].

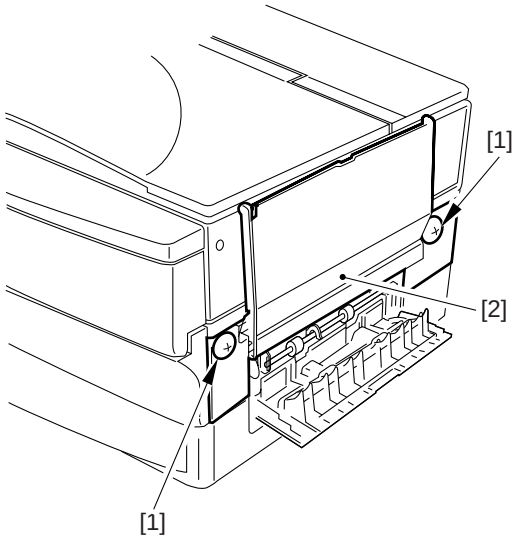


Figure 5-214

Caution:

When mounting the multifeeder unit, perform the following first:

1) Turn on the power switch; then, select the multifeeder, and press the Copy Start key.
2) When the pickup gear unit has moved as far as it can, turn off the power switch.
3) Mount the multifeeder unit; then, make a copy using the multifeeder.

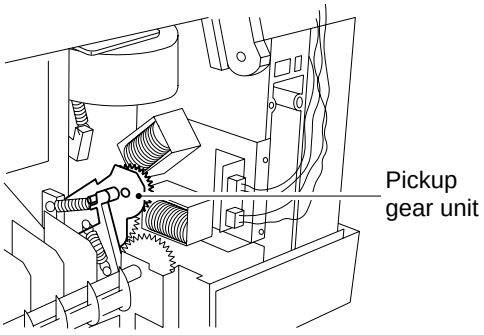


Figure 5-215

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

2. Removing the Multifeeder Pickup Roller

1) Remove the multifeeder unit.
(See 1. “Removing the Multifeeder Unit.”)
2) Free the claw [1], and remove the gear [2] and the bushing [3].

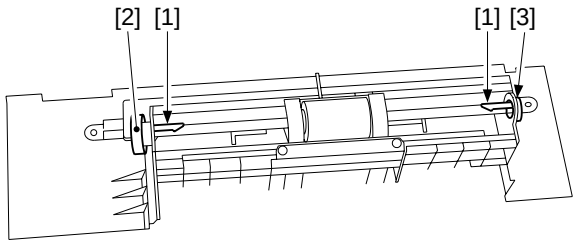


Figure 5-216

3) Remove the multifeeder pickup roller unit [4].

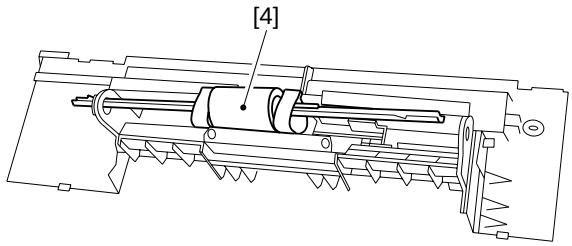


Figure 5-217

4) While freeing the claw [5], detach the multifeeder pickup roller [6].

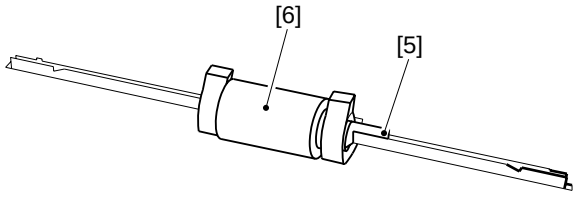


Figure 5-218

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3. Removing the Separation Pad

1) Remove the multifeeder pickup roller together with its shaft.
   (See 2. "Removing the Multifeeder Pickup Roller.")
2) Remove the multifeeder tray.
3) Slide the side guide [1] to the inside about 3 cm, and free the two claws [2]; then, detach the holding plate [3].

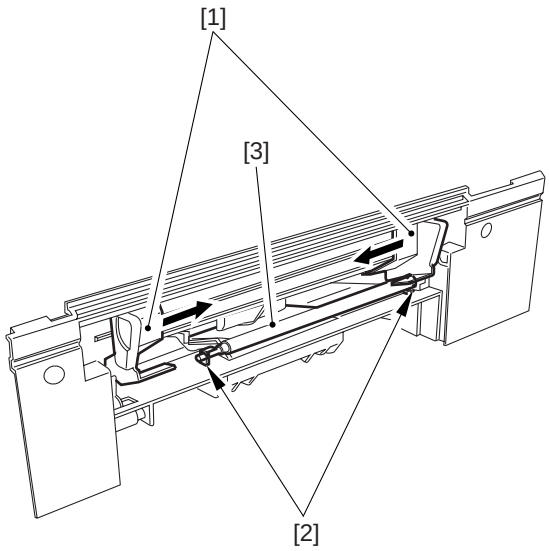


Figure 5-219

4) Push up the separation pad [4], and pull it out by pushing the shaft [5] toward the inside.

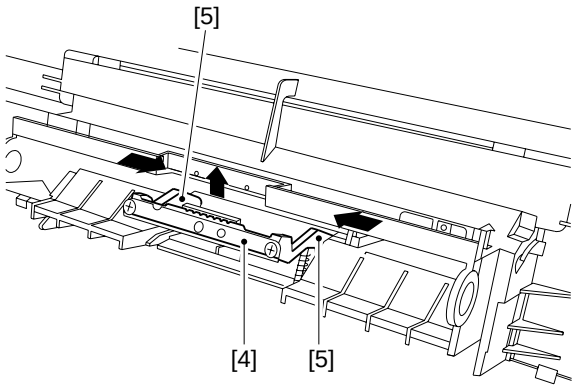


Figure 5-220

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

C. Feeding Assembly

1. Detaching the Feed Belt

1) Open the machine's top unit.
2) Push down the stopper [1], and remove the gear [2].

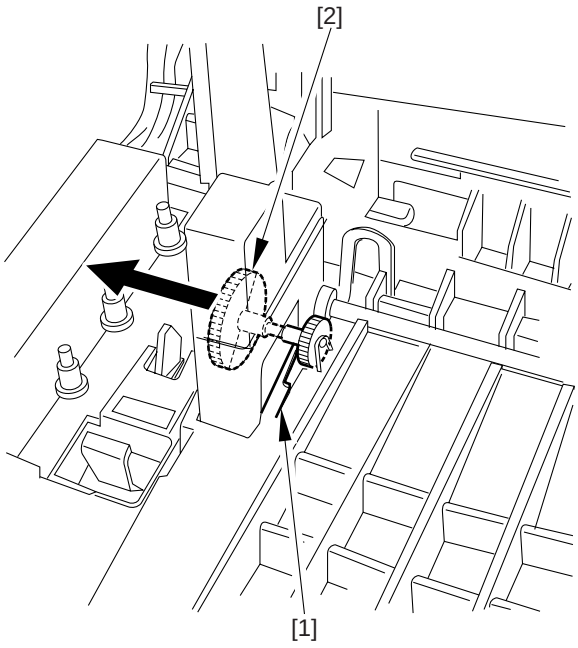


Figure 5-221

3) While freeing the claw [3], detach the four shafts [4]; then, detach the feed belt [5].

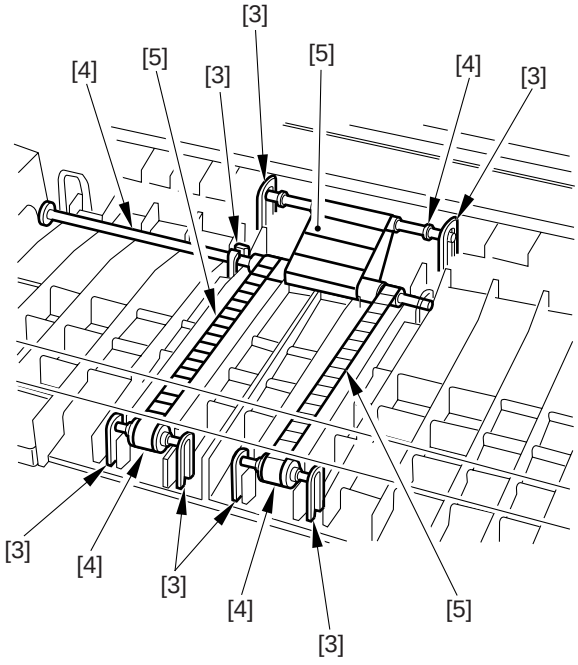


Figure 5-222

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

D. Registration Roller Assembly

1. Removing the Registration Roller Unit

1) Remove the front lower cover.
(See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.A.2. “Removing the Front Lower Cover.”)
2) Open the machine’s top unit farther, and hold it in place with the handle of a screw driver (about 30 mm in diameter).

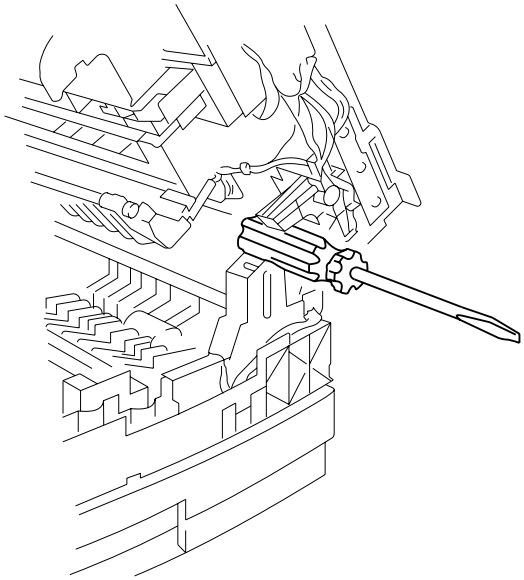


Figure 5-223

3) Remove the shaft [1] and the spring [2].

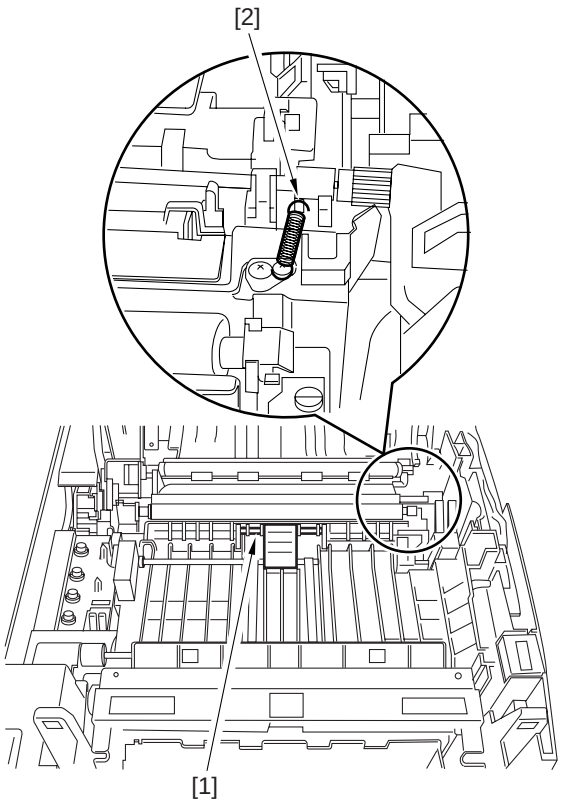


Figure 5-224

4) Free the seven claws [3] and remove the transfer mount [4] and the high-voltage terminal unit [5].

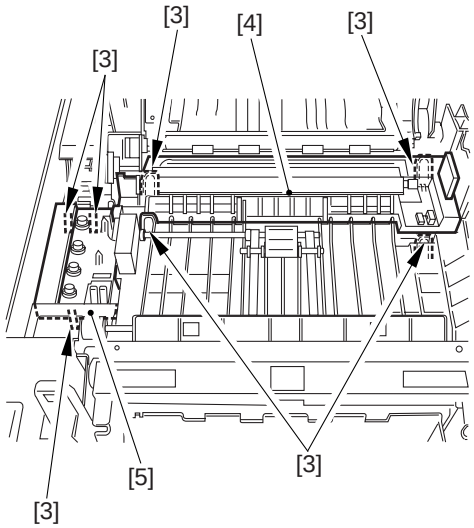


Figure 5-225

5) Remove the two springs [6].

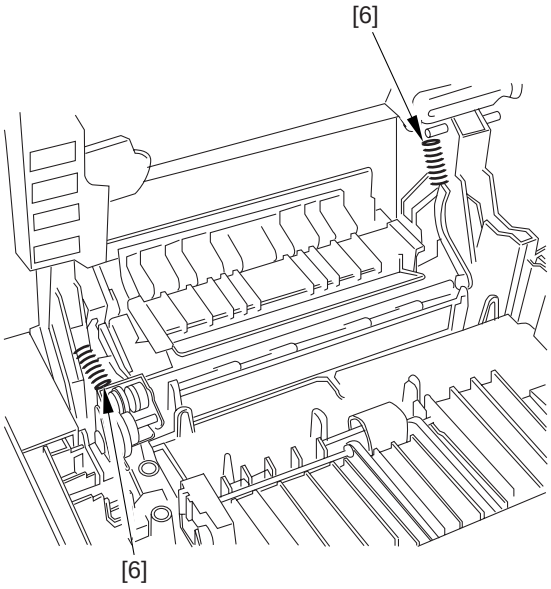


Figure 5-226

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

6) Remove the two springs [7]; then, while freeing the two claws [8], remove the registration roller unit [9].

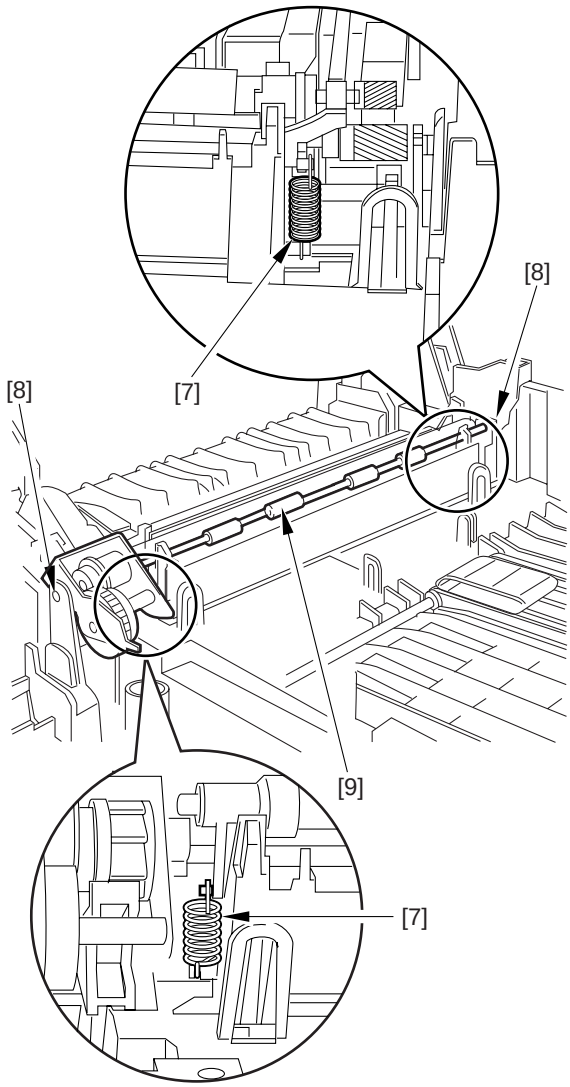


Figure 5-227

2. Removing the Registration Roller Clutch

1) Remove the registration roller unit. (See 1. “Removing the Registration Roller Unit.”)
2) Remove the E-ring [1] ; then, remove the gear [2] and the arm [3].

Caution:
Take care not to drop the pin from the rear of the gear.

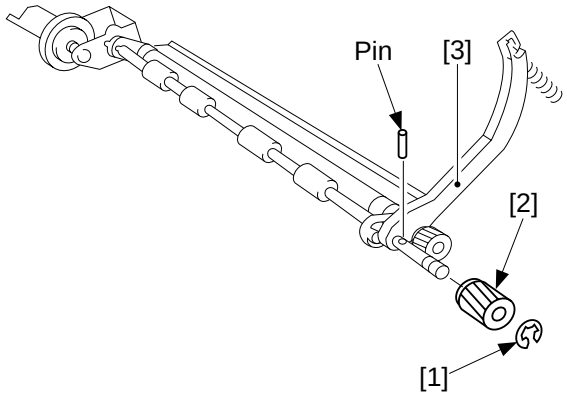


Figure 5-228

3) Remove the E-ring [4].

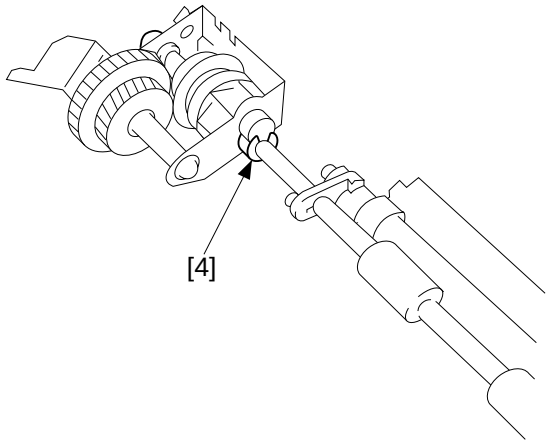


Figure 5-229

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4) Remove the two bushings [5].

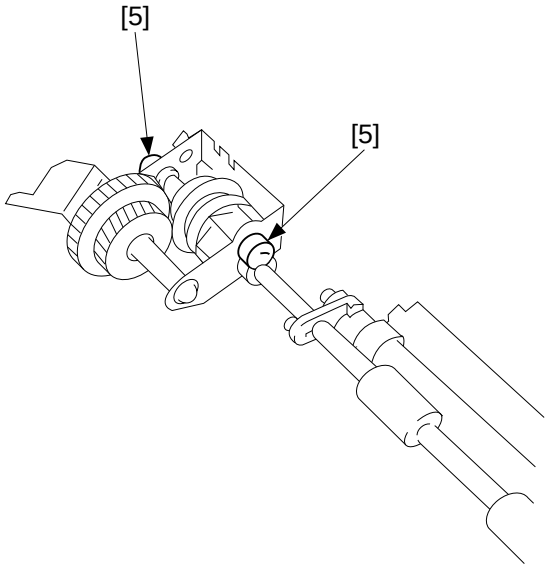


Figure 5-230

5) While moving down the registration roller [6], detach it from the gear unit [7].

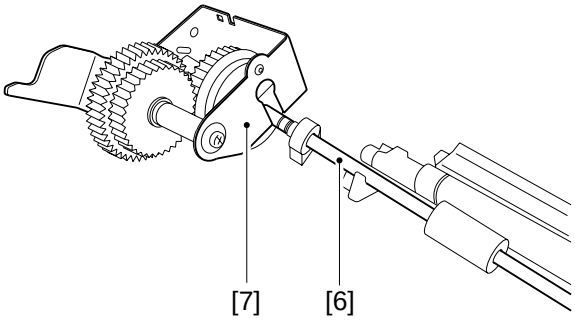


Figure 5-231

6) Remove the E-ring [8], and pull out the clutch [9].

Caution:
Take care not to lose the pin from the rear of the clutch.

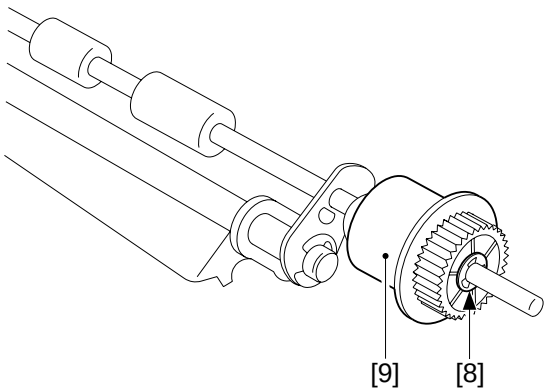


Figure 5-232

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

E. Delivery Assembly

1. Removing the Delivery Roller

1) Remove the fixing lower roller. (See Chapter 6.II.A.3. “Removing the Fixing Lower Roller.”)
2) Remove the two screws [1], and detach the side plate [2] and the four gears [3].

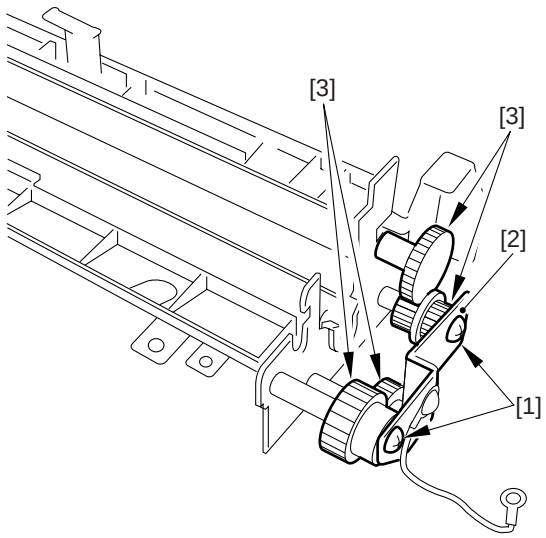


Figure 5-233

3) Remove the screw [4], and free the two hooks [5]; then, detach the sensor holder [6].

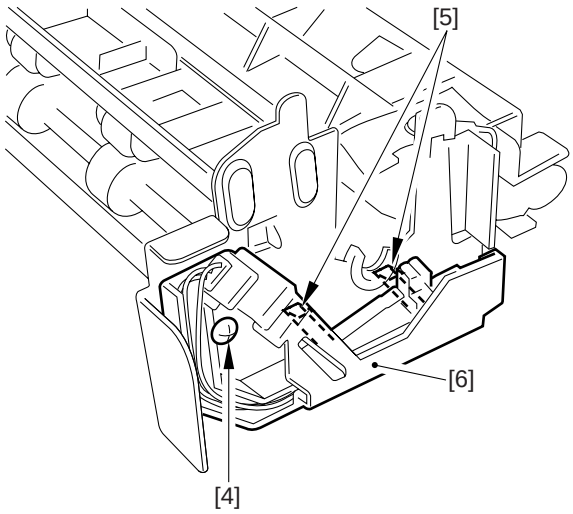


Figure 5-234

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4) Remove the two bushings [7].

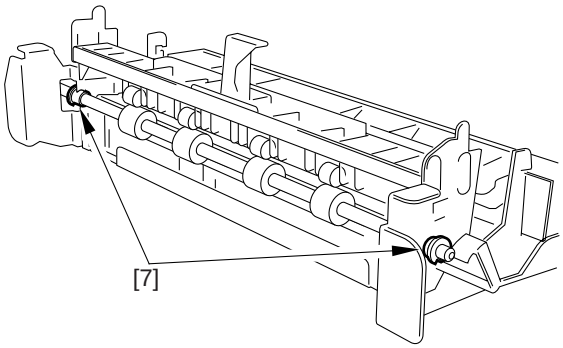


Figure 5-235

5) While shifting the delivery lower guide [8] toward the rear, detach the delivery roller [9].

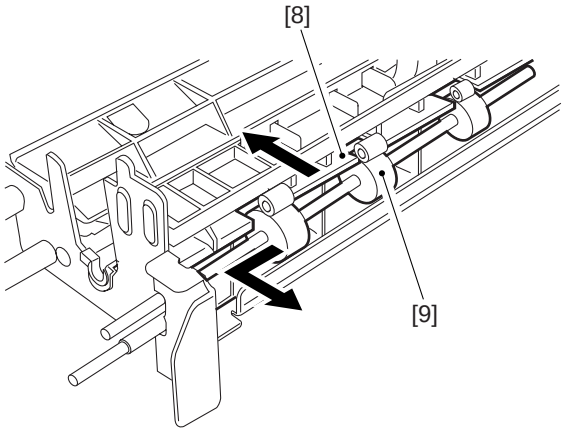


Figure 5-236

CHAPTER 6

FIXING SYSTEM

This chapter explains the principles used to fuse toner images to transfer medium in view of the functions of electrical and mechanical units and in relation to their timing of operation. It also shows how these units may be disassembled/assembled and adjusted.

I. OPERATIONS 6-1
A. Outline 6-1
B. Controlling the Fixing Temperature 6-3

II. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY 6-9
A. Fixing Assembly 6-10

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

I. OPERATIONS

A. Outline

The major functions of the fixing unit are as follows:

Item	Description
Fixing method	SURF
Fixing drive	Main Motor (M1)
Fixing heater	Flat heater
Fixing temperature detection	Thermistor (TH1)
Cleaner	Cleaning roller
Protective functions	The following are used to detect and protect against an error; upon detection, power to the fixing heater will be cut: • Thermistor (TH1) • Thermal fuse (FU2; activating at 228°C)
Error code	E000 The fixing temperature fails to increase. E001 The thermistor has detected overheating. E002 Fault in fixing power control. E003 The fixing temperature has dropped abnormally.

Table 6-101

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

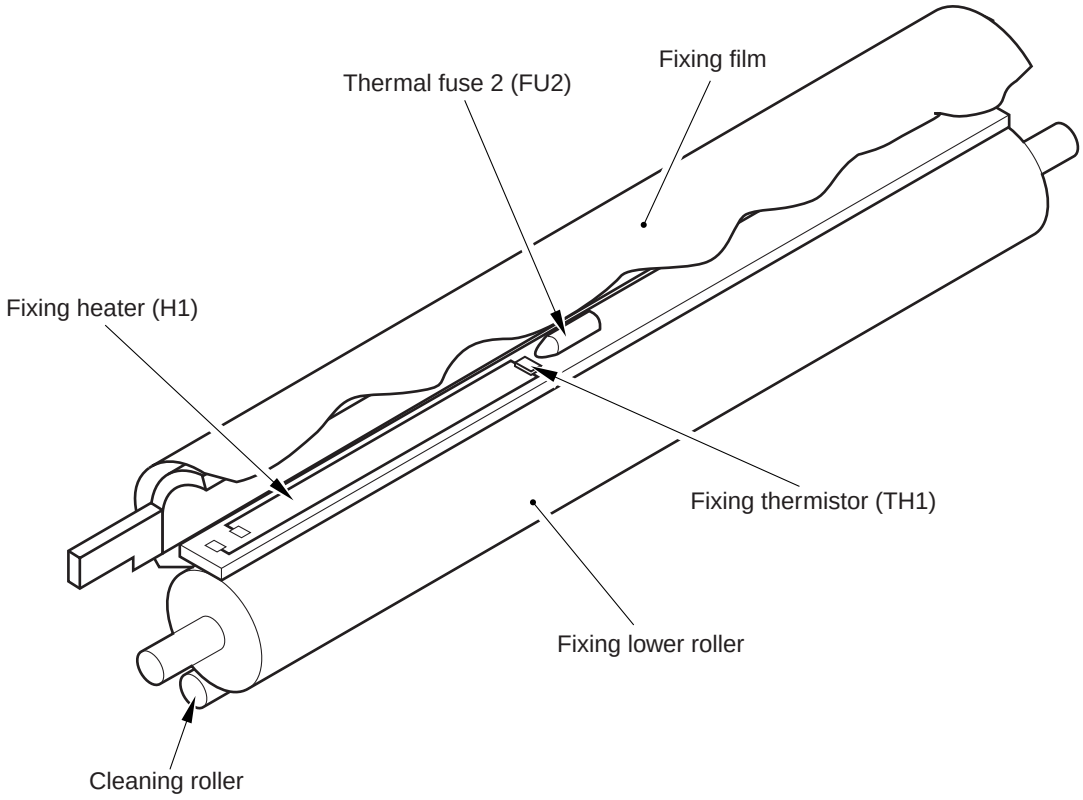


Figure 6-101

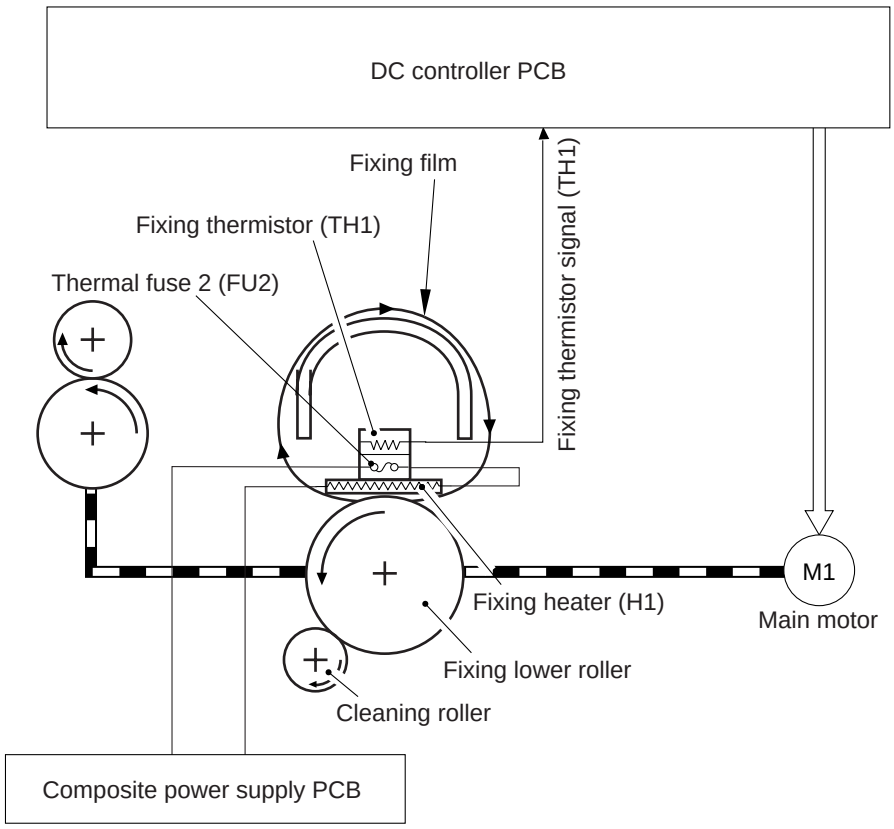


Figure 6-102

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

B. Controlling the Fixing Temperature

1. Outline

The fixing lower roller of the fixing assembly is driven by the main motor (M1). When the fixing lower roller rotates, the film of the fixing upper unit starts to rotate in conjunction.

The fixing film is heated by the fixing heater (H1), which is a flat heater mounted in contact with the inner side of the film. The fixing heater is equipped with a thermistor (TH1), which sends the fixing thermister signal (TH1) to the microprocessor (Q101) on the DC controller PCB; in response, the microprocessor controls the fixing heater duty signal (HEAT_PWM) to vary the power supplied to the heater by way of controlling the temperature of the fixing heater.

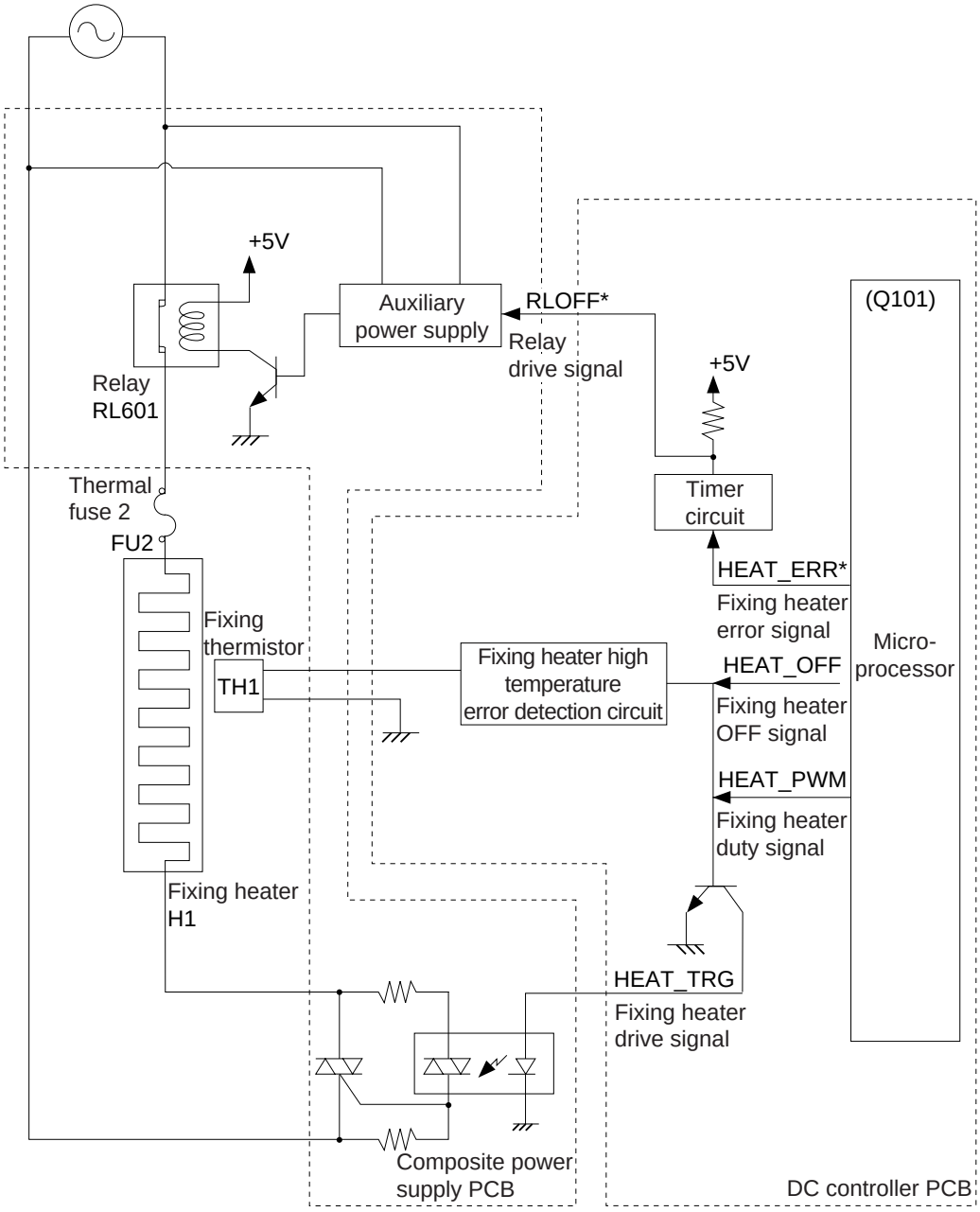


Figure 6-103

2. Controlling the Temperature of the Fixing Heater

The temperature of the fixing heater is switched according to the following two parameters:

- Temperature of the fixing heater when the Copy Start key is pressed.
- Number of copies to make in continuous copying mode

Table 6-102 shows the temperature of the fixing heater when the Copy Start key is pressed (as detected by the thermistor TH1) and the temperatures to which the fixing heater is controlled according to the number of copies made in continuous mode.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

	Heater temperature when the Copy Start key is pressed	Number of copies	Control temperature (°C)
1	Less than 100°C	1	200
		2 ~ 9	195
		10 ~ 29	190
		30 ~ 39	185
		40 ~ 49	180
		50 ~ 59	175
		60 ~	170
2	100°C or more and less than 120°C	1 ~ 9	190
		10 ~ 19	186
		20 ~ 29	180
		30 ~ 39	175
		40 ~	170
3	120°C or more	1~ 9	180
		10~19	175
		20~	170

Table 6-102

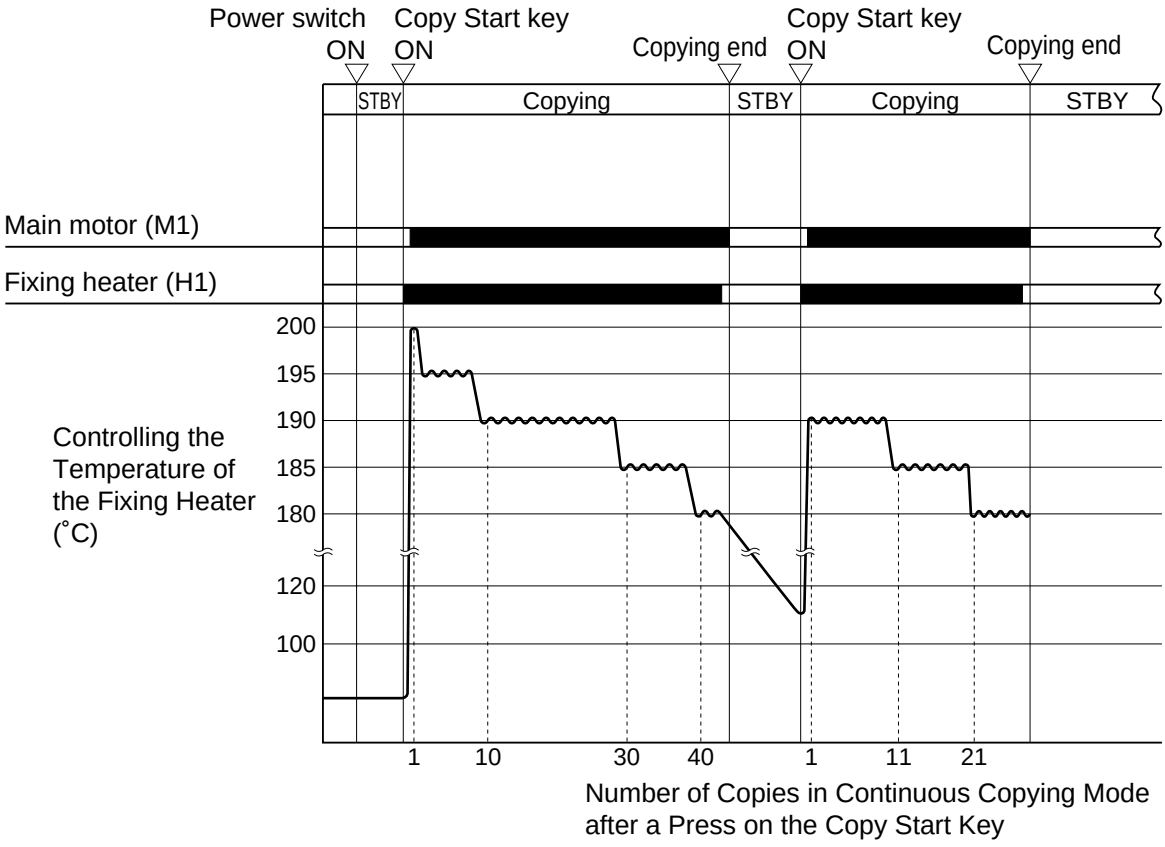


Figure 6-104

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

3. Controlling the Temperature Supplied to the Fixing Heater

The temperature of the fixing heater is controlled by controlling the power supplied to the fixing heater, and the power to the fixing heater is controlled using a phase control method.

The microprocessor on the DC controller PCB controls the timing at which the fixing heater duty signal (HEAT_PWM) is generated so that power suited to the target temperature of the fixing heater may be supplied (phase control).

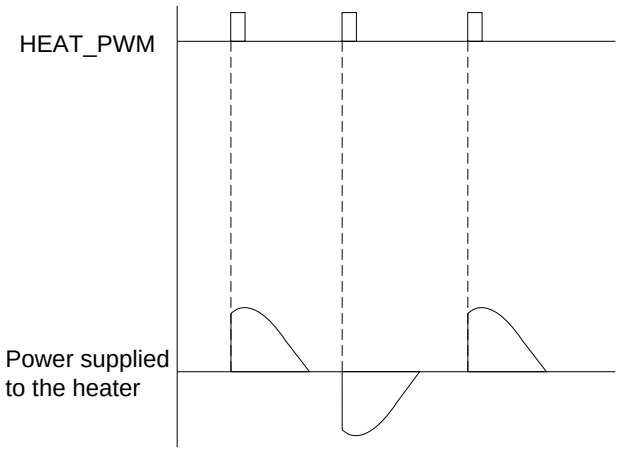


Figure 6-105

4. Correcting the Variation in the Resistance of the Fixing Heater

The characteristics of the flat heater used as the fixing heater vary from heater to heater because the production method. A discrepancy in resistance, if left alone, will not enable correct control of the fixing heater.

The machine makes correction in relation to the selected level of resistance (from three settings), and corrects it basd on the readings obtained by the microprocessor.

Caution:

The level of resistance of the fixing heater is selected by an appropriate combination of the jumper wires connected to the connector of the fixing thermistor (TH1) and the delivery sensor (PS3).

The best level is selected at the factory when the fixing assembly is assembled. Do not change the combination of jumper wires.

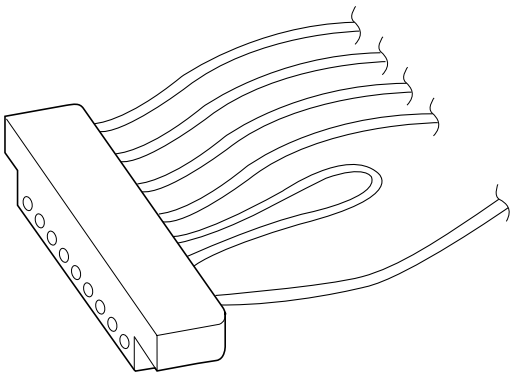


Figure 6-106

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5. Controlling the Power Supplied to the Fixing Heater between Sheets

When the copying speed is controlled to 6 cpm to prevent overheating of the copyboard, the temperature of the fixing lower roller tends to increase because of the increased sheet-to-sheet distance. To prevent possible problems, power to the fixing heater is stopped between sheets when the copying speed is controlled to 6 cpm.

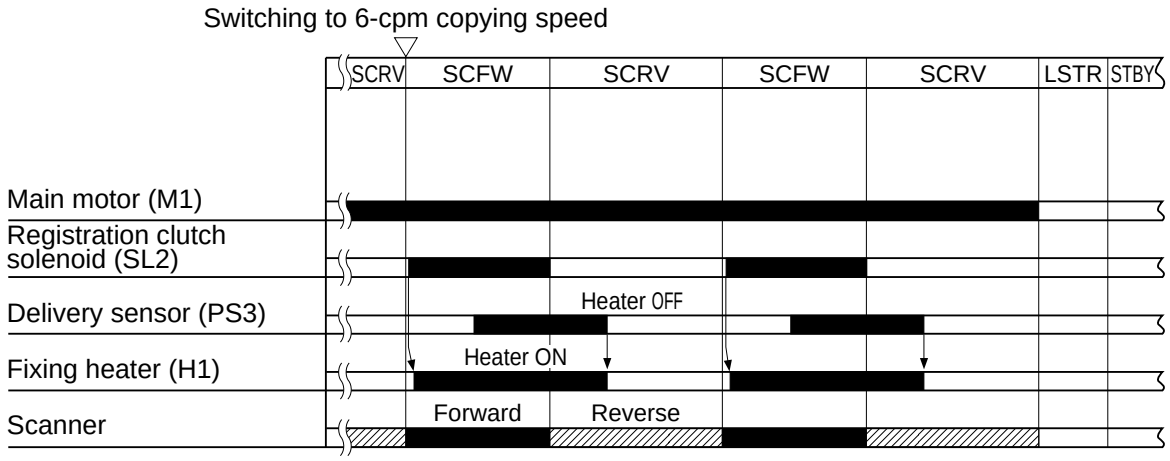


Figure 6-107

6. Protective Functions

The machine is equipped with the following protective functions to prevent malfunction of the fixing heater.

a. Thermistor (TH1)

The microprocessor on the DC controller PCB monitors the voltage of the thermistor (TH1); if an abnormally high or low temperature is detected, the microprocessor sends the fixing heater error signal (HEAT_ERR*) to the timer circuit and, at the same time, indicate an error code (E000 through E003).

In response, the timer circuit sends the relay drive signal (RLOFF*) to the auxiliary power supply in about 1.2 sec after it hs received the fixing heater error signal (HEAT_ERR*).

The auxiliary power supply turns off the relay (RL601) to turn off the power. The data for problems associated with 'E000 through E003', i.e., related to the heater, is backed up and 'E000 through E003' will be indicated on the control panel next time the power is turned on.

When the power is turned off while 'E000' through 'E003' is indicated on the control panel, 'E000 through E003' will be indicated on the control panel if the power switch is turned on, and the Copy Start key will not be enabled.

Related Error Code

E000
• The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) is not 65°C in 1.5 sec after the Copy Start key is pressed. • The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) is not 150°C in 4 sec after the Copy Start key is pressed.

E001
• The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) is 230°C or more. • The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) is higher than the control temperature by 30°C or more. • The thermistor (TH1) has detected an increase in temperature of 100°C or more in 1 sec. • The thermistor (TH1) has detected an increase in temperature of 40°C or more after it detected 100°C in standby state.

E002
The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) is 150°C or higher and, thereafter, maximum power has been supplied to the fixing heater for 10 to 14 sec during copying operation.

E003
The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) is 160°C and then 150°C or lower during copying operation.

b. Thermal Fuse (FU2)

If the temperature around the thermal fuse exceeds 228°C and remains so for a specific period of time, the thermal fuse will blow to cut the power to the fixing heater.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

II. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY

As needed, disassemble/assemble the machine with the following in mind:

1. ⚠ Before starting the work, turn off the power switch and disconnect the power plug for safety.
2. Unless otherwise instructed, assemble the parts by reversing the steps used to disassemble it.
3. Identify the screws by type (length, diameter) and location.
4. Use the washers where necessary. (The screws used to mount the grounding wire and Varistors come with a washer to ensure electrical continuity.)
5. As necessary, cut the harness band.
6. As a rule, do not operate the machine with any of its part removed.
7. A few of the screws used are special screws (with wider thread intervals). Do not use any screws indiscriminately.

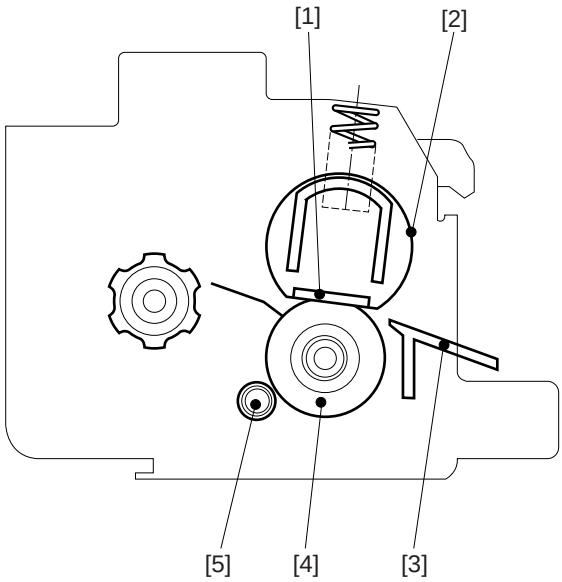
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

A. Fixing Assembly

1. Construction

Caution:

1. The fixing film is made from a special material. Do not touch it or subject it to dust.
2. The machine does not have a mechanism used to adjust the roller pressure.



[1] Fixing heater
[2] Fixing film
[3] Inlet guide
[4] Fixing lower roller
[5] Cleaning roller

Figure 6-201

2. Removing the Fixing Assembly

1) Remove the front lower cover.
(See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.A.2. “Removing the Front Lower Cover.”)
2) Remove the screw [1], and free the two hooks [2]; then, detach the power supply cover [3].

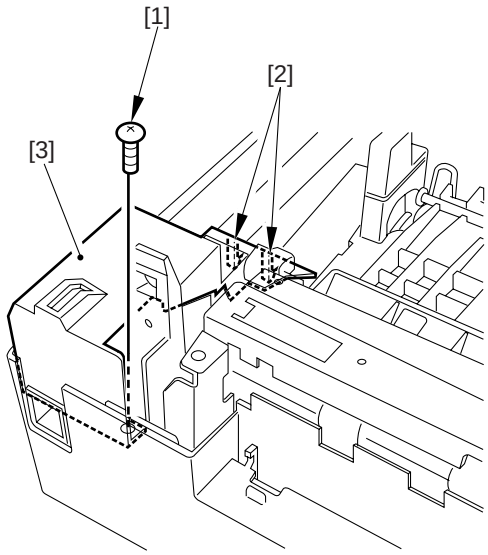


Figure 6-202

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3) Remove the screw [4], and disconnect the connector [5].

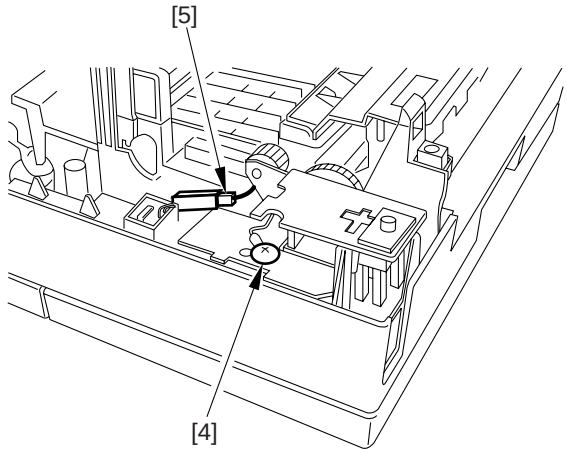


Figure 6-203

4) Remove the two screws [6], and disconnect the connector [7]; then, detach the fixing assembly [8] by turning it in the direction of the arrow.

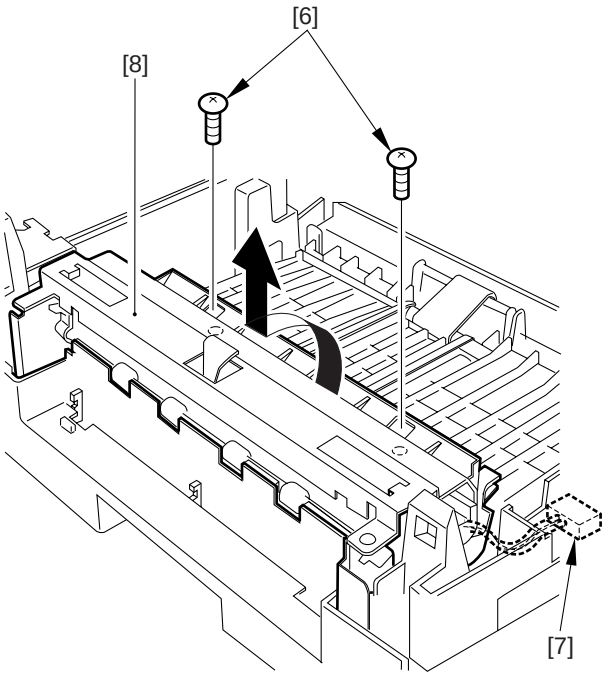


Figure 6-204

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

3. Removing the Fixing Lower Roller

1) Remove the fixing assembly.
(See 2. “Removing the Fixing Assembly.”)
2) Remove the two screws [1], and free the two hooks [2]; then, detach the fixing upper stay [3] by turning it in the direction of the arrow.

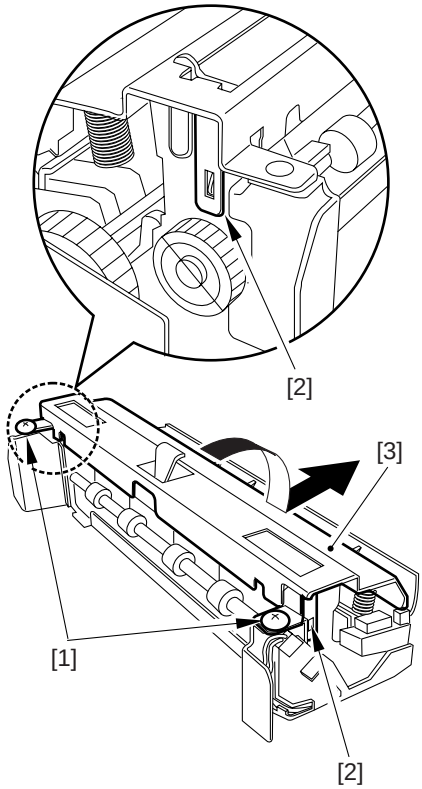


Figure 6-205

3) Detach the harness band [4] from the side plate, and remove the fixing upper unit [5].

Caution:
Do not disassemble the fixing film and the fixing heater. They cannot be replaced on their own.

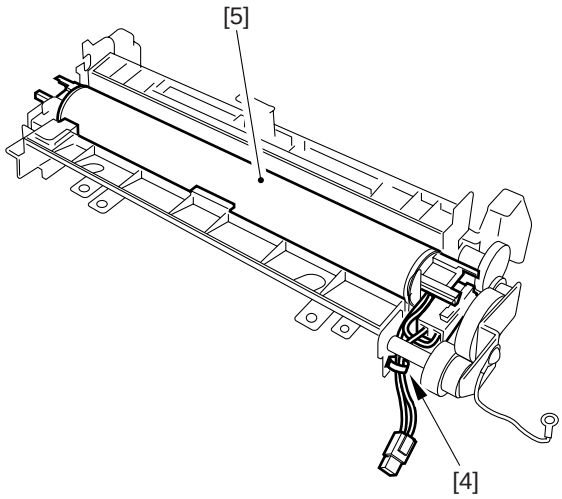


Figure 6-206

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4) Remove the fixing lower roller [6] together with the gear.

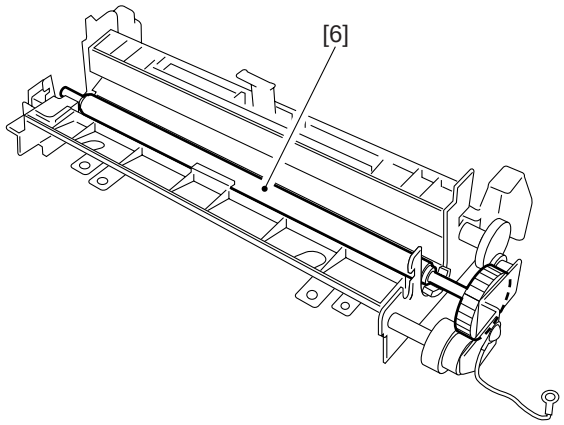


Figure 6-207

4. Removing the Cleaning Roller

1) Remove the fixing lower roller. (See 3. “Removing the Fixing Lower Roller.”)
2) Remove the cleaning roller [1] together with the bushing.

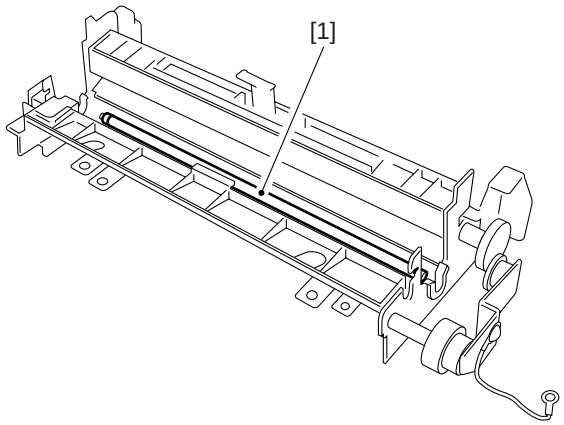


Figure 6-208

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CHAPTER 7

EXTERNALS/AUXILIARY MECHANISMS

This chapter shows the machine's external parts, and explains the principles used for the machine's various control mechanisms in view of the functions of electrical and mechanical units and in relation to their timing of operation. It also shows how these units may be disassembled/assembled and adjusted.

I. FANS 7-1
II. POWER SUPPLY SYSTEM 7-3
  A. Outline of the Power Supply System 7-3
  B. Power Supply Circuit 7-4
  C. Detecting an Error on the Composite Power Supply PCB 7-6
  D. Protecting the Power Supply Circuit 7-6
III. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY 7-7
  A. External Covers 7-8
  B. Control Panel 7-15
  C. Copyboard Glass 7-16
  D. Main Motor/Main Drive Assembly 7-17
  E. Electrical System 7-21

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

I. FANS

The machine is equipped with two fans serving to discharge ozone or cool its inside.

The heat exhaust fan is driven directly by the main motor (M1; through a belt and a gear), and is designed to rotate at all times while the main motor is rotating.

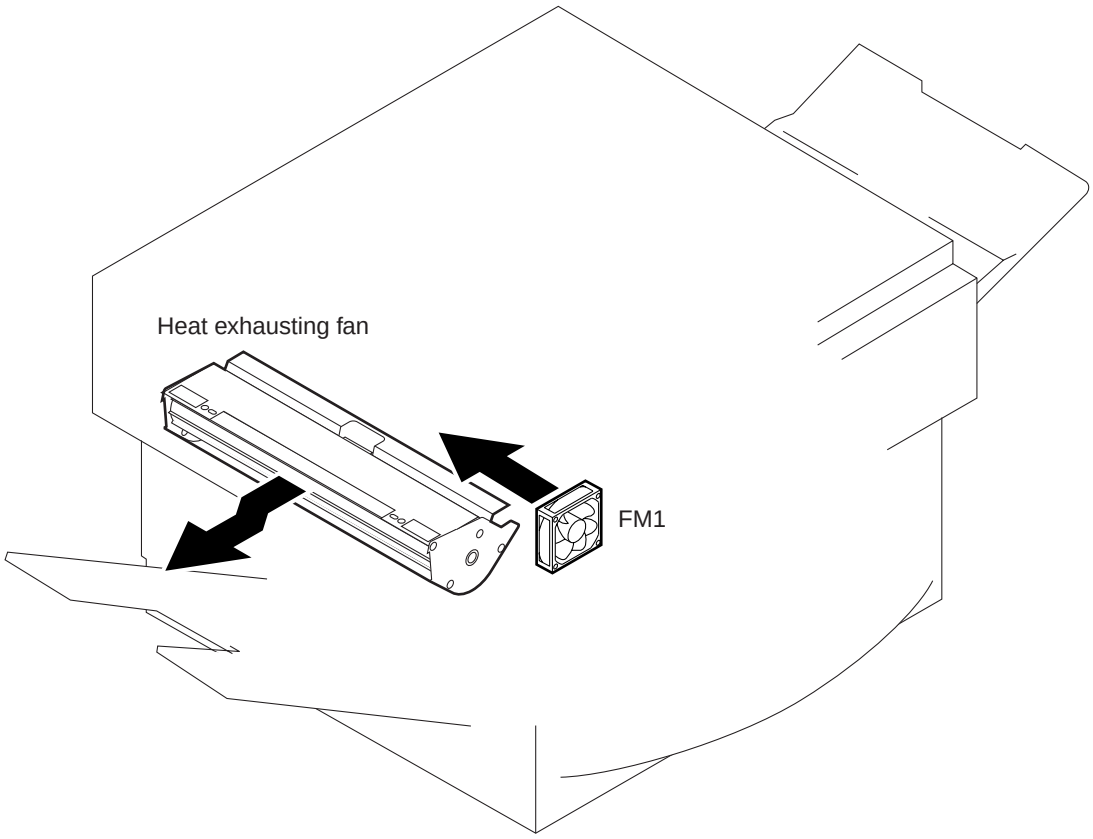
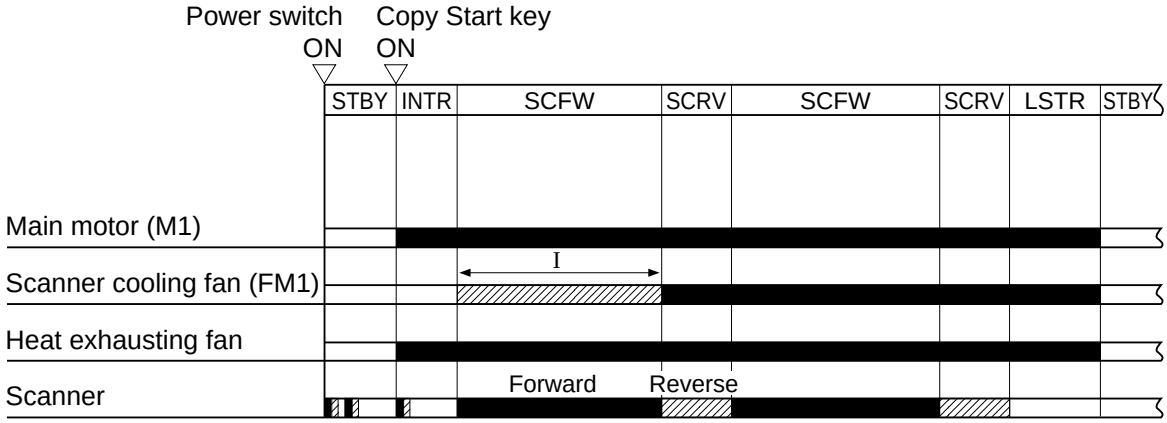


Figure 7-101

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

The scanner cooling fan (FM1) is turned on and off according to the temperature detected by the scanner thermistor (TH2).

If the reading by the thermistor is 37.5°C or higher and the copying speed reaches 6 cpm, the fan starts to rotate. If the reading is lower than 37.5°C, on the other hand, the fan will not rotate if no more than one copy is made or while making the first copy of a continuous copying job. (It rotates when making the second and subsequent copies of a continuous copying job.)



I: If 6-cpm copying speed control is executed starting with the first copy, the fan will rotate.

Figure 7-102

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

II. POWER SUPPLY SYSTEM

A. Outline of the Power Supply System

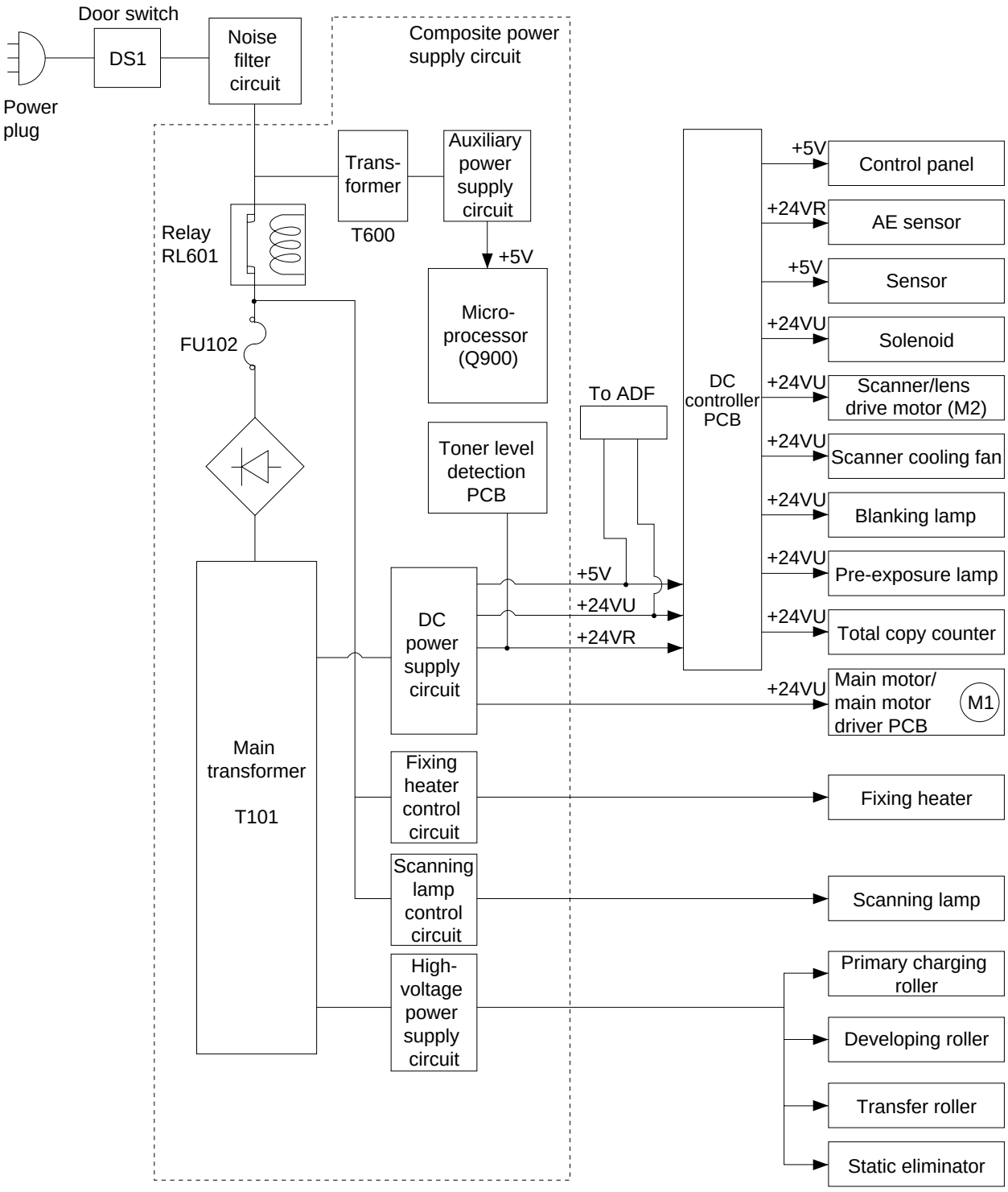


Figure 7-201

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

B. Power Supply Circuit

The machine's power supply consists of a composite power supply circuit in which a DC power supply, scanning lamp power supply, and high-voltage power supply are integrated on a single board. It also possesses a microprocessor for exchanges of various data with the machine's DC controller PCB.

The machine's power switch is a soft switch, and the machine is equipped with an auxiliary power supply used to operate the switch. The auxiliary power supply provides the microprocessor (Q900) with +5 V as long as the door switch (DS1) remains on.

AC power is supplied to the DC power supply when the power switch on the control panel is turned on. In response, the DC power supply provides the DC controller PCB with +5 V, +24 VR, and +24 VU.

When the power switch is turned off, power to the DC controller PCB is cut; to back up data on error codes (E000, E001, E002, E003), the machine uses a litium battery (BAT1) located within the DC controller circuit; using the battery, the appropriate error information will be indicated on the control panel when the power is returned, informing the presence of an error associated with the fixing heater.

Caution:

Replace the lithium battery only with the one listed in the Parts Catalog. Use of a different battery may present a risk of fire or explosion. The battery may present a fire or chemical burn hazard if mistreated. Do not recharge, disassemble, or dispose of it in fire.
Keep the battery out of reach of children and discard any used battery promptly.

Reference:

The tolerances in DC voltage are as follows:

- +5 V ±5%
- +24 VR ±5%
- +24 VU -10.0%, +12.5%

For +24 VR, two types of voltage are used:

- During copying, +24 V ±5%
- During standby, +18 V ±10%

However, the above assume that the deviations in AC input are -15%, +10%.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

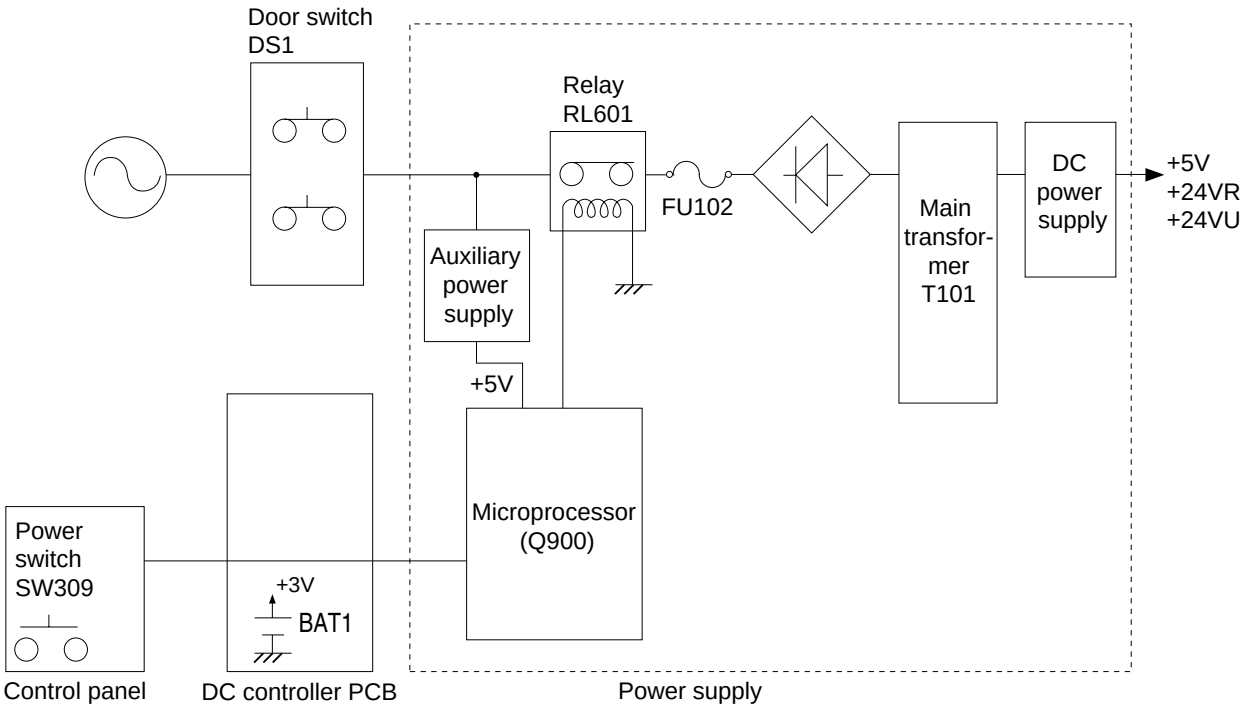

Door switch
DS1
Relay
RL601
FU102
Auxiliary
power
supply
+5V
Main
transfor-
mer
T101
DC
power
supply
+5V
+24VR
+24VU
Microprocessor
(Q900)
Power
switch
SW309
+3V
BAT1
Control panel
DC controller PCB
Power supply

Figure 7-202

C. Detecting an Error on the Composite Power Supply PCB

The machine's composite power supply PCB is equipped with a self diagnostic function to check each power output and the communication with the DC controller PCB using the microprocessor (Q900) mounted on it.

If any of the following errors occurs, the microprocessor will exchange signals with the DC controller PCB, and will indicate the result of self diagnosis on the control panel.

1. Detecting an Over-Current in the Low-Voltage System

If an over-current is detected because of a fault in a DC load, the composite power supply PCB will turn off the relay (RL601) to cut the AC input.

2. Detecting a Fault in the High-Voltage Control Value

If a deviation is found between the setting value and the actual value is detected in any of the following voltages, the composite power supply will indicate 'E064' on the control panel.

- Primary charging DC bias
- Developing DC bias
- Transfer bias

3. Detecting a Fault in the Low-Voltage Control Value

If a deviation is detected between the setting value and the actual control value in +24 V (DC output), the composite power supply PCB will indicate 'E803' on the control panel.

4. Fault in the Communication with the DC Controller

If the DC controller PCB detects a fault in the communication with the composite power supply PCB, 'E240' will be indicated on the control panel for about 4 sec, and then the relay (RL601) will be turned off to cut the AC input.

D. Protecting the Power Supply Circuit

The composite power supply PCB is equipped with an over-current detection function which turns on a protective mechanism to stop output if a load suffers a short-circuit.

If the output has stopped, it may be reset by opening the machine's top unit, correcting the load, and then turning the power switch back on.

Keep in mind, however, that repeated short-circuiting and resetting can blow the fuse (FU102).

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

III. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY

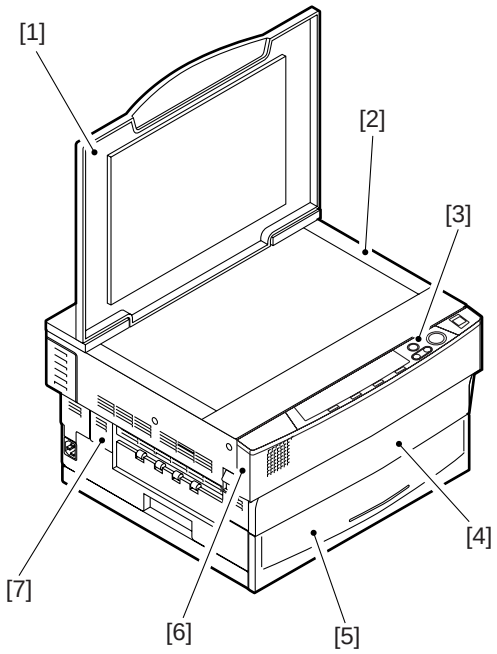
As needed, disassemble/assemble the machine with the following in mind:

1. ⚠ Before starting the work, turn off the power switch and disconnect the power plug for safety.
2. Unless otherwise instructed, assemble the parts by reversing the steps used to disassemble it.
3. Identify the screws by type (length, diameter) and location.
4. Use the washers where necessary. (The screws used to mount the grounding wire and Varistors come with a washer to ensure electrical continuity.)
5. As necessary, cut the harness band.
6. As a rule, do not operate the machine with any of its part removed.
7. A few of the screws used are special screws (with wider thread intervals). Do not use any screws indiscriminately.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

A. External Covers

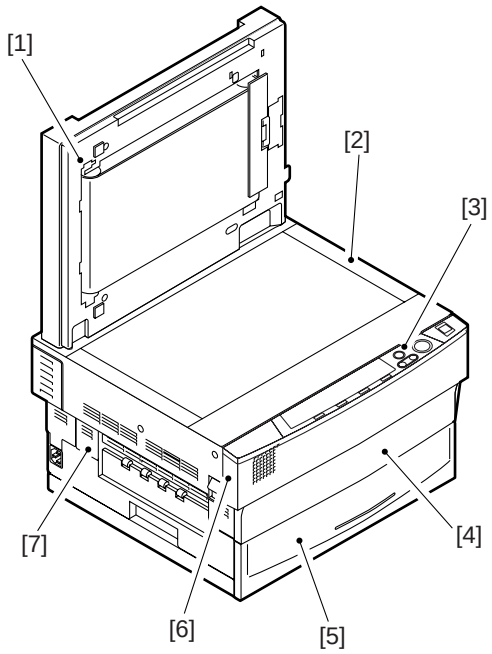
For instructions on how to remove the ADF, see Chapter 8.



[1] Copyboard cover
[2] Top cover
[3] Control panel
[4] Front lower cover
[5] Cassette
[6] Front upper cover
[7] Left cover

Figure 7-301 (Copyboard type)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)



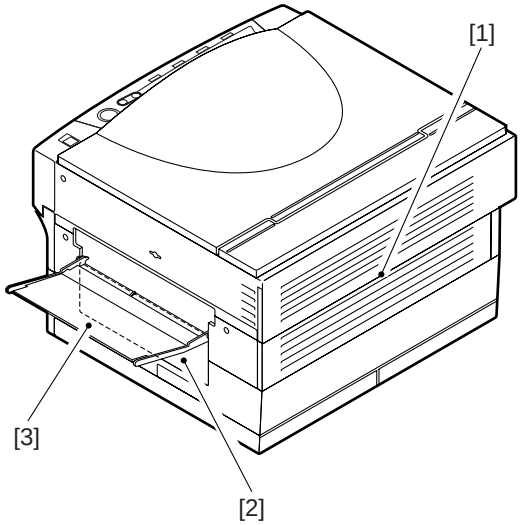
[1] ADF
[2] Top cover
[3] Control panel
[4] Front lower cover
[5] Cassette
[6] Front upper cover
[7] Left cover

Figure 7-302 (ADF type)

Note:

Remove the covers as necessary when cleaning, inspecting, or repairing the inside of the machine.

Those covers that may be detached from their own by mere removal of mounting screws are omitted from the discussions.



[1] Rear cover
[2] Right door
[3] Multifeeder unit

Figure 7-303

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

1. Removing the Top Cover

1) Remove the copyboard cover or the ADF.
2) Open the machine's top unit.
3) Remove the two screws [1], and detach the front upper cover [2].

Caution:
A flexible cable for the control panel is connected to the front upper cover. Disconnect the cable from the DC controller.

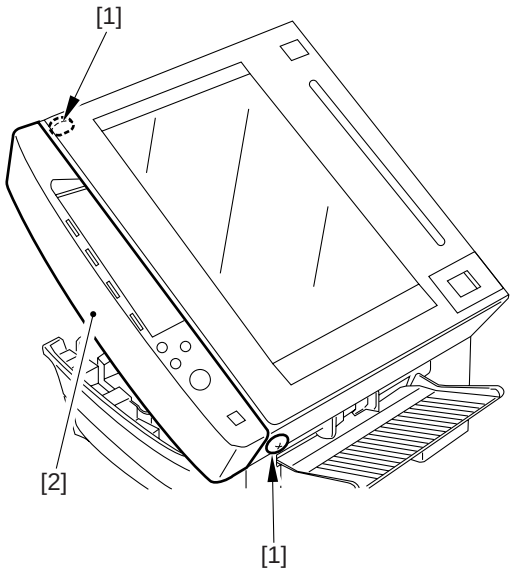


Figure 7-304

4) Free the two claws [3], and slide the left cover [4] to detach.

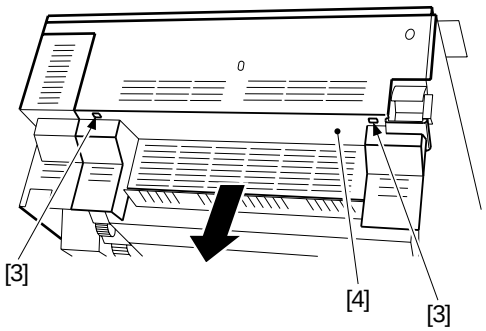


Figure 7-305

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5) Remove the screw [5], and free the four claws [6]; then, detach the rear cover [7].

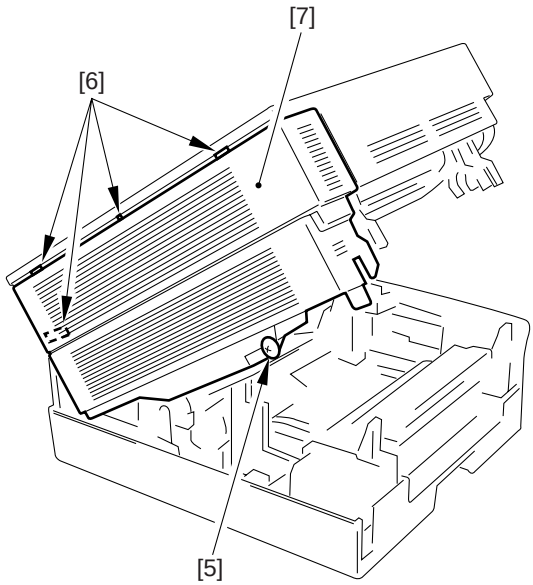


Figure 7-306

6) Remove the screw [8], and detach the copyboard cover foot retainer [9].

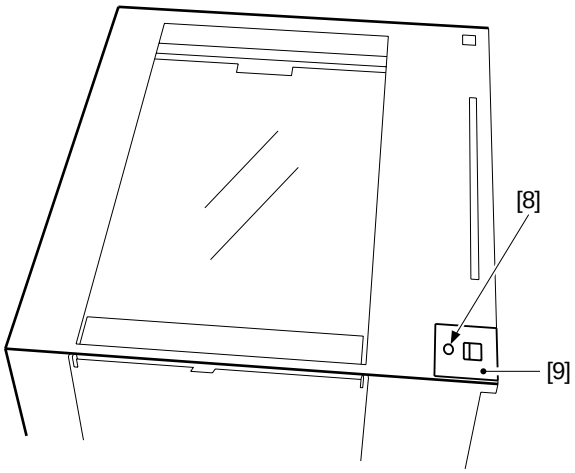


Figure 7-307

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

7) Free the two claw [10]; then, lift the top cover [11] to detach.

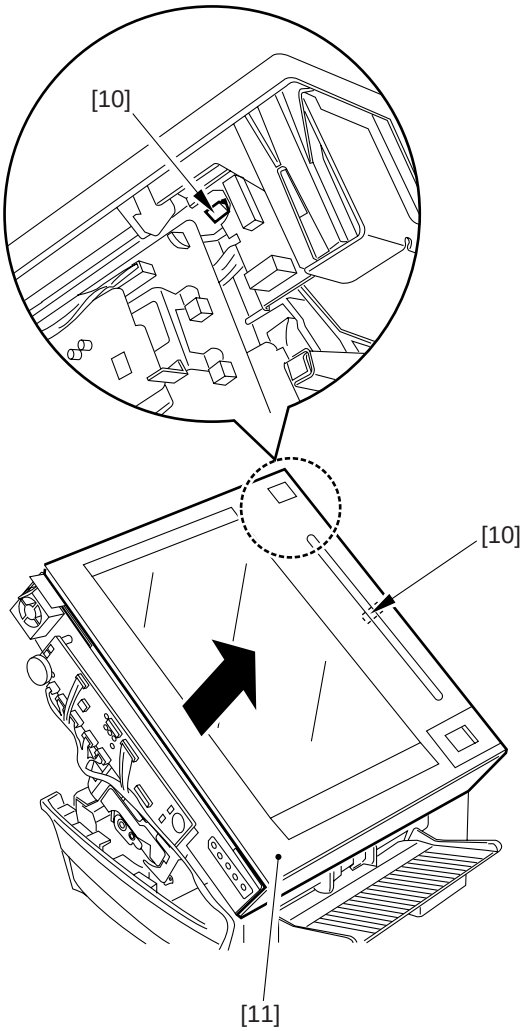


Figure 7-308

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Removing the Front Lower Cover

1) Open the right door.
2) Remove the two screws [1], and detach the multifeeder unit [2].

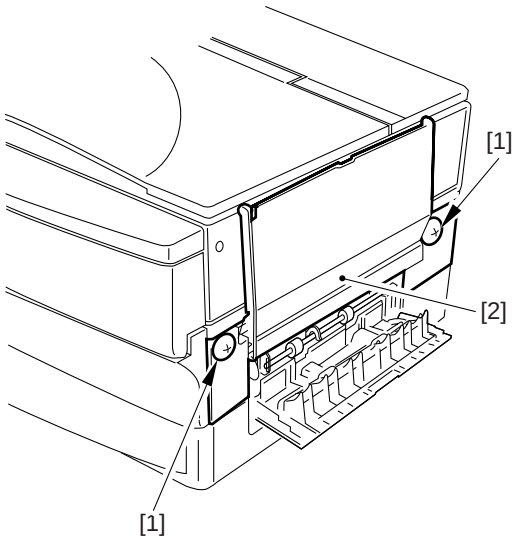


Figure 7-309

3) Open the machine's top unit.
4) Remove the two screws [3], and detach the front upper cover [4].

Caution:

A flexible cable for the control panel is connected to the front upper cover. Disconnect the cable from the DC controller.

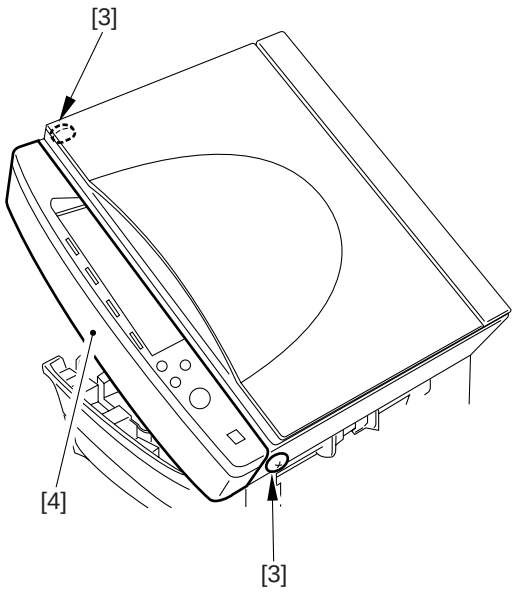


Figure 7-310

5) Remove the two screws [5] from the screw plate found at the bottom of the machine.

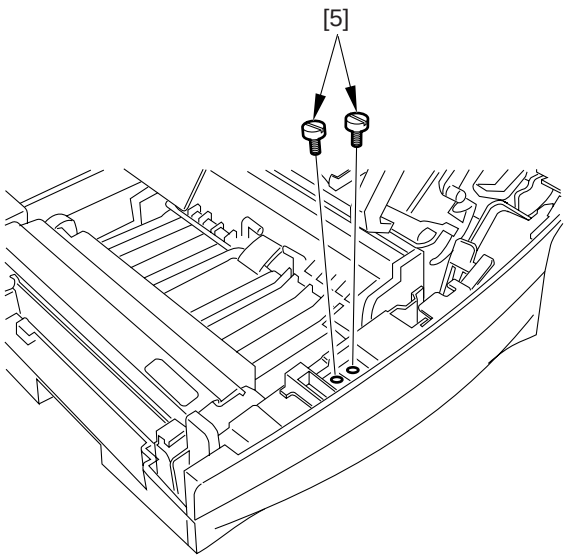


Figure 7-311

6) While freeing the five claws [6], detach the front lower cover [7].

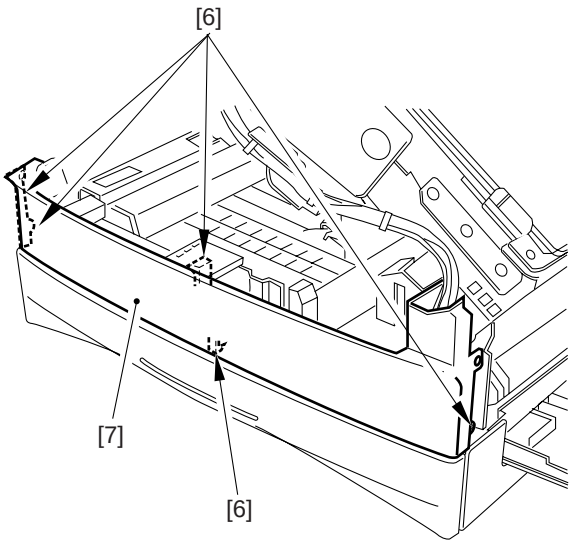


Figure 7-312

Caution:

When mounting the multifeeder unit, be sure to perform the following first:

1) Turn on the power switch; then, select the multifeeder as the source of paper, and press the Copy Start key.
2) When the pickup gear unit assembly has moved to its upper limit, turn off the power switch.
3) Mount the multifeeder, and make one copy using it as the source of paper.

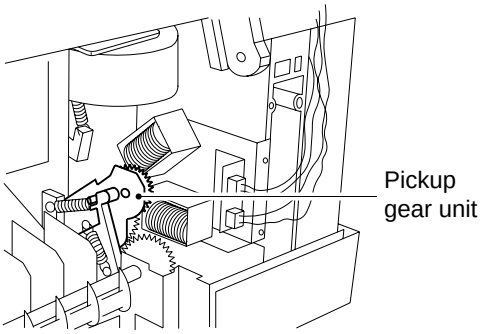


Figure 7-313

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

B. Control Panel

1. Removing the Control Panel

1) Open the machine's top unit.
2) Remove the two screws [1], and detach the front upper cover [2].

Caution:
A flexible cable for the control panel is connected to the front uper cover. Disconnect the cable from the DC controller.

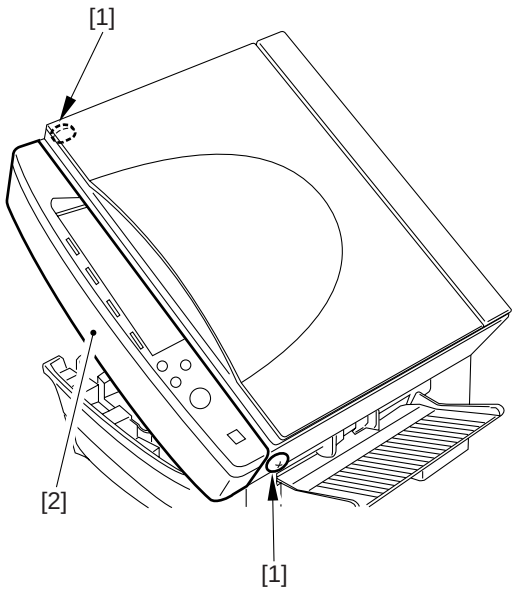


Figure 7-314

3) Remove the two screws [3], and free the eight claws [4]; then, detach the control panel [5].

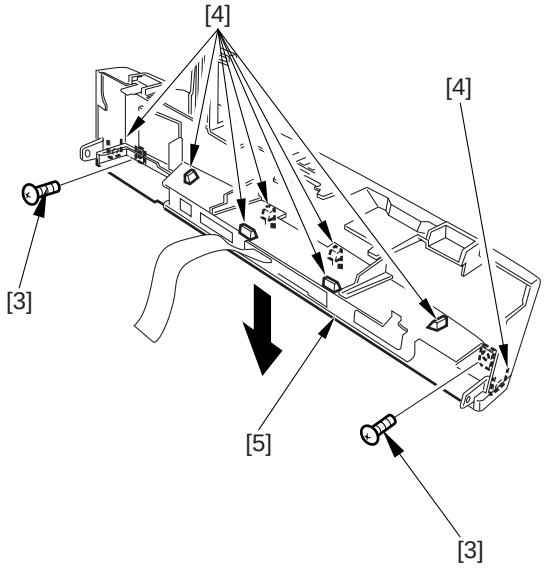


Figure 7-315

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

C. Copyboard Glass

1. Removing the Copyboard Glass

1) Remove the top cover.
   (See A.1. “Removing the Top Cover.”)
2) Close the machine’s top unit.
3) Remove the two screws [1], and detach the two support plates [2]; then, detach the copyboard glass [3].

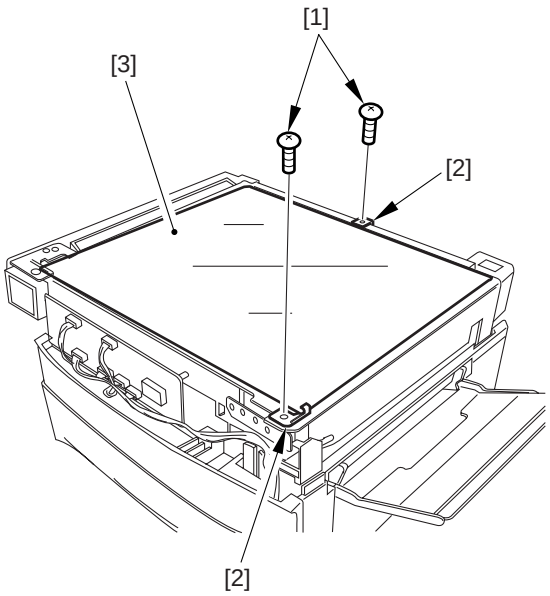


Figure 7-316

Note:

When mounting the copyboard glass, be sure that the grounding plate is on the side of its top edge. (ADF type only)

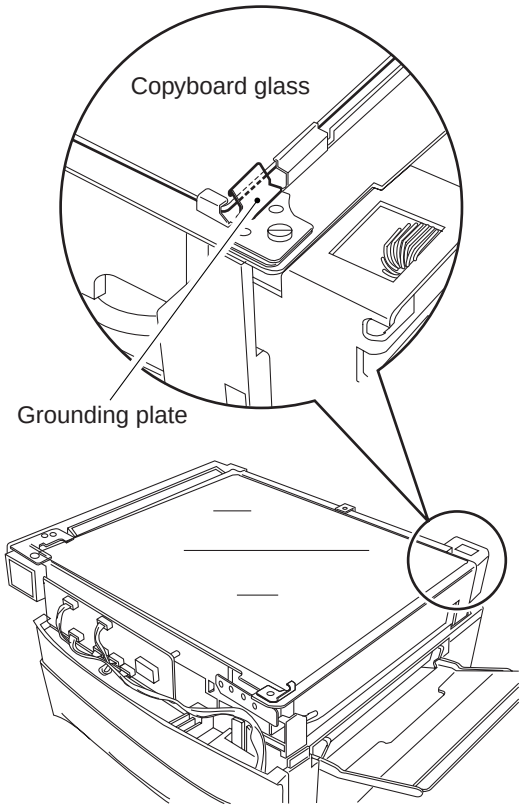


Figure 7-317

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

D. Main Motor/Main Drive Assembly

1. Removing the Main Motor Unit

1) Remove the drum unit.
2) Remove the composite power supply PCB.
   (See E.2. “Removing the Composite Power Supply PCB.”)
3) Remove the screw [1], and detach the high-voltage PCB [2].

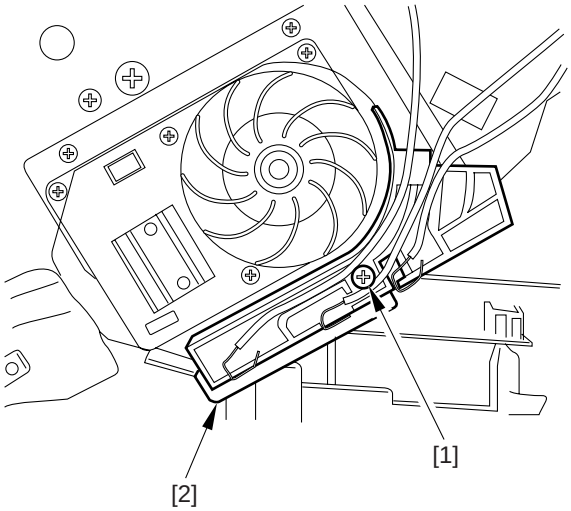


Figure 7-318

4) Remove the insulating sheet [3].

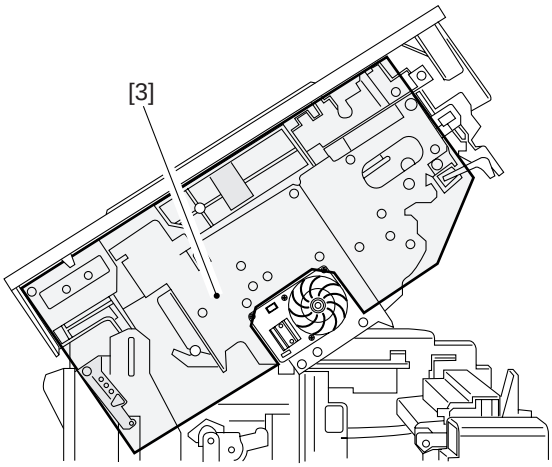


Figure 7-319

5) Detach the fan belt [4].

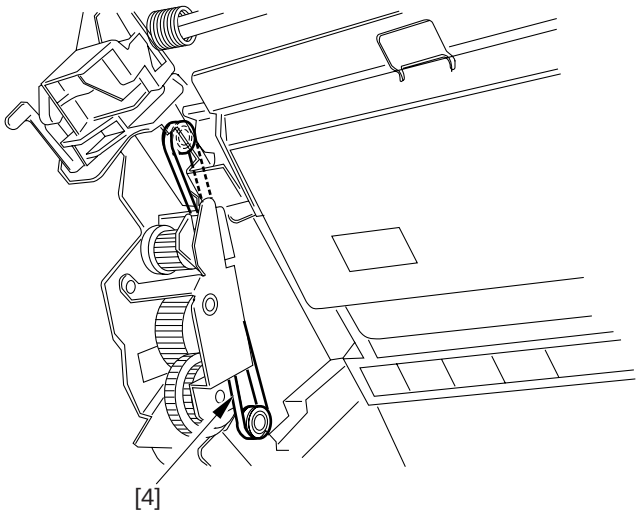


Figure 7-320

6) Remove the four screws [5], and detach the main motor unit [6].

Caution:

When installing the main motor unit, be sure to attach the fan belt.

After attaching the fan belt, make sure that the belt is free of twists.

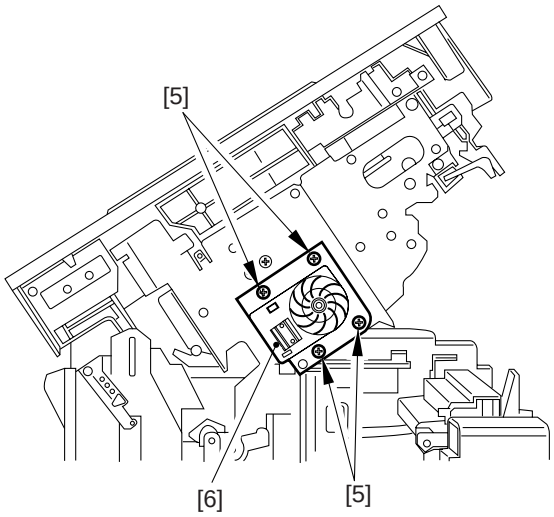


Figure 7-321

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Removing the Main Drive Assembly

1) Remove the drum unit.
2) Remove the composite power supply PCB. (See E.2. “Removing the Composite Power Supply PCB.”)
3) Remove the screw [1], and detach the high-voltage PCB [2].

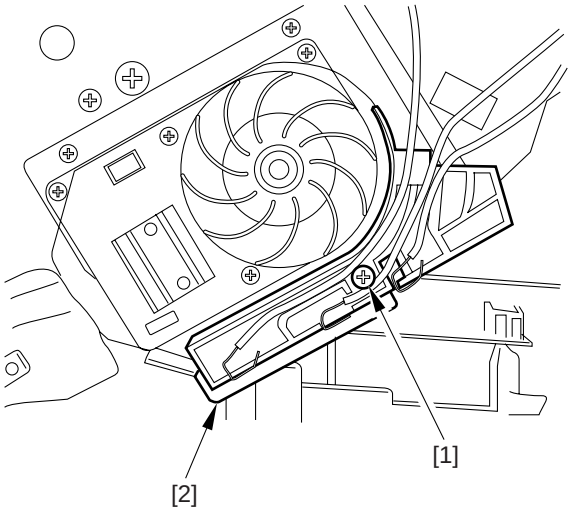


Figure 7-322

4) Remove the insulating sheet [3].

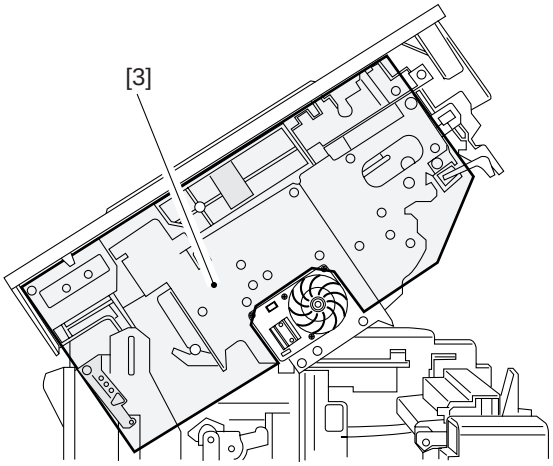


Figure 7-323

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

5) Detach the fan belt [4].

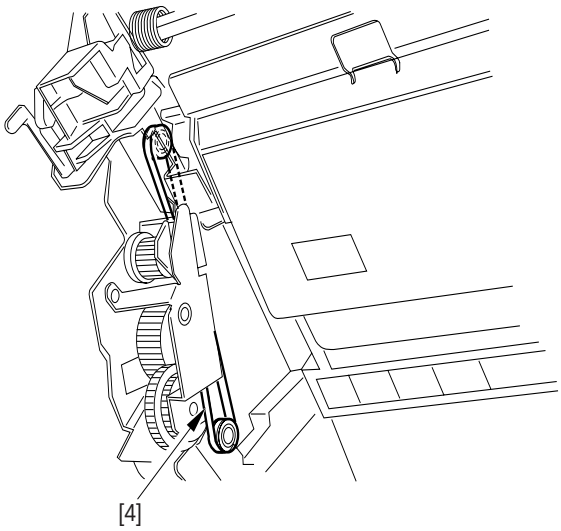


Figure 7-324

6) Remove the four screws [5], and detach the main drive assembly [6].

Caution:
When installing the main drive assembly, be sure to attach the fan belt.
After attaching the fan belt, make sure that the belt is free of twists.

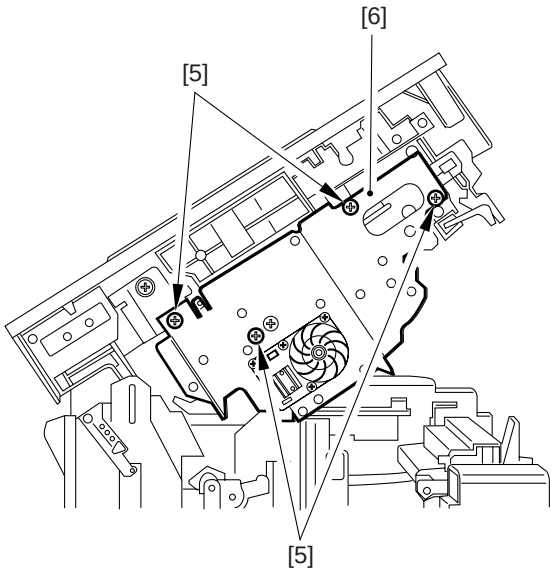


Figure 7-325

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

E. Electrical System

1. Removing the DC Controller PCB

1) Open the machine's top unit.
2) Remove the screw [1], and detach the front upper cover [2].

Caution:
The flexible cable for the control panel is connected to the upper front cover; disconnect the cable from the DC controller PCB.

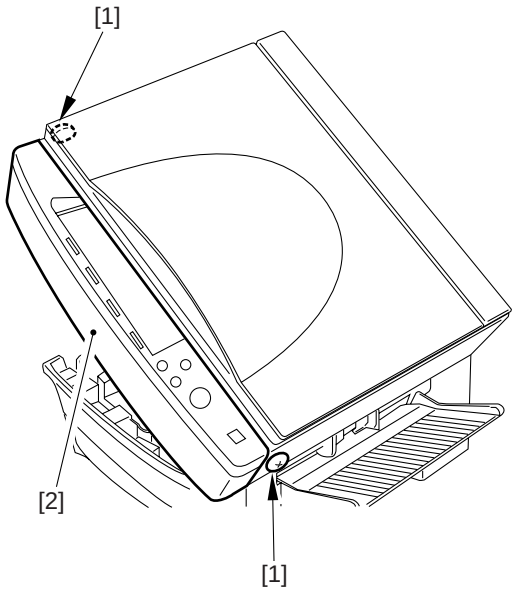


Figure 7-326

3) Disconnect all connectors from the DC controller PCB, remove the screw [3], and free the five claws [4]; then, detach the DC controller PCB [5].

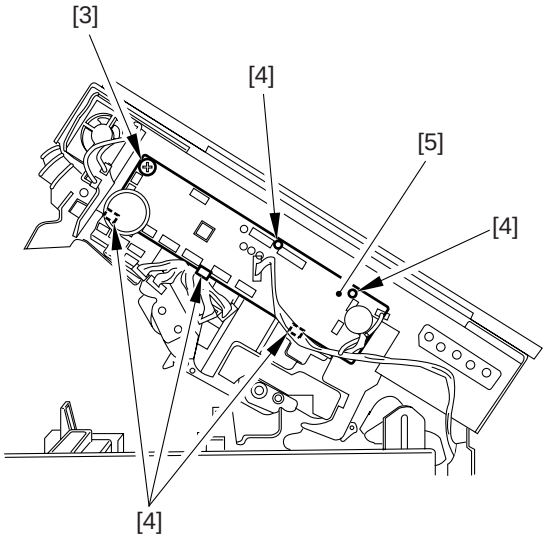


Figure 7-327

2. Removing the Composite Power Supply PCB

1) Remove the copyboard cover or the ADF.
2) Remove the left cover and the rear cover.
3) Remove the screw [1], and remove the copyboard cover foot retainer [2].

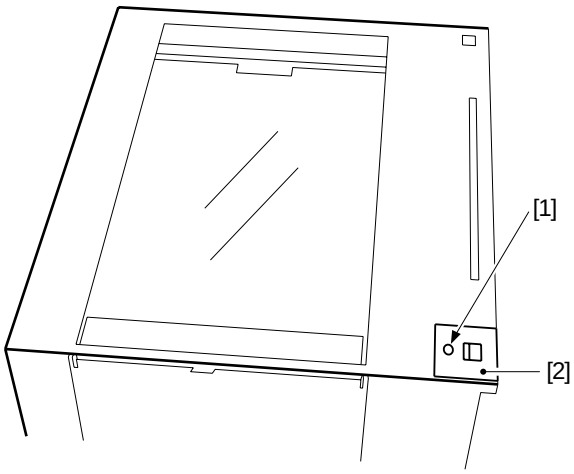


Figure 7-328

4) Disconnect the eleven connectors [3] from the composite power supply PCB, and disconnect the connector [4] from the main motor assembly.

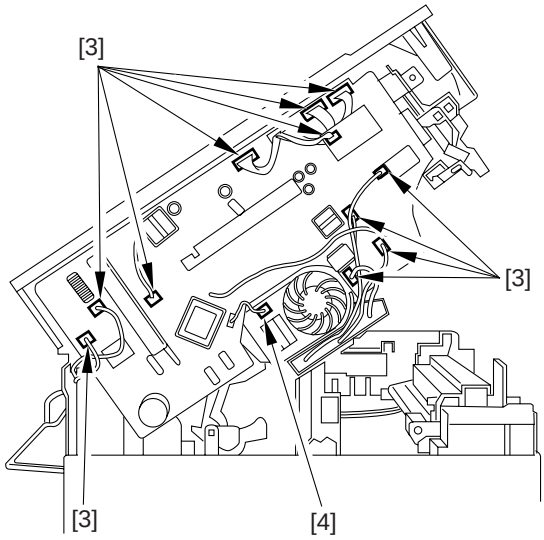


Figure 7-329

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5) Remove the seven screws [5], and free the five claws [6]; then, detach the composite power supply PCB [7].

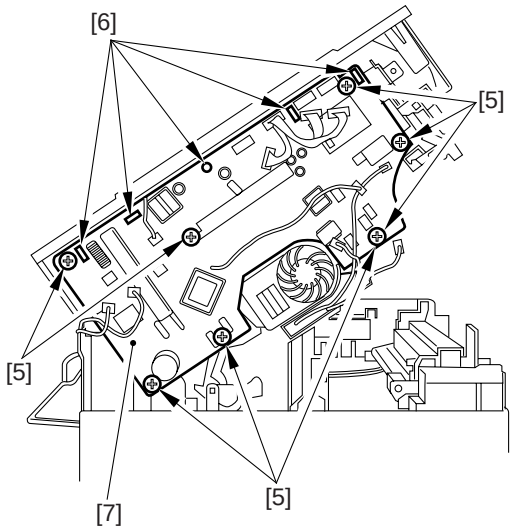


Figure 7-330

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

3. Points to Note When Handling the Composite Power Supply PCB

1) Some capacitors on the composite power supply hold charges when the machine's power supply is off.
   Take extra care never to short the terminals of the capacitor whenever you have removed the composite power supply PCB.
2) When handling the PCB, hold its heat radiating plate (at the center) or its both edges. In particular, keep in mind that holding the area indicated by "⃠" can cause deformation or cracking of the board.

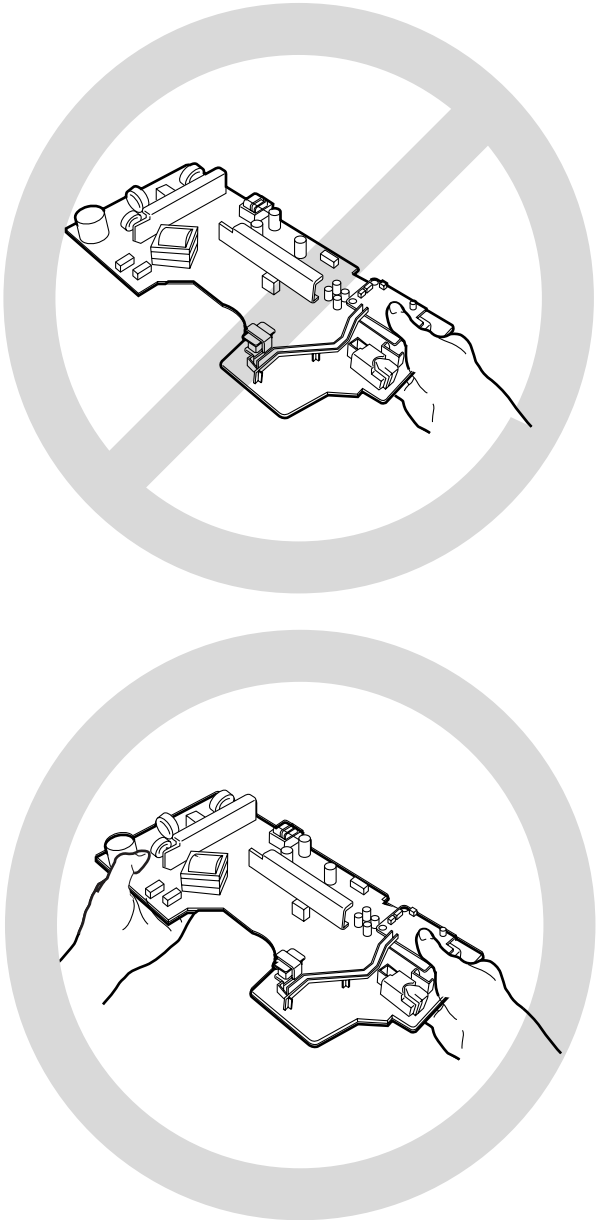
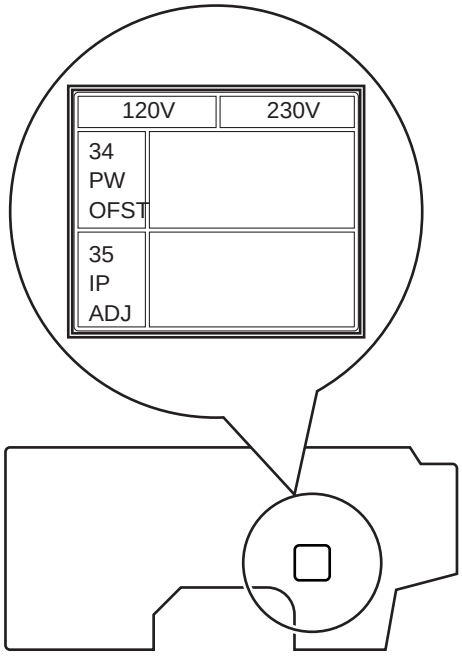


Figure 7-331

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4. After Replacing the Composite Power Supply PCB

1) If you have replaced the composite power supply PCB, be sure to enter the values indicated on the PCB to '34' and '35' in service mode.



Composite power supply PCB

Figure 7-332

CHAPTER 8

ADF

I. ADF 8-1
- A. Outline 8-1
- B Basic Construction 8-2
- C. Basic Operations 8-4
- D. Detecting an Original 8-6
- E. Pickup Operation 8-8
- F. Delivery 8-12
- G. Controlling the Pickup Motor 8-14
- H. Controlling the Belt Motor .. 8-15
- I. Detecting Original Jams 8-16
- J. Power Supply 8-17

II. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY 8-18
- A. Removing the ADF 8-19
- B. External Covers 8-21
- C. Drive System 8-23
- D. Feeding System 8-26
- E. Electrical System 8-33

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

I. ADF

A. Outline

The ADF picks up the originals stacked on the original tray starting with the topmost original, moves them through the copyboard, and delivers them.

See Figure 8-101 for an outline of the feeding route.

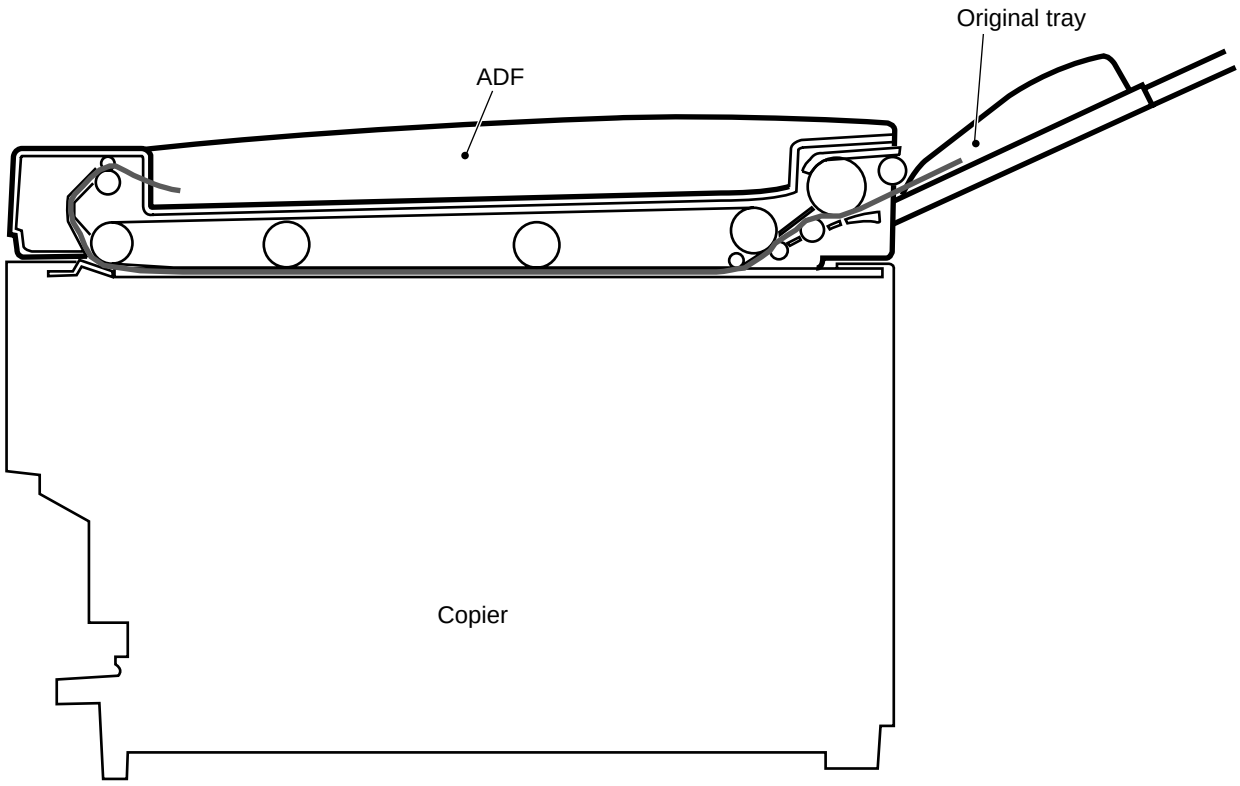


Figure 8-101

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

B Basic Construction

1. Outline of the Electric Circuitry

The ADF's major electrical mechanisms are controlled by the CPU on the ADF controller PCB.

The CPU on the ADF controller PCB reads the signals from the sensors and the copier and generates signals to drive the motor at such times as programmed in advance.

The copying modes selected on the copier are communicated to the ADF in serial, and the ADF communicates to the copier the state of feeding originals to the copier in serial. (It does not use an IC for communications.)

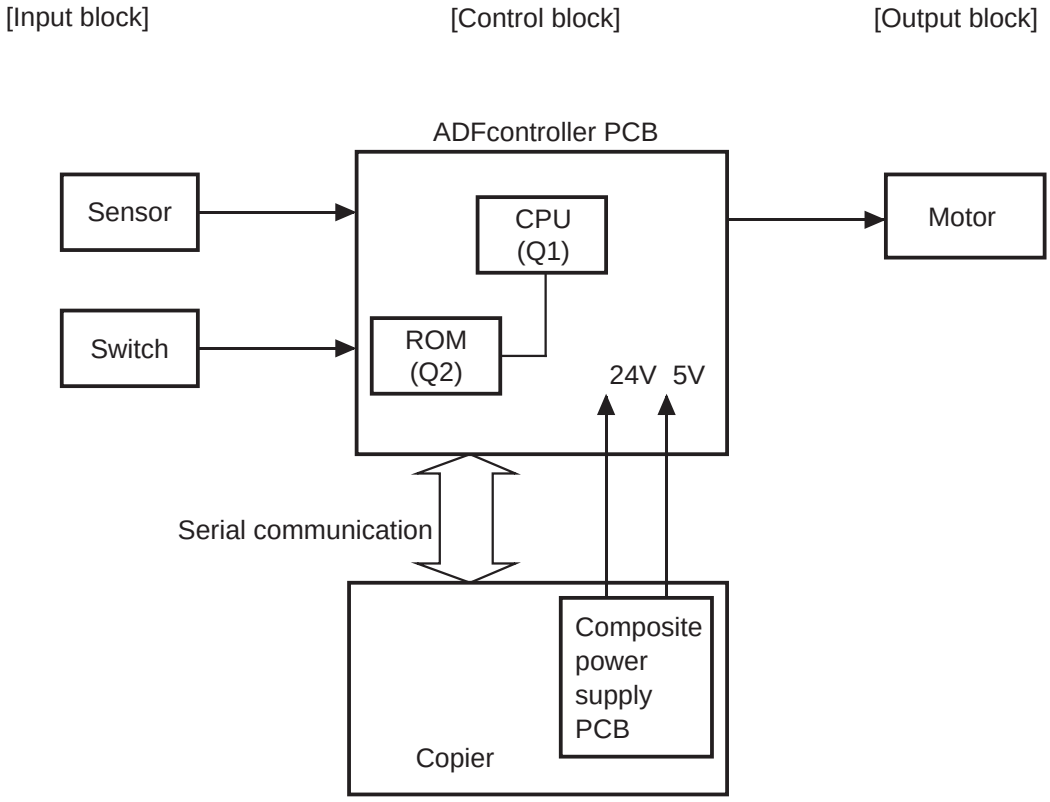


Figure 8-102

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Inputs to and Outputs from the ADF Controller PCB

a. Inputs to and Outputs from the ADF Controller PCB (1/1)

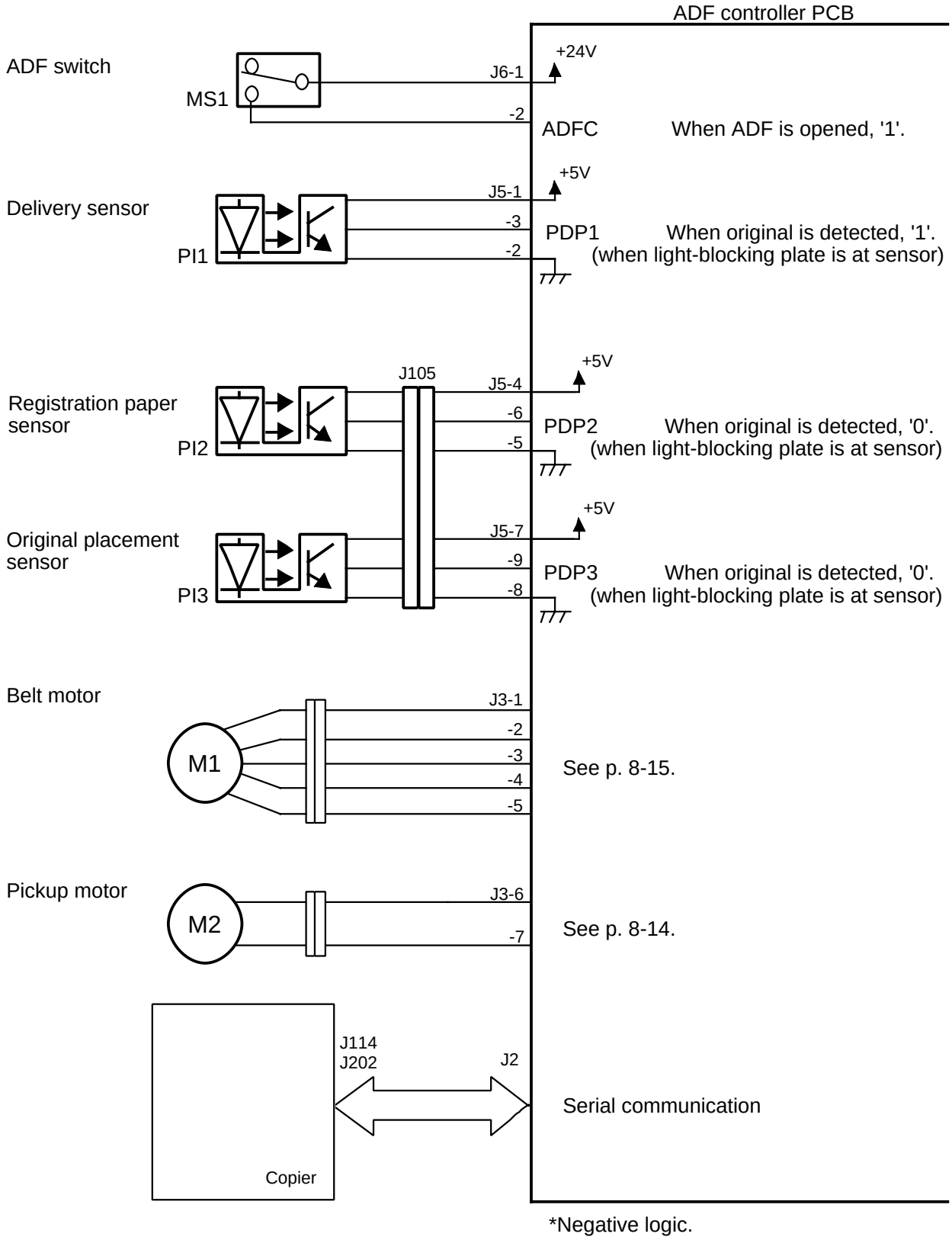


Figure 8-103

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

C. Basic Operations

1. Outline

The ADF uses two motors for picking up and delivering originals. The pickup motor (M2) is used to pick up originals, and the belt motor (M1) is used to move, stop, and deliver originals.

Further, the ADF is equipped with three sensors for monitoring the movement of originals.

The ADF is designed to accommodate one-sided original copying mode only.

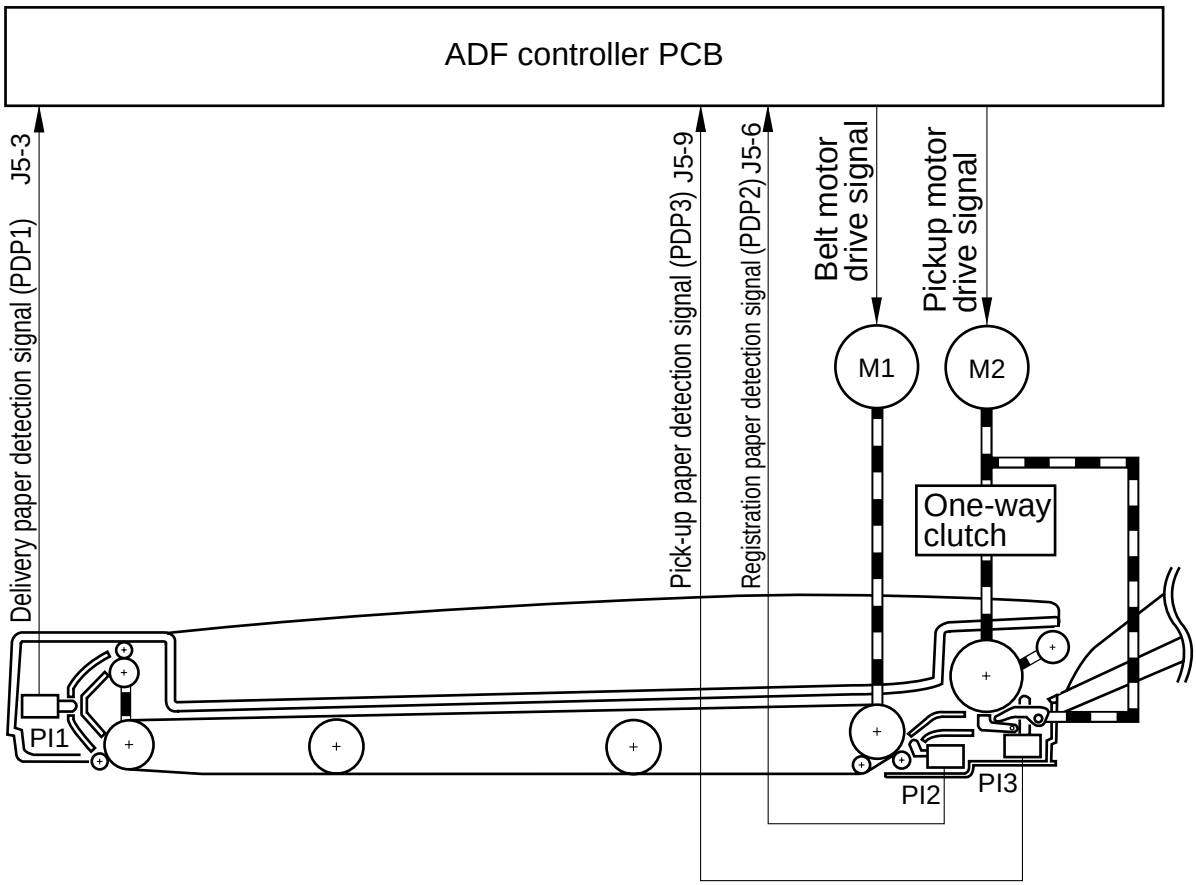


Figure 8-104

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. One-Sided Original Mode

The ADF picks up originals stacked on the original tray starting with the topmost original; after it picks up an original, it places it on the copyboard glass for copying, moves it away from the copyboard glass, and delivers it to the copyboard glass.

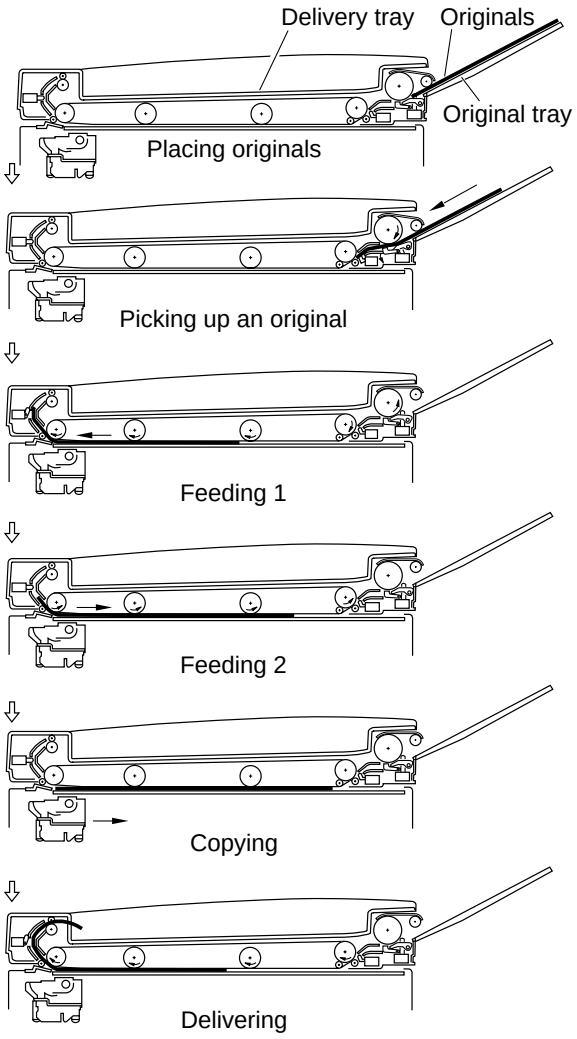


Figure 8-105

D. Detecting an Original

1. Outline

The ADF's original detection mechanism has the following two functions:

1. Detecting the Presence/Absence of an Original
   Checks whether there is an original on the original tray.
2. Identifying the Length of the Original
   Checks the length of the original placed on the original tray.
3. Detecting the Presence/Absence of an Original
   The original placement sensor (PI3) is used to check the presence/absence of an original.

When an original is placed on the original tray, the original placement sensor (PI3) sends the original detection signal (PDP3) to the ADF controller PCB in response to the movement of the detecting lever away from the sensor.

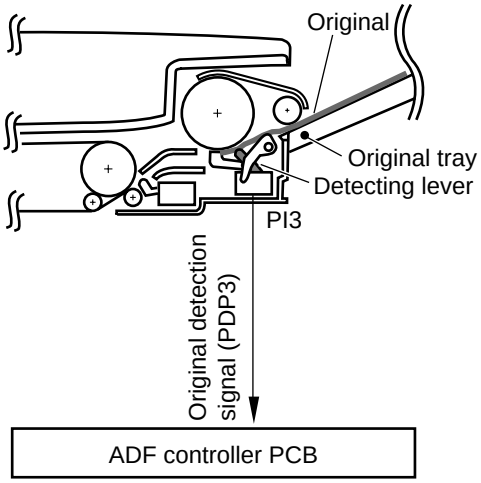


Figure 8-106

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Identifying the Length of the Original

The registration paper sensor (PI2) is used to identify the length of the original, if any.

The ADF controller computes the length of the original based on the time it takes for the original to move past the registration paper sensor (PI2).

Using the result of the computation, the ADF controller determines whether the size of the original is A4/LTR or smaller or LGL, thereby switching to the appropriate ADF operation.

Table 8-101 shows the lengths of originals that determines ADF operation sequence.

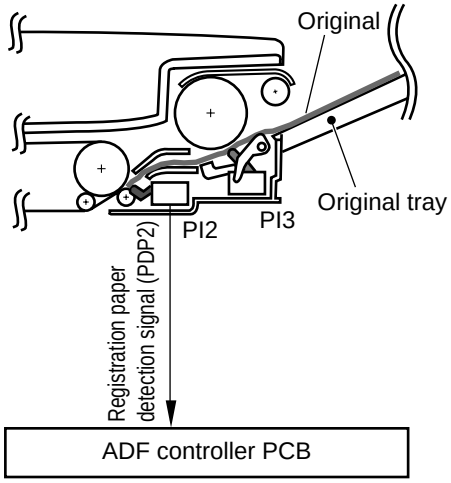


Figure 8-107

Original Lengths and Operation Sequences

Length	Sequence
~313cm	For A4/LTR originals
314cm~	For LGL originals

Table 8-101

E. Pickup Operation

1. Operation

When an original is placed on the original tray and the Copy Start key is pressed, the following sequence of operations takes place:

1 Preparing for PickUp Operation

When an original is placed on the original tray, i.e., the original placement sensor (PI3) turns ON, the pickup roller rotates counterclockwise and the paper guide holds the original in place.

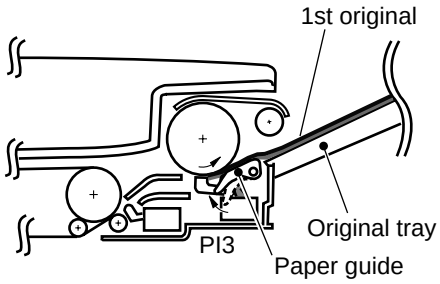


Figure 8-108

2 Pickup Separation

When the Copy Start key is pressed, the pickup roller 1 and 2 rotate clockwise, and pick up the first original (topmost) and forward it as far as the registration roller. (The separation pad ensures that only one original is picked up.)

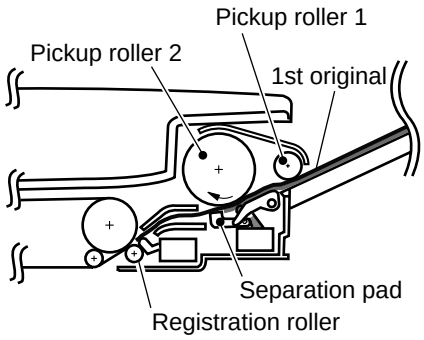


Figure 8-109

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3 Arching

The first original is butted against the registration roller so that it arches.

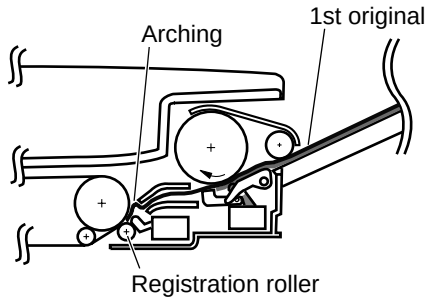


Figure 8-110

4 Feeding Operation 1

The feeding belt is moved so that the leading edge of the first original comes into contact with the delivery sensor (PI1). (In the case of a LGL original, the original is moved about 15 mm farther after it has come into contact with the delivery sensor.)

At the same time, the pickup motor (M2) is rotated counterclockwise to prepare for picking up the second original.

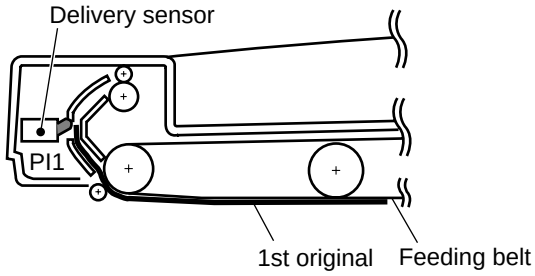


Figure 8-111

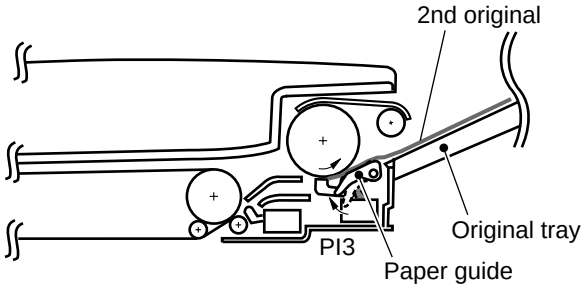


Figure 8-112

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

5 Feeding 2

The feeding belt is moved counterclockwise so that the first original is stopped at a specific location on the copyboard glass.

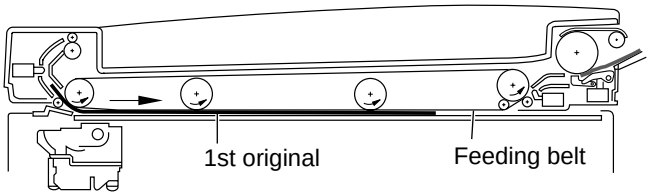


Figure 8-113

6 Moving the Scanner and Picking Up the Second Original

The scanner starts to move forward after the original has been stopped at a specific location on the copyboard glass.

If the original is A4/LTR or smaller, the pickup motor (M2) is also rotated clockwise to pickup the second original and butt it against the registration roller.

If the original is LGL, the second original is picked up after the scanner has been moved forward.

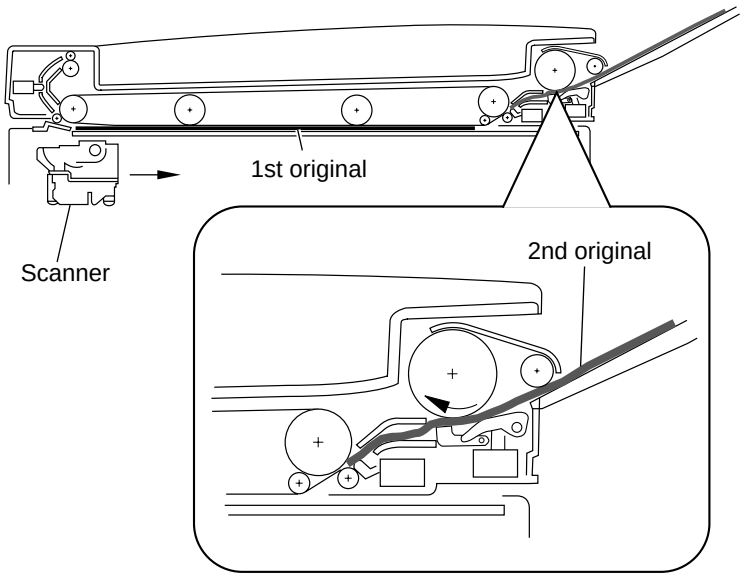


Figure 8-114

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Sequence of Pickup Operations (A4/LTR, 2 originals)

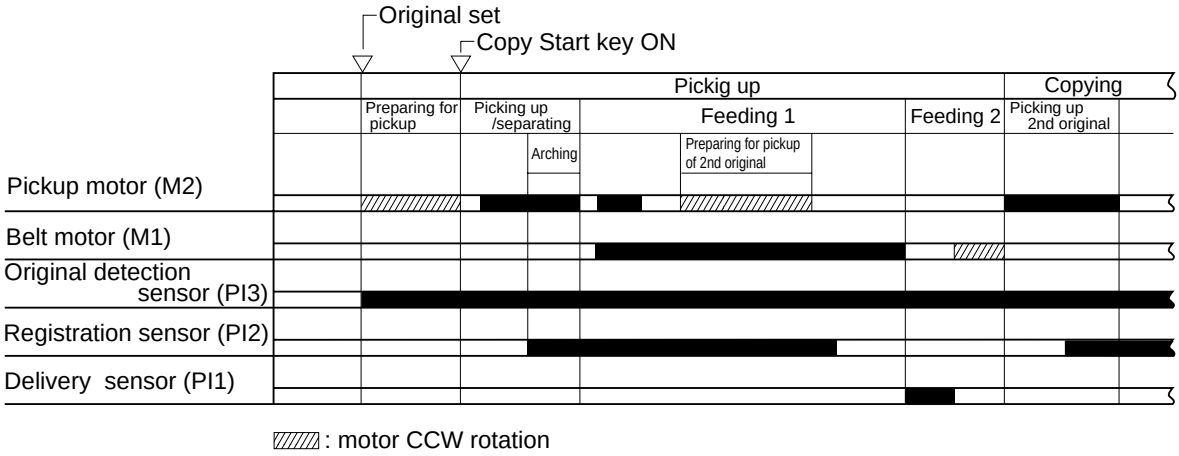


Figure 8-115

3. Sequence of Operations (LGL, 2 originals)

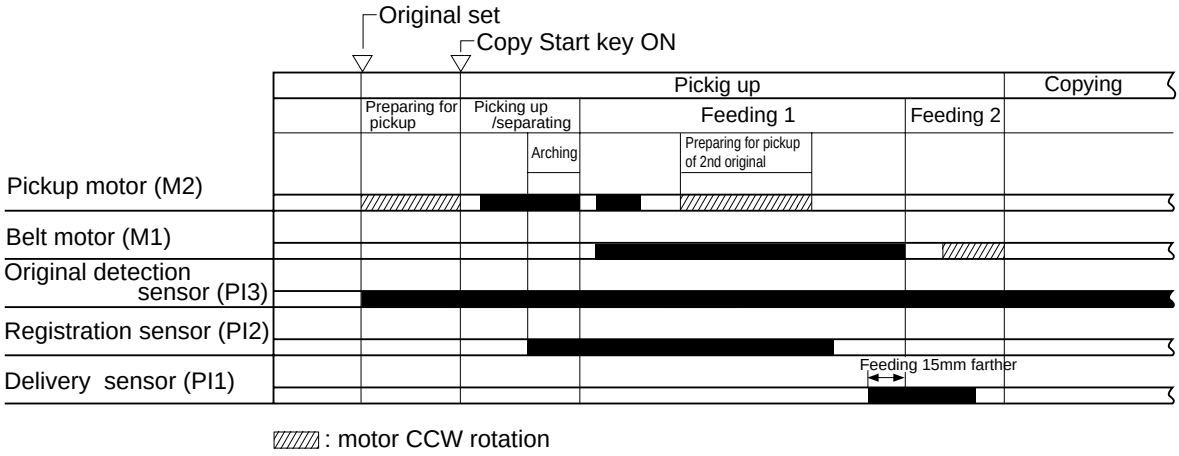


Figure 8-116

F. Delivery

1. Operations

The ADF operates as follows to deliver originals from the copyboard glass:

1 Delivery Feeding

The feeding belt is moved to feed and deliver the first original on the copyboard glass. At the same time, the pickup motor (M2) moves the second original to the copyboard glass.

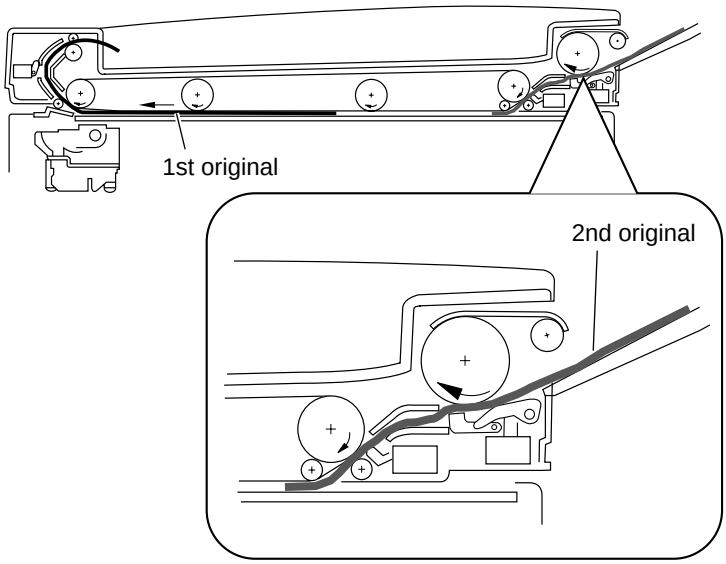


Figure 8-117

2 Delivering to the Delivery Tray

The ADF switches the belt motor to low speed as soon as the trailing edge of the original moves past the delivery sensor (PI1), thereby delivering the original slowly.

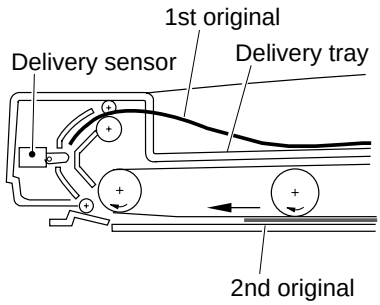


Figure 8-118

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Sequence of Operations (A4/LTR, 2 originals)

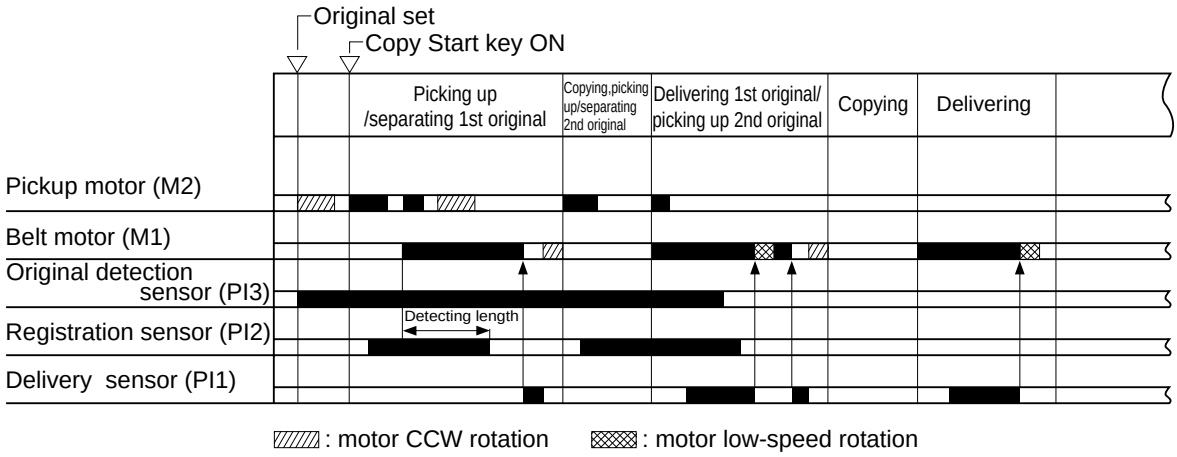


Figure 8-119

3. Sequence of Operations (LGL, 2 originals)

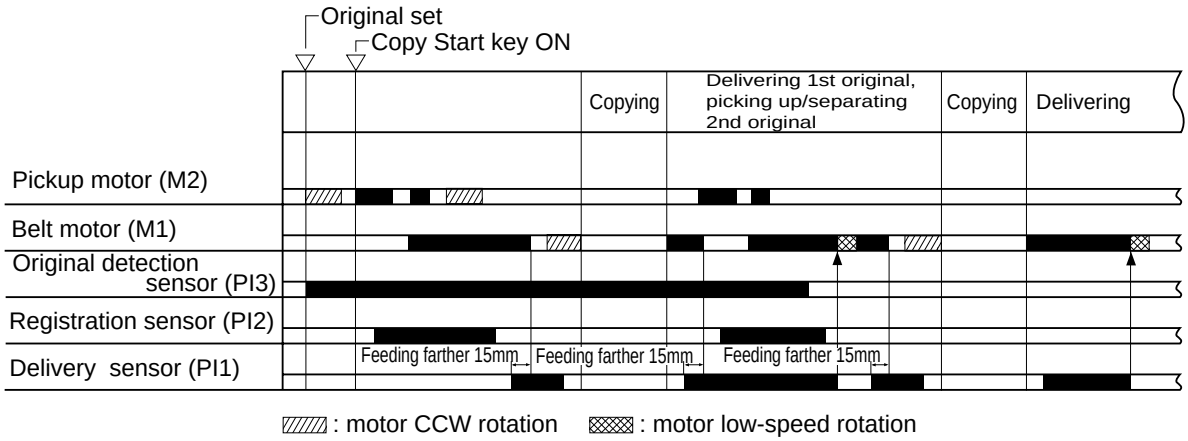


Figure 8-120

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

G. Controlling the Pickup Motor

1. Outline

Figure 8-121 is a diagram of the control circuit for the pickup motor (M2).

The pickup motor is a DC motor.

The CPU (Q1) on the ADF controller PCB sends the motor drive signals PM0 and PM1 to the motor driver (Q5). The pickup motor rotates clockwise or counterclockwise according to the combinations of the states of these two signals. (Table 8-102 shows how the pickup motor rotates for each combination.)

The motor driver is equipped with a limiter function, preventing overcurrent from flowing into the motor. When an overcurrent occurs, the limiter function cuts off the motor drive current, thereby preventing damage to the motor.

When the limiter function is activated, the pickup motor cannot rotate as controlled, possibly leading to pickup faults. Any pickup fault causes the ADF controller to flash the JAM indicator on the copier and stop the pickup motor at the same time.

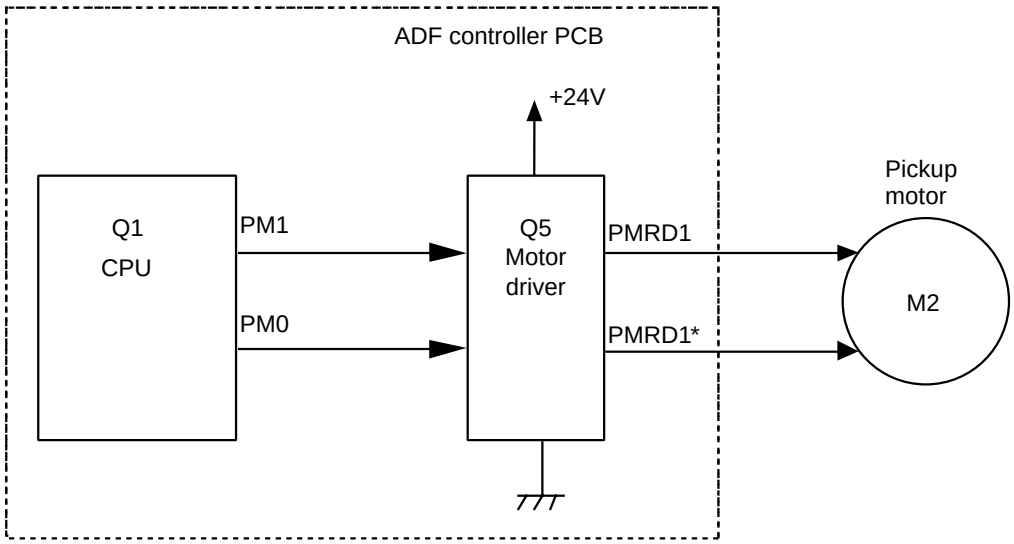


Figure 8-121

Motor drive signal (PM0)	Motor drive signal (PM1)	Pickup roller rotation
'1'	'1'	Braked
'1'	'0'	Picking up
'0'	'1'	Delivering
'0'	'0'	At reset (free)

Table 8-102

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

H. Controlling the Belt Motor

1. Outline

Figure 8-122 is a diagram showing the control circuit for the belt motor (M2).

The belt motor is a 4-phase control stepping motor.

The CPU (Q1) on the ADF controller PCB sends control pulse signals (A, A*, B, B*) to the motor driver (Q4).

In response, the motor driver changes the output timing of the pulse signals (MA, MA*, MB, MB*) used for driving the motor to rotate the belt motor clockwise or counterclockwise.

The motor driver is equipped with a limiter function used to keep the motor supplied with a specific current so that current greater than specified will not flow.

If loads large enough to activate the limiter function occur in succession, the belt motor cannot rotate as specified, possibly leading to feeding faults. Any feeding fault will cause the ADF controller to flash the Jam indicator on the controller and stop the belt motor at the same time.

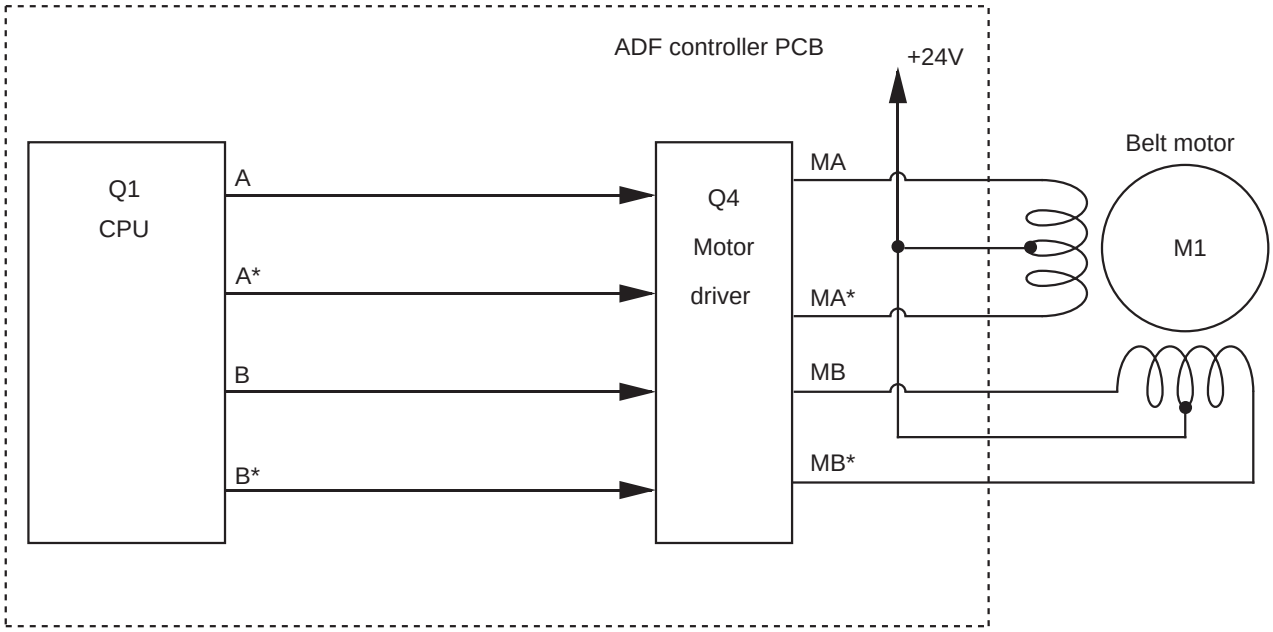


Figure 8-122

I. Detecting Original Jams

The ADF is equipped with three jam sensors (PI1 through PI3) as indicated in Figure 8-123 to monitor the movement of originals.

The movement of originals are checked at such times as programmed in the CPU on the ADF controller PCB; a jam is identified in relation to the presence of an original at each sensor.

Table 8-103 describes the type of jam, condition of detection, and sensors involved.

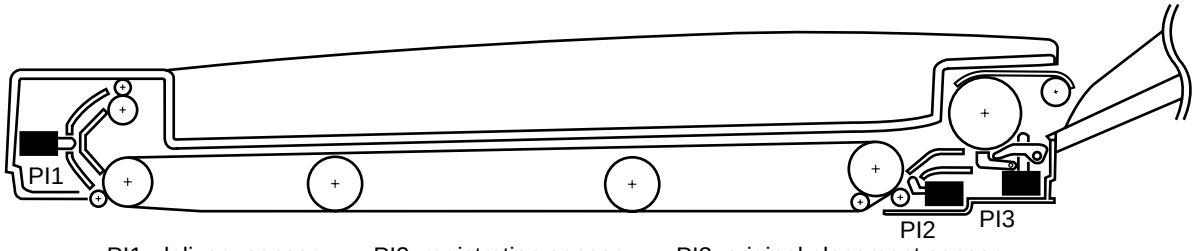


Figure 8-123

Type of Original Jam and Condition of Detection

Operation	Type of jam	Sensor	Conditions
Pickup	Residual original	PI1,PI2	When the 1st original is separated, the delivery sensor (PI1) turns on while the belt motor rotates for 300 ms or less or before the registration sensor (PI2) turns on. When the 1st original is picked up, the registration sensor (PI2) and the delivery sensor (PI1) turn on.
	Original present at start	PI1,PI2	When separation starts, the registration sensor (PI2) or the delivery sensor (PI1) are on.
	Separation delay	PI2	When separation starts, the registration sensor (PI2) does not turn on after 2 sec.
	Pick-up delay	PI2	When pickup starts, the registration sensor (PI2) does not turn off after feeding the original for about 500 mm.
Delivery	ADF open	MS1	The ADF is opened while in operation.
	Delivery delay jam	PI1,PI2	When delivery starts, the delivery sensor (PI1) does not detect an original that has been fed about 100 mm. After the registration sensor (PI2) has turned off, the delivery sensor (PI1) does not detect an original that has been fed for about 500 mm.
	Delivery stationary jam	PI1	During pickup, the delivery sensor (PI1) remains on even when the original is fed for 'length + about 60 mm'.

Table 8-103

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

J. Power Supply

1. Outline

Figure 8-124 shows the routes of power supply.

The ADF is supplied by the copier with 5 V and 24 V. The 24V supply is cut off when the ADF is opened, i.e., when the ADF switch (MS1) turns off. The 5V supply will continue to keep each sensor powered even when the ADF is opened.

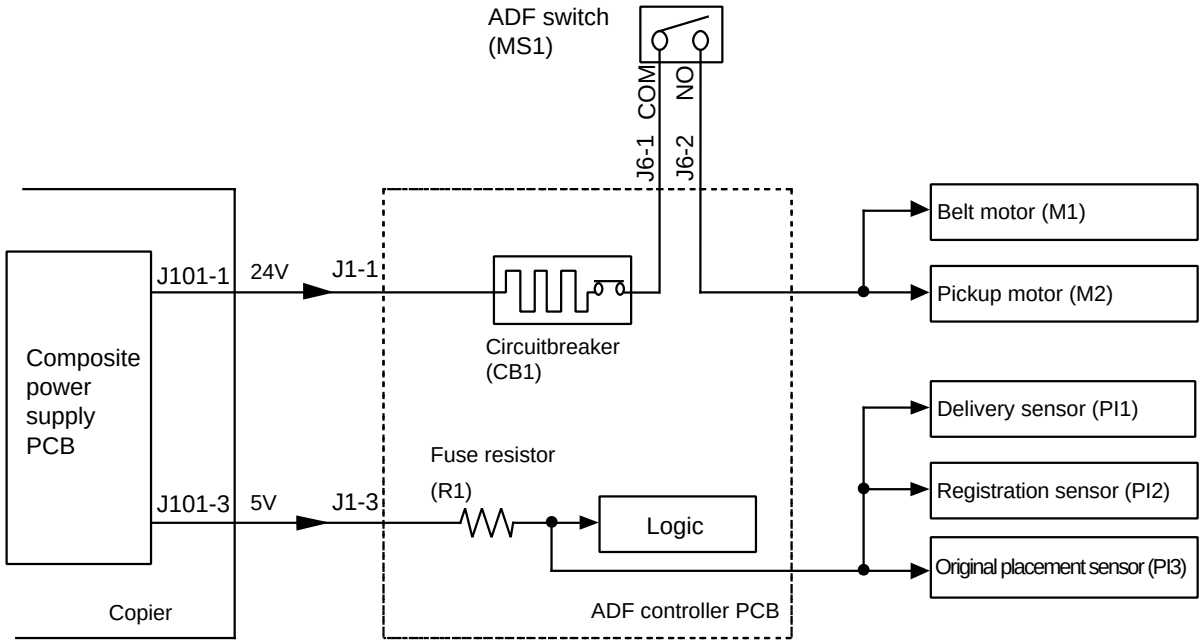


Figure 8-124

II. DISASSEMBLY/ASSEMBLY

As needed, disassemble/assemble the machine with the following in mind:

1. ⚠ Before starting the work, turn off the power switch and disconnect the power plug for safety.
2. Unless otherwise instructed, assemble the parts by reversing the steps used to disassemble it.
3. Identify the screws by type (length, diameter) and location.
4. Use the washers where necessary. (The screws used to mount the grounding wire and Varistors come with a washer to ensure electrical continuity.)
5. As necessary, cut the harness band.
6. As a rule, do not operate the machine with any of its part removed.
7. A few of the screws used are special screws (with wider thread intervals). Do not use any screws indiscriminately.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON PC800S/900S REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

A. Removing the ADF

1) Open the machine's top unit.
2) Free the two claws [1], and slide the left cover [2] to detach.

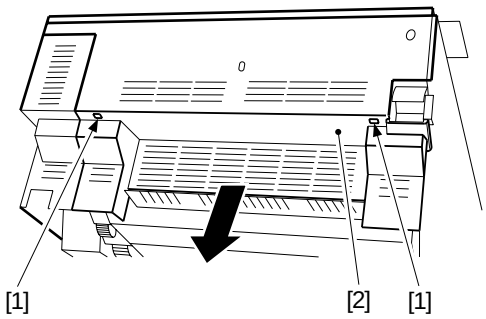


Figure 8-201

3) Remove the screw [3], and free the four claws [4]; then, the detach the rear cover [5].

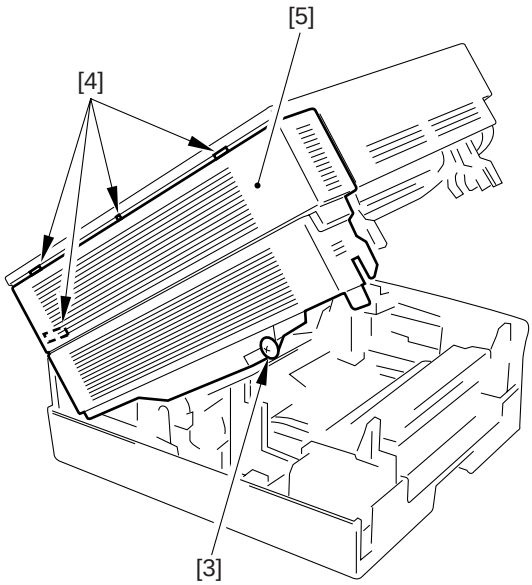


Figure 8-202

4) Close the machine's top unit.
5) Remove the two screws [6], and remove the fixing plate [7].

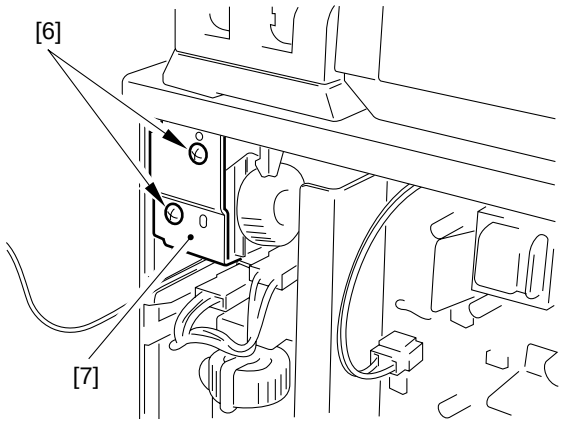


Figure 8-203

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

6) Disconnect the two connectors [8], and remove the screw [9]; then, remove the cable bush [10].

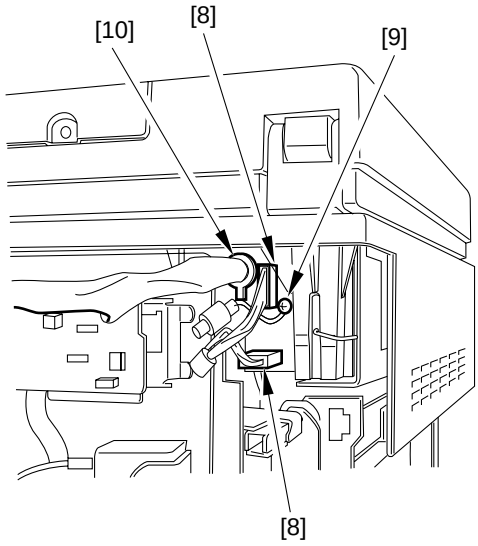


Figure 8-204

7) Remove the two lockpin [11], and remove the ADF from the copier.

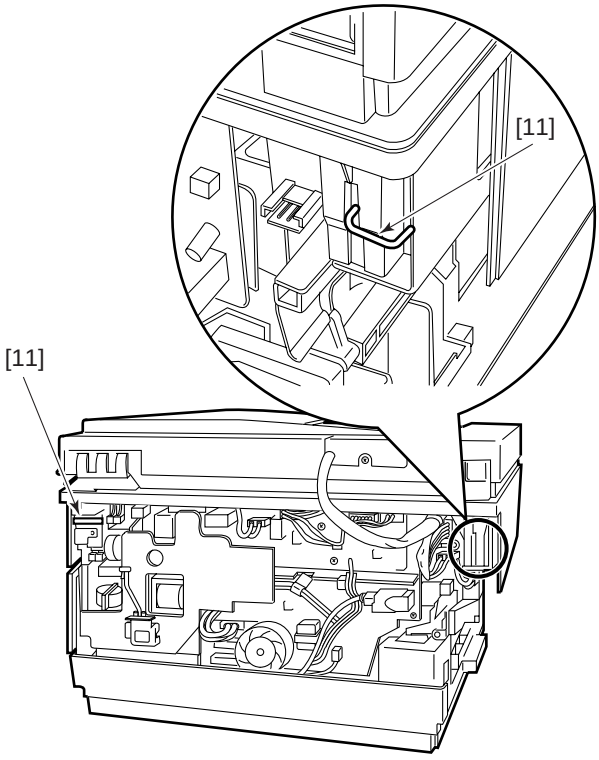
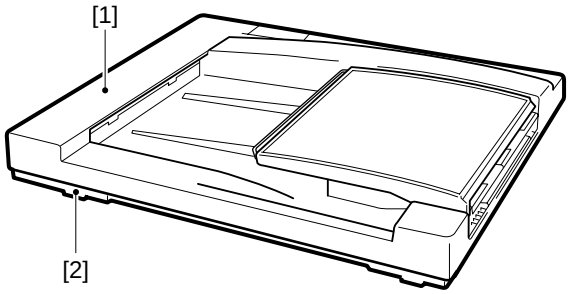


Figure 8-205

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

B. External Covers



[1] Upper cover [2] Lower cover

Figure 8-206

Remove the covers as follows when cleaning, checking, or repairing the inside of the machine:

1) Remove the ADF from the copier. (See “A. Removing the ADF.”)
2) Remove the feeding roller [1] from the bushing [2].

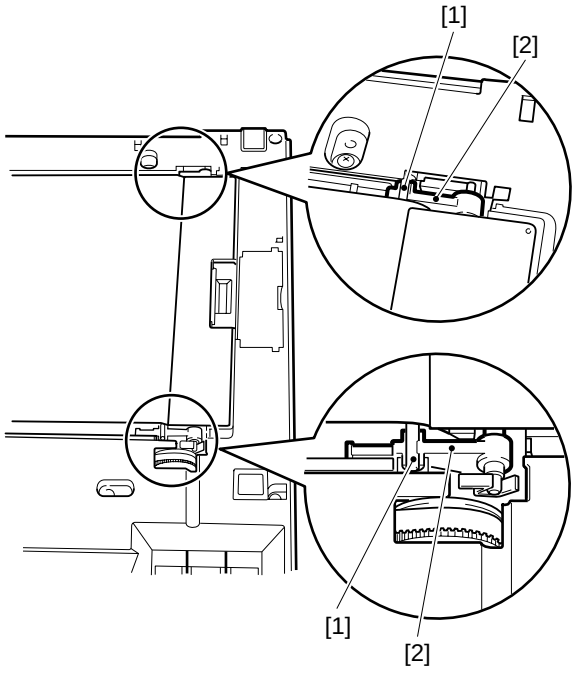


Figure 8-207

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

3) Remove the six screws [3], and separate the lower cover [4] from the upper cover [5].

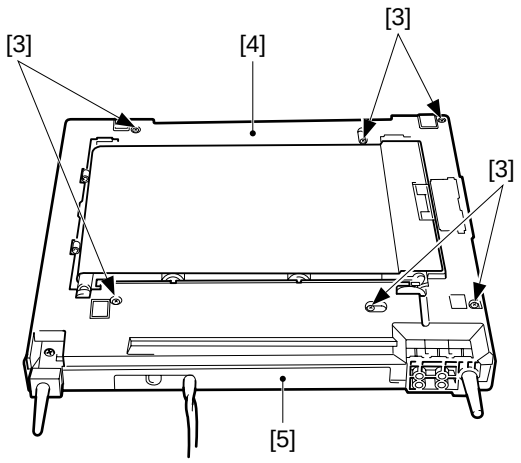


Figure 8-208

4) Disconnect the connector [6], and remove the lower cover [4].

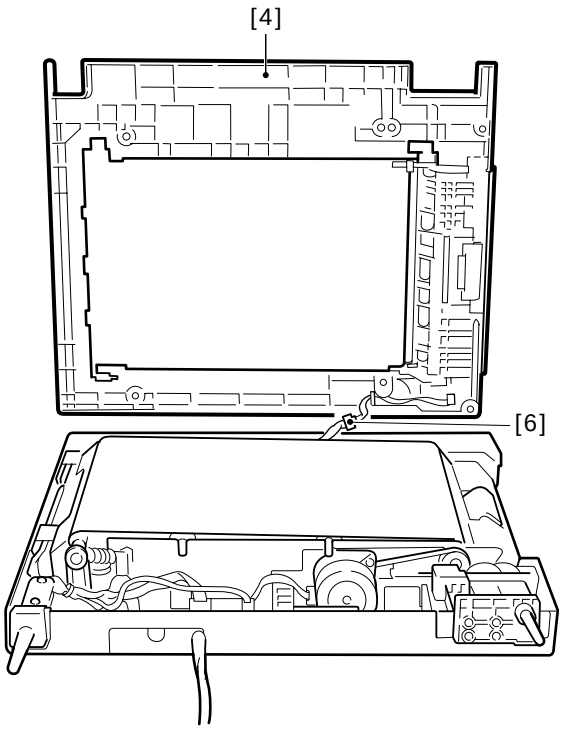


Figure 8-209

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

C. Drive System

1. Drive Unit

1) Remove the lower cover.
(See “B. External Covers.”)
2) Remove the screw [1] and the bushing [2]; then, remove the pickup roller cover [3].

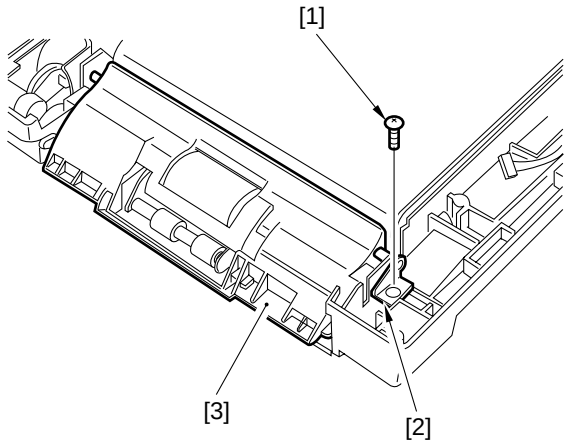


Figure 8-210

3) Remove the E-ring [4], and remove the bearing [5].

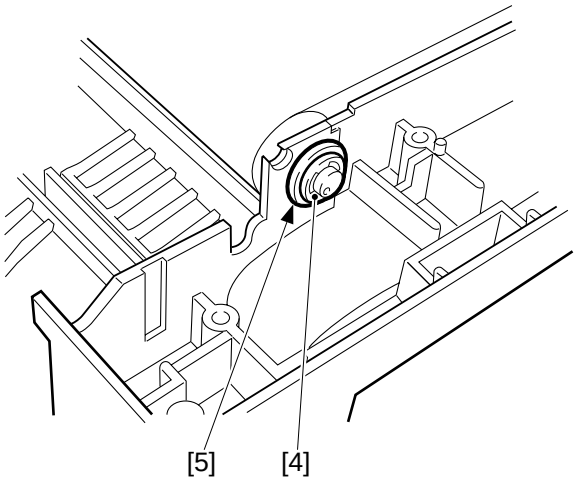


Figure 8-211

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

4) Remove the timing belt [6], and remove the feeding belt roller [7] by shifting it in the direction of the arrow.

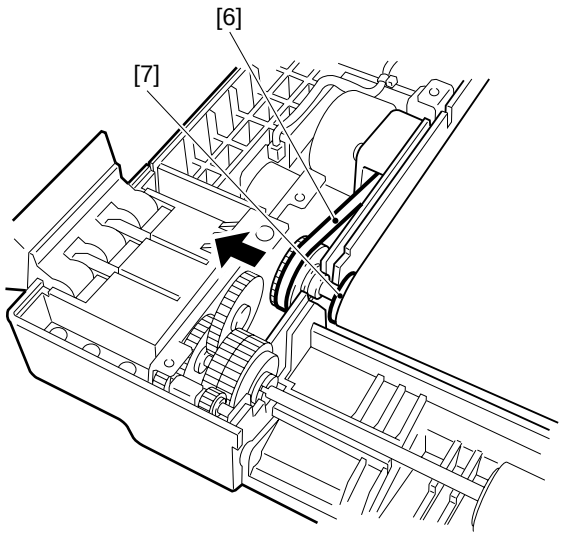


Figure 8-212

5) Remove the five screws [9], and remove the right hinge unit [8].

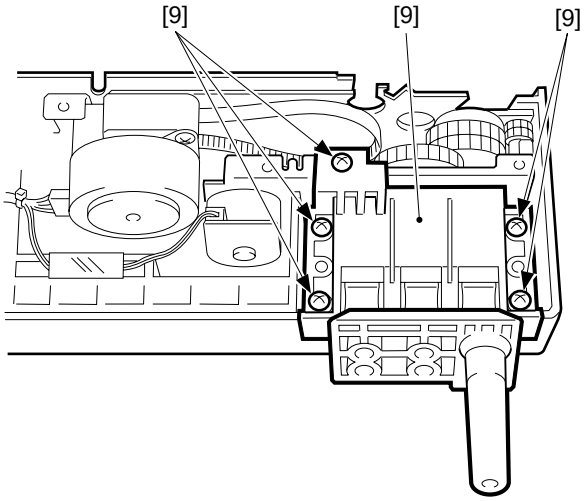


Figure 8-213

6) Remove the stop ring [10] (resin) and the bushing [11].

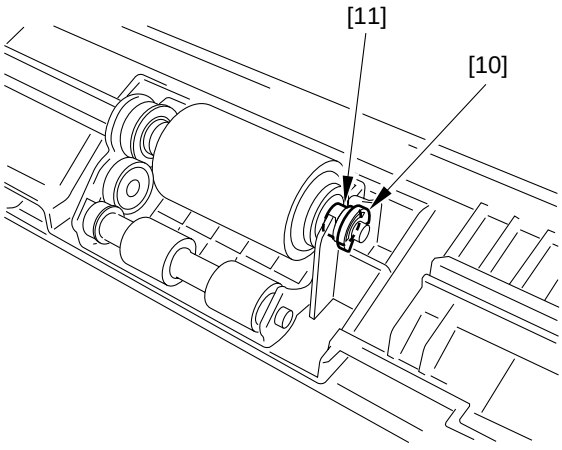


Figure 8-214

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

7) Disconnect the two connectors [12], and remove the five screws [13]; then, remove the drive unit [14].

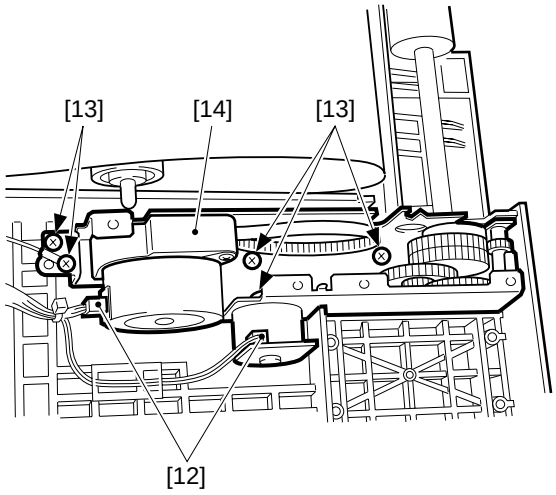


Figure 8-215

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

D. Feeding System

1. Pickup Roller

1) Remove the drive unit [1]. (See “C.1. Drive Unit.”)

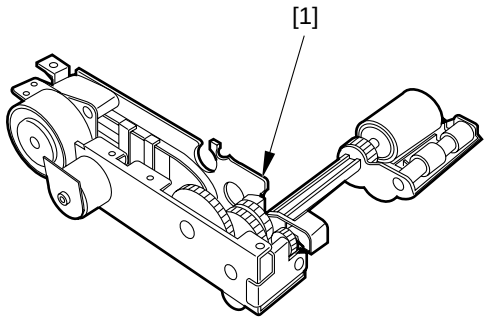


Figure 8-216

2) Remove the E-ring [2], and remove the shaft [3]; then, detach the pickup roller 1 [4].

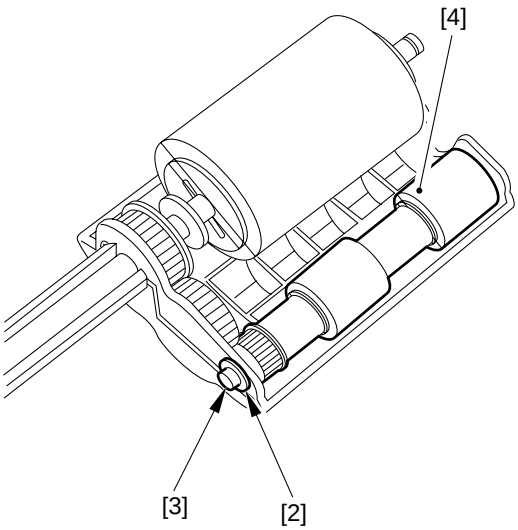


Figure 8-217

3) Remove the stop ring [5].

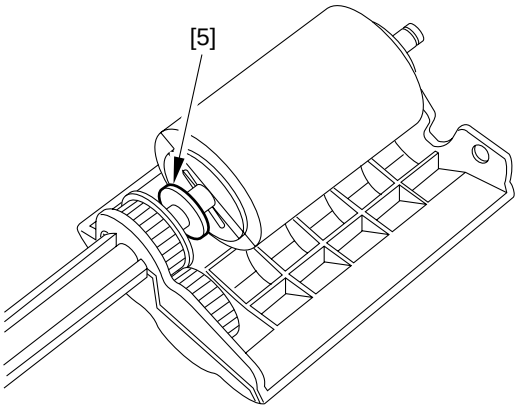


Figure 8-218

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4) Remove the two straight pins [6], and remove the pickup roller 2 [8] while moving the cover [7] in the direction of the arrow.

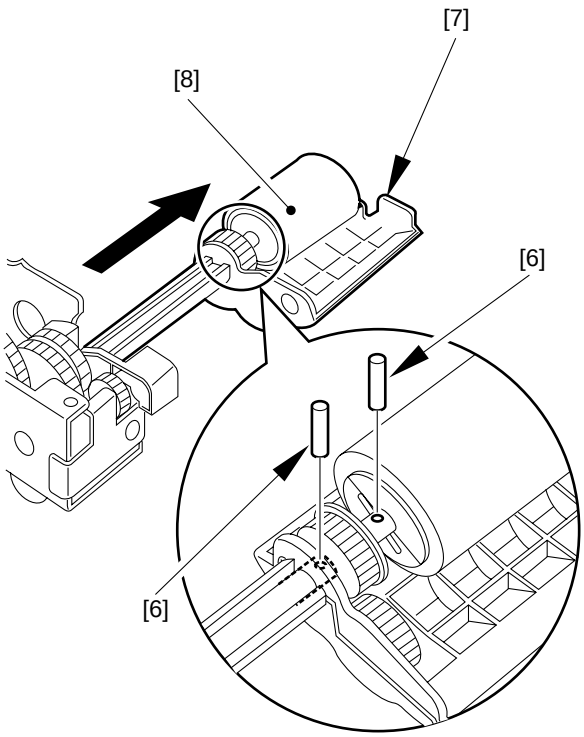


Figure 8-219

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

2. Registration Roller

1) Remove the lower cover.
(See “B. External Covers.”)
2) Remove the link arm [1] from the registration roller shaft [2] by turning the link arm.

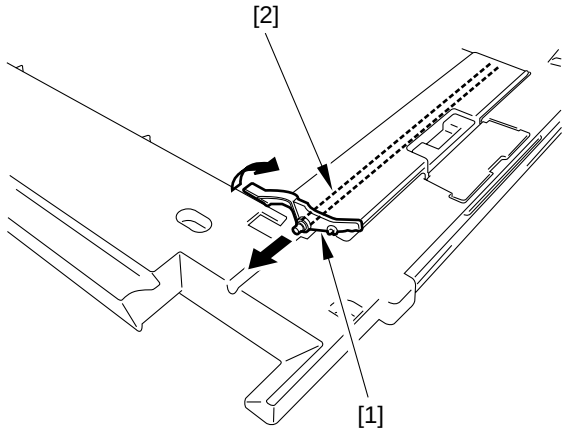


Figure 8-220

3) While pushing the bushing [3] in the direction of the arrow, pull out the registration roller shaft [2] slowly.

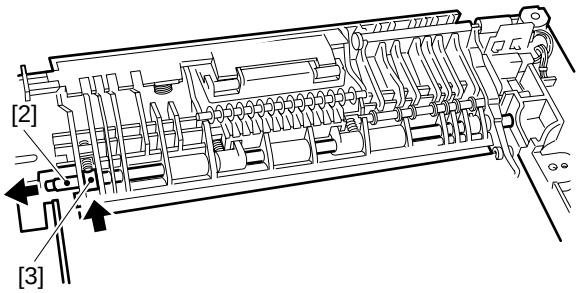


Figure 8-221

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3. Feeding Belt

1) Remove the lower cover.
   (See “B. External Covers.”)
2) Remove the two tension springs [1].

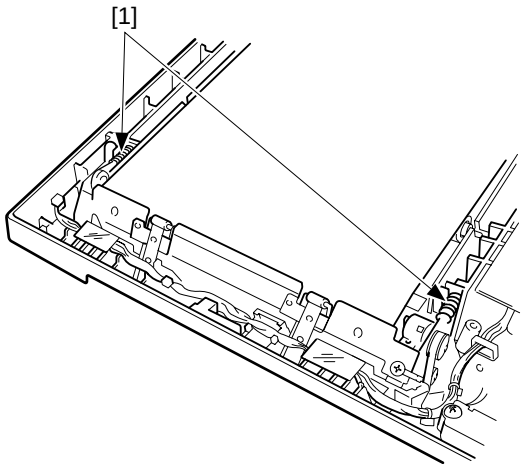


Figure 8-222

3) Remove the E-ring [2], and remove the bearing [3].

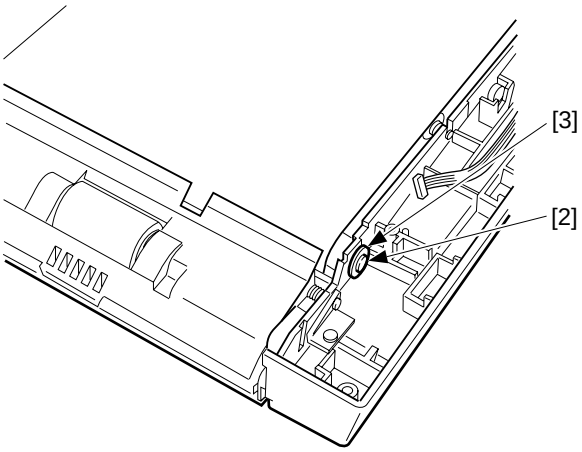


Figure 8-223

4) Remove the timing belt [4], and remove the feeding belt drive roller [5] by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

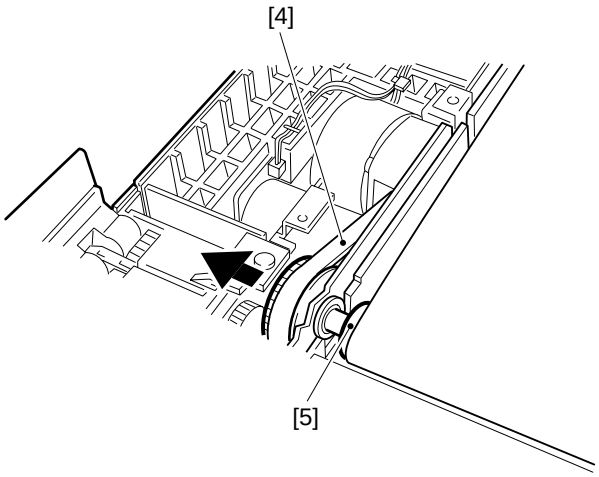


Figure 8-224

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

5) Remove the two equalizer spring [6] and the two feeding belt rolls [7].

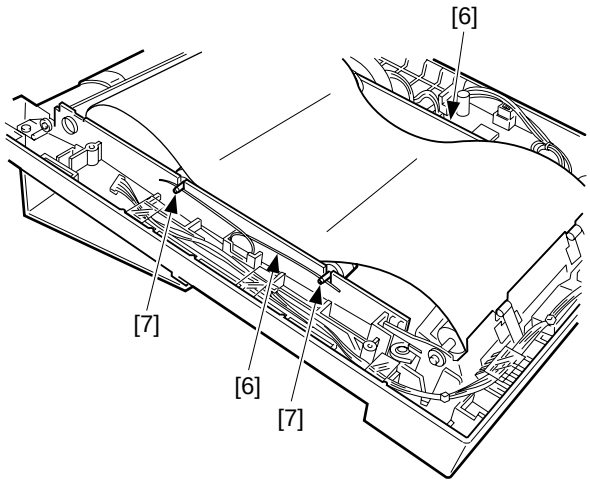


Figure 8-225

6) Remove the two screws [9], and remove the delivery sensor unit [8].

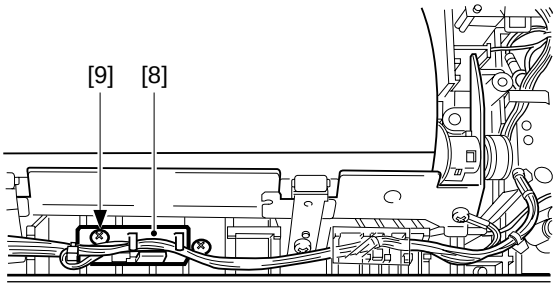


Figure 8-226

7) Remove the stop ring [10] (made of resin); then, remove the bushing [11].

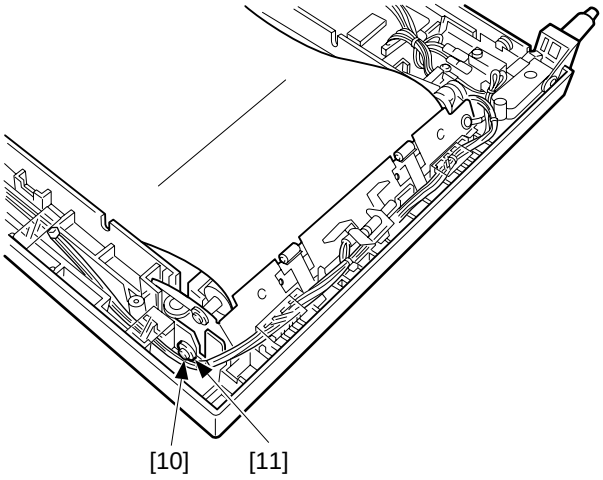


Figure 8-227

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

8) Remove the screw [12], and remove the grounding wire [13]; then, remove the delivery roller unit [14] by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

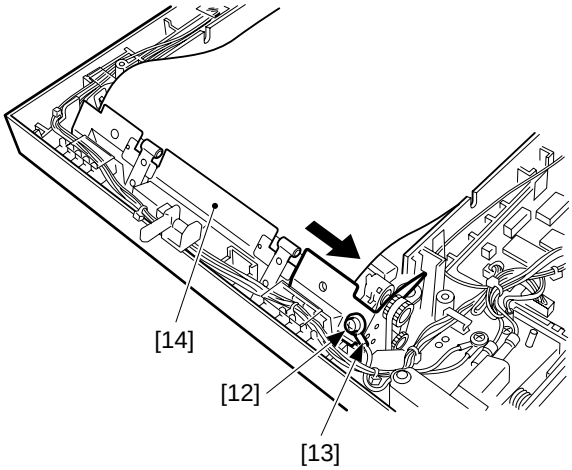


Figure 8-228

9) Remove the screw [15], and remove the static eliminating brush [16].

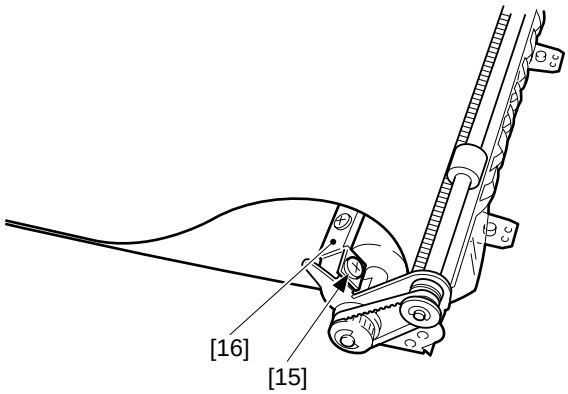


Figure 8-229

10) Remove the two E-rings [17]; then, remove the timing belt [18], gear [19], and two bushings [20].

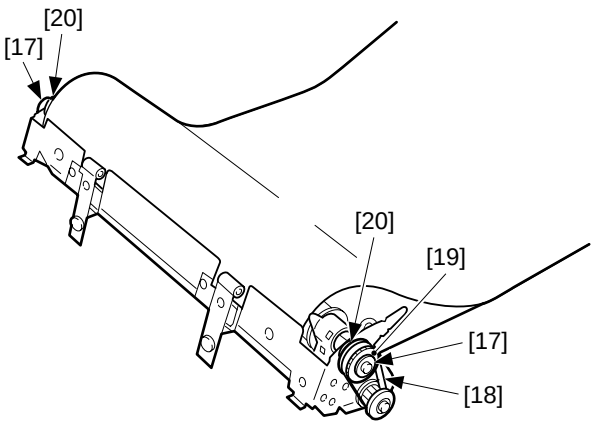


Figure 8-230

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

11) Pull out the actuator [21] in the direction of the arrow; then, remove the feeding belt link roller [22], and remove the feeding belt [23].

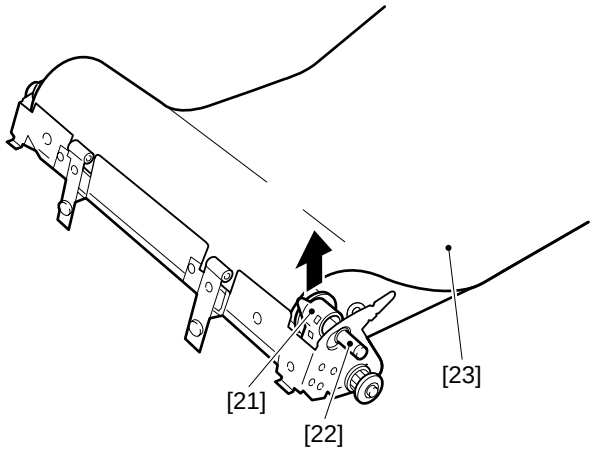


Figure 8-231

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

E. Electrical System

1. ADF Controller PCB

1) Remove the lower cover.
(See “B. External Covers.”)
2) Disconnect the five connectors [1], and remove the two screws [2]; then, remove the ADF controller PCB [3].

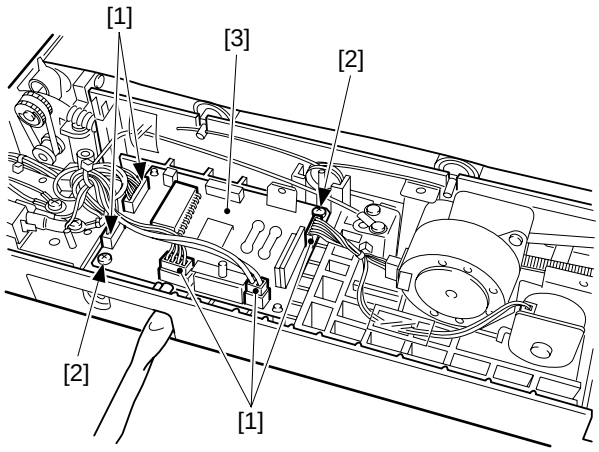


Figure 8-232

2. Original Placement Sensor and Registration Paper Sensor

Pay attention to the colors of the cables and connectors when connecting the connectors of the original placement sensor and the registration paper sensor.

Sensor	Cable color
Original placement sensor	Purple
Registration paper sensor	Yellow

Table 8-201

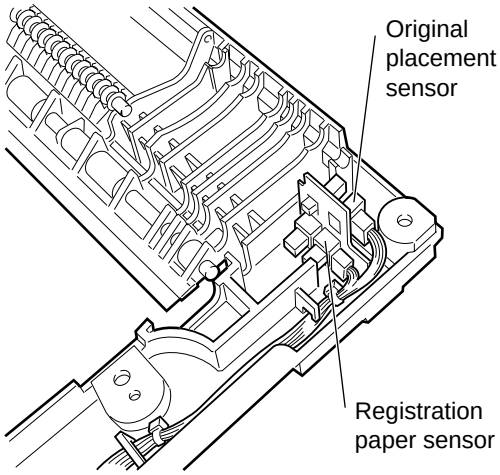


Figure 8-233

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CHAPTER 9

INSTALLATION

I. SELECTING THE SITE 9-1
II. UNPACKING AND INSTALLATION 9-2
A. Unpacking and Installation 9-2
B. Placing Copy Paper 9-18
III. MOVING THE MACHINE 9-21

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

I. SELECTING THE SITE

Keep the following in mind when selecting a site for installation; if possible, visit the user's before delivery of the machine:

- The site offers a power outlet whose rating is as specified (±10%) and which may be used exclusively for the machine.
- The site is between 7.5°C/45.5°F and 32.5°C/90.5°F in temperature and between 5% and 85% in humidity. Avoid an area near water faucets, water boilers, humidifiers, and refrigerators.
- Avoid areas near sources of fire. The site must not be subject to ammonium gas or direct rays of the sun. (As necessary, provide curtains.)
- The site must be well ventilated.
  The level of ozone generated by the machine should not affect the health of people around it. Some, however, may find the odor to be rather unpleasant, and ventilation is a very important factor.
- The floor of the site must ensure that the machine's feet will remain in contact, and will hold the machine level.
- The machine must be at least 10 cm/3.9 in. away from any wall, and there must be adequate space for work involving the machine.

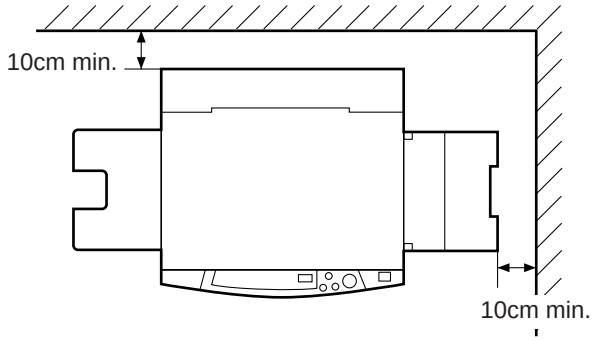


Figure 9-101

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

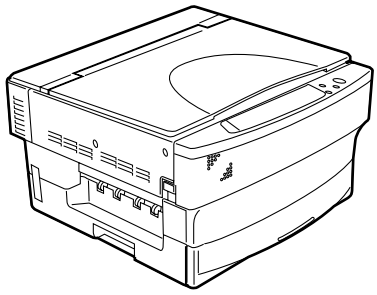
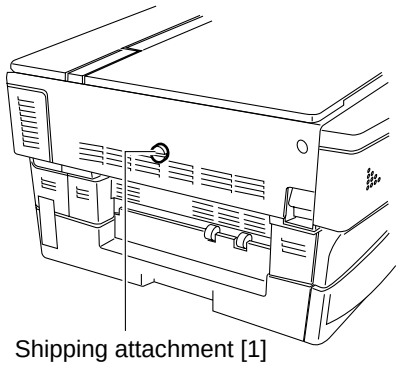
II. UNPACKING AND INSTALLATION

When a piece of metal is brought in from a cold to warm place, droplets of water tend to form on its surface. This phenomenon is known as "condensation" and, in machines, can cause blank copies.

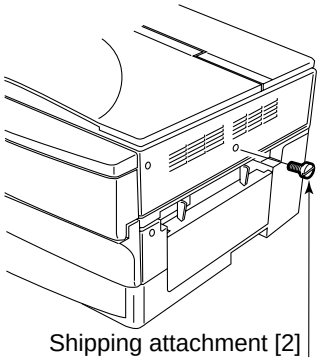
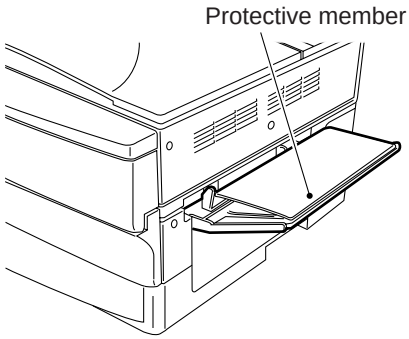
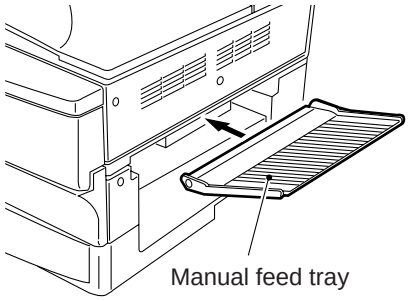
If the machine has been brought in from a cold place, leave it alone at least for one hour before starting to install it.

A. Unpacking and Installation

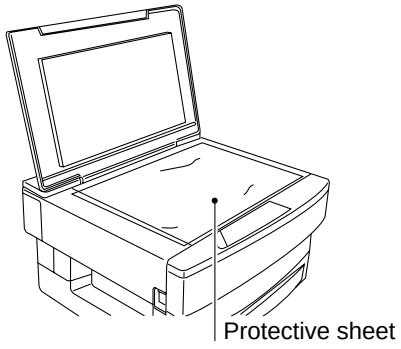
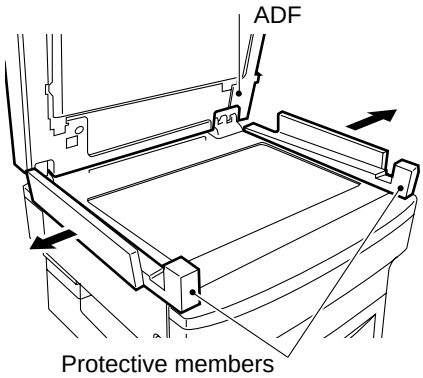
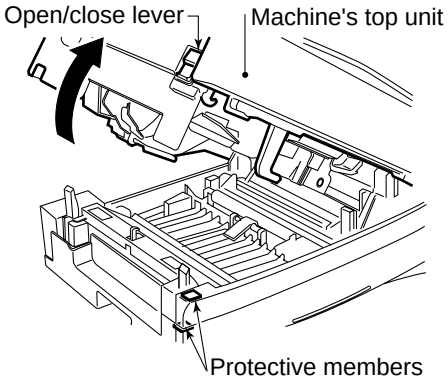
1. Setting up the Machine

Step	Work	Checks and remarks
1	Take out the machine and the attachments from the shipping box, and check to make sure that none is missing:	• Cassette • Copy tray • Power cord • ADF auxiliary tray (ADF type only) • User's Manual • Manual feed tray (for some areas only) • Language label for cassette (included with universal cassette) • Language label for ADF (ADF type only) • Label
2	Remove the packaging bag and all fixing tape.	
3	Remove the shipping attachment [1] (gold-colored screw) from the left of the machine	 Shipping attachment [1] You will be storing the shipping attachment [1] inside the machine in step 10.

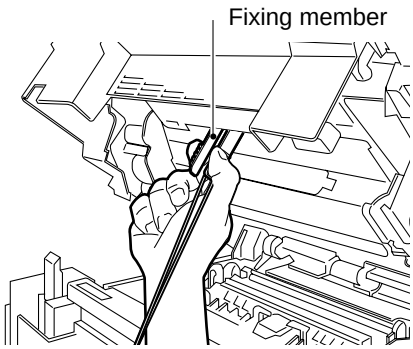
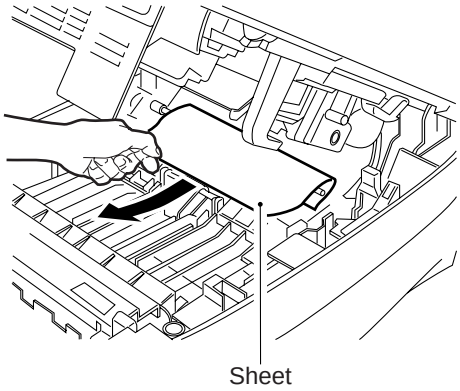
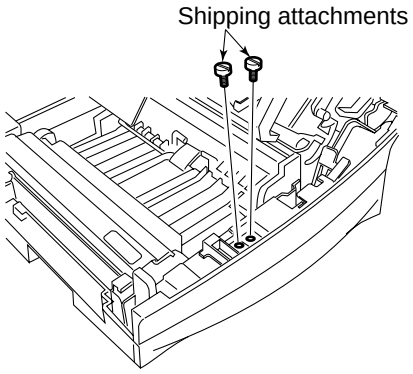
 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

Step	Work	Checks and remarks
4	Remove the shipping attachment [2] (black screw) from the right side of the machine.	 You will be storing the shipping attachment [2] inside the machine in step 10.
5	Take out the protective member from the manual feed tray. Caution: This step applies only if the manual feed tray is attached.	
	Attach the manual feed tray that comes with the machine. Caution: This applies only if the manual feed tray comes packaged with the machine.	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

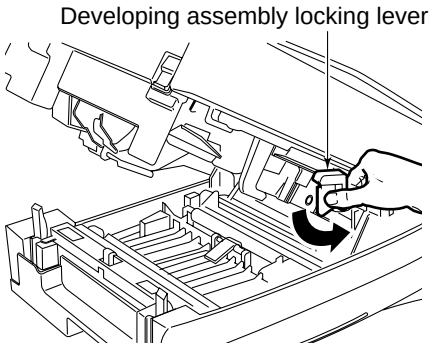
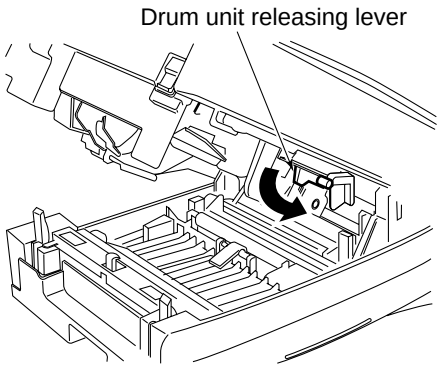
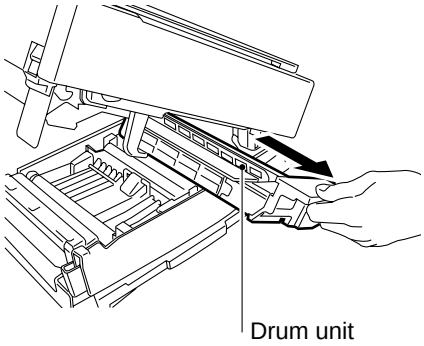
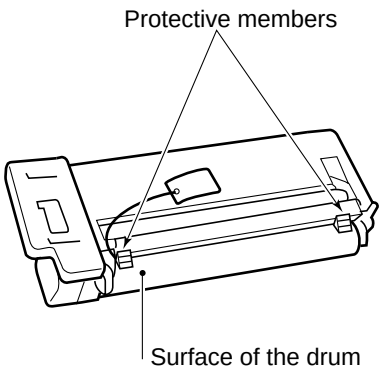
Step	Work	Checks and remarks
6	Open the copyboard cover, and remove the protective sheet; then, close the cover. (Copyboard type only) Caution: If the protective sheet is not fond on the machine, go to the next step.	
	Open the ADF, and remove the protective members; then, close the ADF. (ADF type only) Caution: You will need this protective member when relocating the machine. Be sure to store it away appropriately.	
7	Pull the open/close lever found on the left of the machine to open the machine's top unit; then, remove the two protective members. Caution: If the protective member is not found on the machine, go to the next step.	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

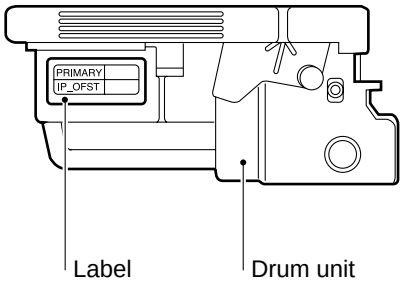
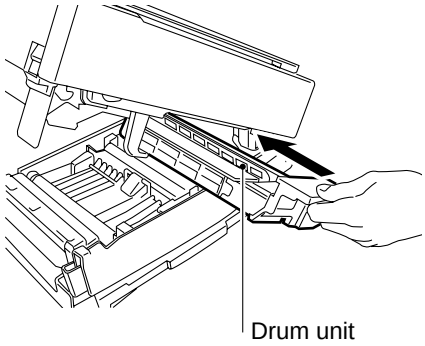
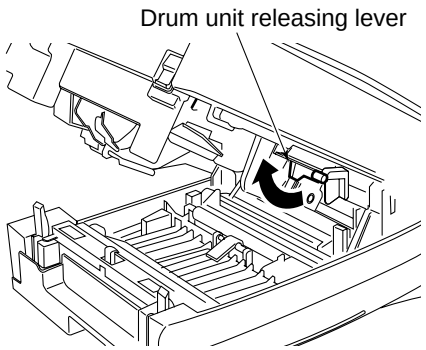
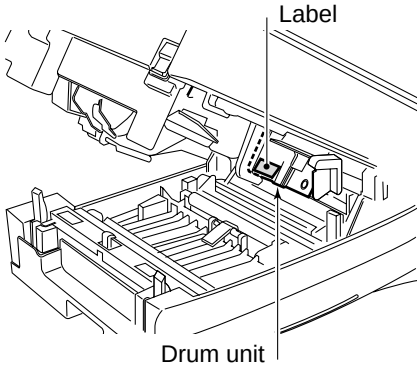
Step	Work	Checks and remarks
8	Pick the fixing member from the bottom of the top unit, and detach it.	
9	Remove the sheet from the bottom of the machine by pulling it in the direction of the arrow. Caution: If the sheet is not found on the machine, go to the next step.	
10	Store the shipping attachments [1] and [2] removed in steps 3 and 4 in the machine's bottom unit.	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

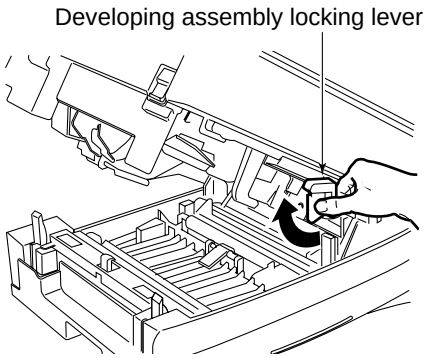
2. Installing the Drum unit

Step	Work	Checks and remarks
1	Turn the developing assembly locking lever counterclockwise.	
2	Turn the drum unit releasing lever counterclockwise.	
3	Remove the drum unit.	
4	Place the drum unit on a flat surface, and remove the two protective members. Note: Do not touch the surface of the drum when handling the drum unit.	

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

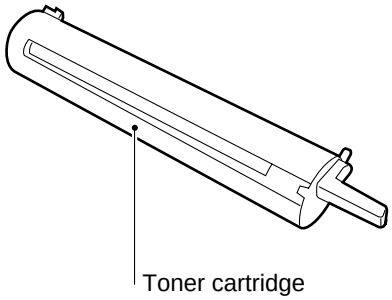
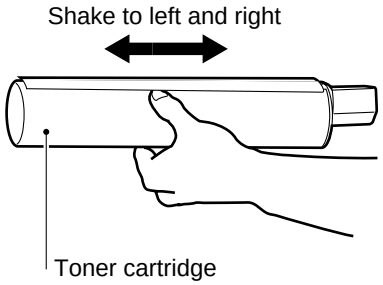
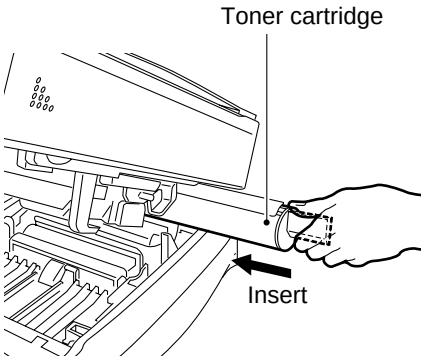
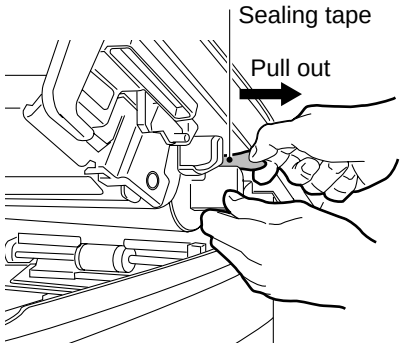
Step	Work	Checks and remarks
5	Record the settings of 'PRIMARY' and 'IP_OFST' indicated on the label attached to the front of the drum unit on an appropriate piece of paper. Note: You will need these settings in steps 4 and 6 of "Adjusting the Machine".	
6	Insert the drum unit into the machine. When doing so, hold the drum unit horizontal in relation to the top unit, and act with care. • Be sure to slide in the drum unit until it butts against the rear end. Note: • When mounting the drum unit, check to make sure that the drum unit releasing lever has been turned counterclockwise. (Otherwise, you would not be able to insert the drum unit into the machine.) • Take care not to touch the surface of the drum. Contact can affect copy images.	
7	Turn the drum unit releasing lever clockwise to secure the drum unit in place.	
8	Enter the date of installation of the drum unit and the counter reading on the label attached to the drum unit. date Datum / date | counter Zahler / compteur | notes Notiz / note	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

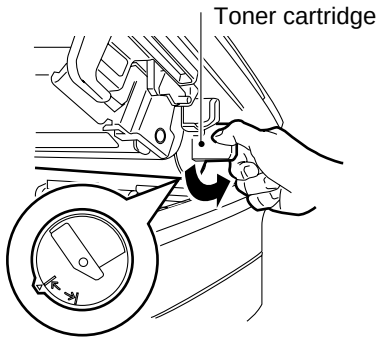
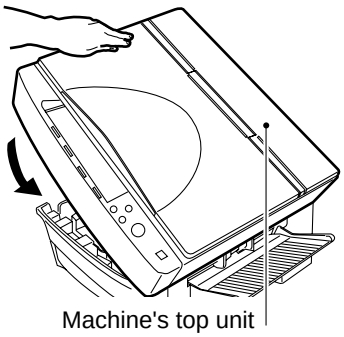
Step	Work	Checks and remarks
9	Turn the developing assembly locking lever clockwise. Note: If the drum unit releasing lever was not turned clockwise in step 7, you would not be able to turn the developing assembly locking lever clockwise. Further, you would not be able to close the machine's top unit unless you turned the locking lever clockwise.	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3. Installing the Toner Cartridge

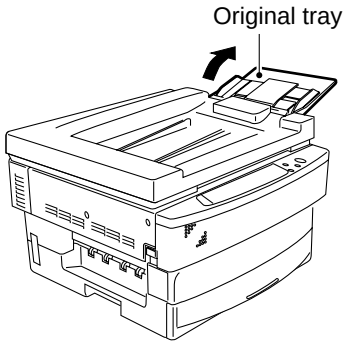
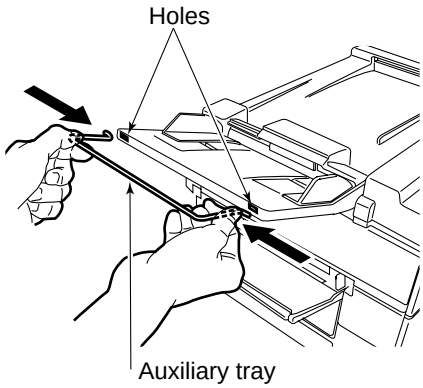
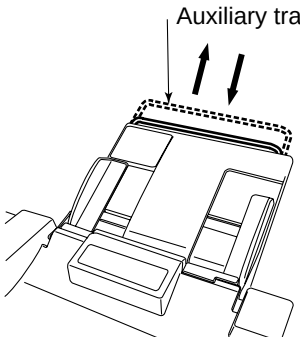
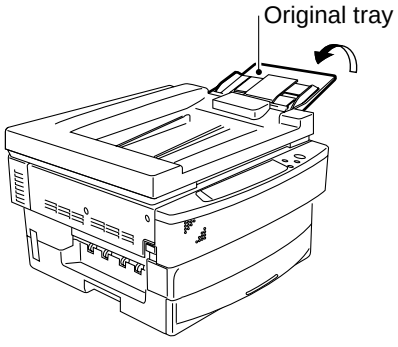
Step	Work	Checks and remarks
1	Prepare to insert a new toner cartridge.	
2	While holding the toner cartridge horizontal, shake it left and right so that the toner inside it is fully stirred and even.	
3	Insert the toner cartridge into the machine. Be sure to hold it horizontal and work with care. Moreover, be sure to insert the toner cartridge until it butts against the rear end.	
4	Peel off the sealing tape of the toner cartridge. Press down on the toner cartridge and, while doing so, pick and pull the orange tab toward the front straight out. Caution: Never dispose of any sealing tape into fire or an incinerator. Note: • Be sure to pull the sealing tape straight out. • Take care so that toner possibly adhering to the sealing tape will not stain your clothes.	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

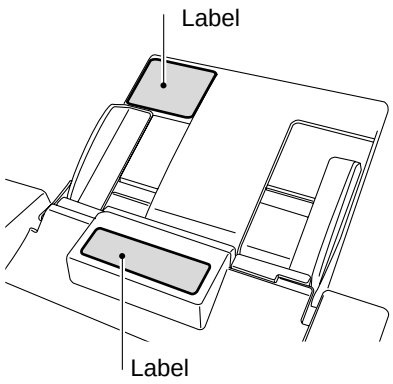
Step	Work	Checks and remarks
5	Holding the grip of the toner cartridge, turn it counterclockwise until the cartridge locks into place. Note: • Be sure to turn the toner cartridge until it locks into place. If it is not locked, you will not be able to close the top unit. • If you cannot turn the grip of the toner cartridge, check to find out if the toner cartridge has been inserted fully to the rear end.	
6	Close the machine's top unit by pressing down firmly on the marked " ". Note: If the toner cartridge has not been inserted to the rear end or has not been fully turned counterclockwise, you will not be able to close the top unit.	

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4. Attaching the ADF Auxiliary Tray (ADF type only)

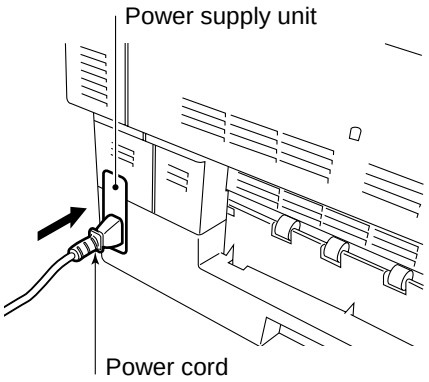
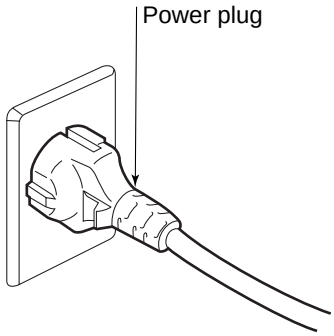
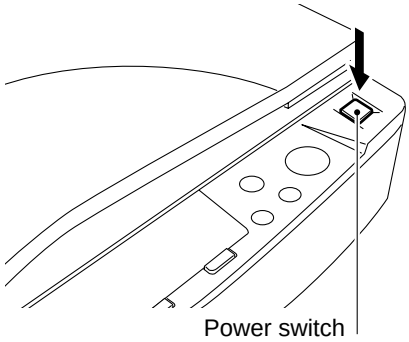
Step	Work	Checks and remarks
1	Open the original tray.	
2	While bending the ADF auxiliary tray in the direction of arrows in the figure, insert it into the holes on the edge of the original tray.	
3	Slide in and out the auxiliary tray several times to make sure that it moves smoothly.	
4	Close the original tray.	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

Step	Work	Checks and remarks
5	All notations on the label attached to the ADF is in English. If a non-English language is needed, select the appropriate label from among those that come with the machine and stick it.	

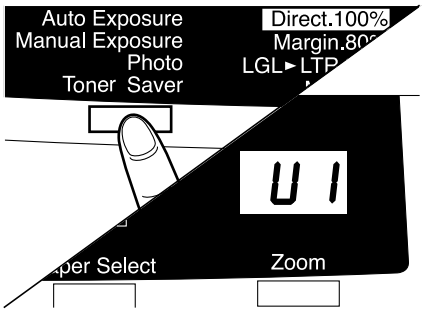
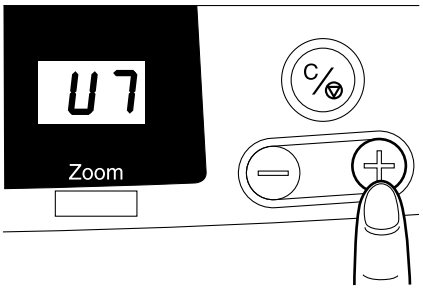
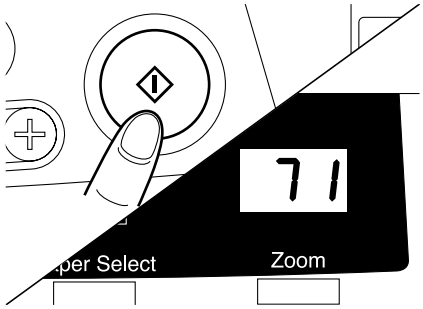
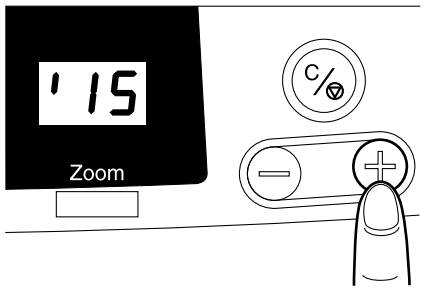
 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5. Connecting the Power Cord

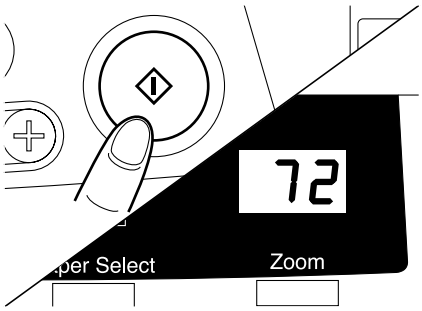
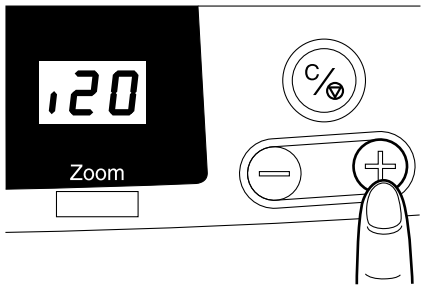
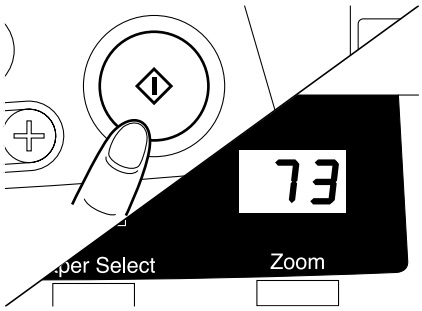
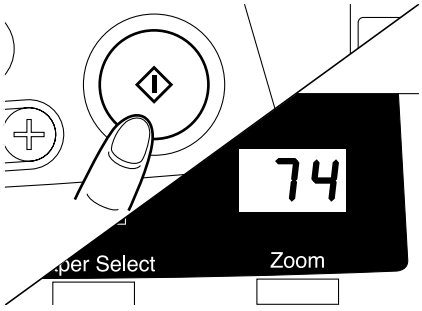
Step	Work	Checks and remarks
1	Insert one end of the power cord to the machine's power supply unit. Note: Do not connect the power plug and turn on the power before completing "Setting Up the Machine" and "Installing the Drum Unit" to avoid damage to the machine.	
2	Connect the power plug to the power outlet. Caution: This machine is designed for use with a power source matching the power requirements shown on the marking label at the back of the machine. If you are unsure of the power source, check with your local power company.	
3	Turn on the power switch. • The display will indicate '1'.	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

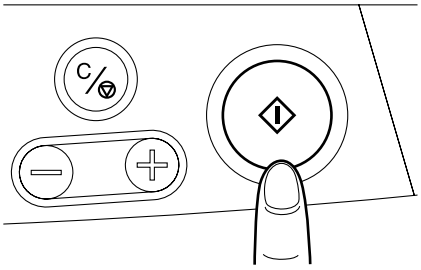
6. Adjusting the Machine

Step	Work	Checks and remarks
1	Use "Installation/drum unit replacement mode" (U7) of the user mode to adjust the machine. To enter this mode, hold down the Exposure Mode Select key for 4 sec or more so that the display will indicate 'U1'.	
2	Enter "Installation/drum unit replacement mode" (U7). Press down the [+] key several times until the display indicates 'U7'. • If you have inadvertently moved past the mode, press the [-] key to move back.	
3	Press the Copy Start (◇) key. • The display will indicate '71' to indicate that "PRIMARY" adjustment mode has started.	
4	Adjust "PRIMARY" Using the [+] or [-] keys, enter the setting of "PRIMARY" you recorded in step 5 of "2. Installing the Drum Unit". • During adjustment, the display will indicate " ' ".	

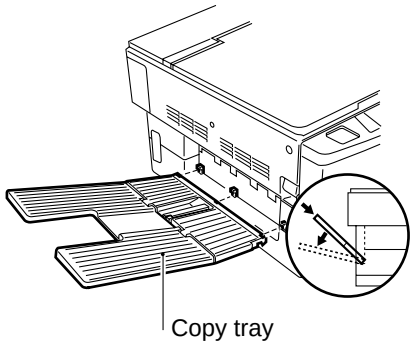
 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

Step	Work	Checks and remarks
5	Press the Copy Start (◇) key. • The display will indicate '72' to indicate that "IP_OFST" adjustment mode has started.	
6	Adjust "IP_OFST" Using the [+] or [-] keys, enter the setting of "IP_OFST" you recorded in step 5 of "2. Installing the Drum Unit". • During adjustment, the display will indicate " ' ".	
7	Press the Copy Start (◇) key. • The display will indicate '73'.	
8	Press the Copy Start (◇) key. • The display will indicate '74'.	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

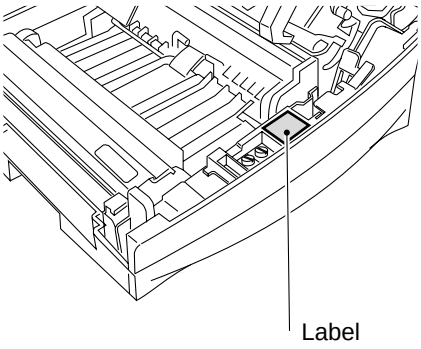
Step	Work	Checks and remarks
9	Press the Copy Start (◇) key. • The machine will start to stir the toner and start auto adjustment. The display will indicate '1' when the machine finishes installation/drum unit replacement mode. • Stirring of toner and auto adjustment take about 1 minute. Make use of this period by mounting the copy tray as follows:	

7. Installing the Copy Tray

Step	Work	Checks and remarks
1	Attach the copy tray into the machine. Fit the copy tray by matching its grooves over the three protrusions on the machine's left side.	

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

8. Sticking the Label

Step	Work	Checks and remarks
1	Open the machine's top unit; then, select the appropriate label from among those that come with the machine and stick it.	

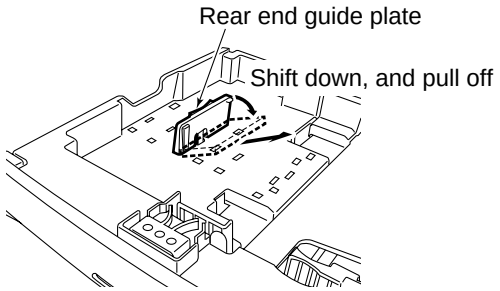
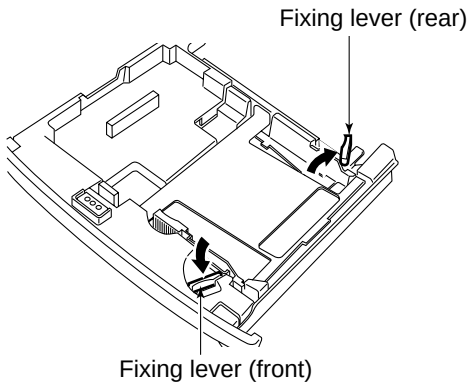
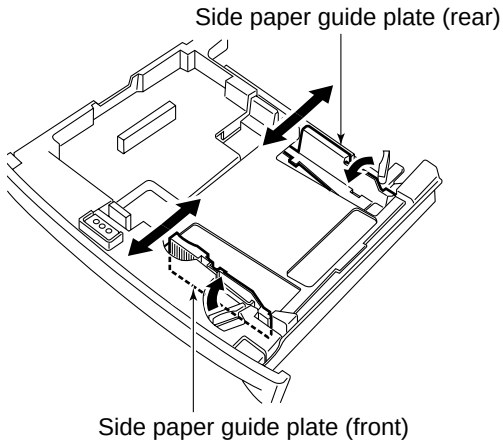
9. Checking the Operation

Step	Work	Checks and remarks
1	Set the Test Sheet on the copyboard glass, and check copying operation.	• Make sure there is no abnormal noise. • Make sure that as many copies as specified are made normally.
2	Clean the machine's exterior and the area around it.	

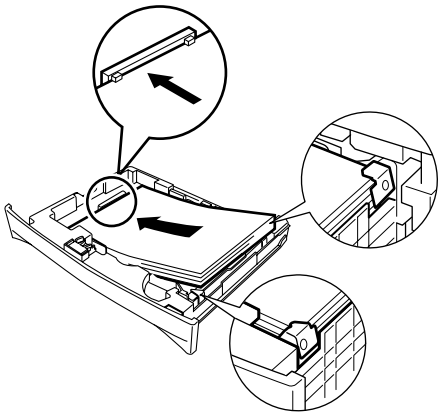
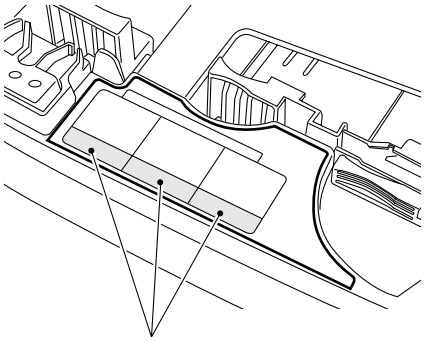
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

B. Placing Copy Paper

1. Universal Cassette

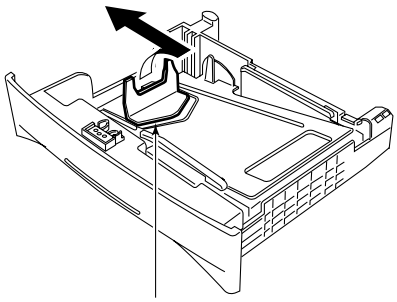
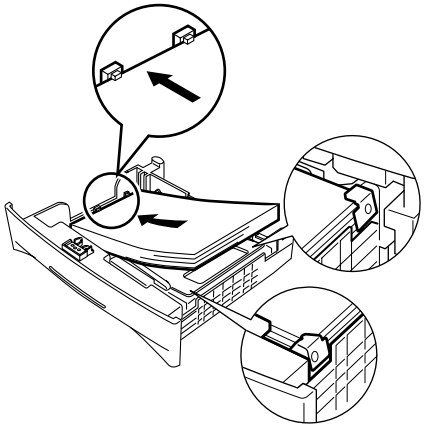
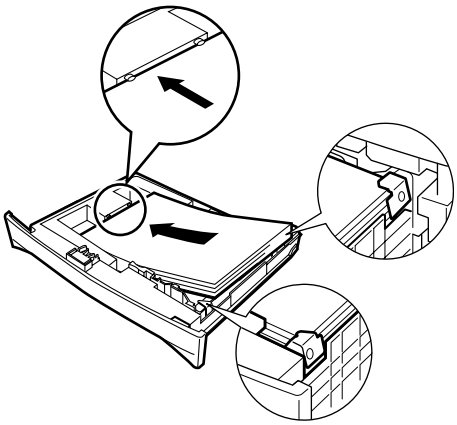
Step	Work	Checks and remarks
1	Take out the cassette from the machine, and remove the protective members and the label.	
2	Remove the rear guide plate as shown, and mount it back to suit the size of the copy paper to be used.	
3	Turn the fixing lever (front, rear) of the side paper guide plate as shown, and unlock the side paper guide plate.	
4	Slide the side paper guide plate to suit the width of the copy paper to be used; then, turn the fixing lever as shown to lock the side paper guide plate in place.	

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

Step	Work	Checks and remarks
5	Place copy paper in the cassette, and set the cassette into the machine.	
6	All text on the label attached to the cassette is English. If you need to replace it with a non-English label, select the appropriate one from among those packaged with the machine, and attach it.	 Language label for cassette

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

2. 250-Sheet/500-Sheet Cassette

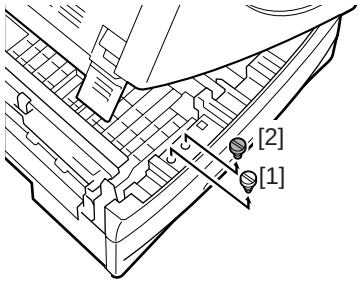
Step	Work	Checks and remarks
1	Take out the cassette from the machine, and remove the protective member.	
2	Slide the rear end paper guide plate as shown to match the size of the paper to be used. Caution: This step applies to the 500-sheet cassette (LTR/LGL) only.	 Rear end guide plate
3	Place copy paper in the cassette; then, set the cassette in the machine.	 500-sheet cassette  250-sheet cassette

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

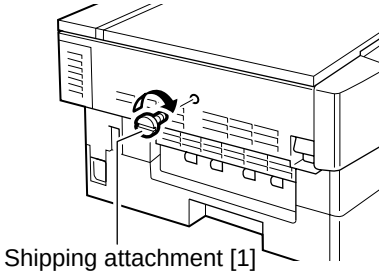
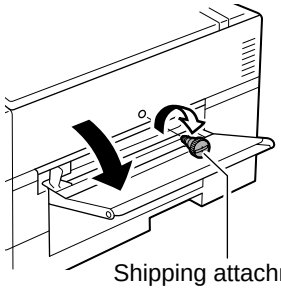
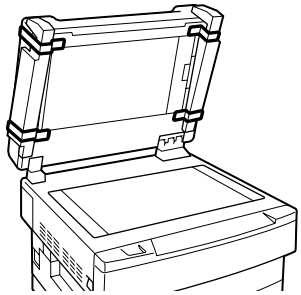
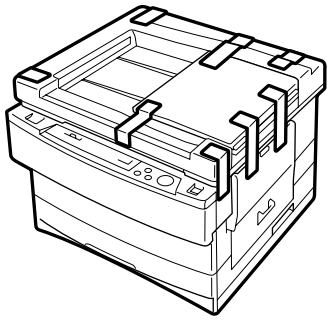
III. MOVING THE MACHINE

If you need to move the machine by truck or any other means of transportation after installation, be sure to perform the following:

Caution:
Before starting the following work, check to make sure that the machine is not too hot. If it is, as immediately after continuous copying, you may not be able to carry out step 8, in which the shipping attachment is replaced.

Step	Work	Checks and remarks
1	Turn on the power, and press the Default Ratio key to select 70%.	
2	Press the Paper Select key to select the manual feed tray; then, press the Copy Start key without placing any paper on the manual feed tray.	The count/ratio indicator will indicate ' '.
3	Turn off the power switch, and disconnect the power plug from the outlet.	
4	Pull the open/close lever found on the left of the machine, and open the machine's top unit.	
5	Take out the shipping attachments [1] and [2] stored in the machine's bottom unit. 	
6	Detach the copy tray.	
7	Press down on the marking on the machine's top unit to fully close the machine.	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

Step	Work	Checks and remarks
8	Fit the shipping attachments [1] and [2] detached in step 5 back to the machine.  Shipping attachment [1]  Shipping attachment [2]	
9	Tape the machine's top unit in place to prevent it from opening.	
10	Place A4/LGL copy paper on the copyboard glass, and close the copyboard cover; then, tape it in place. (Copyboard type only)	
	Raise the ADF. Then, place two parts used as packaging so that they fit closely around both sides and the front of the ADF, as shown in the diagram, and secure them with tape. (ADF type only)	
11	Gently lower the ADF and secure the main unit by taping in eight places, as shown in the diagram. (ADF type only) Pack the machine, using the original packing material and box. Or tape the machine's top in place so that it will not open while in transit.	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

CHAPTER 10

MAINTENANCE AND SERVICING

I. PERIODICALLY REPLACED PARTS 10-1
II. DURABLES AND CONSUMABLES 10-1
III. SCHEDULED SERVICING 10-1

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

I. PERIODICALLY REPLACED PARTS

The machine does not have parts which must be replaced on a periodical basis.

II. DURABLES AND CONSUMABLES

The machine does not have items designated as durables or consumables.

III. SCHEDULED SERVICING

The machine does not have any parts which require scheduled servicing.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

CHAPTER 11

TROUBLESHOOTING

I. MAINTENANCE AND INSPECTION 11-3
A. Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 11-3
B. Points to Note for Servicing 11-4
II. STANDARDS AND ADJUSTMENTS 11-5
A. Mechanical 11-5
B. ADF 11-30
C. Electrical 11-41
III. TROUBLESHOOTING IMAGE FAULTS 11-52
A. Making Initial Checks 11-52
B. Sample Image Faults 11-56
C. Troubleshooting Image Faults 11-57
IV. TROUBLESHOOTING MALFUNCTIONS 11-65
A. Troubleshooting Malfunctions 11-65
V. TROUBLESHOOTING FEEDING PROBLEMS 11-77
A. Copy Paper Jam 11-77
B. Faulty Feeding 11-80
VI. ARRANGEMENT AND FUNCTIONS OF ELECTRICAL PARTS 11-81
A. Sensors and Solenoids 11-81
B. Switches 11-82
C. Lamp, Heater, Motor, Etc. 11-83
D. PCBs 11-84
E. ADF 11-85
F. Variable Resistors (VR) and Check Pins by PCB 11-86
VII. SERVICE MODE 11-88
A. Outline 11-88
B. Using Service Mode 11-88
C. Adjustment Mode (30) 11-91
D. Operation/Inspection Mode (40) 11-92
E. Machine Settings Mode (50) 11-93
F. Counter Mode (60) 11-93
VIII. SELF DIAGNOSIS 11-94

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

Guide to the Troubleshooting Procedure

This chapter provides troubleshooting instructions in the form of tables prepared based on generally found flow charts. Study the following for an idea of how to use them:

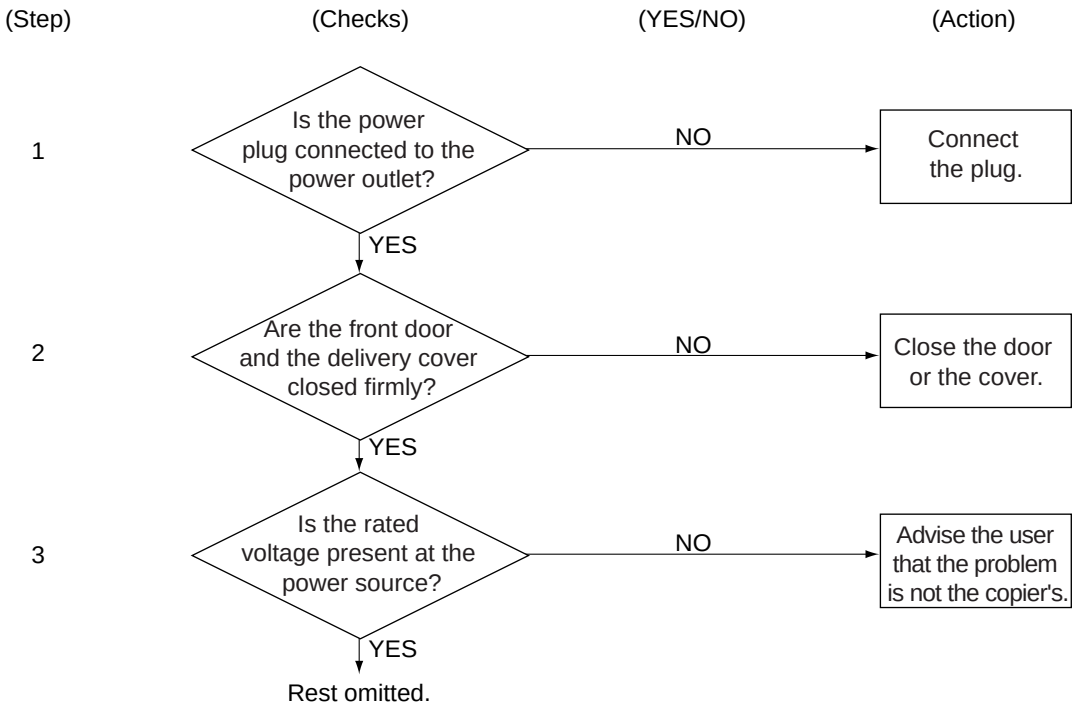
AC power is absent.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Power plug	1	Is the power plug connected to the power outlet?	NO	Connect the plug.
Covers	2	Are the front door and delivery cover closed fully?	NO	Close the door or the cover.
Power source	3	Is the rated voltage found at the power outlet?	NO	Inform the user that
----------	4	Is the rated voltage present between J1-1 and -2? (J1 is found near the power cord mount.)	YES	Go to step 6.

(Rest omitted.)

- To find out the cause (possible fault) of a specific problem, see the "Cause" column. If the problem is "AC power is absent," you may suspect that the power plug is disconnected, covers are not closed fully, or power is absent at the main source.
- If you want to find out the checks to make or action to take, go through the steps: answer the questions under "Checks"; if yes, take the action shown. Otherwise, go to the next step and make the indicated checks.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.



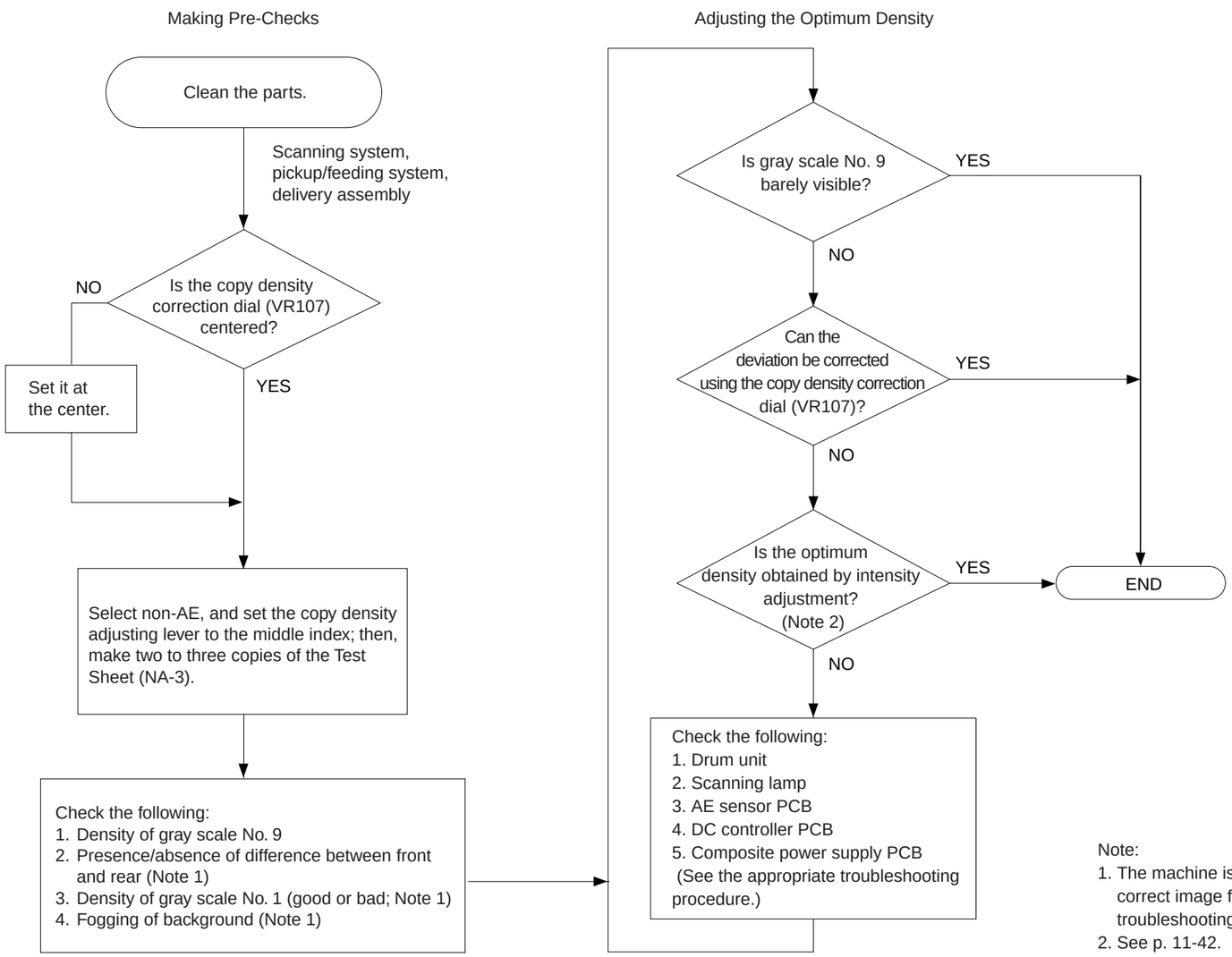
- Often, you will find the following instructions when checking the voltage using a meter: "measure the voltage between J109-1 (+) and -2 (-) on the DC controller PCB." The symbol "+" indicates the terminal to which you are expected to connect the positive probe of the meter and "-," the negative probe.

  example:
  J109-1 (+) ..... Connect the positive probe.
  J109-2 (-) ..... Connect the negative probe.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

I. MAINTENANCE AND INSPECTION

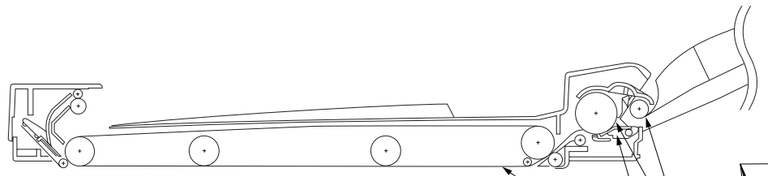
A. Image Adjustment Basic Procedure


Making Pre-Checks
Clean the parts.
Scanning system, pickup/feeding system, delivery assembly
Is the copy density correction dial (VR107) centered?
NO
YES
Set it at the center.
Select non-AE, and set the copy density adjusting lever to the middle index; then, make two to three copies of the Test Sheet (NA-3).
Check the following:
1. Density of gray scale No. 9
2. Presence/absence of difference between front and rear (Note 1)
3. Density of gray scale No. 1 (good or bad; Note 1)
4. Fogging of background (Note 1)
Adjusting the Optimum Density
Is gray scale No. 9 barely visible?
YES
NO
Can the deviation be corrected using the copy density correction dial (VR107)?
YES
NO
Is the optimum density obtained by intensity adjustment? (Note 2)
YES
END
NO
Check the following:
1. Drum unit
2. Scanning lamp
3. AE sensor PCB
4. DC controller PCB
5. Composite power supply PCB
(See the appropriate troubleshooting procedure.)

Note:
1. The machine is not equipped with a function to correct image faults. See the appropriate troubleshooting procedure.
2. See p. 11-42.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

B. Points to Note for Servicing



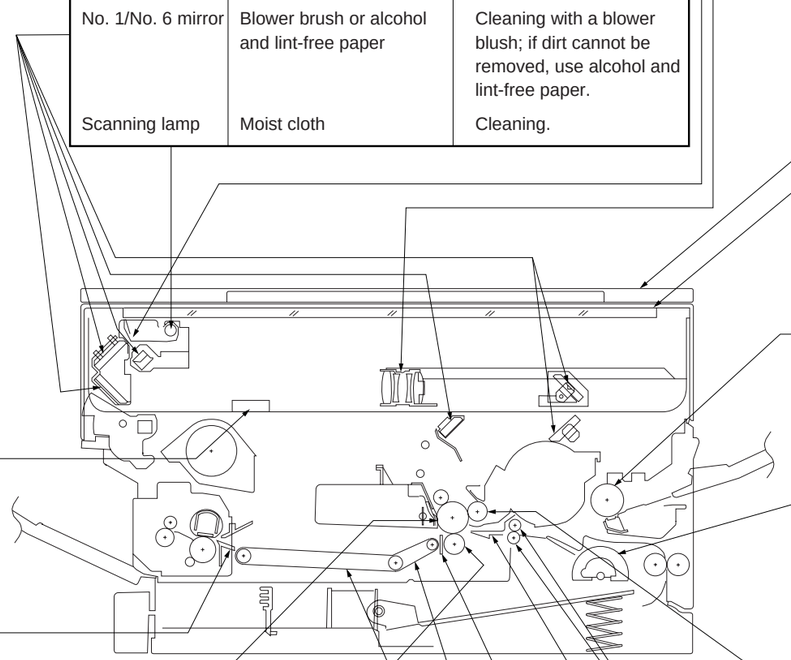
ADF

Item	Tool/solvent	Work/remarks
Feeding belt	Cloth moistened with water*	Dry-wiping.
Separation pad	Cloth	Cleaning.
Pickup roller	Cloth moistened with water* or alcohol	Cleaning.

*Be sure to wring it well.

Optical path

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Lens	Blower brush	Cleaning.
Reflecting plate	Blower brush	Cleaning.
No. 1/No. 6 mirror	Blower brush or alcohol and lint-free paper	Cleaning with a blower blush; if dirt cannot be removed, use alcohol and lint-free paper.
Scanning lamp	Moist cloth	Cleaning.



Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Copyboard cover	Alcohol	Cleaning.
Copyboard glass	Alcohol	Cleaning.

Multifeeder assembly

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Multifeeder pickup roller	Moist cloth (well-wrung) or alcohol	Cleaning.

Cassette pickup assembly

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Cassette pickup roller	Moist cloth (well-wrung) or alcohol	Cleaning.

Developing assembly

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Developing cylinder	Alcohol	Cleaning.

Transfer guide assembly

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Registration roller	Moist cloth	Cleaning.
Transfer guide	Moist cloth	Cleaning.

Static eliminator

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Static eliminator	Special brush	Cleaning.

Feeding assembly

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Feed belt	Moist cloth	Cleaning.

Electrical unit

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
AE sensor	Blower brush	Cleaning.

Fixing assembly

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Inlet guide	Solvent	Cleaning.

Drum unit/Transfer charging roller

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Photosensitive drum	Toner	Do not use solvent; in principle, do not touch or clean. Never expose to light.
Transfer charging roller	Lint-free paper	Cleaning; do not use water or solvent. Do not touch, and take care not to soil with solvent and oil.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

II. STANDARDS AND ADJUSTMENTS

A. Mechanical

1. Copier

a. Leading Edge Non-Image Width

Make adjustments so that the leading edge non-image width is 2.0 ±1.5 mm when the Test Sheet is copied in Direct.

Caution:

If you have performed this adjustment, be sure to adjust the image leading edge margin.

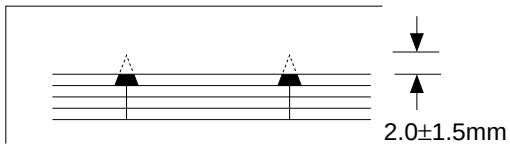


Figure 11-201

Making Adjustments

1) Select '31' in service mode.
   • The display will indicate '31'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   • The existing setting will flash.
3) Change the setting by the +/- key.
   • The setting may be between 0 and 99.
   • For each '1', the non-image width will change by 0.24 mm.
4) Press the AE key.
   • The setting will stop flashing and will remain on, indicating that it has been stored in memory.
5) As necessary, press the Clear/Stop key once to return to item selection; or, press it once again to end service mode.

Relationship between Setting and Leading Edge Non-Image Width

Setting	Leading edge non-image width
Higher	Increases
Lower	Decreases

Table 11-201

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

b. Image Leading Edge Margin (registration activation timing)

Make adjustments so that the leading edge margin is 2.5 ±1.5 mm when the Test Sheet is copied.

Caution:

Be sure to check that the leading edge non-image width is as indicated before performing this adjustment.

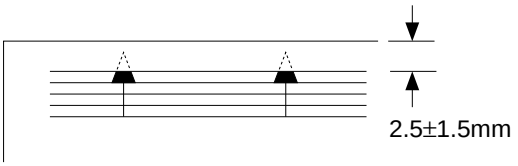


Figure 11-202

Making Adjustments

1) Select '30' in service mode.
   • The display will indicate '30'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   • The existing setting will flash.
3) Change the setting using the +/- key.
   • The setting may be between 0 and 99.
   • The setting will change by 0.24 mm in terms of margin for each '1'.
4) Press the AE key.
   • The setting will stop flashing and will remain on, indicating it has been stored in memory.
5) As necessary, press the Clear/Stop key once to return to item selection; or, press it once again to end service mode.

Relationship between Settings and Image Leading Edge Margin

Setting	Image leading edge margin
Higher	Decreases
Lower	Increases

Table 11-202

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

c. Adjusting the Mirror Position (optical length between No. 1 mirror and No. 2 mirror)

If you have replaced the scanner drive cable, you must adjust the mirror position, by changing the position of the cable retainer of the No. 1 mirror mount.

Reference:

1. As more and more copies are made, the cable tends to become slack, requiring adjustment.
2. If the optical length between the No. 1 mirror and the No. 2 mirror is not correct, the horizontal reproduction ratio will be wrong, causing poor sharpness or blurred images.

1) Fit the mirror positioning tool (FY9-3009) as shown.

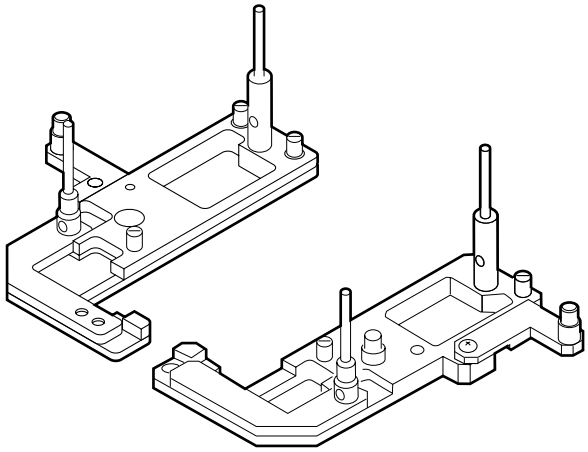


Figure 11-203

2) Remove the copyboard glass.
(See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.C.1. “Removing the Copyboard Glass.”)
3) Loosen the screws used to secure the cable retainer at the rear and the front of the No. 1 mirror mount [1].

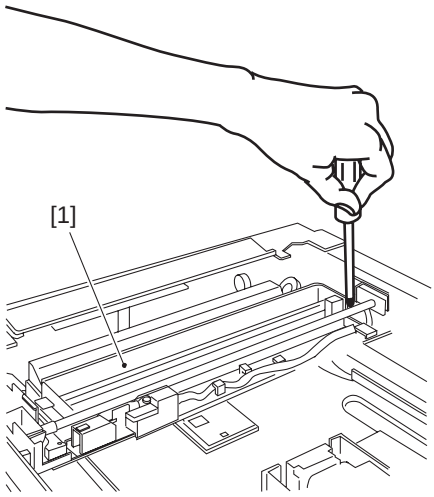


Figure 11-204

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

4) Turn the cable drive pulley [3] so that the three shafts [2] of the mirror positioning tool for the front and the rear may be arranged as shown.

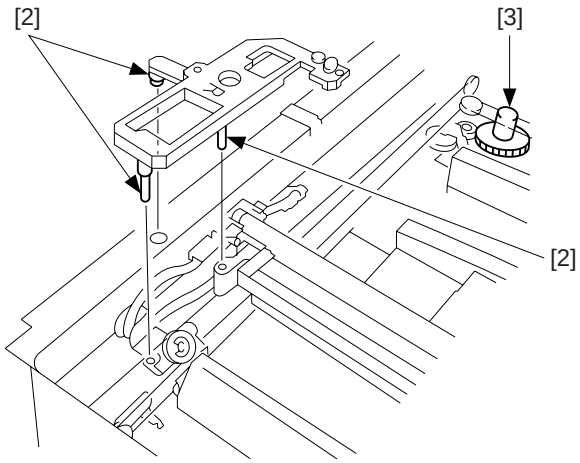


Figure 11-205 (rear)

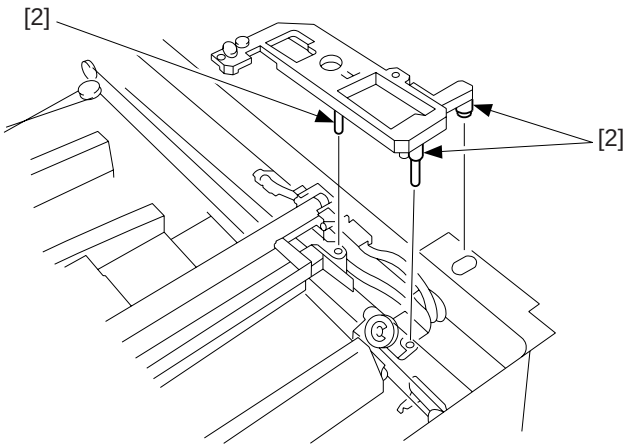


Figure 11-206 (front)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5) While keeping the condition of 4), tighten the positioning screw at the rear and the front of the No. 1 mirror mount [1].

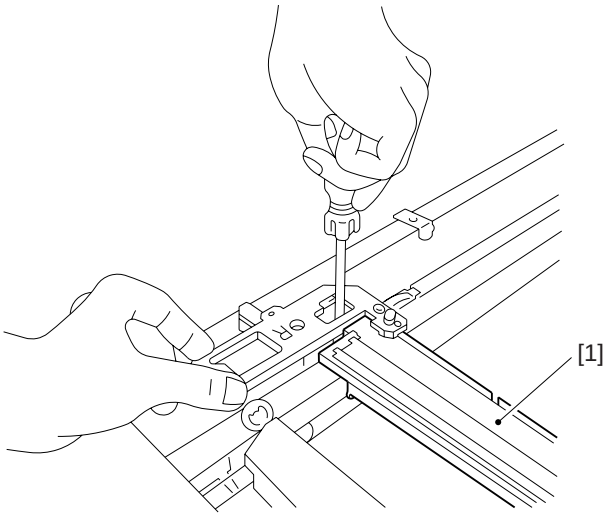


Figure 11-207 (rear)

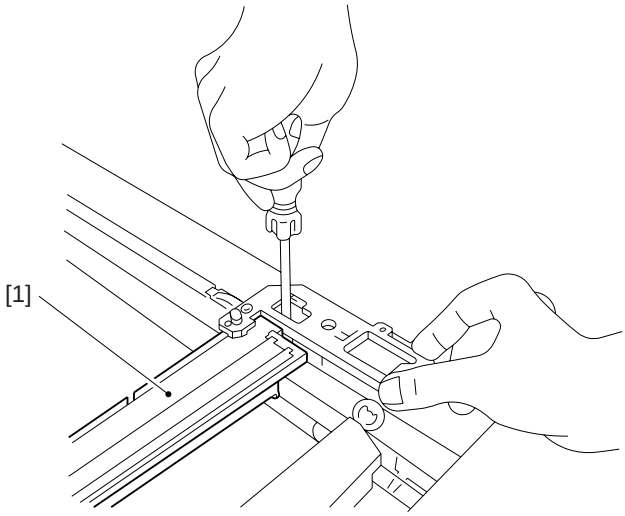


Figure 11-208 (front)

d. Checking the Force of the Cassette Spring

If the force of the spring used to hold up the holding plate of the cassette is not correct, pickup faults or the like can occur.

If a fault is suspected, check the force of the spring using a spring gauge (CK-0054), and replace the spring if it is not as indicated:

Standard: 970 ±150 g

Making Measurements

Push the spring gauge against the middle of the spring as shown, and check to make sure that the reading of the spring gauge is 970 ±150 g when the holding plate is 18 mm away from the bottom of the cassette.

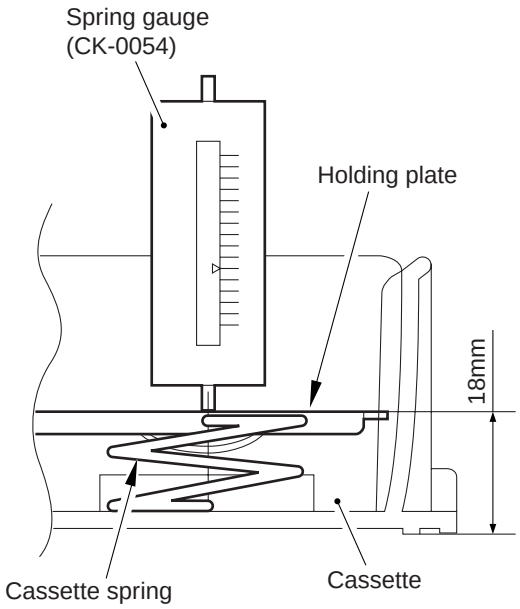


Figure 11-209

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

e-1. Routing the Scanner Drive Cable

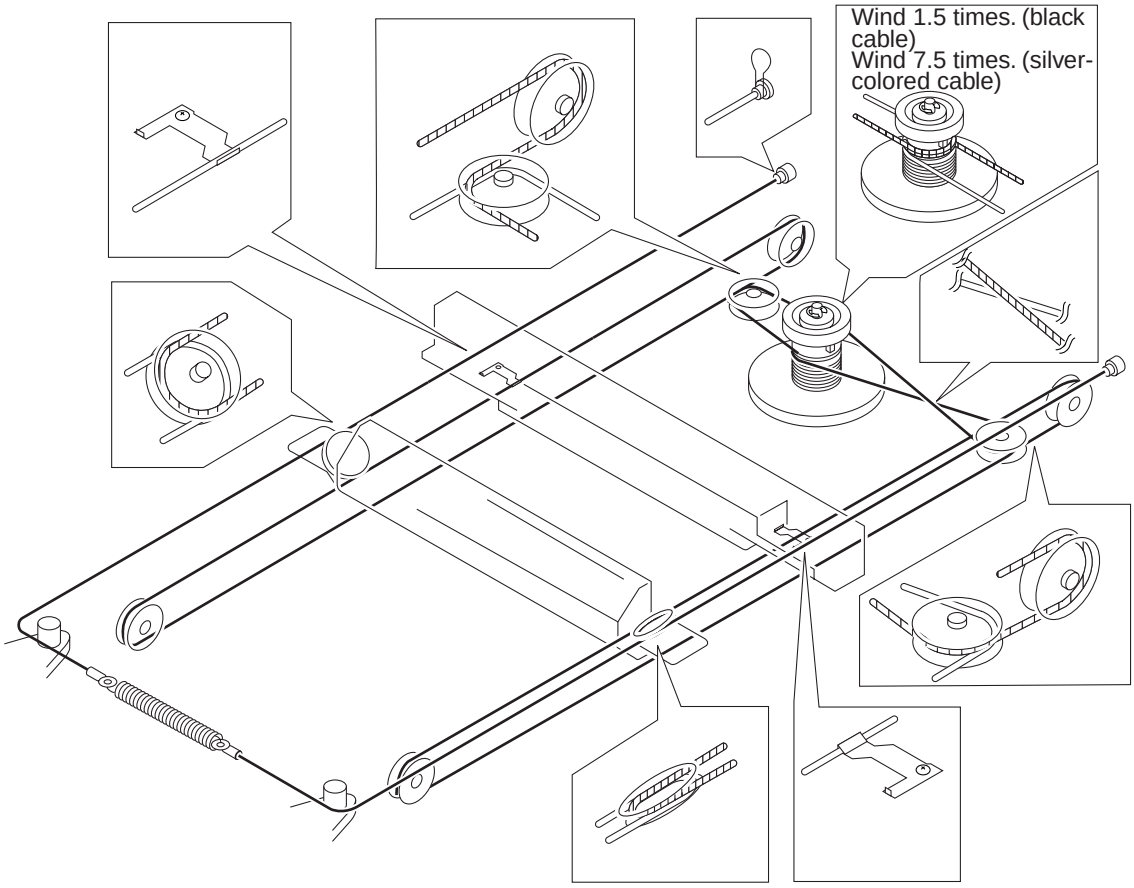


Figure 11-210

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

e-2. Routing the Scanner Drive Cable

1. Before Starting the Work

Prepare the following:
- Mirror positioning tool (FY9-3009)
- Cable clip (FY9-3017)
- Adhesive tape

1) Set the mirror positioning tool as shown.

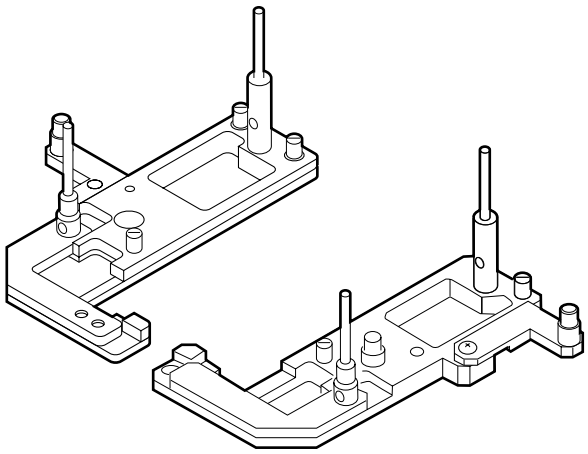


Figure 11-211

2) Prepare about five strips of adhesive tape (each one about 20 x 50 mm).
3) Remove the copyboard glass.
   (See Chapter 7.Ⅲ.C.1. “Removing the Copyboard Glass.”)
4) Disconnect the connectors (J101, J131) [1] from the DC controller PCB.

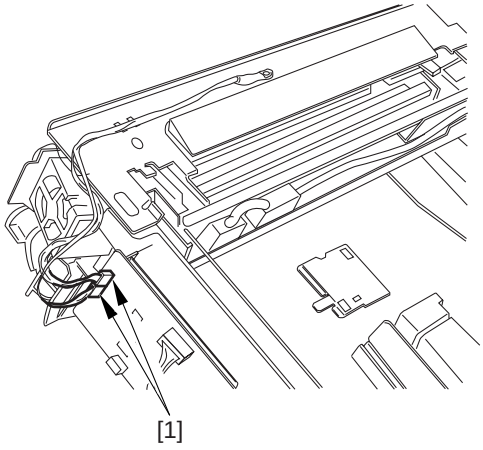


Figure 11-212

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5) If the machine is equipped with an ADF, free the hook [2], and disconnect the two relay connectors [3] from the left upper stay [4].

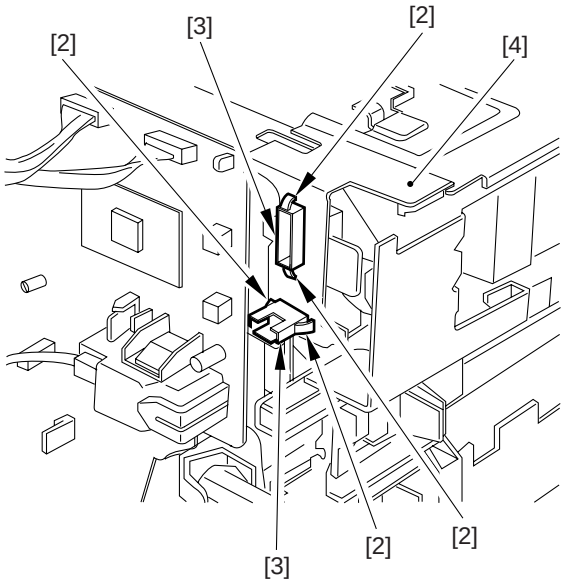


Figure 11-213

6) Remove the three screws [5], and detach the left upper stay [4].

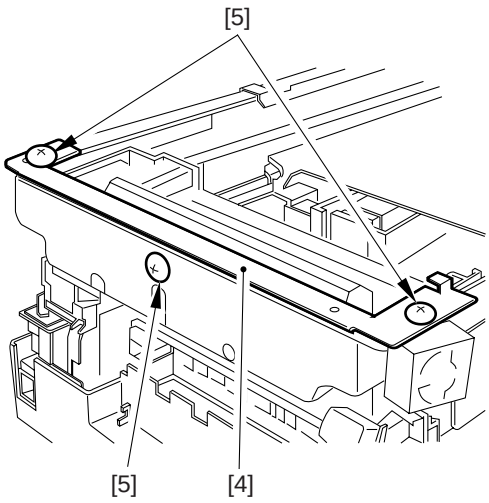


Figure 11-214

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

7) Remove the four screws [7], and detach the lens cover [8].

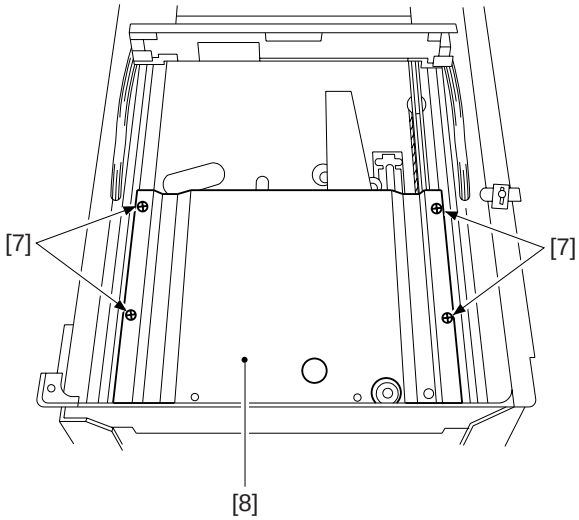


Figure 11-215

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. Routing the Reversing Cable

1) Wind the reversing cables (silver-colored) [2] on the cable drive pulley [1] 7.5 times with the longer of the two on top; then, secure it in position with a cable clip [3].

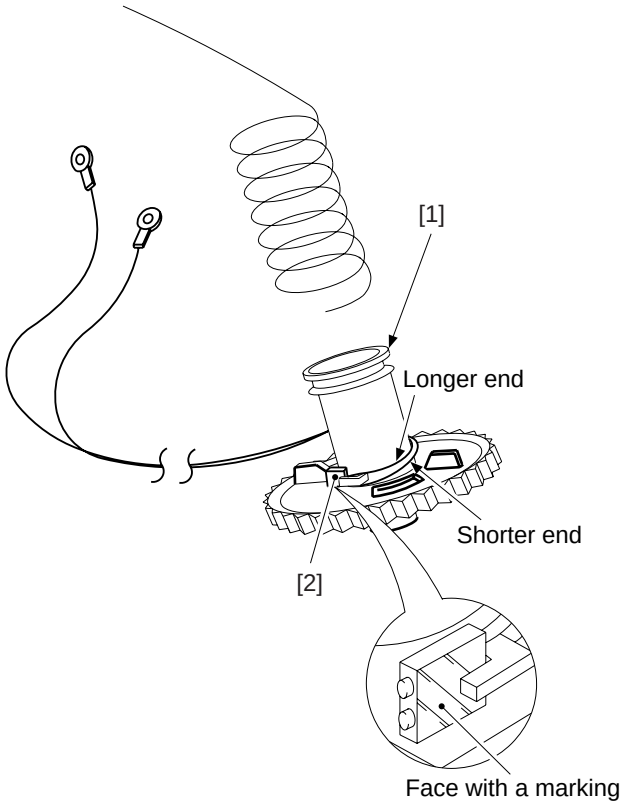


Figure 11-216

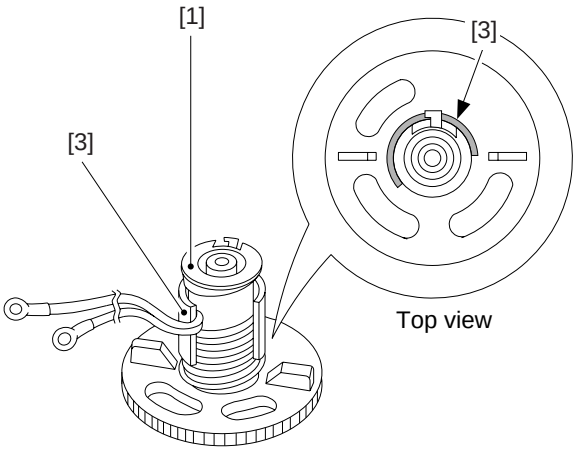


Figure 11-217

2) Put the cable drive pulley [1] into the shaft [4], and secure it in position with an E-ring [5]. When putting the cable drive pulley into the shaft, be sure that the hook is at the front.

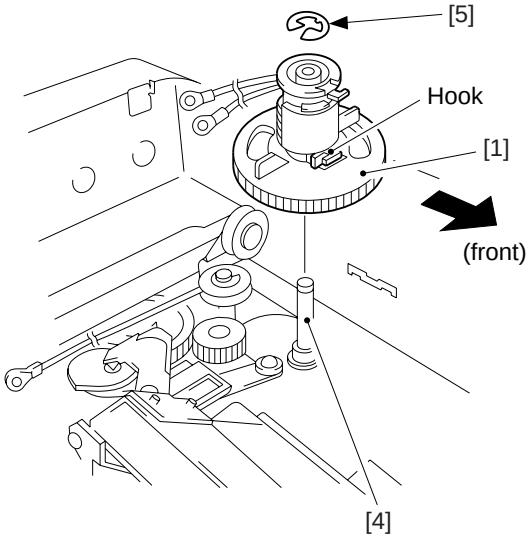


Figure 11-218

3) Hook the shorter end [6] on the pulley [7].

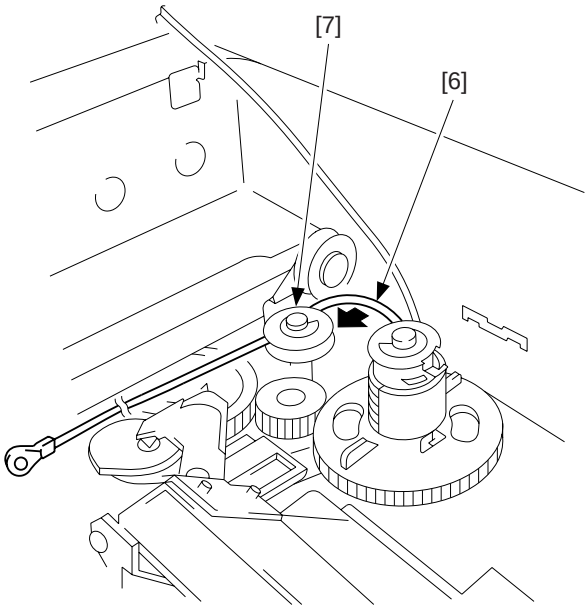


Figure 11-219

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4) Lead the shorter end [6] under the No. 1 mirror mount [8] and the No. 2/3 mirror mount [9]; then, hook it on the left rear pulley [10] and the pulley [11] of the No. 2/3 mirror mount.

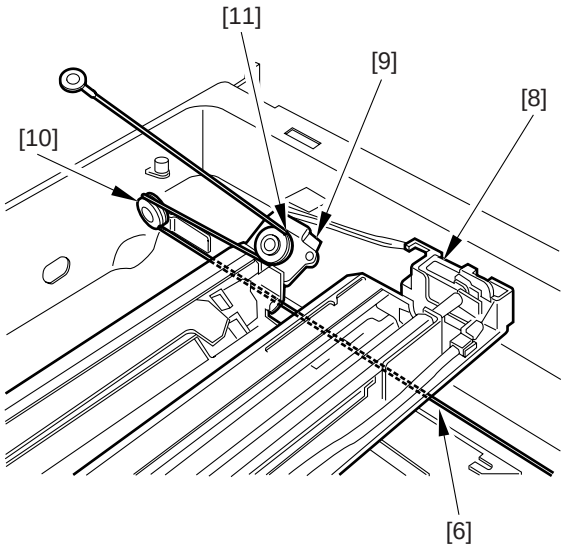


Figure 11-220

5) After fitting the shorter end [6] on the cable hook [12], secure its end with adhesive tape [13]. Be sure that the secured end of the cable is found where the hole in the left side plate and the tip of the cable matches.

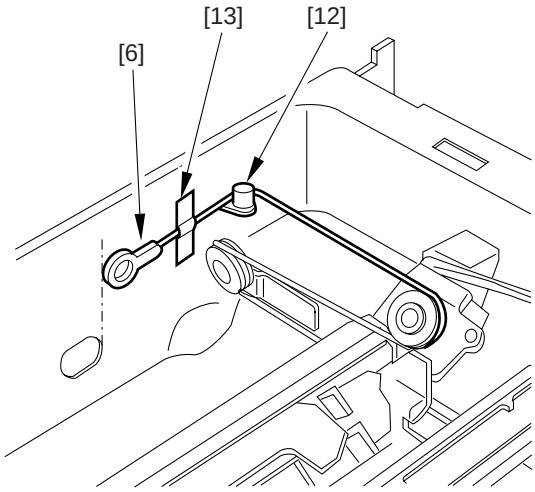


Figure 11-221

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

6) Lead the longer end [14] along the cable drive pulley, and hook it on the pulley [15] on the right front side.

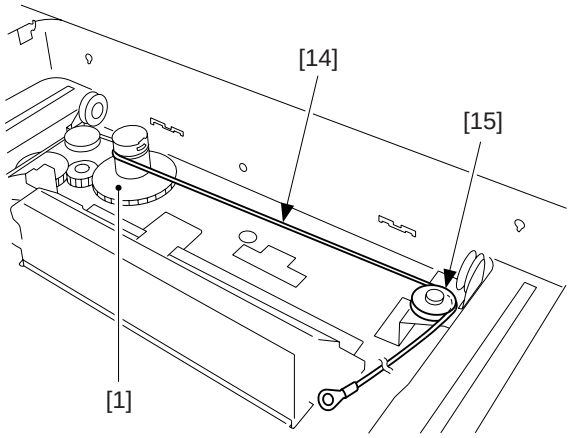


Figure 11-222

7) Lead the longer end [14] under the No. 1 mirror mount [8] and the No. 2/3 mirror mount [9]; then, hook it on the pulley [16] on the left front side and the pulley [17] of the No. 2/3 mirror mount.

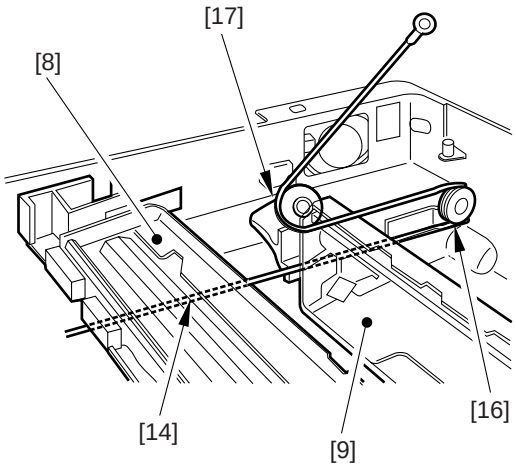


Figure 11-223

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

8) Hook the longer cable [14] on the cable hook [18]; then, secure its end to the left side with adhesive tape [19].
Be sure that the secured end of the cable is found where the hole in the left side plate and the tip of the cable matches.

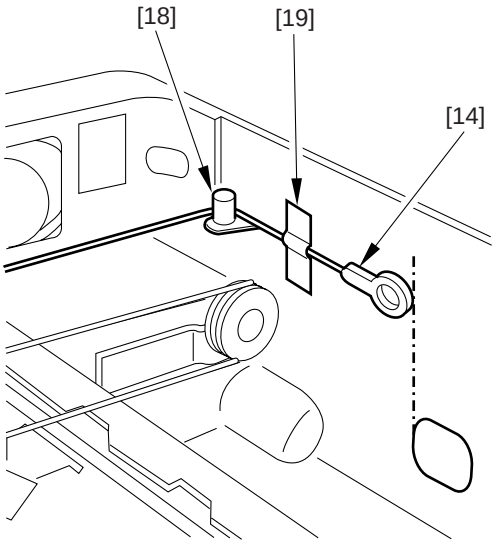


Figure 11-224

3. Routing the Forwarding Cable

1) Fit the longer end forwarding cable (black) [2] on the top hook of the cable drive pulley [1], and wind it 1.5 times. Then, secure the shorter end [3] as shown with adhesive tape [4].

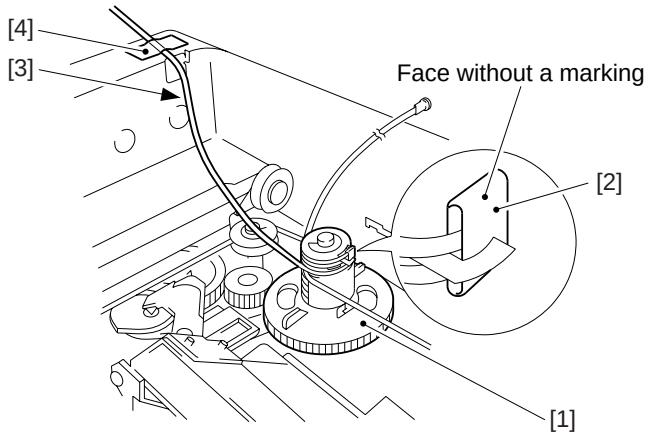


Figure 11-225

2) Lead the longer end [5] along the cable drive pulley [1] as shown, and hook it on the pulley [6] on the right front side.

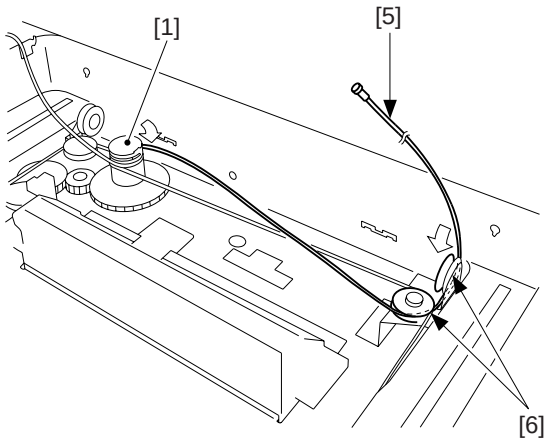


Figure 11-226

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3) Lead the longer end [5] under the No. 1 mirror mount [7]; then, hook it on the pulley [8] of the No. 2/3 mirror mount, and lead it between the No. 1 mirror mount [7] and the scanning lamp [9].

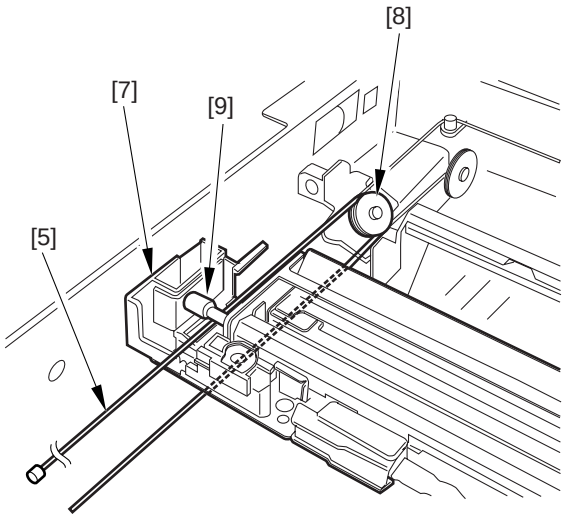


Figure 11-227

4) Hook the end of the longer end [5] on the hole [10] on the right side.

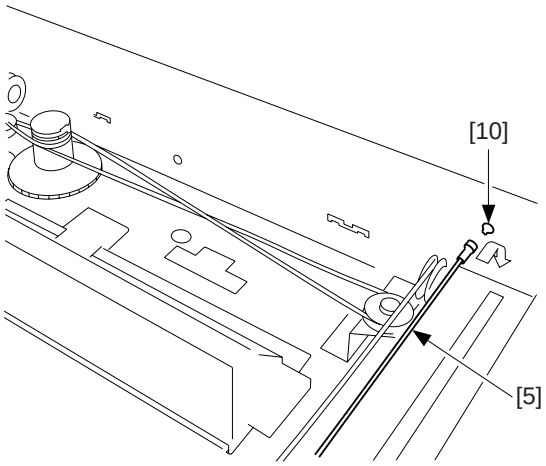


Figure 11-228

5) Free the shorter end [3], and hook it on the pulley [11] on the right rear side.

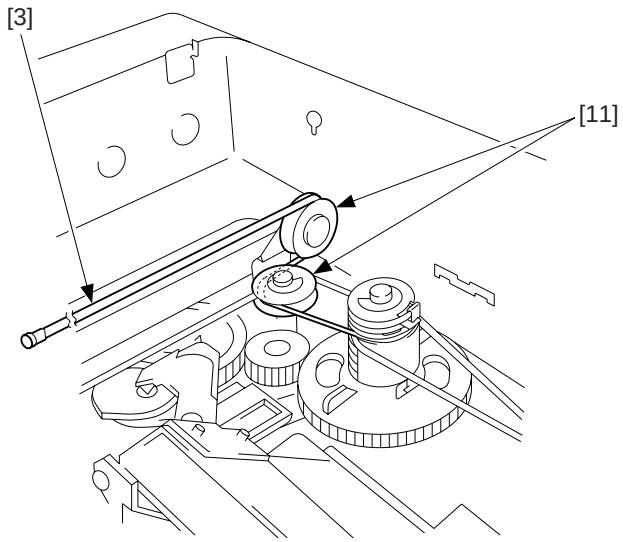


Figure 11-229

6) Lead the shorter end [3] under the No. 1 mirror mount [7], and hook it on the pulley [12] of the No. 2/3 mirror mount as shown; then, lead it between the No. 1 mirror mount [7] and the scanning lamp [9].

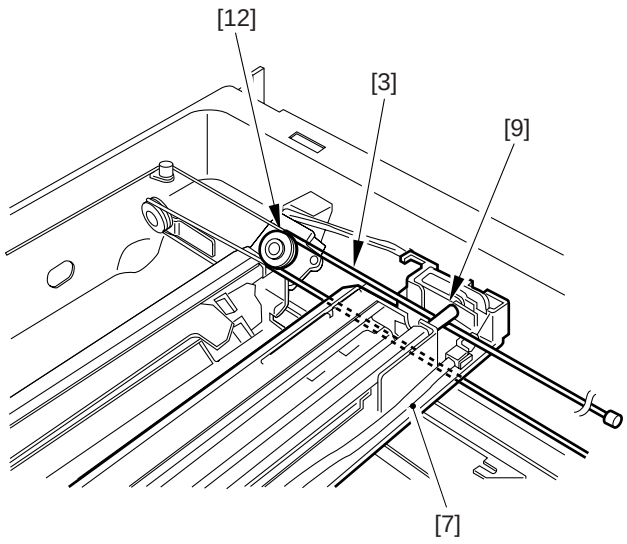


Figure 11-230

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

7) Hook the end of the shorter end [3] on the hole [13] on the right side.

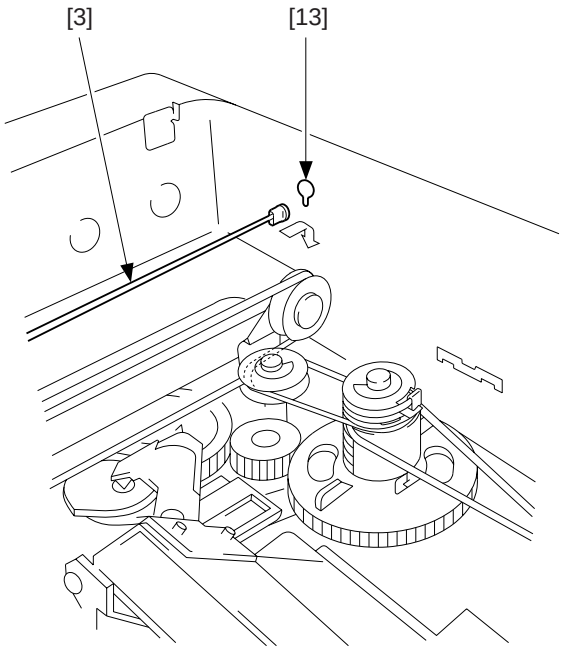


Figure 11-231

8) Free the shorter end [3] and the longer end [5] (reversing cable), and connect both with a spring [14]; then, fit the stopper [15].

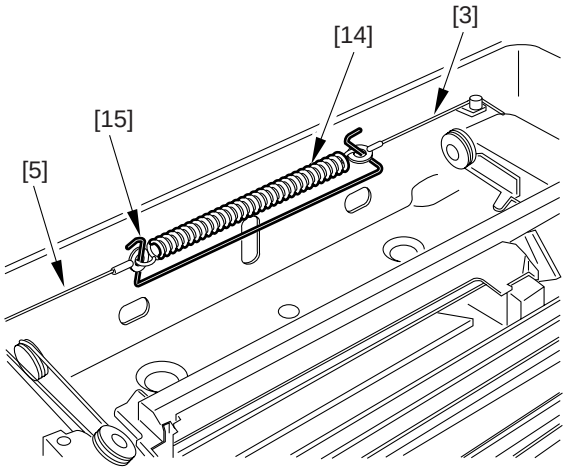


Figure 11-232

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

9) Detach the pulley clip [16] from the cable drive pulley [1].

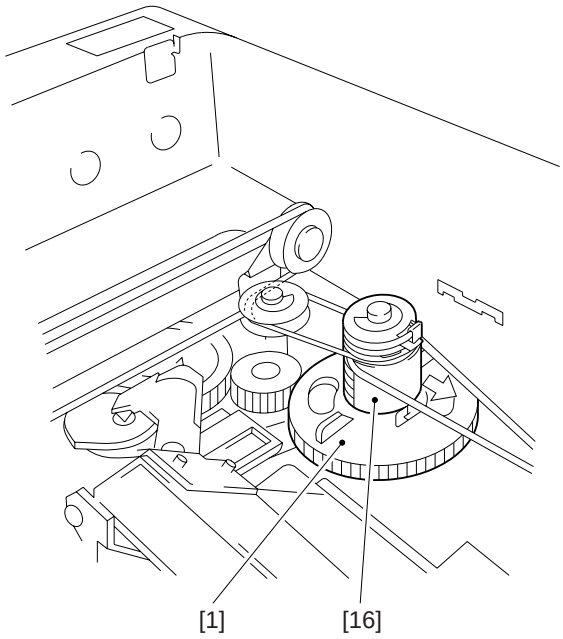


Figure 11-233

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4. Positioning the No. 1 Mirror Mount

1) Fix the rear and the front of the No. 1 mirror mount [1] temporarily to the metal fixing [2] of the forwarding cable.

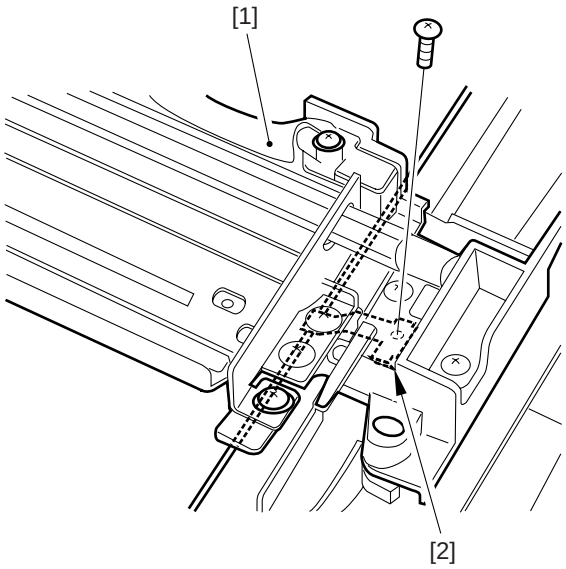


Figure 11-234 (rear)

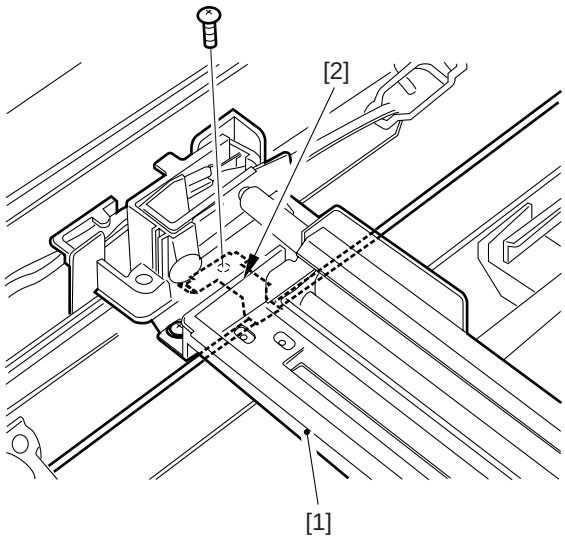


Figure 11-235 (front)

2) Turn the cable drive pulley [4] so that the three shafts [3] of the mirror positioning tool for rear and front is as shown.

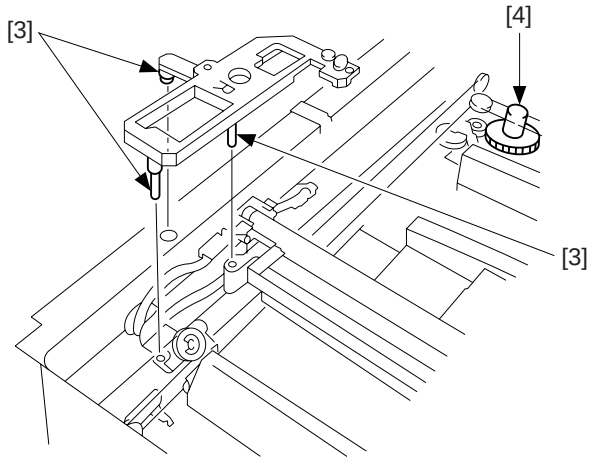


Figure 11-236 (rear)

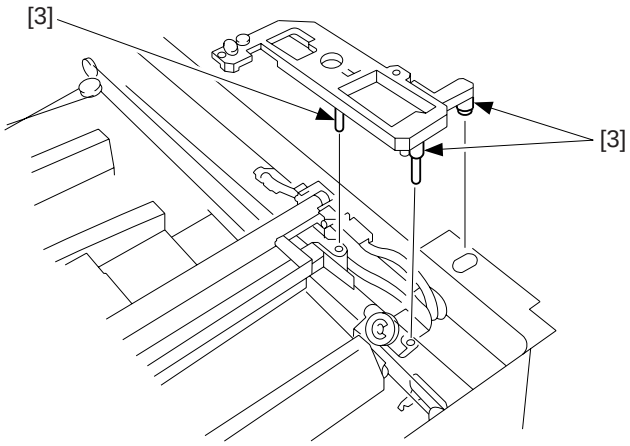


Figure 11-237(front)

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3) While keeping the condition of step 2), tighten the positioning screw on the rear and front of the No. 1 mirror mount [1].

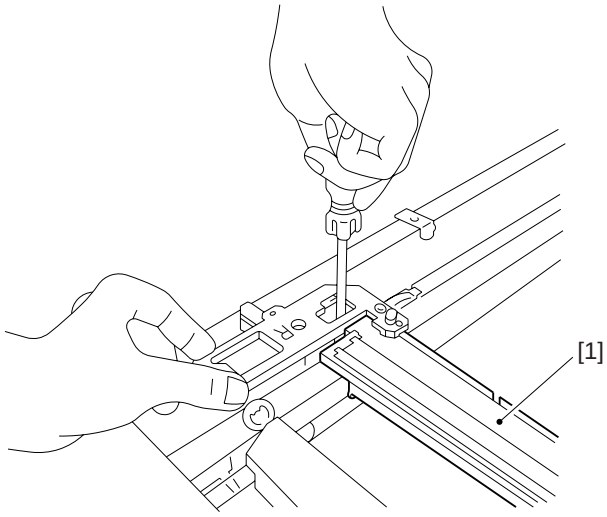


Figure 11-238 (rear)

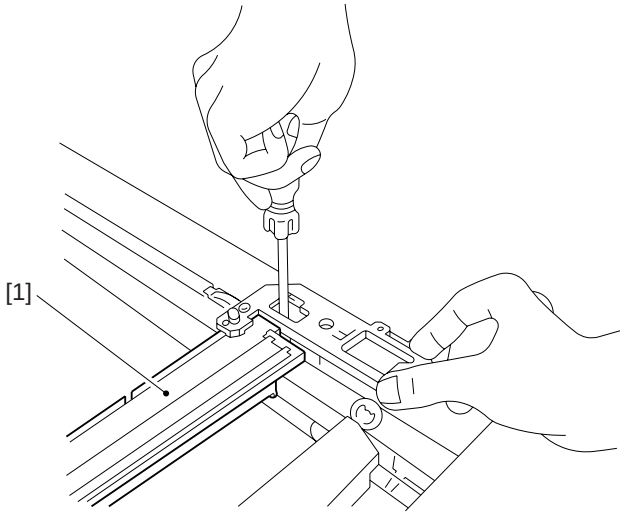


Figure 11-239 (front)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

f. Point to Note When Mounting the Scanning Lamp

When mounting the scanning lamp, be sure that its logo mark (manufacturer's name) is toward the front. Further, be sure that the protrusion near its middle is as shown.

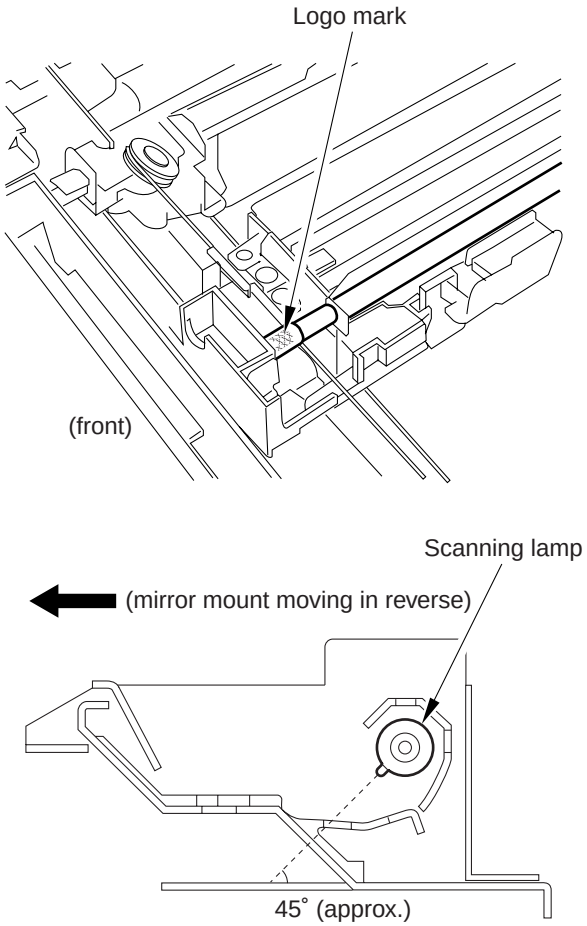


Figure 11-240

Caution:

- If you have replaced the scanning lamp, you must adjust the intensity of the lamp (p. 11-44) and perform AE adjustment.
- Do not touch the lamp when handling it.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

g. Points to Note When Mounting the Fuse

When mounting the thermal fuse of the No. 1 mirror mount, be sure that the fuse is oriented as shown.

Make sure that the fuse is in contact with the reflecting plate.

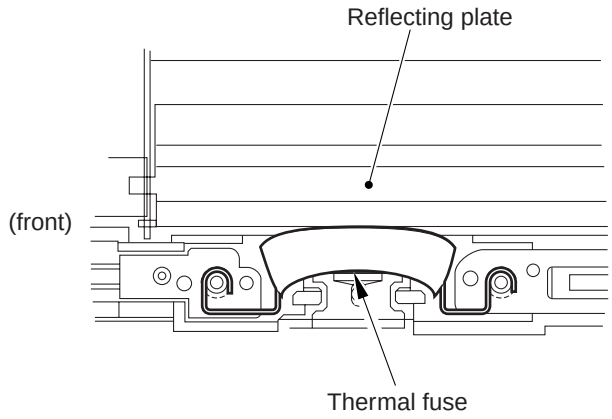


Figure 11-241

B. ADF

1. Adjusting the Original Stop Position

Adjust the original stop position in the following order:

1. Correcting original skew
2. Adjusting the rear/front original stop position
3. Adjusting the original leading edge stop position

2. Correcting Original Skew

1) Obtain a sheet of A4 or LTR white copy paper, and draw two lines as indicated.
   • The sheet will be used as a test sheet.

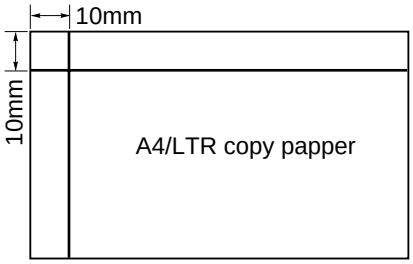


Figure 11-242

2) Turn on the machine, and place the test sheet prepared in step 1) on the original tray.

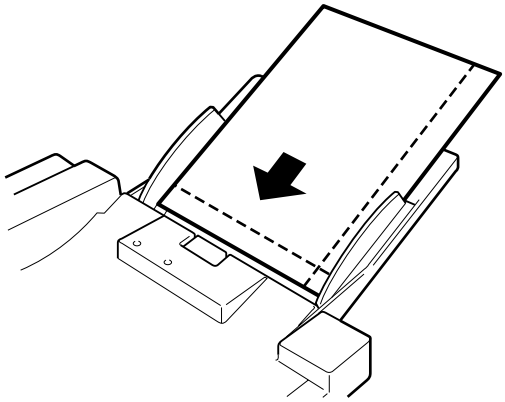


Figure 11-243

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3) Press the Copy Start key to make a copy.
4) Check to make sure that the difference between L1 and L2 on the copy is 1.8 mm (standard) or less.

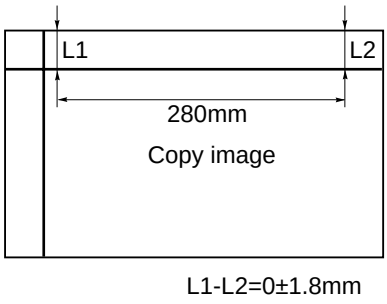


Figure 11-244

5) If the difference is not as specified, turn the adjusting screw found to the side of the left hinge unit to make adjustments.

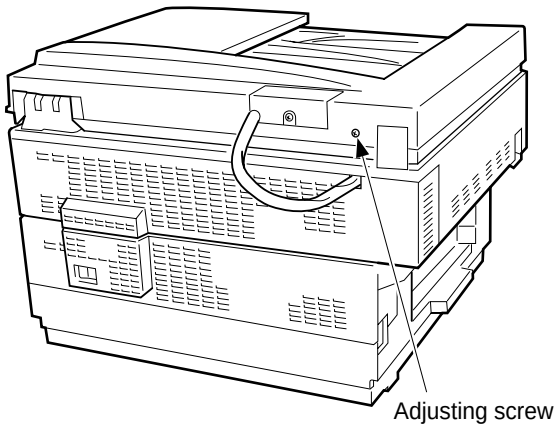


Figure 11-245

Relationship between Adjusting Screw and L1/L2

Direction of turn	Relationship between L1 and L2
Clockwise	L1 > L2
Counterclockwise	L1 < L2

Table 11-203

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

3. Adjusting the Rear/Front Original Stop Position

You must first correct original skew before adjusting the rear/front original stop position.

1) Obtain a sheet of A4 or LTR white copy paper, and draw two lines as indicated.
   • The sheet will be used as a test sheet.

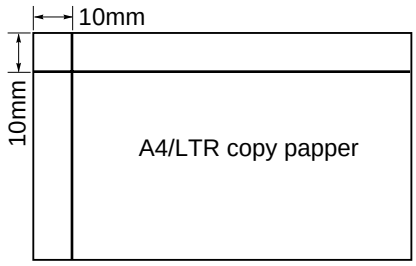


Figure 11-246

2) Remove the original tray cover from below the original tray.

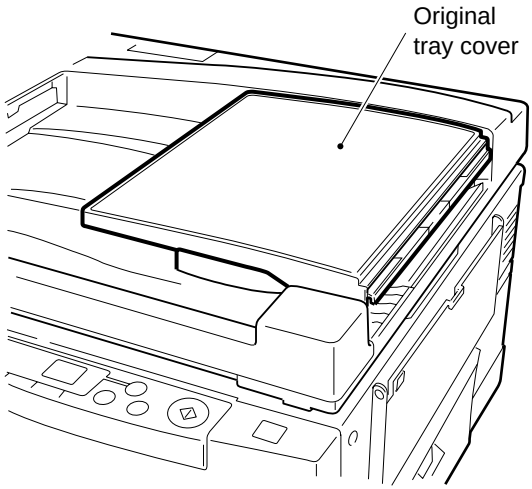


Figure 11-247

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3) Turn on the machine, and place the test sheet prepared in step 1) on the original tray.

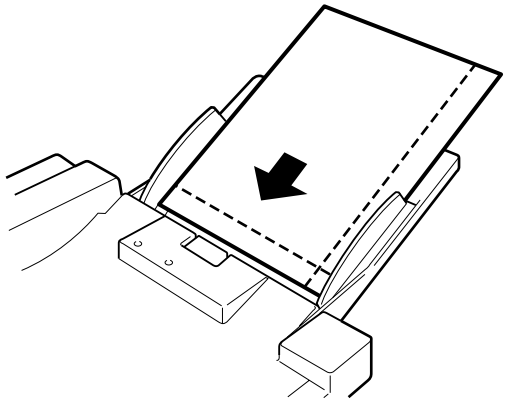


Figure 11-248

4) Press the Copy Start key to make a copy.
5) Check to make sure that the distance L3 on the copy image indicated is 10 ±2.5 mm (standard) or less.

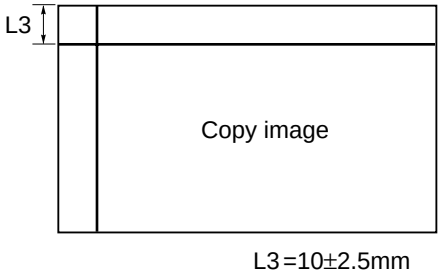


Figure 11-249

6) If the distance is not as specified, loosen the pinion gear positioning screw under the original tray, and adjust the position of the pinion gear.

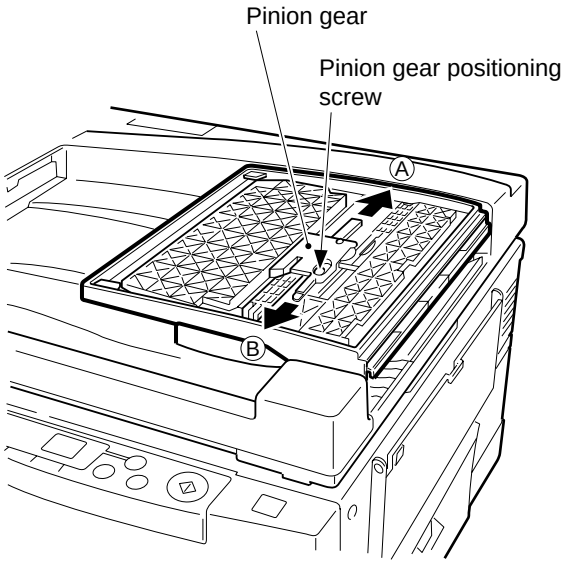


Figure 11-250

Relationship between Pinion Gear Position and L3

Direction of pinion gear	L3
A	Increases
B	Decreases

Table 11-204

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4. Adjusting the Original Leading Edge Stop Position

You must first correct original skew and adjust the rear/front original stop position before adjusting the original leading edge stop position.

1) Obtain a sheet of A4 or LTR white copy paper, and draw two lines as indicated.
   • The sheet will be used as a test sheet.

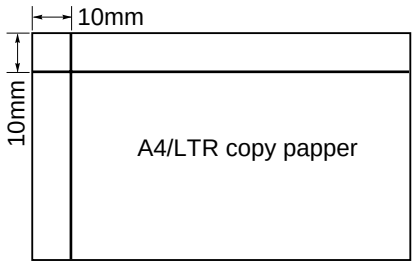


Figure 11-251

2) Remove the screw, and remove the ADF controller cover.

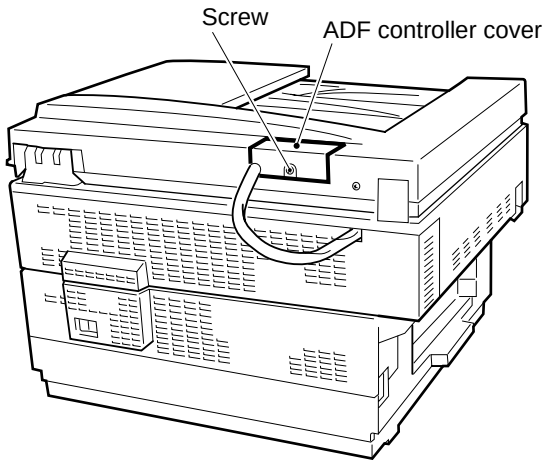


Figure 11-252

3) Turn on the machine, and place the test sheet prepared in step 1) on the original tray.

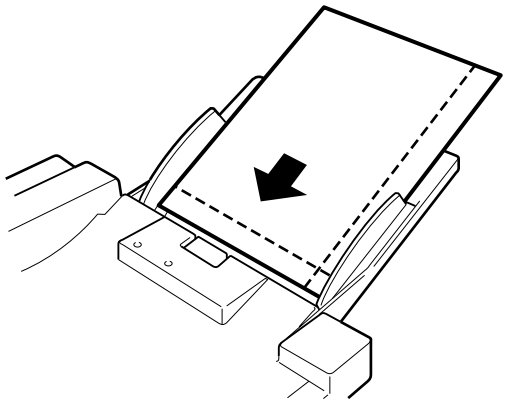


Figure 11-253

4) Press the Copy Start key to make a copy.
5) Check to make sure that the distance L4 on the copy image indicated is 10 +2.0, -2.5 mm (standard) or less.

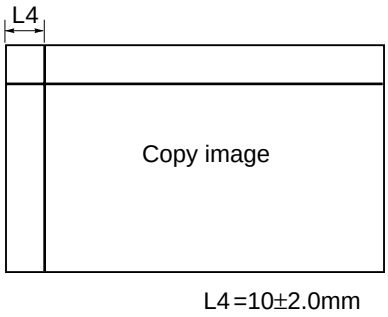


Figure 11-254

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

6) If the distance is not as specified, shift bit 1 of the DIP switch (SW1) on the ADF controller PCB to ON, and place an A4 or LTR white copy paper on the original tray.

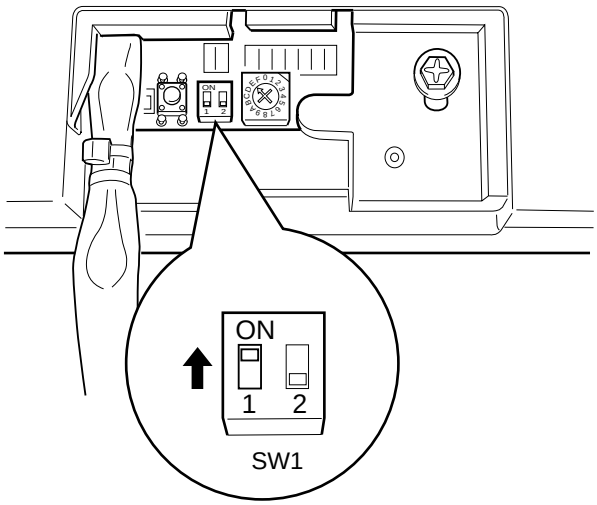


Figure 11-255

7) Press the push switch (PSW) on the ADF controller PCB.
   • The copy paper will be picked up from the original tray and stopped on the copyboard glass.

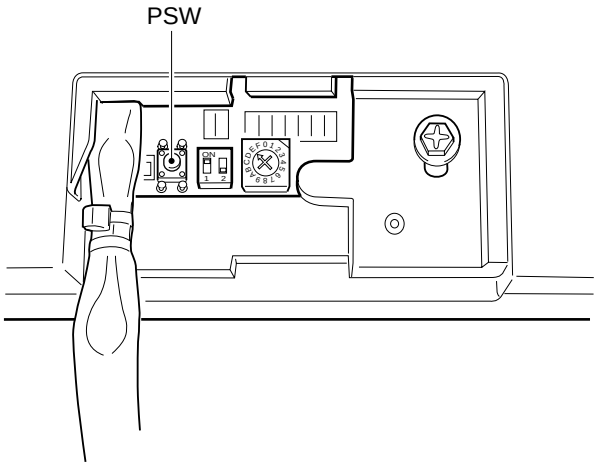


Figure 11-256

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

8) Use the rotary switch (SW2) on the ADF controller PCB to adjust the original leading edge stop position.
Moving the rotary switch by a single notch changes the original stop position by about 0.3 mm.
Press the push switch (PSW) after deciding on a position to discharge the copy paper and store the optimum value.

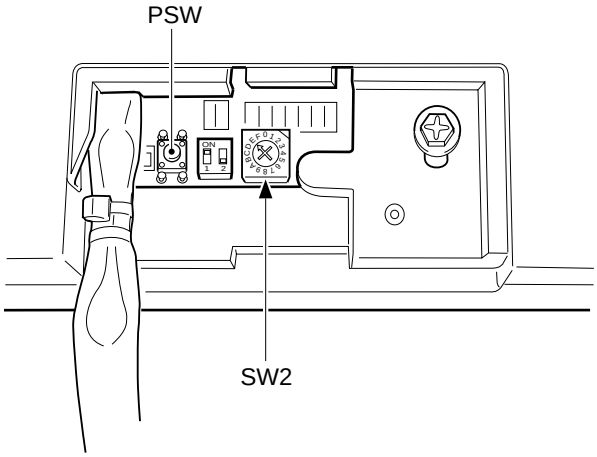


Figure 11-257

Relationship between Rotary Switch Direction and Original Position

Direction of rotary switch	Position (shift) of original
Clockwise	Toward leading edge
Counterclockwise	Toward trailing edge

Table 11-205

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

Example:

If L4 is 13 mm,

You must shift the original stop position toward the leading edge by 3 mm.

1) Place a sheet of A4 or LTR white copy paper on the original tray.
2) Shift bit 1 of the DIP switch (SW1) on the ADF controller PCB to ON; then, push the push switch (PSW) to pick up the copy paper.

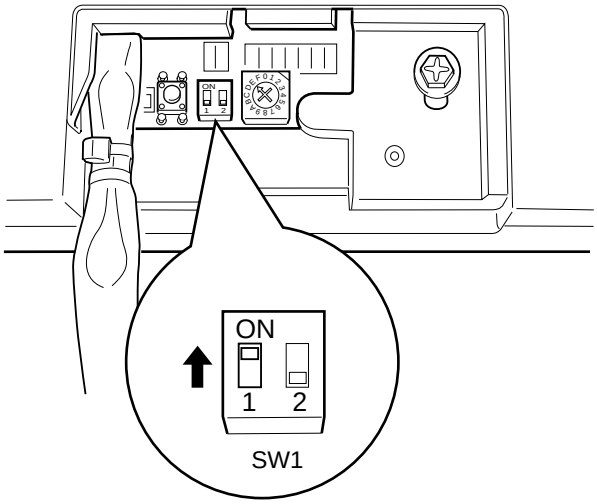


Figure 11-258

3) Turn the rotary switch (SW2) on the ADF controller PCB clockwise by 10 notches.

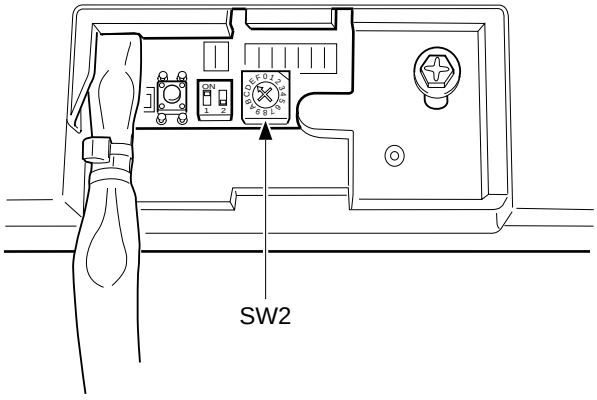


Figure 11-259

4) Press the push switch (PSW) on the ADF controller PCB.
   • The copy paper on the copyboard will be discharged, and the optimum value will be stored.

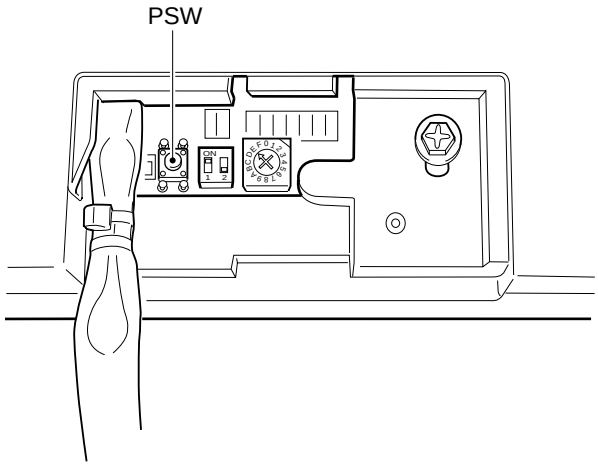


Figure 11-260

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

C. Electrical

1. After Replacing the Major Parts

Parts	Work
Scanning lamp	1. Scanning lamp intensity adjustment (LAMP_ADJ) 2. AE adjustment
AE sensor PCB	1. AE adjustment
Composite power supply PCB*1	(1. Scanning lamp intensity adjustment (LAMP_ADJ)) (2. AE adjustment) 3. Voltage correction for APVC measurement (PW_OFST) 4. Current correction for APVC measurement (IP_ADJ)
Pre-exposure lamp	1. Pre-exposure lamp output adjustment (PREX_LP)
DC controller PCB	1. Scanning lamp intensity adjustment (LAMP_ADJ) 2. AE adjustment 3. Leading edge non-image width adjustment (LE_BLANK) 4. Image leading edge margin adjustment (REGIST) 5. Primary charging output voltage correction (PRIMARY) 6. APVC measurement current correction (IP_OFST) 7. Voltage correction for measurement of APVC (PW_OFST) 8. Current correction for measurement of APVC (IP_ADJ) 9. Ratio fine adjustment (LENS_ADJ) 10. Pre-exposure lamp output adjustment (PREX_LP)
Drum unit	1. Primary charging output voltage correction (PRIMARY) 2. APVC measurement current correction (IP_OFST)
ADF controller PCB	1. Original leading edge stop position adjustment

*1: If you have replaced the composite power supply PCB, check copy images using the Test Sheet; if (and only if) an image fault is found, adjust the intensity of the scanning lamp and execute AE adjustment.

Table 11-206

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

2. Adjusting the Intensity of the Scanning Lamp

You must perform this adjustment whenever you have replaced any of the following:

- DC controller PCB
- Composite power supply PCB (See p. 11-41.)
- Scanning lamp

Caution:

If you have performed this adjustment, be sure to perform AE adjustment.

Making Adjustments

- If you have replaced the DC controller PCB or the composite power supply PCB,

1) Select '38' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '38'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value recorded on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new setting.

- If you have replaced the scanning lamp,

1) Set the Density correction dial (VR107) to the middle.

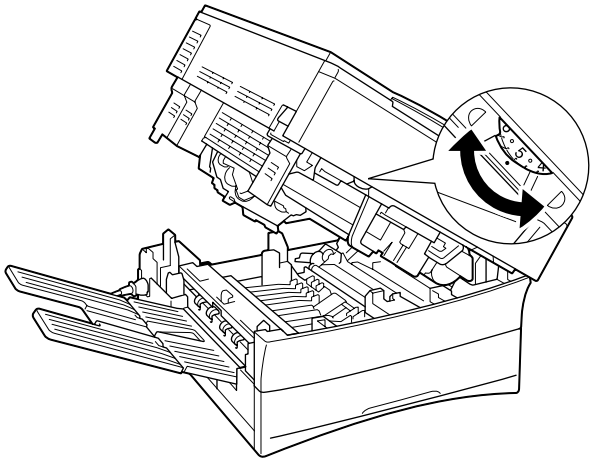


Figure 11-261

2) Turn off the AE mechanism, and set the Copy Density Adjustment lever on the control panel to the middle.
3) Place the Test Sheet on the copyboard.
4) Select '38' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '38'.
5) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

6) Change the setting using the +/- key until gray scale No. 9 is barely visible by way of adjusting the intensity of the scanning lamp.
   - The setting may be between 0 and 99.
   - For each '1', the lamp supply voltage will change about 0.15 V (for 120V model) or about 0.30 V (for 220/240V model).
   - A higher setting will decrease the intensity of the lamp, thereby making copies darker.
   - A lower setting will increase the intensity of the lamp, thereby making copies lighter.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

3. AE Adjustment

Perform this adjustment if you have replaced any of the following:

- DC controller PCB
- Composite power supply PCB (See p.11-41)
- AE sensor PCB
- Scanning lamp

Making Adjustments

Preparatory Work

- Obtain a newspaper which is more or less even in density. (Avoid ones with photos or large text characters.)
- Obtain five sheets of white sheets of paper
- Make sure that the intensity of the scanning lamp has been adjusted when you have replaced the scanning lamp.
- Set the density correction dial (VR107) to the middle setting.

1) Select '40' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '40'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The scanner will move forward, and the scanning lamp will turn on.
3) Turn VR103 on the DC controller PCB fully clockwise.

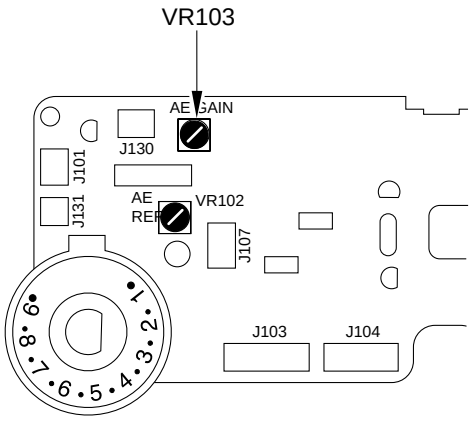


Figure 11-262

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4) Place a newspaper on the copyboard, and close the copyboard cover.
5) Turn VR102 so that the reading in the display is 'A3' through 'Ad'.

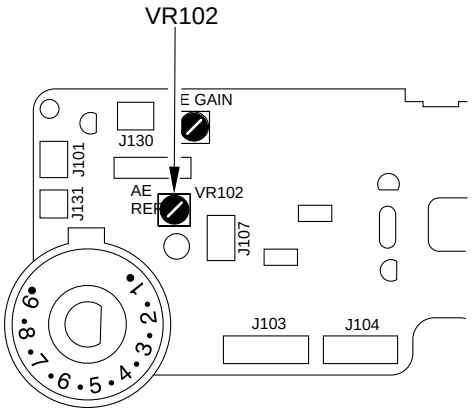


Figure 11-263

6) Remove the newspaper from the copyboard, and place five sheets of copy paper on the copyboard glass in its place; then, close the copyboard cover.
7) Turn VR103 on the DC controller PCB so that the reading on the control panel is '52' through '5c'.

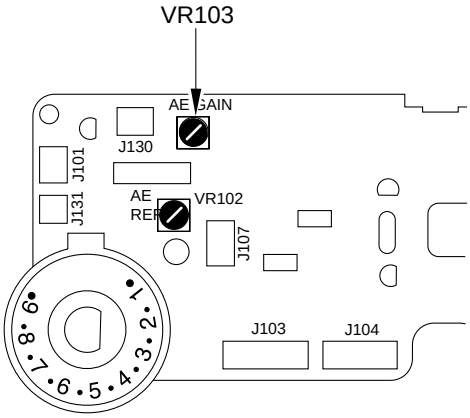


Figure 11-264

8) Repeat steps 4) through 7) so that the values of both VR102 and VR103 are target values.

Caution:

If you cannot set VR102 and VR103 to the target values at the same time, turn VR103 fully counterclockwise, and go back to step 4) and make adjustments once again.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

9) Make a copy, and check to make sure that the density of characters is adequate.
   • If the copy is foggy or its characters are too light, go back to step 1) and start over.
   • If there is no change after adjustment for a second time, use the density correction dial (VR107).

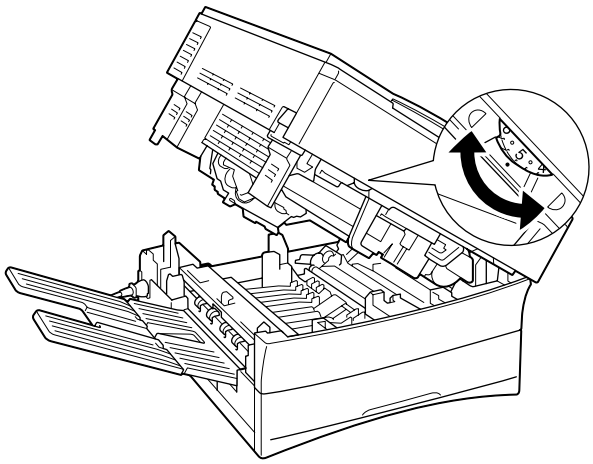


Figure 11-265

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

4. Primary Charging Output Voltage Correction (PRIMARY)

Perform this adjustment whenever you have replaced any of the following:
- DC controller PCB
- Drum unit

Making Adjustments
- If you have replaced the DC controller PCB,

1) Select '32' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '32'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'PRIMARY' recorded on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new value.

- If you have replaced the drum unit, execute ‘Installation/drum unit replacement mode’ (U7) in the user mode.
  (See Chapter 9.II.A.6. “Adjusting the Machine.”)

5. APVC Measurement Current Correction (IP_OFST)

Perform this adjustment whenever you have replaced any of the following:
- DC controller PCB
- Drum unit

Making Adjustments
- If you have replaced the DC controller PCB,

1) Select '33' in service mode.
   - The display indicate '33'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'IP_OFST' recorded on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new value.

- If you have replaced the drum unit, execute ‘Installation/drum unit replacement mode’ (U7) in the user mode.
  (See Chapter 9.II.A.6. “Adjusting the Machine.”)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

6. Voltage Correction for Measurement of APVC (PW_OFST)

Perform this adjustment if you have replaced any of the following:
- DC controller PCB
- Composite power supply PCB

Making Adjustments

1) Select '34' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '34'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'PW_OFST' recorded on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new value.
5) Execute 'U7' in user mode (installation/drum replacement mode).

- If you have replaced the composite power supply PCB,

1) Select '34' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '34'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'PW_OFST' indicated on the new composite power supply PCB using the +/- key.

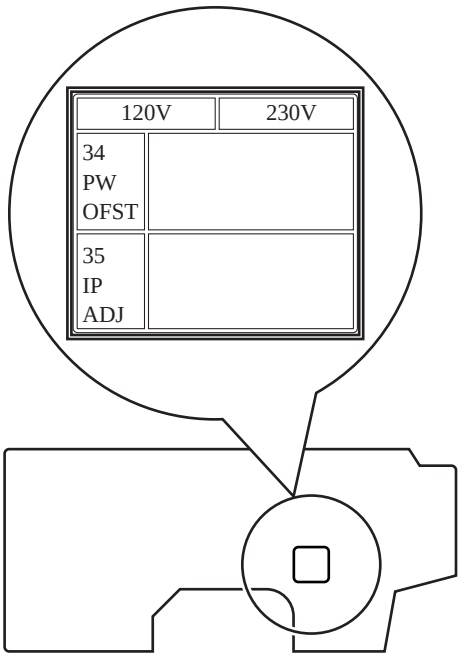


Figure 11-266

4) Press the AE key to store the value.
5) Record the new value on the service label.
6) Execute 'U7' in user mode (installation/drum replacement mode).

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

7. Current Correction for Measurement of APVC (IP_ADJ)

Perform this adjustment whenever you have replaced any of the following parts:
- DC controller PCB
- Composite power supply PCB

Making Adjustments
- If you have replaced the DC controller PCB,

1) Select '35' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '35'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'IP_ADJ' recorded on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new setting.

- If you have replaced the composite power supply PCB,

1) Select '35' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '35'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'IP_ADJ indicated on the new composite power supply PCB using the +/- key.

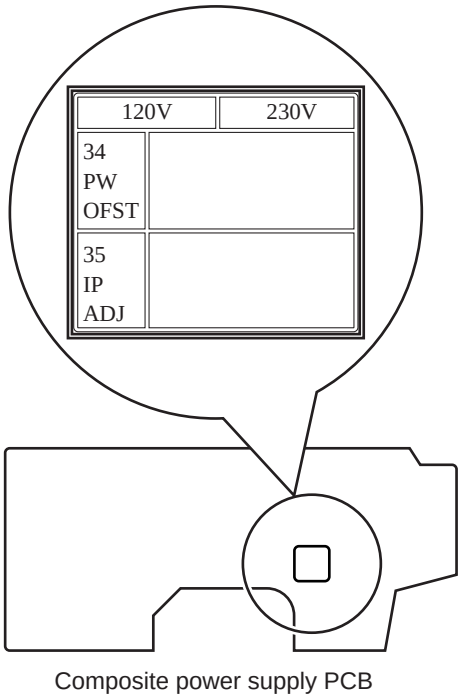


Figure 11-267

4) Enter the AE key to store the new setting.
5) Record the new value on the service label.

8. Ratio Fine Adjustment (LENS_ADJ)

Perform this adjustment whenever you have replaced the following:
- DC controller PCB

Making Adjustments
- When you have adjusted the DC controller PCB,

1) Select '36' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '36'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'LENS_ADJ' indicated on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new value.

9. Pre-Exposure Lamp Output Adjustment (PREX_LP)

Perform this adjustment whenever you have replaced any of the following:
- DC controller PCB
- Pre-exposure lamp

Making Adjustments
- If you have replaced the DC controller PCB,

1) Select '37' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '37'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'PREX_LP' recorded on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new value.
5) Execute 'U7' in user mode (installation/drum replacement mode).

- If you have replaced the pre-exposure lamp,

1) Select '37' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '37'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'PREX_LP' recorded on the label attached to the new pre-exposure lamp using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new value.
5) Execute 'U7' in user mode (installation/drum replacement mode).

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

10. Checking the Photointerrupters

1) Set the meter range to 12 VDC.
2) Connect the - probe [1] of the meter to the grounding terminal [2].

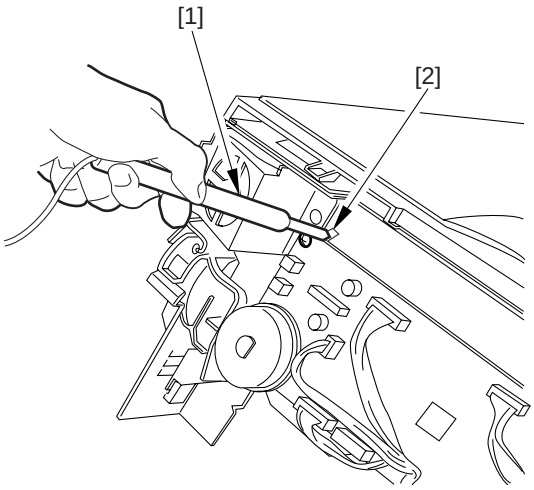


Figure 11-268

3) Make checks as instructed.

Reference:

The photointerrupers other than those shown in Table 11-209 are connected in a matrix, hence the omission from the table.

Sensor	Connector	Checks		Voltage (approx.)
PS1 Scanner home position sensor (SCHP)	J101-3	During standby, move the scanner by hand.	When the light-blocking plate is at PS1, When the light-blocking plate is not at PS1,	5V 0V
PS2 Lens home position sensor (LHP)	J109-10	During standby, move the lens mount by hand.	When the light-blocking plate is at PS2, When the light-blocking plate is not at PS2,	5V 0V
PS4 Vertical path roller paper sensor (PDP)	J132-5	During standby, move the detecting lever by hand.	When the light-blocking plate is at PS4, When the light-blocking plate is not at PS4,	5V 0V
Q751 Pre-registration roller paper sensor (RPD)	J108-1	During standby, move the detecting lever by hand.	When the light-blocking plate is at Q751, When the light-blocking plate is not at Q751,	0V 5V

Table 11-209

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

III. TROUBLESHOOTING IMAGE FAULTS

A. Making Initial Checks

1. Site Environment

Check the site against the following considerations:

a. The voltage of the power source is as rated.
b. The site must not be subject to high temperature or humidity (as near a water faucet, water boiler, humidifier) or dust. The machine must not be near a source of fire.
c. The site must not be subject to ammonium gas.
d. The machine must not be exposed to direct rays of the sun. (As necessary, instruct the user to provide curtains.)
e. The site must be well ventilated.
f. The machine must be kept level.

2. Checking the Originals

Check the originals to find out whether the problem in question is caused by the machine or the originals.

a. The copy density adjusting lever is often best if set to the middle index.
b. Originals with a red tint tend to produce copies with poor contrast; e.g., red sheets.
c. Originals which are diazo copies or with transparency tend to produce copies which can be mistaken for "foggy" copies.
   Originals prepared in pencil tend to produce copies with "light" images.

3. Copyboard Cover and Copyboard Glass

If the copyboard cover or the copyboard glass is soiled, clean it with mild detergent solution or alcohol; if scratched, replace it.

4. Lens

Check the lens for dirt. If any, clean it with a cotton swab.

5. Checking the Transfer Charging Roller

a. Check the transfer charging roller for dirt or fault (scratches).

6. Feeding Assembly

Check the feeding assembly for dirt. If any dirt is found, clean it with a moist cloth.

7. Copy Paper

a. Is copy paper of a type recommended by Canon?
b. Is copy paper moist?
   Try paper fresh out of package.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

8. Others

When a machine is brought in from a cold place (e.g., warehouse) to a warm place, condensation can occur inside it, leading to various problems; e.g.,

a. Condensation on the scanner (glass, lens, mirror, reflecting plate) will cause dark images.
b. The drum is likely to be cold (high OPC electrical resistance), not enabling good contrast.
c. Condensation in the pickup/feeding assembly tends to cause feeding faults.
d. Condensation on the lower roller of the manual feed assembly will reduce friction, causing pickup faults.

If condensation is noted, dry wipe the parts in question.

The cartridge can develop condensation if it is opened immediately after it has been brought from a cold to warm place. Instruct the user so that the cartridge is not opened before it has become used to the room temperature (one to two hours).

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

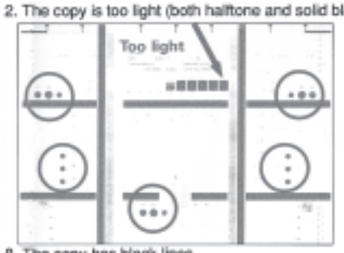
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

B. Sample Image Faults

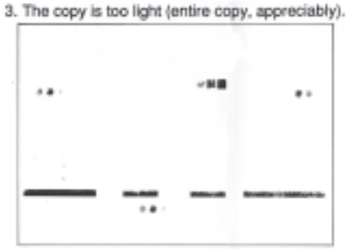
NOTE: The samples are created intentionally. The NA-3 Test Sheet was copied in the direct mode in A3 and printed with a reduction of about 19%; actual images may be somewhat different.

1. The copy is too light (halftone only).

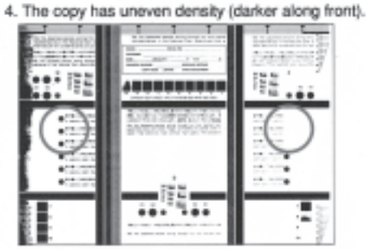
2. The copy is too light (both halftone and solid black).



3. The copy is too light (entire copy, appreciably).

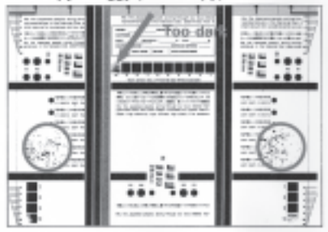


4. The copy has uneven density (darker along front).

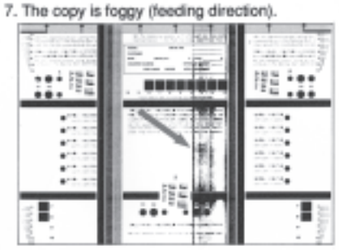


5. The copy has uneven density (lighter along front).

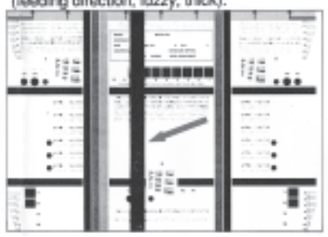
6. The copy is foggy (entire copy).



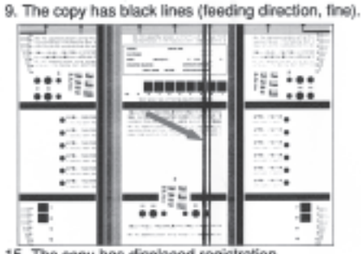
7. The copy is foggy (feeding direction).



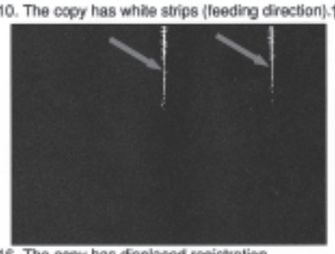
8. The copy has black lines (feeding direction, fuzzy, thick).



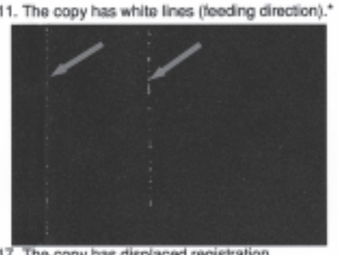
9. The copy has black lines (feeding direction, fine).



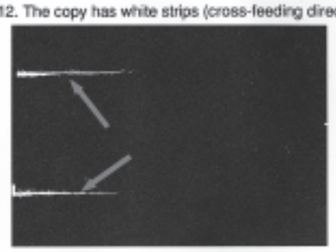
10. The copy has white strips (feeding direction).†



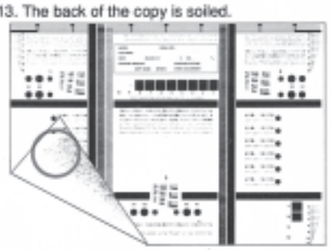
11. The copy has white lines (feeding direction).*



12. The copy has white strips (cross-feeding direction).



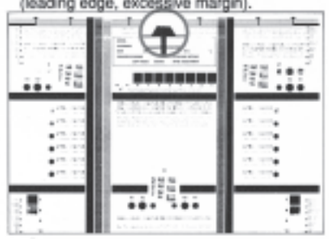
13. The back of the copy is soiled.



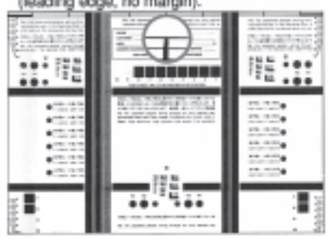
14. The copy has poor fixing.

15. The copy has displaced registration (leading edge, extremely excessive margin).

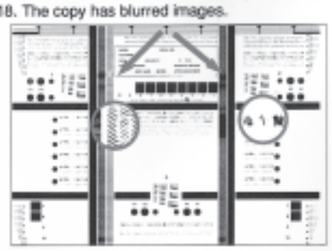
16. The copy has displaced registration (leading edge, excessive margin).



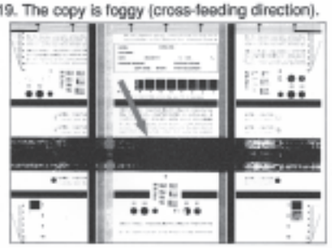
17. The copy has displaced registration (leading edge, no margin).



18. The copy has blurred images.



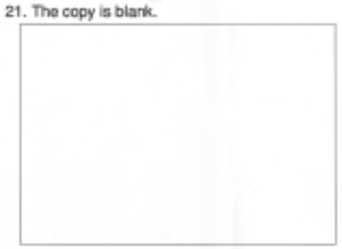
19. The copy is foggy (cross-feeding direction).



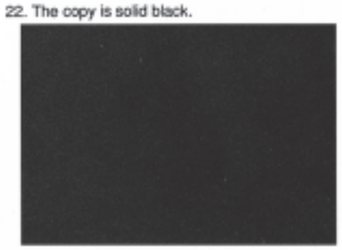
†

20. The copy has poor sharpness.

21. The copy is blank.



22. The copy is solid black.



* Copies made with the copyboard lifted; faults may also appear on normally made copies.
† Strips may vary in width.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

C. Troubleshooting Image Faults

1	**The copy is too light. (halftone area only)**
2	**The copy is too light. (including solid area)**
3	**The copy is too light. (enter image, appreciably)**

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Lens, Reflecting plate, AE sensor, Static eliminator	1	Clean the lens, reflecting plate, AE sensor, and static eliminator. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
----------	2	Turn off the power in the middle of a copying run, and open the machine's top unit. Is the toner image before transfer more or less normal? (Be sure to make a check in a short time to protect the drum from light.)	NO	Go to step 6.
Transfer charging roller	3	Is the transfer charging roller normal?	NO	1. Mount the transfer charging roller correctly. 2. Replace the transfer charging roller.
Copy paper	4	Try fresh copy paper. Is the problem corrected?	YES	1. The copy paper may be moist. Instruct the user on the correct method of storage. 2. Inform the user that using non-recommended paper may not bring the best results.
Transfer lower guide, Varistor	5	Measure the electrical resistance on the transfer lower guide plate and the side plate (metal) of the fixing assembly. Is it 0Ω?	YES	1. Check to find out if the transfer lower guide happens to be in contact with a metal part (side plate). 2. Replace the varistor.
Composite power supply PCB, DC controller PCB			NO	1. Check the transfer high-voltage terminal contacts for electrical continuity. 2. Check the composite power supply and the DC controller PCB.
Drum unit	6	Replace the drum unit. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Developing bias, Developing bias terminal			NO	Replace the electric unit (composite power supply PCB, DC controller PCB).

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

4 The copy has uneven density. (darker at front)
5 The copy has uneven density. (lighter at front)

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Scanner	1	Clean the scanning lamp, reflecting plate, lens, and mirror. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Toner cartridge Scanning lamp	2	Turn off the power in the middle of a copying run, and open the machine. Is the toner image on the photosensitive drum before transfer more or less uneven?	YES	1. Replace the toner cartridge. 2. Replace the scanning lamp.
Transfer charging roller			NO	1. Mount the transfer charging roller correctly. 2. Replace the transfer charging roller correctly.

6 The copy is foggy. (entire face)

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
----------	1	Is the density correction dial (VR107) or the density adjusting lever set to the middle setting?	NO	Set the dial or the lever to the middle setting, and make a copy. If the image is still foggy, to step 2).
Scanner	2	Clean the scanning lamp, reflecting plate, lens, and mirror. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Grounding spring	3	Set the drum unit in the machine. Is there electrical continuity between the PCB of the base of the drum and the machine's top unit?	NO	Check to see if the grounding spring is mounted correctly (in reference to the drum drive gear).
Scanning lamp, Developing bias			YES	1. Check the activation of the scanning lamp. 2. Check the developing assembly.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

7	**The copy is foggy vertically.**
8	**The copy has black lines. (vertical, fuzzy, thick)**
9	**The copy has black lines. (vertical, fine)**

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Scanner	1	Clean the scanning lamp, reflecting plate, lens, and mirror. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Transfer guide assembly	2	Clean the transfer guide assembly. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Drum unit	3	Take out and then set the drum unit once again. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
			NO	Replace the drum unit.

10	**The copy has white spots. (vertical)**
11	**The copy has white lines. (vertical)**

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Fixing assembly	1	Turn off the power in the middle of a copying run, and open the machine's top unit. Does the copy image before moving through the fixing assembly have white spots or white lines?	YES	Check the fixing assembly.
Toner cartridge	2	Turn off then on the machine. Is the problem corrected?	YES	Advise the user that the toner cartridge is running out of the toner.
Static eliminator	3	Clean the static eliminator. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Transfer charging roller	4	Is there foreign matter or scratches in the transfer charging roller assembly?	YES	Remove the foreign matter, or replace the transfer charging roller.
Drum unit			NO	Replace the drum unit.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

12 The copy has white spots. (horizontal)

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Copy paper	1	Is the paper of a recommended type?	YES	Try a recommend type. If the results are good, ask the user to use a recommended type.
	2	Try paper fresh out of package. Is the problem corrected?	YES	The paper may be moist. Instruct the user on the correct method of storing paper.
Scanner rail	3	Is the problem noted at the same position on all copies?	YES	1. Check the scanner rail for foreign matter. 2. Adjust the tension of the scanner cable.
Scanning lamp, Developing bias			NO	Check the scanning lamp for flickering and the presence/absence of a developing bias.

13 The back of the copy is soiled.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
----------	1	Turn off the power while copy paper is moving through the feeding assembly. Is the back of the paper soiled?	NO	Go to step 3.
Transfer guide assembly	2	Is the transfer guide assembly soiled?	YES	1. Clean the transfer guide. 2. Clean the registration roller. 3. Check the varistor. 4. Check the developing assembly for leakage of toner.
Feeding assembly	3	Is the feeding assembly soiled?	YES	Clean the feeding assembly.
Pickup guide assembly, Delivery roller			NO	Clean the pickup guide assembly and the delivery roller.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

14 The copy has a fixing fault.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Copy paper	1	Is the copy paper of a recommended type?	NO	Try a recommended type. If the results are good, ask the user to use a recommended type.
Fixing film	2	Is the problem vertical and, in addition, in the form of lines?	YES	Check the fixing film and the fixing lower roller for scratches. If there are scratches, replace them.
Fixing heater	3	Does the heater turn on when the Copy Start key is pressed?	NO	See "The fixing heater fails to turn on."
DC controller PCB, Composite power supply PCB			YES	The control temperature of the fixing heater is likely to be too low. Check the fixing assembly top unit, DC controller PCB, and composite power supply PCB.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

15 The copy has a misplaced leading edge. (extremely excess margin)
16 The copy has a misplaced leading edge. (excess margin)
17 The copy has a misplaced leading edge (no margin)

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Pickup roller, Pickup clutch, Cassette	1	Make copies using the cassette and manually. Are the results the same?	NO	Check the pickup roller, pickup clutch, and cassette. Or, replace them.
Sensor (PS1), Light-blocking plate	2	Are the scanner home position sensor (PS1) and the light-blocking plate normal? (See the instructions on how to check the photointerrupter.)	NO	Replace the sensor, or check the light-blocking plate.
Image leading edge margin	3	Execute image leading edge margin adjustment. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Solenoid (SL2), DC controller PCB	4	Does the registration clutch solenoid (SL2) operate normally?	NO	1. Check the solenoid (SL2). 2. Check the DC control PCB.
Copy paper	5	Is the paper of a recommended type?	NO	Try a recommended type. If the results are good, ask the user to use a recommended type.
Registration clutch			YES	Check the registration clutch.

18 The copy has a blurred image.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Scanner drive cable	1	Does the cable wind on itself when the scanner is moving? Or, is the cable too slack or too taut?	YES	1. Route the cable correctly. 2. If the cable is twisted or frayed, replace it.
Scanner rail	2	Move the No. 1 mirror mount slowly by hand. Does it move slowly?	YES	Clean the surface of the scanner rail with alcohol. Then, apply lubricant. (CK-0551)
----------	3	Is abnormal noise heard from the scanner motor?	YES	See "The scanner fails to move forward/in reverse."
Feeding system	4	Does the copy paper spring up or stop around the transfer assembly?	YES	Check the feeding assembly for burrs.
Drum unit			NO	Replace the drum unit.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

19 The copy has horizontal fogging.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Scanning lamp	1	Does the scanning lamp flicker?	YES	Replace the scanning lamp.
Drum unit, High-voltage transformer assembly	2	Replace the drum unit. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
			NO	Check the high-voltage transformer (composite power supply PCB).
Scanning system	3	Make a reduced copy, and compare it against one made in Direct. Is the problem found at different positions?	YES	Check the scanning system.
Feeding system			NO	Check the feeding system.

20 The copy has poor sharpness. (out-of-focus)

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
----------	1	Is the image also too light?	YES	Correct the light image problem first.
Original	2	Is the original off the copyboard glass?	YES	1. Check the copyboard cover too see if it happens to be warping. 2. Instruct the user on the correct method of placing originals.
Lens	3	Turn off and then on the power switch. Does the lens move smoothly?	NO	Check the lens rail for foreign matter, and clean it.
Mirror position	4	Is the horizontal ratio in Direct within specification?	NO	Adjust the distance between No. 1 mirror and the No. 2 mirror.
Scanner	5	Clean the scanning lamp, reflecting plate, mirror, and lens. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Drum unit			NO	Replace the drum unit.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

21 The copy is blank.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Toner cartridge	1	Is toner inside the toner cartridge?	YES	Replace the toner cartridge.
	2	Has the open seal been removed?	NO	Remove the opening seal.
Drum drive assembly	3	Does the drum drive gear rotate normally?	NO	Check the drum drive assembly. Caution: Be sure to install the drum unit before mading checks.
High-voltage transformer	4	Is the primary charging terminal on the front left of the drum unit in firm contact with the high-voltage terminal at the machine's bottom?	YES	Check the high-voltage transformer (composite power supply PCB).
Primary high-voltage charging terminal, Drum unit			NO	1. Check the contacts for electrical continuity. 2. Replace the drum unit.

22 The copy is solid black.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
----------	1	Does the scanning lamp remain on during copying?	NO	See "The scanning lamp fails to turn on."
			YES	Is the drum unit set correctly?

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

IV. TROUBLESHOOTING MALFUNCTIONS

A. Troubleshooting Malfunctions

1 E000

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Thermistor (TH1)	1	Are the connection of J102 on the DC controller PCB and the wiring to the thermistor (TH1) normal?	NO	Correct the connection of J102 on the DC controller PCB and the wiring to the thermistor (TH1).
Heater, Fuse (FU2)	2	Is there electrical continuity between J207-1 and -2 on the fixing heater side?	NO	Check the wiring from the composite power supply PCB to the fixing heater; if normal, replace the fixing assembly upper unit.
Thermistor (TH1)	3	Replace the fixing upper unit. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Composite power supply PCB	4	Replace the composite power supply PCB. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
DC controller PCB			NO	Replace the DC controller PCB.

2 E001

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Thermistor (TH1)	1	Are the connection of J102 on the DC controller PCB and the wiring to the thermistor (TH1) normal?	NO	Correct the connection of J102 on the DC controller PCB and the wiring to the thermistor (TH1).
Thermistor	2	Replace the fixing assembly upper unit. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Composite power supply PCB	3	Replace the composite power supply PCB. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
DC controller PCB			NO	Replace the DC controller PCB.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

3 E002, E003

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Thermistor (TH1)	1	Is the connection of J102 on the DC controller PCB and the wiring to the thermistor (TH1) normal?	NO	Correct the connection of J102 on the DC controller PCB and the wiring to the thermistor (TH1).
Heater, Fuse (FU2)	2	Is there electrical continuity between J207-1 and -2 on the fixing heater side?	NO	Check the wiring from the composite power supply PCB to the fixing heater; if normal, replace the fixing upper unit.
Thermistor (TH1)	3	Replace the fixing assembly upper unit. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Composite power supply PCB	4	Replace the composite power supply PCB. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
DC controller PCB			NO	Replace the DC controller PCB.

4 E010

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Wiring 1	1	Are the connection of J205 on the composite power supply PCB and the wiring to the main motor (M1) normal?	NO	Correct the connection of J205 on the composite power supply PCB and the wiring to the main motor (M1).
Wiring 2	2	Is the wiring from J203 and J202 on the composite power supply PCB to J103 and J105, respectively, on the DC controller PCB normal?	NO	Correct the connection and wiring of the connectors.
DC power supply	3	Turn on the power switch. Is the voltage between J901-1 (+) and -2 (-) on the main motor drive PCB about 24 V?	NO	Check the wiring from the main motor driver PCB to the composite power supply PCB; if normal, see "DC power fails to turn on."
Main motor (M1)	4	Replace the main motor (M1). Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
DC controller PCB			NO	Replace the DC controller PCB.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

5 E030

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Wiring	1	Is the wiring from the total counter to the connector J119 on the DC controller PCB normal?	NO	Correct the wiring.
Total copy counter	2	Replace the total copy counter. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
DC controller PCB			NO	Replace the DC controller PCB.

6 E064

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Wiring	1	Turn off and then on the power switch; then, set the copy count to '1'. Is 'E064' indicated at the end of a copying run?	YES	Check the wiring between the DC controller PCB and the composite power supply PCB. Check the wiring between the composite power supply PCB and the high-voltage contact PCB.
High-voltage contact	2	Is the connection between the high-voltage contacts of the machine's top and bottom units normal?	NO	Correct the high-voltage contacts of the machine's top and bottom units.
Transfer charging roller	3	Is the transfer charging roller or the contact faulty?	YES	Replace the transfer charging roller.
Primary charging roller	4	Replace the drum unit. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
High-voltage cable	5	Does the high-voltage cable have scratches or tears?	YES	Replace the high-voltage cable.
Composite power supply PCB	6	Replace the composite power supply PCB. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
DC controller PCB			NO	Replace the DC controller PCB.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

7 The keys on the control panel are locked. ('E202')

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
----------	1	Is the scanner in the home position when 'E202' turns on?	NO	See "The scanner fails to move forward."
Scanner home position sensor (PS1)	2	Is the scanner home position sensor (PS1) normal? (For instructions on how to check photointerrupers, see p. 11-51.)	NO	Check the wiring from J101 on the DC controller PCB to PS1; if normal, replace PS1.
DC controller PCB			YES	Replace the DC controller PCB.

8 E210

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
----------	1	Does the lens move when the power is turned on?	NO	See "The lens fails to move."
Lens home position sensor (PS2)	2	Is the lens home position sensor (PS2) normal? (For instructions on how to check the photointerrupers, see p. 11-51.)	NO	Check the wiring from J109 on the DC controller PCB to PS2; if normal, replace PS2.
DC controller PCB			YES	Replace the DC controller PCB.

9 E220

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
----------	1	Does the scanning lamp turn on when the Copy Start key is pressed?	NO	See "The scanning lamp fails to turn on."
Composite power supply PCB	2	Replace the composite power supply PCB. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
DC controller PCB			NO	Replace the DC controller PCB.

10 E240

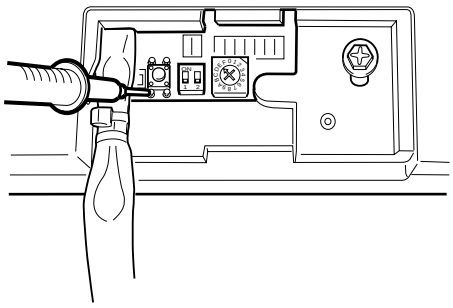
Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Wiring	1	Is the wiring from J203 and J204 on the composite power supply PCB and J103 and J104, respectively, on the DC controller PCB normal?	NO	Correct the connection and the wiring of the connectors.
Composite power supply PCB	2	Replace the composite power supply PCB. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
DC controller PCB			NO	Replace the DC controller PCB.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

11 E261

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Power supply frequency	1	Turn off and then on the power switch. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End. However, if 'E261' occurs frequently, advise the user to use a frequency stabilizer.
Composite power supply PCB			NO	Replace the composite power supply PCB.

12 E400

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
----------	1	Turn off and then on the power. Is the probrem corrected?	YES	End. (Check the wiring between the copier's DC controller PCB and the ADF controller PCB.)
5V power supply	2	Set the matter to the 20VDC range, and connect the + probe to the foot of the push swich on the ADF controller PCB and the - probe to the copier ground. Is the voltage about 5V?  **Figure 11-401**	NO	Replace the ADF controller PCB.
ADF controller PCB	3	Replace the ADF controller PCB. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
			NO	Replace the copier's DC controller PCB.

13 E803

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Malfunction	1	Turn off and then on the power switch. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
DC controller PCB.	2	Replace the DC controller PCB. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Composite power supply PCB			NO	Replace the composite power supply PCB.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

14 AC power fails to turn on.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Power plug	1	Is the power plug connected to the power outlet?	NO	Connect the power plug.
Machine top unit	2	Is the machine's top unit closed firmly?	NO	Close the machine's top unit.
Power supply	3	Is the rated voltage present at the power outlet?	NO	Inform the user that the problem is not the machine's.
Fuse (FU501)	4	Is the fuse (FU501) on the noise filter PCB blown? (120V model: 250 V, 15 A 220/240V model: 250 V, 6.3 A)	YES	Remove the cause, and replace the fuse.
Fuse (FU102)	5	Is the fuse (FU102) on the composite power supply PCB blown? (120V model: 125 V, 5 A 220/240V model: 250 V, 2.5 A)	YES	Remove the cause of the problem, and replace the fuse.
Door switch (DS1)	6	Remove the door switch (DS1), and connect the meter probes to F1 and F3 or F2 and F4 of the faston of the door switch. Is the resistance about 0 Ω when the actuator is pressed add about ∞ Ω when it is released?	NO	Replace the door switch (DS1).
Noise filter PCB	7	Is the rated voltage present between J501-1 and -2?	NO	Replace the noise filter PCB.
Harness	8	Is the rated voltage present between J201-1 and J201-2?	NO	Check the connectors and the wiring if they are normal.
Connector connection 1	9	Is there electrical continuity between J111-15 on the DC controller PCB and J301-15 on the control panel PCB?	NO	Correct the electrical continuity of J111 on the DC controller PCB and J301 on the control panel PCB.
Connector connection 2	10	Is there electrical continuity between J204-1 on the composite power supply PCB and J104-7 on the DC controller PCB?	NO	Check the connection of J104 on the DC controller PCB and J204 on the composite power supply PCB; if normal, replace the DC controller PCB.
Control panel PCB	11	Replace the control panel PCB. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Composite power supply PCB			NO	Replace the composite power supply PCB.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

15 DC power fails to turn on.

<table>
<tr><th>Cause</th><th>Step</th><th>Checks</th><th>YES/NO</th><th>Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>AC power supply</td><td>1</td><td>Is AC power present between J201-and -2 on the composite power supply PCB?</td><td>NO</td><td>See "AC power fails to turn on."</td></tr>
<tr><td>Wiring, DC load</td><td>2</td><td>Turn off the power switch, and disconnect J202 and J205 from the composite power supply PCB.
Set the meter range to 30 VDC, and turn on the power switch. Is the voltage between the following terminals normal?
<table>
<tr><th>Connector</th><th>Pin</th><th>Output</th><th>Remarks</th></tr>
<tr><td>J202</td><td>1
2
3
4
5
6</td><td>GND
24V
5V
5V
GND
24V</td><td>To DC controller PCB</td></tr>
<tr><td>J205</td><td>1
2
3
4</td><td>-
-
GND
24V</td><td>To main motor driver PCB</td></tr>
</table>
Table 11-401</td><td>YES</td><td>See "E000", "E001", "E002", or "E003".</td></tr>
<tr><td>Fuse</td><td rowspan="2">3</td><td rowspan="2">Is the fuse (FU102) on the composite power supply PCB blown?
(120V model: 125 V, 5 V
220/240V model: 250 V, 2.5 A)</td><td>YES</td><td>Remove the cause of the problem, and replace the fuse.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Composite power supply PCB</td><td>NO</td><td>Replace the composite power supply PCB.</td></tr>
</table>

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

16 Pickup fails. (cassette)

<table>
<tr><th>Cause</th><th>Step</th><th>Checks</th><th>YES/NO</th><th>Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>Main motor (M1)</td><td>1</td><td>Does the main motor (M1) rotate when the Copy Start key is pressed?</td><td>NO</td><td>See "The main motor fails to rotate."</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette</td><td>2</td><td>Is the cassette set correctly?</td><td>NO</td><td>Set the cassette correctly.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Paper in cassette</td><td>3</td><td>Is the paper in the cassette placed correctly?</td><td>NO</td><td>Instruct the user on the correct method of placing paper.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Pickup clutch solenoid (SL1), Cassette pickup solenoid (SL5)</td><td>4</td><td>Set the meter range to 30 VDC, and connect the meter probes to the following terminals. Does the voltage change to about 24 V in keeping with pickup operation?<table><tr><th></th><th>+</th><th>-</th></tr><tr><td>Pickup clutch solenoid (SL1)</td><td>J109-4</td><td>J109-3</td></tr><tr><td>Cassette pickup solenoid (SL5)</td><td>J132-2</td><td>J132-1</td></tr></table>Table 11-402</td><td>NO</td><td>Check the wiring from the solenoid to the DC controller PCB; if normal, replace the solenoid.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Cassette spring</td><td rowspan="2">5</td><td rowspan="2">Is the force of the cassette spring within specification? (See p. 11-10.)</td><td>NO</td><td>Replace the cassette spring.</td></tr>
<tr><td>DC controller PCB</td><td>YES</td><td>Replace the DC controller PCB.</td></tr>
</table>

17 Pickup fails. (multifeeder)

<table>
<tr><th>Cause</th><th>Step</th><th>Checks</th><th>YES/NO</th><th>Action</th></tr>
<tr><td>Wrong operation</td><td>1</td><td>Is the multifeeder selected on the control panel?</td><td>NO</td><td>Instruct the user on the correct way of operating the machine.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Main motor (M1)</td><td>2</td><td>Does the main motor (M1) rotate when the Copy Start key is pressed?</td><td>NO</td><td>See "The main motor fails to rotate."</td></tr>
<tr><td>Paper placement</td><td>3</td><td>Is the paper placed in the multifeeder correctly?</td><td>NO</td><td>Instruct the user on the correct way of placing paper.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Multifeeder pickup solenoid (SL4), Pickup clutch solenoid (SL1)</td><td rowspan="2">4</td><td rowspan="2">Set the meter range to 30 VDC, and connect the meter probes as indicated. Does the voltage change to about 24 V in keeping with pickup operation?<table><tr><th></th><th>+</th><th>-</th></tr><tr><td>Multifeeder pickup solenoid (SL4)</td><td>J109-8</td><td>J109-7</td></tr><tr><td>Pickup clutch solenoid (SL1)</td><td>J109-4</td><td>J109-3</td></tr></table>Table 11-403</td><td>NO</td><td>Check the wiring from the solenoid to the DC controller PCB; if normal, replace the solenoid in question.</td></tr>
<tr><td>DC controller PCB</td><td>YES</td><td>Replace the DC controller PCB.</td></tr>
</table>

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

18 The scanner fails to move forward.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Cable	1	Is the scanner drive cable routed correctly?	NO	Route the cable correctly.
Scanner path	2	Is the scanner rail soiled? Move the scanner by hand. Does it move smoothly?	NO	Check the surface of the scanner rail for dirt, foreign matter, or object which may interfere.
Composite power supply PCB	3	Set the meter range to 30 VDC, and connect the meter probes to J202-2 (+) and -1 (-) on the composite power supply PCB. Is the meter reading about 24 V?	NO	See "DC power fails to turn on."
Pre-registration roller paper sensor (Q751)	4	Is the pre-registration roller paper sensor (Q751) normal? (For instructions on how to check the photointerrupers, see p. 11-51.)	NO	Check the wiring from J108 on the DC controller PCB to Q751; if normal, replace Q751.
Scanner/lens drive motor (M2)	5	Replace the scanner/lens drive motor (M2). Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
DC controller PCB			NO	Replace the DC controller PCB.

19 The registration roller fails to rotate.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Main motor (M1)	1	Does the main motor (M1) start to rotate when the Copy Start key is pressed?	NO	See "The main motor fails to rotate."
Pre-registration roller paper sensor (Q751)	2	Is the pre-registration roller paper sensor (Q751) normal? (For instructions on how to check the photointerrupers, see p. 11-51.)	NO	Check the wiring from J108 on the DC controller PCB to Q751; if normal, replace Q751.
Registration roller spring clutch	3	Does the registration clutch solenoid (SL2) turn on for a moment after the Copy Start key is pressed?	NO	Check the position of the solenoid; if normal, check or replace the control ring.
Registration clutch solenoid (SL2)	4	Set the meter range to 30 VDC. Does the voltage between J109-6 (+) and -5 (-) on the DC controller PCB change to about 24 V for a moment after the Copy Start key is pressed?	YES	Check the wiring from J109 on the DC controller PCB to SL2; if normal, replace SL2.
DC controller PCB			NO	Replace the DC controller PCB.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

20 The blanking lamp fails to turn on.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Side blanking PCB	1	Remove J106 from the DC control PCB, and set the meter range to 1 kΩ; then, connect the meter probes to J106-1 and -2 on the harness side. Is the meter reading about 20 Ω?	NO	Check the harness; if normal, replace the side blanking PCB.
DC controller PCB			YES	Replace the DC controller PCB.

21 The pre-exposure lamp fails to turn on.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Pre-exposure lamp PCB	1	Remove J121 from the DC control PCB, and set the meter range to 1 kΩ; then, connect the meter probes to J121-1 and -2 on the harness side. Is the meter reading about 4 Ω?	NO	Check the harness; if normal, replace the pre-exposure lamp PCB.
DC controller PCB			YES	Replace the DC controller PCB.

22 The scanning lamp fails to turn on.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Scanning lamp	1	Turn off the power switch, and disconnect the power plug from the power outlet. Is the scanning lamp (LA1) mounted correctly?	NO	Mount the scanning lamp correctly.
Fuse (FU1)	2	Set the meter range to 1 kΩ, and connect the meter probes to both terminals of the fuse (FU1). Does the index of the meter swing?	NO	Replace the fuse (FU1).
Lamp	3	Disconnect the connector J910 from th ecomposite power supply PCB, and set the tester range to 1kΩ. Does the tester index swing when the probes are connected to J910-1 and J910-3 on the lamp side?	NO	Check the cable from the composite power supply PCB to the lamp; if normal, replace the lamp.
DC controller PCB	4	Replace the DC controller PCB. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Composite power supply PCB			NO	Check the wiring between the DC controller PCB and the composite power supply PCB; if normal, replace the composite power supply PCB.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

23 The lens fails to turn on.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Lens solenoid (SL3)	1	Does the lens solenoid (SL3) turn on when the power switch is turned on?	NO	Check the wiring from J109 on the DC controller PCB to SL3; if normal, replace SL3.
Lens cable, Pulley, Rail	2	Are the lens cable, pulley, and rail normal?	NO	Check the lens cable, pulley, and rail; as necessary, clean the cable and adjust its tension.
DC power supply	3	Set the meter range to the 30 VDC, and connect J202-2 (+) and -1 (-) on the composite power supply PCB. Is the meter reading about 24 V?	NO	See "DC power fails to turn on."
Scanner/lens drive motor (M2)	4	Replace the scanner/lens drive motor (M2). Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
DC control PCB			NO	Replace the DC controller PCB.

24 The fixing heater fails to turn on.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
----------	1	Is 'E000', 'E001', 'E002', or 'E003' indicated?	YES	See "E000", "E001", "E002", or "E003".
DC controller PCB	2	Replace the DC controller PCB. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
Composite power supply PCB			NO	Replace the composite power supply PCB.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

25 The "Add Paper" message fails to turn off.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Cassette	1	Is the cassette set correctly?	NO	Set the cassette correctly.
DC power supply	2	Set the meter range to 30 VDC, and connect the meter probes to J202-2 (+) and -1 (-) on the composite power PCB. Is the meter reading about 24 V?	NO	See "The DC power fails to turn on."
Vertical path roller paper sensor (PS4)	3	Is the vertical path roller paper sensor (PS4) normal? (For instructions on how to check the photointerrupters, see p. 11-51.)	NO	Check the wiring from J132 on the DC controller PCB to PS4; if normal, replace the PS4.
Control panel PCB	4	Replace the control panel PCB. Is the problem corrected?	YES	End.
DC controller PCB			NO	Replace the DC controller PCB.

26 The "Jam" message fails to turn off.

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Jam paper	1	Is the jam paper near any of the following sensors? • Vertical path roller paper sensor (PS4) • Pre-registration roller paper sensor (Q751) • Delivery sensor (PS3)	YES	Remove the jam paper.
Sensor	2	Is the sensor checked in step 1 normal? (For instructions on how to check the photointerrupers, see p. 11-51.)	NO	Check the wiring from the DC controller PCB to each sensor; if normal, replace the sensor in question.
DC controller PCB			YES	Replace the DC controller PCB.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

V. TROUBLESHOOTING FEEDING PROBLEMS

A. Copy Paper Jam

Inside the machine, jams tend occur in the following blocks:

[1] Pickup block
[2] Separation/feeding block
[3] Fixing/delivery block

The troubleshooting procedures that follow are organized according to the location of a jam.

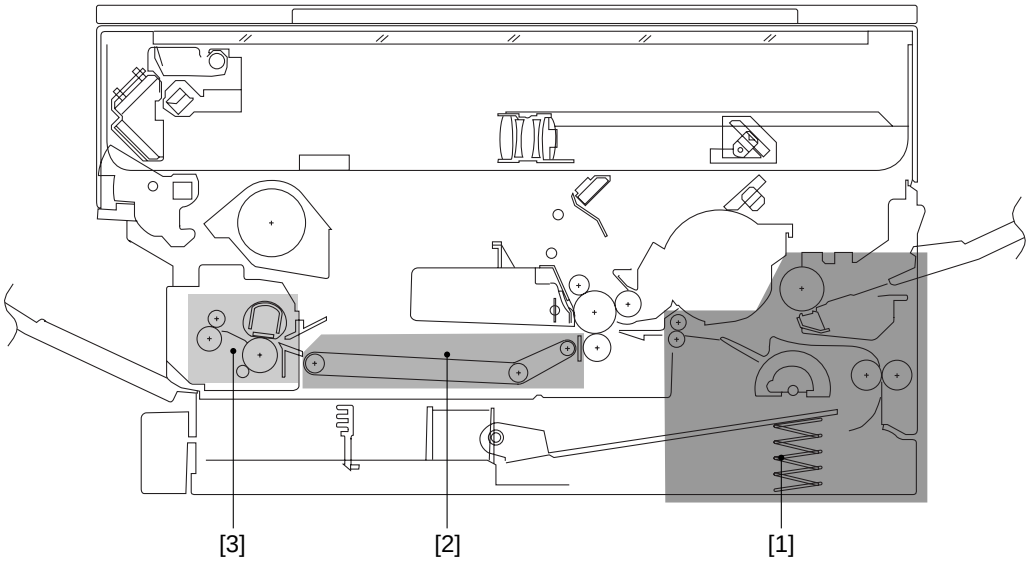


Figure 11-501

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

1 Pickup Assembly

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
----------	1	Does the problem occur when the cassette is selected as the source of paper?	NO	Go to step 5.
Cassette	2	Is the cassette set correctly?	NO	Set the cassette correctly.
Copy paper	3	Is the copy paper curled or wavy?	YES	Replace the copy paper. Instruct the user on the correct method of storing paper.
Copy paper	4	Try paper recommended by Canon. Is the problem corrected?	YES	Ask the user to use recommended paper.
DC controller PCB, Pickup clutch	5	Does the pickup roller of the pickup assembly of the selected source (cassette, manual feeder) rotate during a copying run?	NO	See "Pickup fails" for the source of paper in question.
Registration roller drive assembly	6	Does the registration roller operate normally?	NO	See "The registration roller fails to rotate."
Vertical path roller paper sensor (PS4)	7	Does the vertical path roller paper sensor operate normally?	NO	Replace the sensor or the lever.
Pickup roller, Vertical path roller,Roll			YES	Check the roller for wear and deformation, and the roll for attachment.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2 Separation/Feeding Assembly

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Copy paper	1	Try paper recommended by Canon. Is the problem corrected?	YES	Ask the user to use recommended paper.
	2	Is the copy paper curled, wavy, or otherwise deformed?	YES	Replace the paper.
Feeding assembly	3	Is there foreign matter in the feeding assembly?	YES	Instruct the user on the correct method of storing paper.
Feed belt, Roller	4	Is the feed belt rotating properly?	NO	Remove the foreign matter.
Static eliminator	5	Is the static eliminator soiled with toner or the like?	YES	Check the belt and the roller.
Pre-registration roller paper sensor (Q751)	6	Does the pre-registration roller paper sensor operate nomally?	NO	Replace the sensor or the lever.
Registration roller	7	Is the registration roller worn, deformed, or soiled?	YES	Clean the static eliminator. If dirt is found, clean with alcohol; if wear or deformation is found, replace it.
Registration-related spring, Spring clutch of registration assembly			NO	1. Check the spring used to control registration. 2. Check the spring clutch of the registration assembly.

3 Fixing/Delivery Assembly

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Inlet guide	1	Is the fixing inlet guide soiled with toner?	YES	Clean the guide with solvent.
Fixing lower roller, Fixing film	2	Is the fixing lower roller or the fixing film deformed or scratched?	YES	Replace the roller or the fixing assembly upper unit.
Delivery paper detecting lever	3	Does the delivery detecting lever move smoothly?	NO	Make adjustments so that it moves smoothly.
Delivery sensor (PS3)	4	Does the delivery sensor operate normally?	NO	Replace the sensor.
Delivery roller drive assembly	5	Does the delivery roller operate smoothly?	NO	Check the delivery roller drive assembly
Leading edge margin			YES	Check the leading edge of copy paper for margin.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

B. Faulty Feeding

1 Double-Feeding

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Cassette	1	Is the copy paper placed under the claw properly?	NO	Place the copy paper properly.
	2	Push down the copy paper inside the cassette. Does it move up when let go with its end coming under the claw?	NO	1. Check the copy paper width. 2. Check the position of the side guide plate of the cassette. (universal cassette only) 3. Measure the force of the spring of the cassette; if faulty, replace the cassette spring.
	3	Is the sheets of paper placed in the cassette uneven?	YES	Even out the sheets in the cassette.
Copy paper	4	Is the paper of a type recommended by Canon?	NO	Ask the user to use recommended paper.
Claw (cassette)			YES	Check the claw for deformation.

2 Wrinkles

Cause	Step	Checks	YES/NO	Action
Pickup assembly, Vertical path roller, Registration roller	1	Turn off the power while copy paper is moving through the feeding assembly. Is the copy paper wrinkled or found askew?	YES	• Check the pickup assembly. • Check the vertical path roller. • Check the registration roller.
Copy paper	2	Try fresh paper. Is the problem corrected?	YES	The paper is moist. Instruct the user on the correct method of storing paper.
	3	Try paper of a type recommended by Canon. Is the problem corrected?	YES	Ask the user to use recommended paper.
Fixing assembly	4	Is the inlet guide soiled with toner?	NO	Check the fixing assembly.
Inlet guide			YES	Clean the inlet guide with solvent.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

VI. ARRANGEMENT AND FUNCTIONS OF ELECTRICAL PARTS

A. Sensors and Solenoids

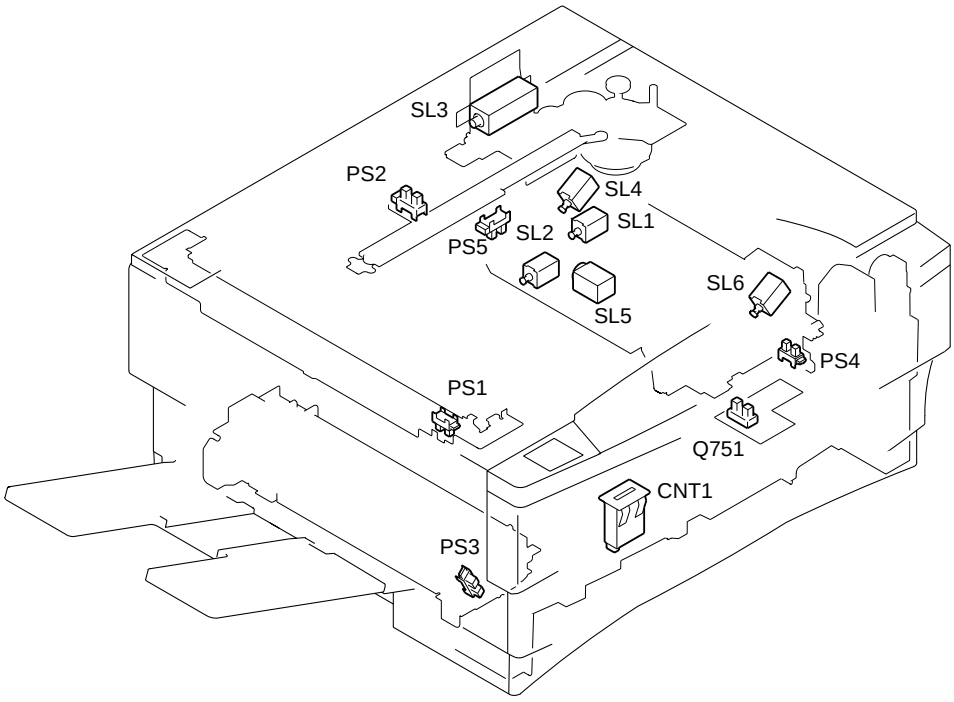


Figure 11-601

Symbol	Name	Notation	Description	Remarks
PS	Photointerrupters	PS1	Scanner home position detection	
		PS2	Lens home position detection	
		PS3	Delivery assembly paper detection	
		PS4	Vertical path assembly paper detection	
		PS5	Waste toner detection	
		Q751	Pre-registration roller paper detection	
CNT	Counter	CNT1	Total copy counter	
SL	Solenoid	SL1	Pickup clutch solenoid	
		SL2	Registration clutch solenoid	
		SL3	Lens solenoid	
		SL4	Multifeeder pickup solenoid	
		SL5	Cassette pickup solenoid	
		SL6	Primary charging roller cleaning solenoid	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

B. Switches

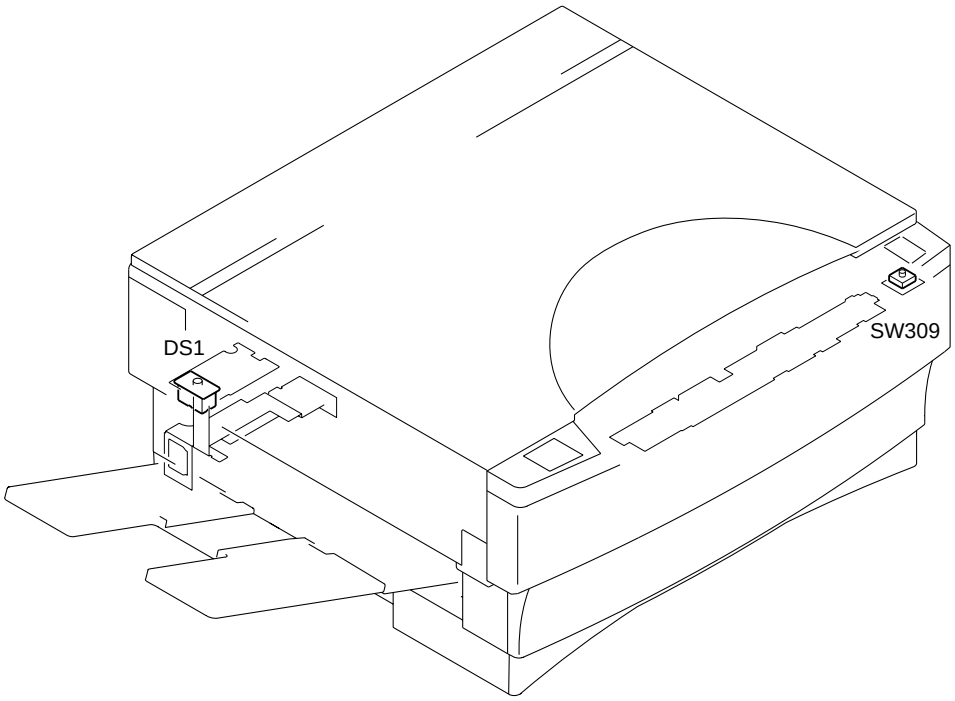
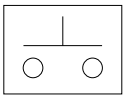


Figure 11-602

Symbol	Name	Notation	Description	Remarks
	Switch	DS1 SW309	Door switch Power switch	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

C. Lamp, Heater, Motor, Etc.

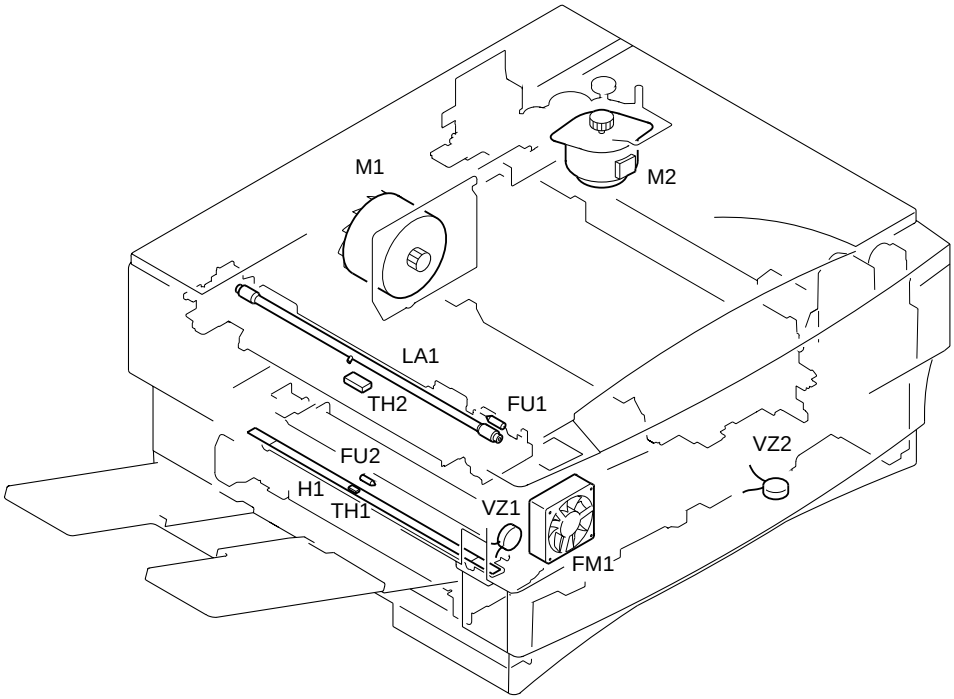


Figure 11-603

Symbol	Name	Notation	Description	Remarks
	Lamp	LA1	Scanning lamp	
	Heater	H1	Fixing heater	
M	Motor	M1 M2	Main motor Scanner/lens drive motor	
	Fan motor	FM1	Scanner cooling fan	
	Thermistor	TH1 TH2	Fixing heater temperature detection Scanner temperature detection	
	Thermal fuse	FU1 FU2	Lamp overheating detection Fixing heater overheating detection	
	Varistor	VZ1 VZ2	Fixing film varistor Transfer guide varistor	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

D. PCBs

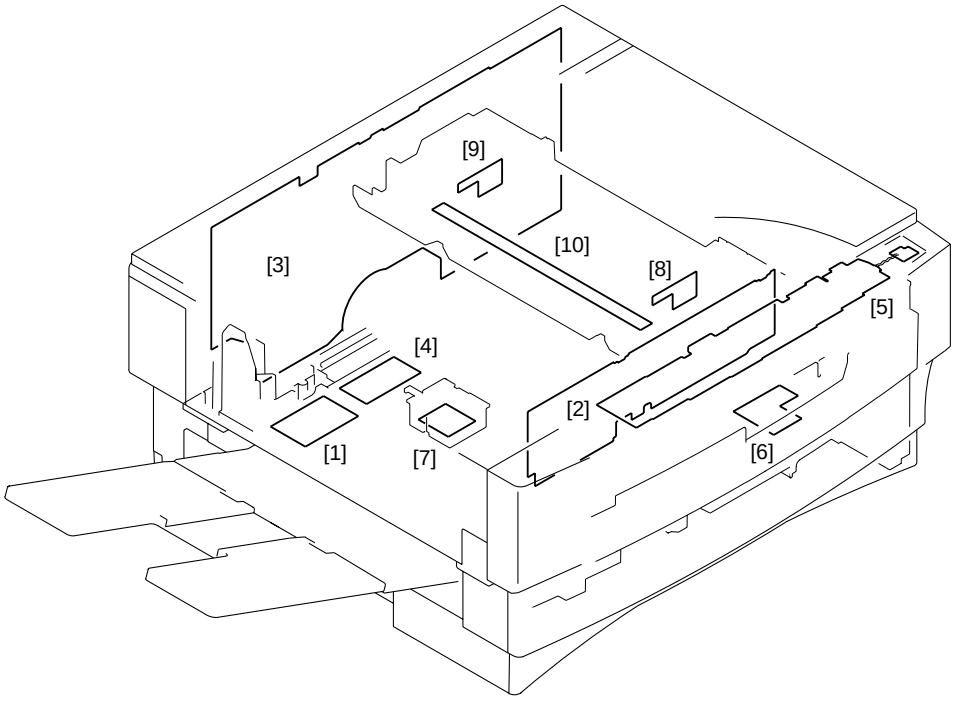


Figure 11-604

Ref.	Name	Description
[1]	Noise filter PCB	Removes noise from the power supply.
[2]	DC controller PCB	Controls sequence of operations.
[3]	Composite power supply PCB	Supplies DC power, generates high voltage, and controls the scanning lamp.
[4]	High-voltage contact PCB	Makes an electrical connection between the machine top and bottom.
[5]	Control panel PCB	Provides copying insurrections/indications.
[6]	Sensor PCB	Detects paper in front of the registration roller.
[7]	AE sensor PCB	Detects the density of originals.
[8]	Blanking PCB (front)	Used for blanking exposure.
[9]	Blanking PCB (rear)	Used for blanking exposure.
[10]	Pre-exposure PCB	Used for pre-exposure.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

E. ADF

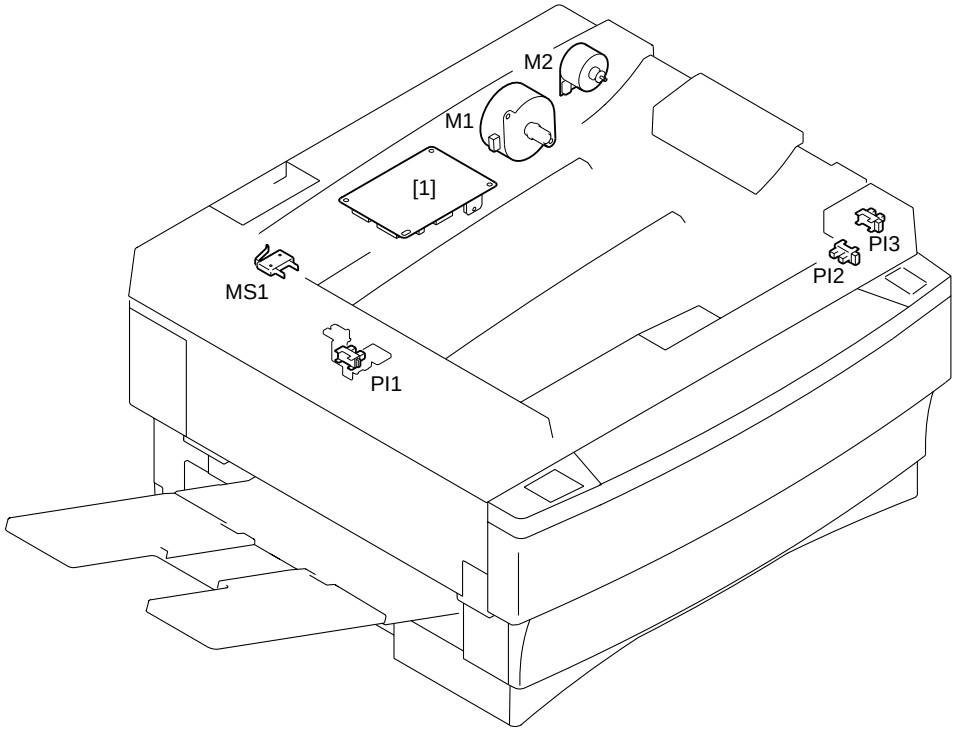


Figure 11-605

Symbol	Name	Notation	Description	Remarks
PS	Photointerrupter	PI1 PI2 PI3	Delivery paper detection Resistration roller paper detection Original placement detection	
	Microswitch	MS1	ADF open/close switch	
M	Motor	M1 M2	Belt motor Pickup motor	
[1]	ADF controller PCB		Controls sequence of operations	

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

F. Variable Resistors (VR) and Check Pins by PCB

Of the variable resistors (VR) and check pins, those needed in the field are discussed herein. Those not found in the discussions are for the factory only, requiring special tools and adjustment to an extremely accuracy. Do not touch them in the field.

Caution:
VRs that may be used in the field .....
VRs that must not be used in the field .....

1. DC Controller PCB

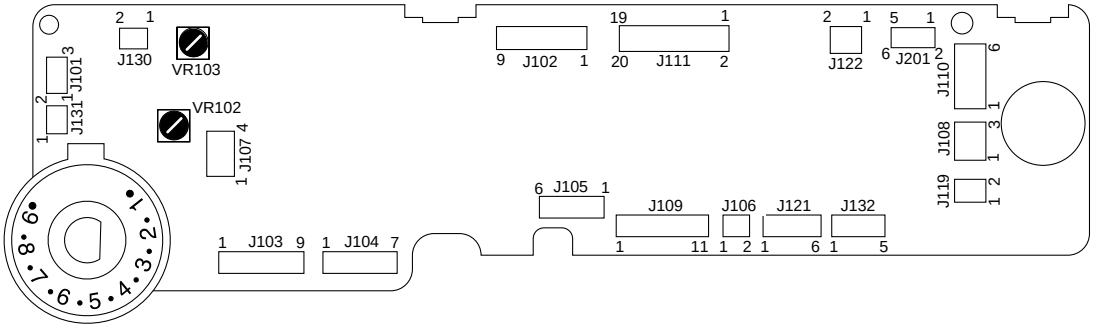


Figure 11-606

2. Composite Power Supply PCB

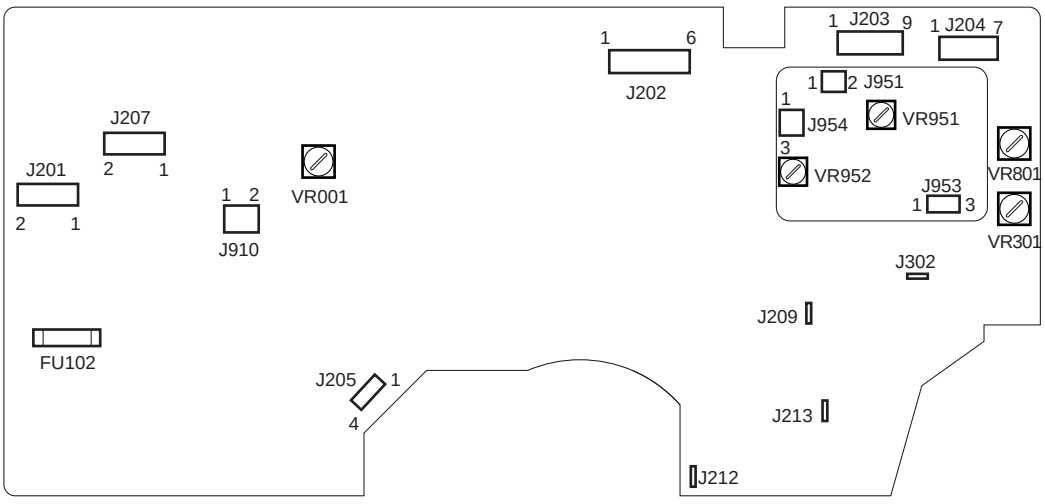


Figure 11-607

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

3. ADF Controller PCB

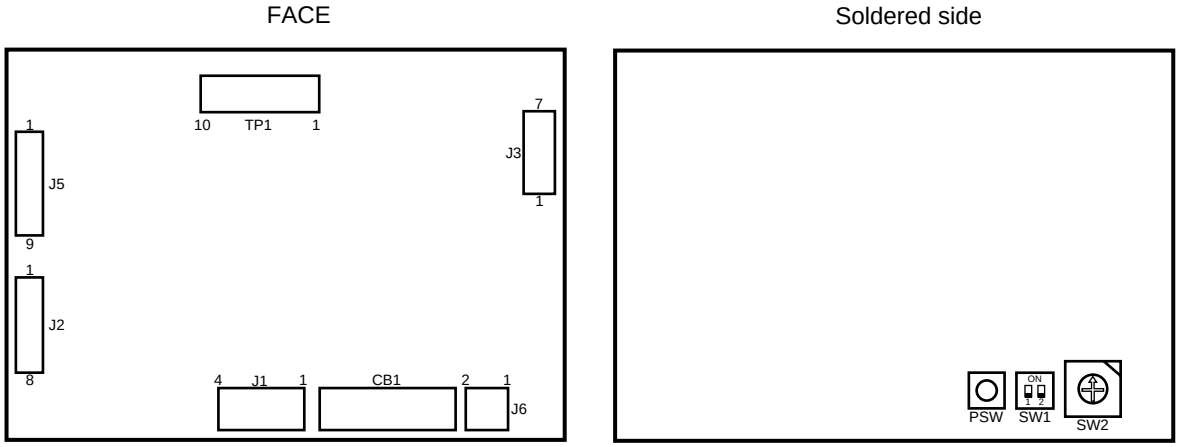


Figure 11-608

VII.SERVICE MODE

A. Outline

The machine's service mode is divided into the following four types:

Notation	Item
30	Adjustment mode
40	Operation/inspection mode
50	Machine settings mode
60	Counter mode

Table 11-701

B. Using Service Mode

1. Starting Service Mode

1) Open the machine's top unit, and remove the two screws [1]; then, detach the front upper cover [2].

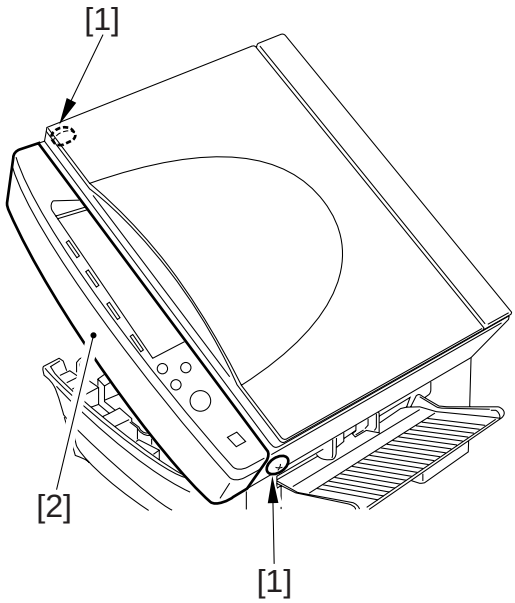


Figure 11-701

Caution:

A flexible cable for the control panel is connected to the front upper cover. Disconnect the cable from the DC controller.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2) Close the machine's top unit, and connect the flexible cable from the control to the DC controller PCB; then, turn on the power switch.
3) Short JP103 and JP104 on the DC controller PCB with a screwdriver.
   • The display will indicate 'F'.

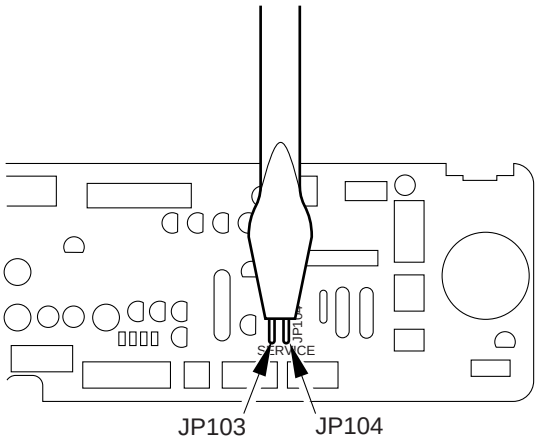


Figure 11-702

4) While the display indicates 'F', stop shorting JP103 and JP104.

2. Ending Service Mode

1) Press the Clear/Stop key.

3. Selecting an Item

1) While the display is indicating 'F', press the +/- key to select the item to check or adjust.
   • The 10s digit will flash.
2) Press the Copy Start key to start the item.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

4. Clearing the Error Code from Memory

If 'E000', 'E001', 'E002', or 'E003' is indicated, remove the cause of the error, and clear the memory.

1) Turn on the power while shorting JP103 and JP104 on the DC controller PCB with a screwdriver.
   • The display will indicate 'F'.

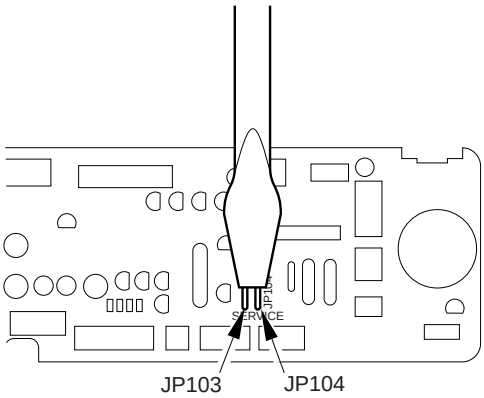


Figure 11-703

2) Turn off and then on the power switch to check the copying operation.

Caution:

When a fault associated with 'E000', 'E001', 'E002', or 'E003' is detected, the power will automatically turn off. It will still turn off even when turned on without removing the fault.
To find out which code turned off the power, disconnect J207 from the composite power supply PCB, and turn on the power.
Figure 11-704 shows the label attached behind the front upper cover. At the factory, each individual machine is adjusted, and its adjustment values are recorded on the label.
If you have entered any new value in the field, be sure to record it on the label. If you have replaced the DC controller PCB, be sure to enter the values recorded on the label in service mode.
If you have replaced the drum unit, composite power supply PCB, or pre-exposure PCB, on the other hand, be sure to enter the values recorded on the label of the appropriate part. Then, record these values on the service label.

30	REGIST				
31	LE_BLANK				
32	PRIMARY				
33	IP_OFST				
34	PW_OFST				
35	IP_ADJ				
36	LENS_ADJ				
37	PREX_LP				
38	LAMP_ADJ				

FB5-2777

Figure 11-704

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

C. Adjustment Mode (30)

1) Press the +/- key to select an item, and press the Copy Start key.
   • The existing setting of the item will flash.
2) Press the +/- key to change the settings.
3) Press the AE key to store the new setting.
   • The setting will stop flashing and remain on.
   • A press on the Copy Start key will start copying operation.
4) As necessary, press the Clear/Stop key to return to item selection.

Caution:
If you have changed the setting of '34' or '37', be sure to execute 'U7' in user mode (installation/drum replacement mode).

Notation	Item	Settings	Description
30	Leading edge margin adjustment (REGIST)	0-99	A higher setting will delay the copy paper in relation to the image, reducing the margin. Unit: 0.24 mm
31	Leading edge non-image width adjustment (LE_BLANK)	0-99	A higher setting will increase the leading edge non-image width. Unit: 0.24 mm
32	Primary charging output voltage correction (PRIMARY)	0-30	Use it to correct the output voltage determined by APVC. (If you have replaced the drum unit, be sure to enter the value recorded on the label.)
33	APVC measurement current correction (IP_OFST)	0-99	Correct the current value for APVC measurement. (If you have replaced the drum unit, be sure to enter the value recorded on the label.)
34	APVC measurement voltage correction (PW_OFST)	0-30	Use it to correct the level of voltage applied during APVC measurement. (If you have replaced the composite power supply PCB, enter the value recorded on the PCB.)
35	APVC measurement current correction (IP_ADJ)	0-30	Use it to correct the level of current measured during APVC measurement. (If you have replaced the composite power supply PCB, enter the value recorded on the PCB.)
36	Ratio fine adjustment (LENS_ADJ)	0-30	Use it to correct the lens position. (Do not use it in the field.)
37	Pre-exposure lamp output adjustment (PREX_LP)	0-99	Use it to adjust the intensity of the pre-exposure lamp. (If you have replaced the pre-exposure lamp, enter the value recorded on the label attached to the lamp PCB.)
38	Lamp intensity adjustment (LAMP_ADJ)	0-99	Use it to adjust the intensity of the scanning lamp. Unit: 0.15 V (approx.; 120 V) 0.30 V (approx.; 220/240 V)

Table 11-702

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

D. Operation/Inspection Mode (40)

1) Select an appropriate item using the +/- key; then, press the Copy Start key to execute it.
   • The item is flashed.
   • If the mode is designed to stop automatically, item selection will automatically return at the end.
   • As necessary, press the Clear/Stop key to return item selection.

Notation	Item	Description
40	AE adjustment mode	The main motor rotates, and the scanner moves forward. The halogen lamp will turn on, and the reading of the AE sensor will appear in the display.
41	Toner supply mode	The developing assembly is supplied with toner. (If you have replaced the developing assembly, execute this mode so that toner will be supplied from the toner cartridge to the developing assembly.) • In about 10 to 60 sec, the operation will stop automatically.
42	Back-up RAM clear	(1) Press the +/- key to select '42'. • '4' will flash in the 10s digit. (2) Press the Copy Start key. • '42' will flash. (3) Press the AE key. • The display will indicate 'EE'. (4) Press the Copy Start key. • '4' in the 10s digit will flash. (5) Turn off and then on the power switch. • The back-up RAM will be cleared, and the settings will be returned to defaults. Reference: If you have to stop the RAM clear mechanism, press the Clear/Stop key before starting step (4). The RAM will be cleared when step (4) is executed.

Table 11-703

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

E. Machine Settings Mode (50)

1) Press the +/- key to select an item, and press the Copy Start key.
   • The setting will flash.
2) Press the +/- key to change the setting.
3) Press the AE key to store the new setting.
   • The setting will stop flashing, and remain on.
4) As necessary, press the Clear/Stop key to return to item selection.

Notation	Item	Description
50	Copy count upper limit setting	The upper limit may be between 1 and 100. Setting: 0 to 99 (If set to '0', however, the upper limit will be 100.)
51	Density adjustment mode at power-on	Select AE mode or manual mode for density adjustment at power-on: • 0: AE • If other than '0', manual mode.

Table 11-704

F. Counter Mode (60)

1) Press the +/- key to select an item, and press the Copy Start key.
   • The counter reading will be indicated.
2) As necessary, press the Clear/Stop key to return to item selection.

Notation	Item	Description
60	Counter for the drum unit currently in use	Unit: 1000 (sheets)
61	Counter for the most recent drum unit	Unit: 1000 (sheets)
62	Counter for the second most recent drum unit	Unit: 1000 (sheets)

Table 11-705

Reference:

When '74' (installation toner stirring mode under 'U7" of user mode) is executed, the counter reading entered under '73' (preceding mode) will be entered to item 60. The counter readings so far retained will shift to represent their respective previous drum units.

(In other words, the count reading entered when executing 'U7' will be for item 60; count reading for item 60 will be for item 61; count reading for item 61 will be for item 62; count reading for item 62 will be deleted.)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

VIII. SELF DIAGNOSIS

The microprocessor on the machine's DC controller PCB is equipped with a self diagnostic mechanism that checks the condition of the machine (particularly, sensors) and indicates an error code in the count/ratio indicator on the control panel upon detection of a fault.

In the case of 'E001', 'E0' and '01' are flashed alternately.

Code	Cause	Description
E000	• The thermistor (TH1) is faulty. • The fixing heater (H1) is faulty. • The thermal fuse (FU2) has blown. • The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) does not reach 65°C 1.5 sec after the Copy Start key has been pressed. • The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) does not reach 150°C 4 sec after the Copy Start key has been pressed.
E001	• The thermistor (TH1) is faulty. • The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) exceeds 230°C. • The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) exceeds by 30°C or more. • The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) registers an increase of 100°C or more within 1 sec. • The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) registers an increase of 40°C or more after it has reached 100°C during standby.
E002	• The thermistor (TH1) is faulty. • The fixing heater (H1) is faulty. • The thermal fuse (FU2) has blown. • The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) has exeeded 150°C during copy operation and maximum power is applied for 10 to 14 sec thereafter.
E003	• The thermistor (TH1) is faulty. • The fixing heater (H1) is faulty. • The thermal fuse (FU2) has blown. • The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) drops to and remains 150°C or lower after it has reached 160°C.
E010	• The main motor (M1) is fault. • The DC controller PCB is faulty.	• The rotation of the main motor deviates (indicated by MLOCK=0) for 1 sec or more while the main motor drive signal (MMD=1) is being generated.
E030	• The counter has an open circuit.	• The counter drive signal is not generated when the counter is driven. • The counter drive signal is not '0' when the counter is not driven.

 COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

Code	Cause	Description
E064	• The composite power supply PCB is faulty. • The DC controller PCB is faulty.	• The actual output value of the composite power supply high voltage is different from the setting value twice in succession.
(E202) The keys on the control panel are locked with error code indication.	• The scanner home position sensor (PS1) is faulty. • The scanner/lens drive motor (M2) is faulty. • The DC controller PCB is faulty.	• The scanner home position is not detected within 10 sec after the scanner has turned on. • The scanner does not leave the home position after it has turned on.
E210	• The lens home position sensor (PS2) is faulty. • The scanner/lens drive motor (M2) is faulty. • The lens cable is faulty. • The DC controller PCB is faulty.	• The lens hoe position is not detected after the lens has moved the maximum travel distance. • The lens does not leave the home position after it has turned on.
E220	• The scanning lamp (LA1) is faulty. • The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• The lamp ON detection signal is not detected for 1 sec or more in the presence of the scanning lamp On signal. • The lamp ON detection signal is detected for 1 sec or more in the absence of the scanning lamp ON signal.
E240	• The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• A fault in the communication between DC controller PCB and composite power supply PCB is detected.
E261	• The frequency of the power supply is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• The interval between zero-cross signals is in excess of the allowed interval.
E400	• Data communication between the copier and the ADF (faulty)	• The communication with the copier is interrupted for 5 sec or more; the communication is monitored at all times.
E803	• The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• During a copying run, the +24 V power deviates from the control value by ±20%.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

Caution:

1. If the self-diagnosis has turned on, turn off the power switch to reset the machine.
   In the case of 'E000', 'E001', 'E002', or 'E003', however, the machine must be reset as follows: this consideration is to prevent feeding power to the fixing heater otherwise occurring if the thermistor has an open circuit:
2. In the case of 'E000', 'E001', 'E002', 'E003', or 'E220', the machine will turn off in 1.5 sec for 'E000' through 'E003' and in 2 sec for 'E220'.
3. In the case of 'E000', 'E001', 'E002', or 'E003', perform the following steps:
   1) Turn off the power switch, and short circuit JP103 and JP104 on the DC controller PCB with a screwdriver or the like.
      • The count/ratio indicator on the control panel turns on 'F'.

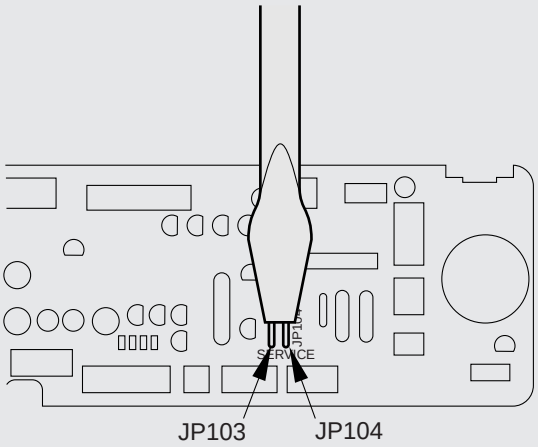


Figure 11-801

   2) When 'F' has turned on, stop shorting circuit JP103 and JP104.
   3) Turn off and then on the machine.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

APPENDIX

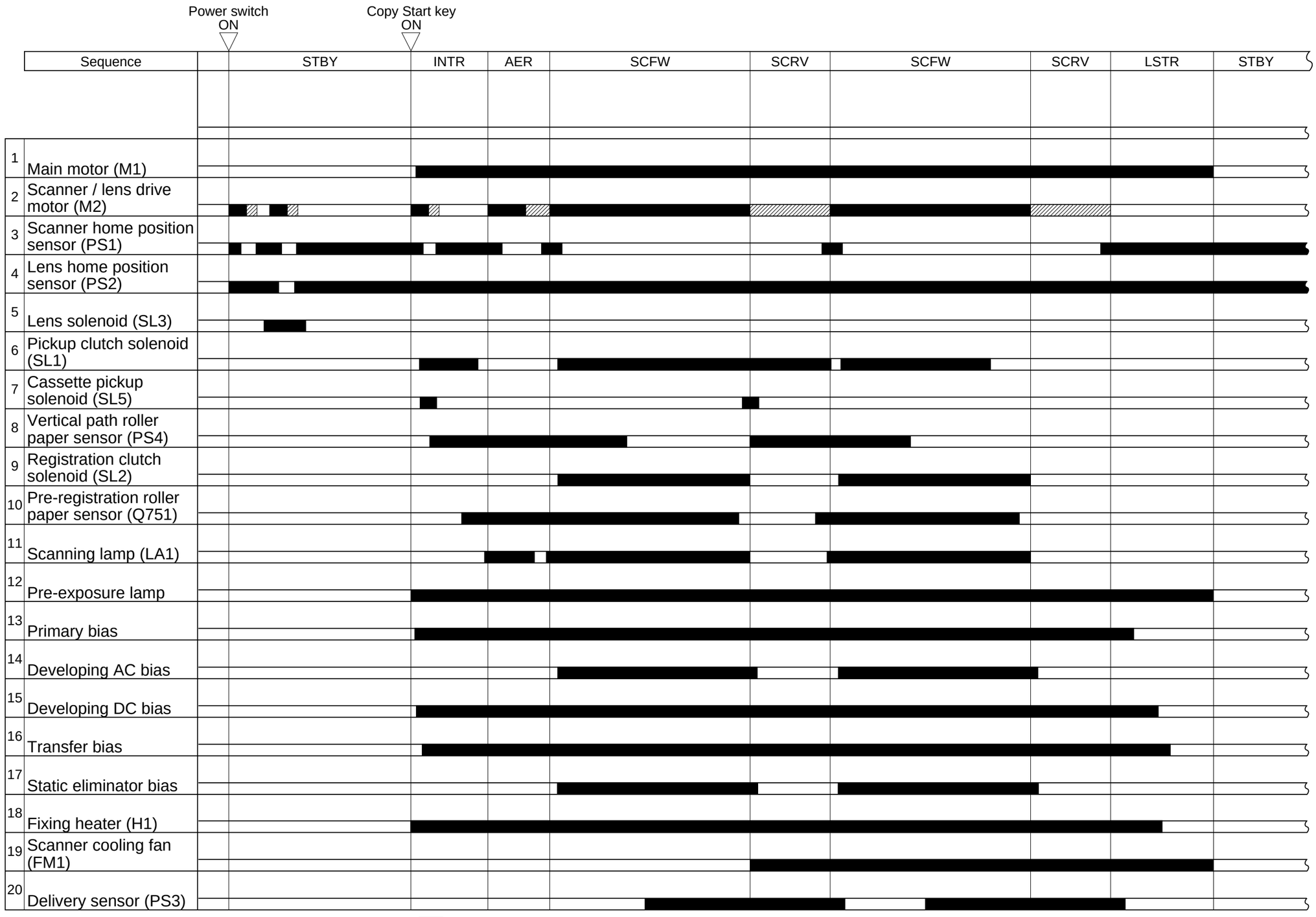
A. GENERAL TIMING CHART A-1
B. SIGNALS AND ABBREVIATIONS A-3
C. GENERAL CIRCUIT DIAGRAM . A-5
D. DC CONTROLLER CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-7
E. ADF CONTROLLER CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-15
F. COMPOSITE POWER SUPPLY CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-19
G. CONTROL PANEL CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-29
H. AE SENSOR CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-31
I. SENSOR CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-32
J. NOISE FILTER CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-33
K. HIGH VOLTAGE CONTACT CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-34
L. BLANK EXPOSURE (front) CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-35
M. BLANK EXPOSURE (rear) CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-36
N. PRE-EXPOSURE CIRCUIT DIAGRAM A-37
O. SPECIAL TOOLS A-38
P. SOLVENTS/OILS A-39

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

A. GENERAL TIMING CHART

1. COPYBOARD TYPE

(A4, 2 copies, DIRECT, from cassette)

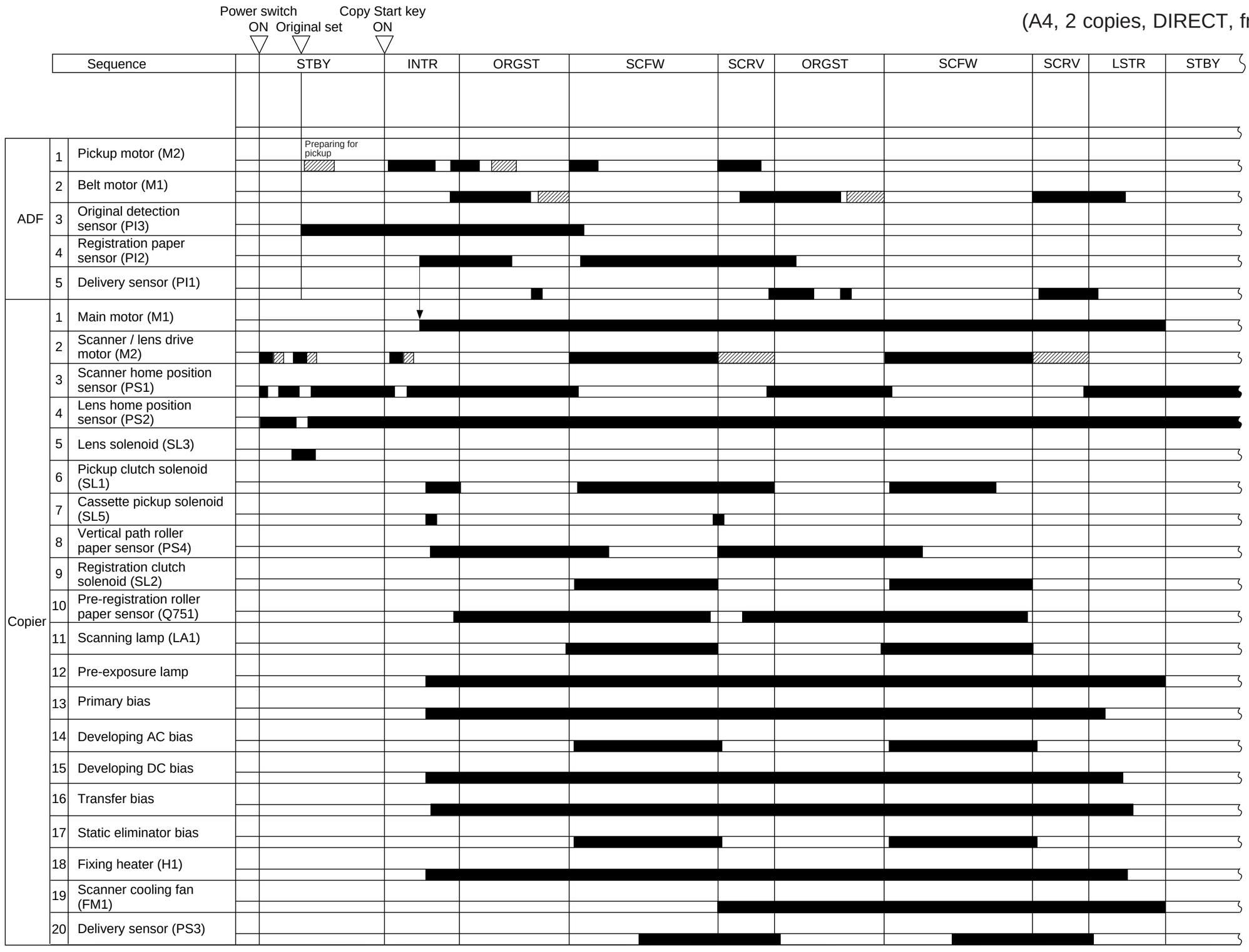


: Scanner/lens drive motor (reverse)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. ADF TYPE

(A4, 2 copies, DIRECT, from cassette)



: Scanner/lens drive motor (reverse)/Pickup motor (reverse)/Belt motor (reverse)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

B. SIGNALS AND ABBREVIATIONS

What follows below is a list of signals and abbreviations used in the chapters of the manual and circuit diagrams.
The abbreviations within parentheses represent analog signals, which cannot be expressed in terms of ‘1’ or ‘0’.

1. Signals

ACBIAS	AC BIAS OSCILLATION signal
[AE]	AE SENSOR OUTPUT signal
AEREF	AE SENSOR REFERENCE signal
BIAS_PWM	DC BIAS CONTROL signal
BIAS_S	DC BIAS MONITOR signal
CLK32K	TRANSFORMER CONTROL signal
CPUSD	CASSETTE PICKUP SOLENOID DRIVE signal
DPD	DELIVERY PAPER DETECTION signal
DV_AC_ON	DEVELOPING AC BIAS ON signal
DV_DC_ON	DEVELOPING DC BIAS ON signal
FM1D	SCANNER COOLING FAN DRIVE signal
HEAT_ERR	FIXING HEATER ERROR signal
HEAT_OFF	FIXING HEATER OFF signal
HEAT_PWM	FIXING HEATER DUTY signal
HEAT_TRG	FIXING HEATER DRIVE signal
LAMP_DETECT	LAMP ACTIVATION DETECTION signal
LAMP_ON	SCANNING LAMP ACTIVATION signal
LHP	LENS HOME POSITION signal
LNSLD	LENS SOLENOID DRIVE signal
MFSLD	MULTIFEEDER PICKUP SOLENOID DRIVE signal
MLOCK	MAIN MOTOR CONSTANT SPEED signal
MMCLK	MAIN MOTOR CLOCK PULSE signal
MMD	MAIN MOTOR DRIVE signal
P_C_S	DC BIAS CURRENT DETECTION signal
PCSLD	DC VOLTAGE MONITOR signal
PDC_PWM	DC BIAS CONTROL signal
PDC_S	DC VOLTAGE MONITOR signal
PDP	VERTICAL PATH ROLLER PAPER DETECTION signal
PEXP	PRE-EXPOSURE LAMP CONTROL signal
PR_DC_ON	PRIMARY CHARGING DC BIAS ON signal
PUSLD	PICKUP CLUTCH SOLENOID DRIVE signal
PWM_1KHz	SCANNING LAMP INTENSITY ADJUSTMENT signal
PWOFF	POWER SWITCH OFF signal
RGSLD	REGISTRATION CLUTCH SOLENOID DRIVE signal
RLOFF	RELAY DRIVE signal
RPD	PRE-REGISTRATION ROLLER PAPER DETECTION signal
SB_LP	SIDE BLANK EXPOSURE LAMP ON signal
SC_A	SCANNER MOTOR PULSE signal A
SC_B	SCANNER MOTOR PULSE signal B
SC_COM	SCANNER MOTOR DRIVE signal
SCHP	SCANNER HOME POSITION signal
TCNTD	TOTAL COPY COUNTER DRIVE signal
T_FEEDBACK	TRANSFER BIAS VOLTAGE DETECTION signal
T_FW_DRV	TRANSFER DC BIAS CONTROL signal
T_FW_ON	TRANSFER DC BIAS ON signal
T_FW_S	TRANSFER CURRENT DETECTION signal
TNFULL	WASTE TONER DETECTION signal
TNMONI	TONER LEVEL signal
T_REV_ON	TRANSFER POSITIVE DC BIAS ON signal
[TH1]	FIXING THERMISTOR signal
[TH2]	SCANNER THERMISTOR signal

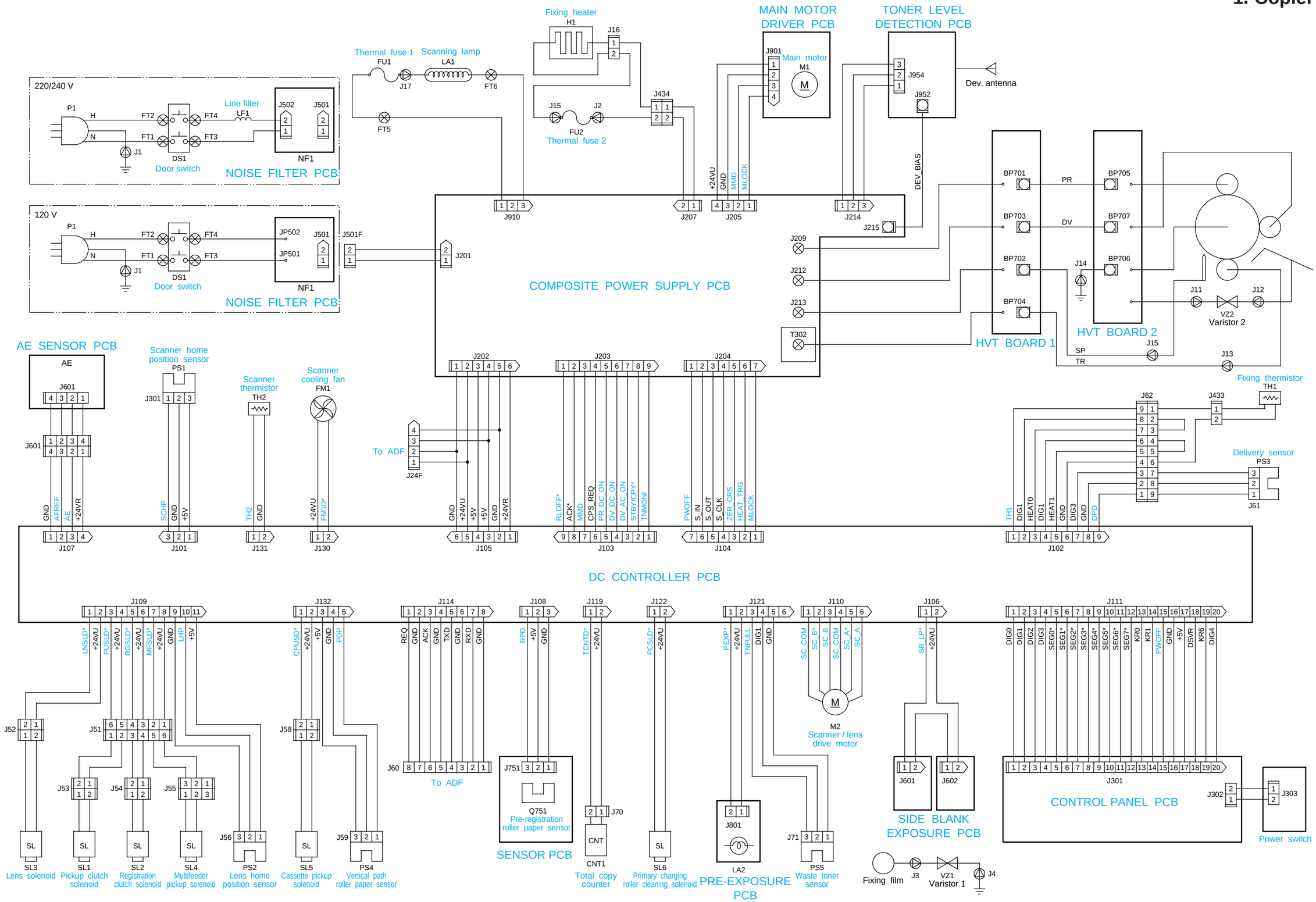
2. Abbreviations

AER	AE (MEASUREMENT) ROTATION
INTR	INITIAL ROTATION
LSTR	LAST ROTATION
SCFW	SCANNER FORWARD
SCRV	SCANNER REVERSE
STBY	STANDBY

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

C. GENERAL CIRCUIT DIAGRAM

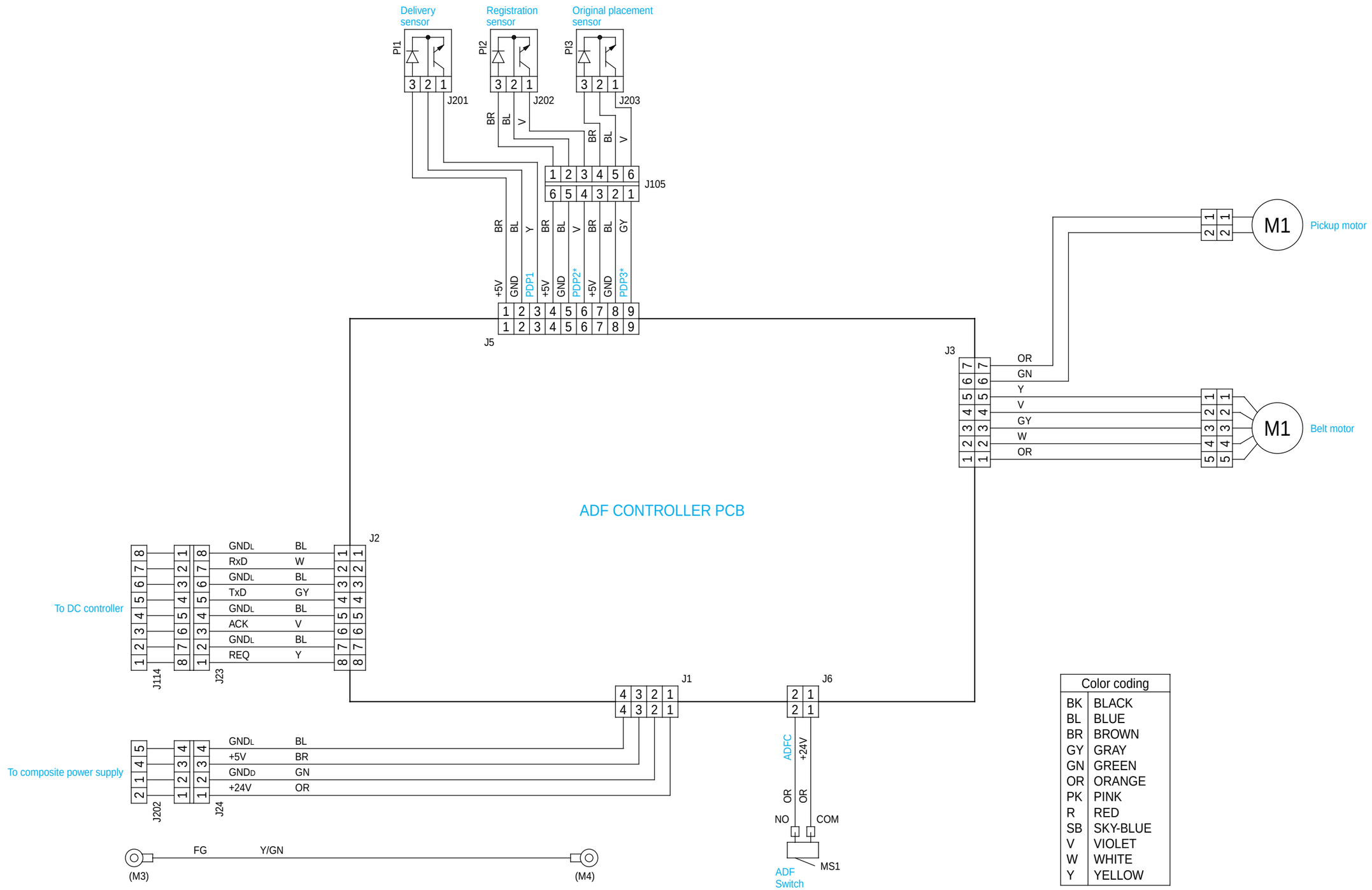
1. Copier



COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

2. ADF



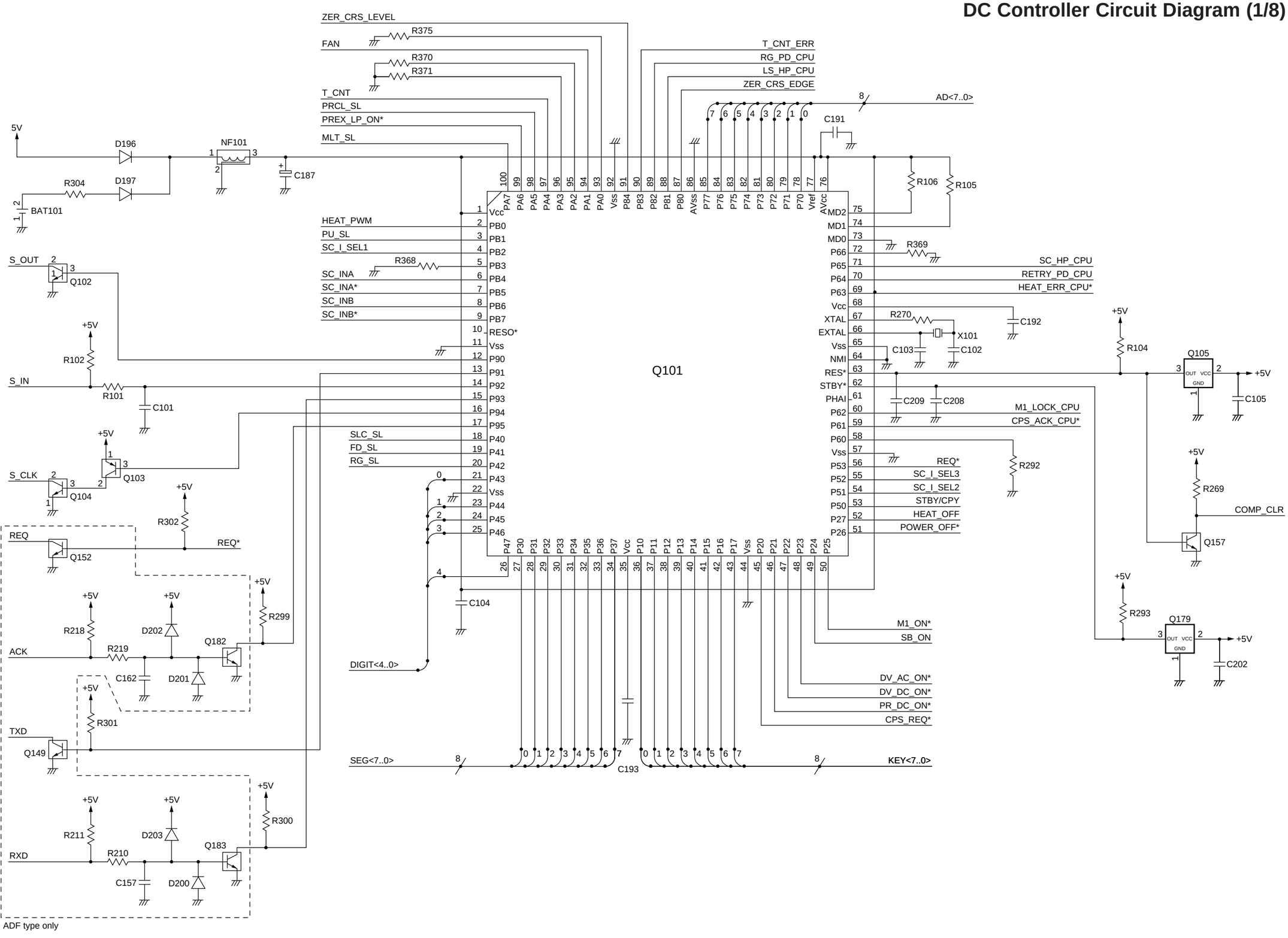
Color coding	
BK	BLACK
BL	BLUE
BR	BROWN
GY	GRAY
GN	GREEN
OR	ORANGE
PK	PINK
R	RED
SB	SKY-BLUE
V	VIOLET
W	WHITE
Y	YELLOW

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

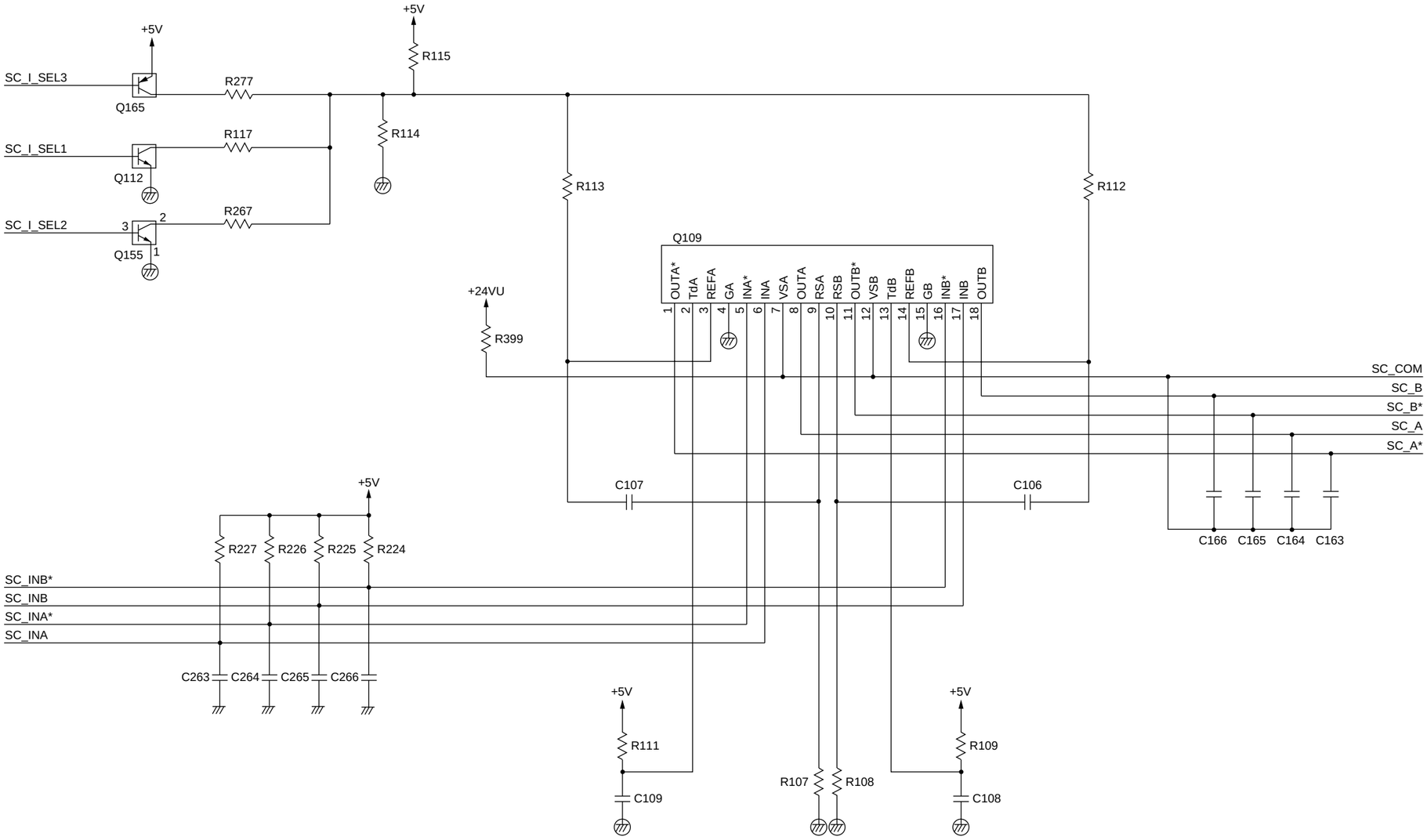
D. DC CONTROLLER CIRCUIT DIAGRAM

DC Controller Circuit Diagram (1/8)



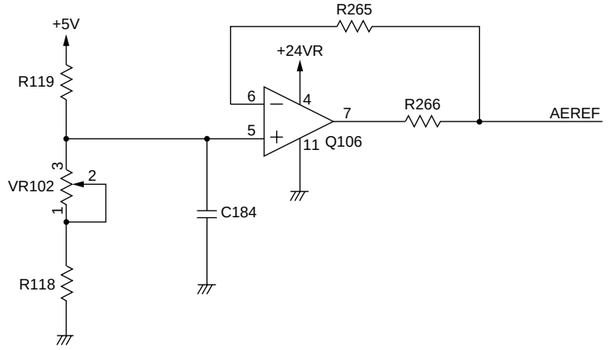
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

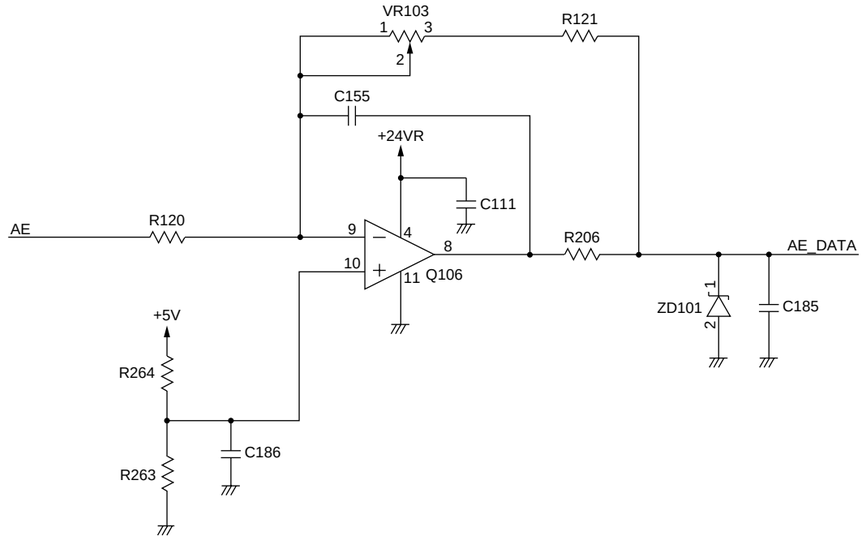
DC Controller Circuit Diagram (2/8)

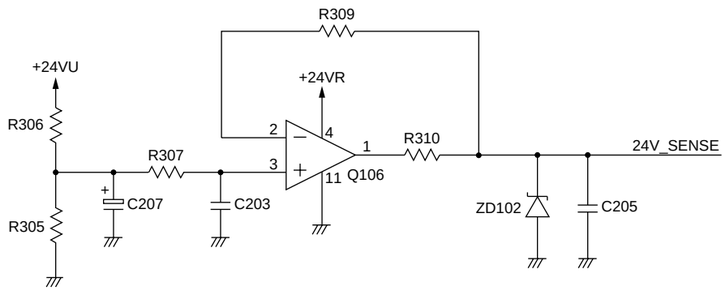


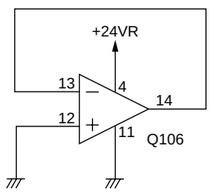
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)



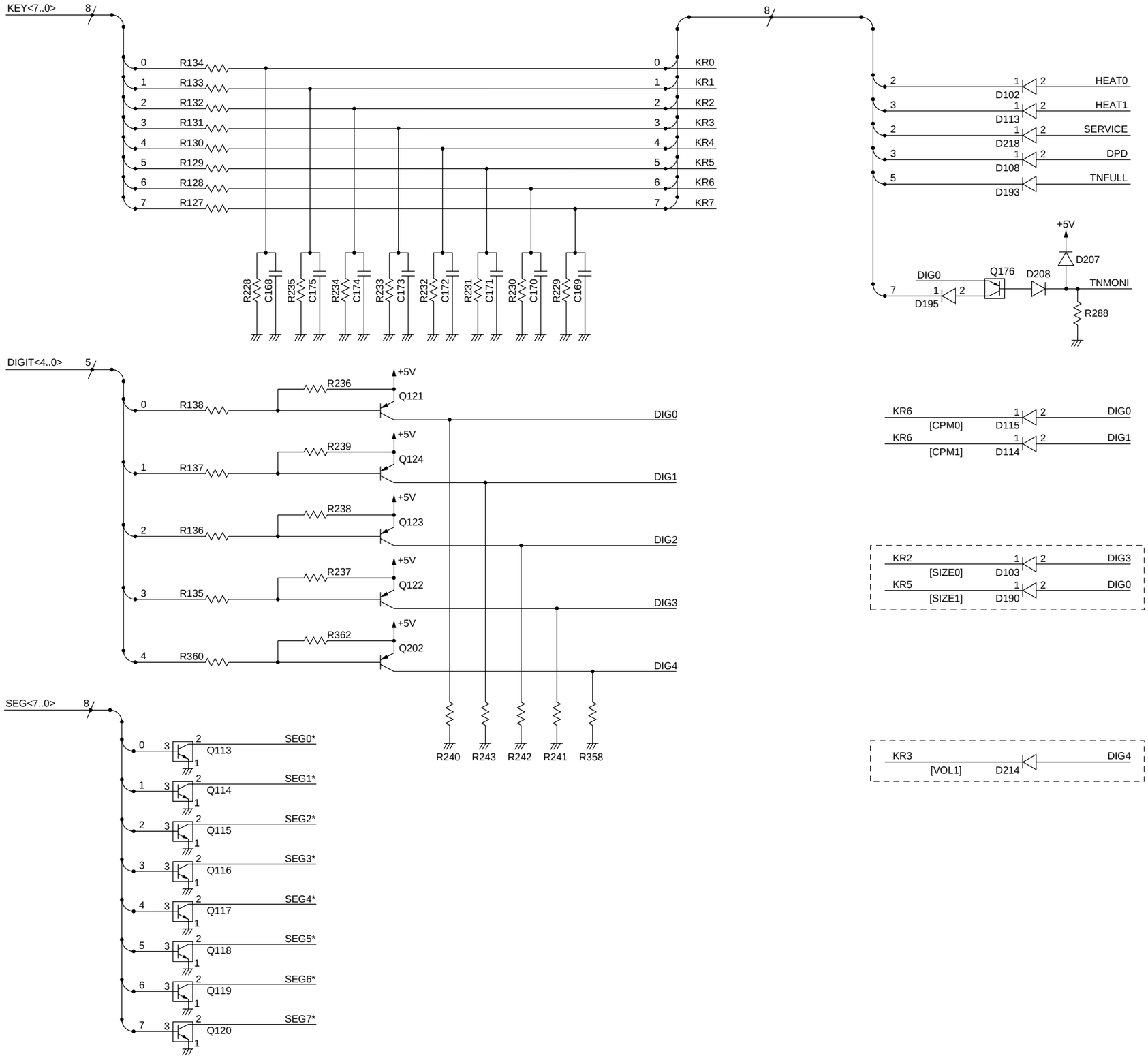






COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

DC Controller Circuit Diagram (4/8)

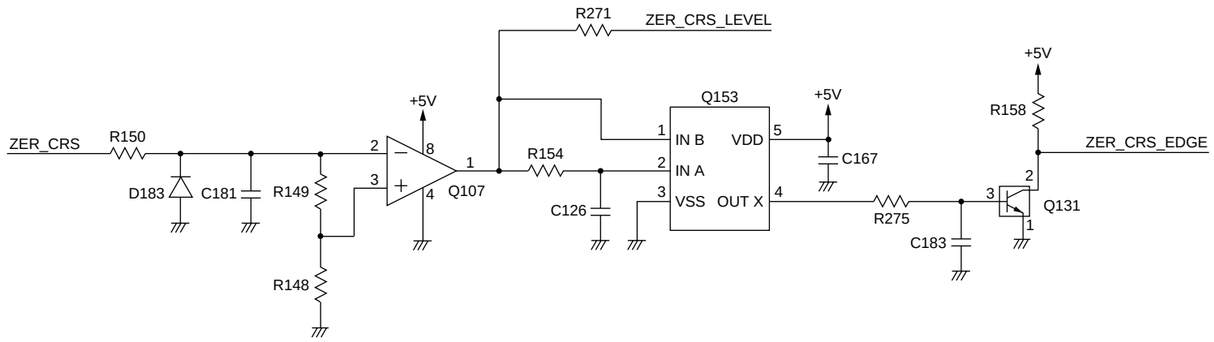


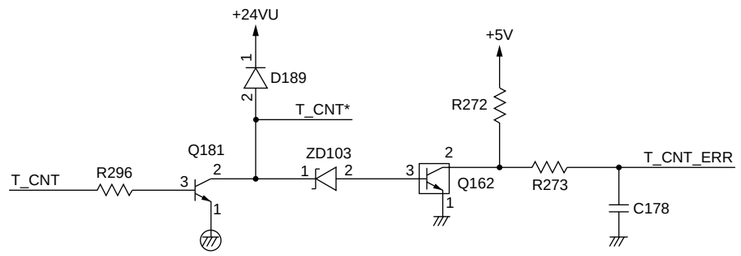
	AB/inch	inch
D103	○	×
D190	○	×

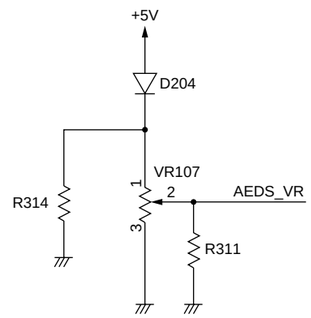
	120V	220/240V
D214	×	○

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

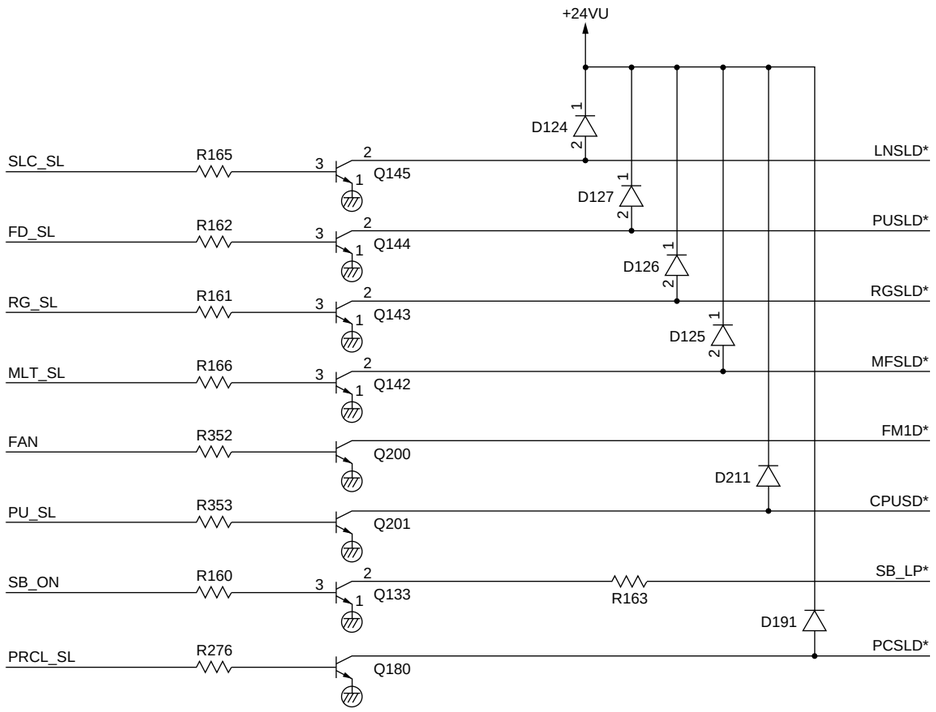


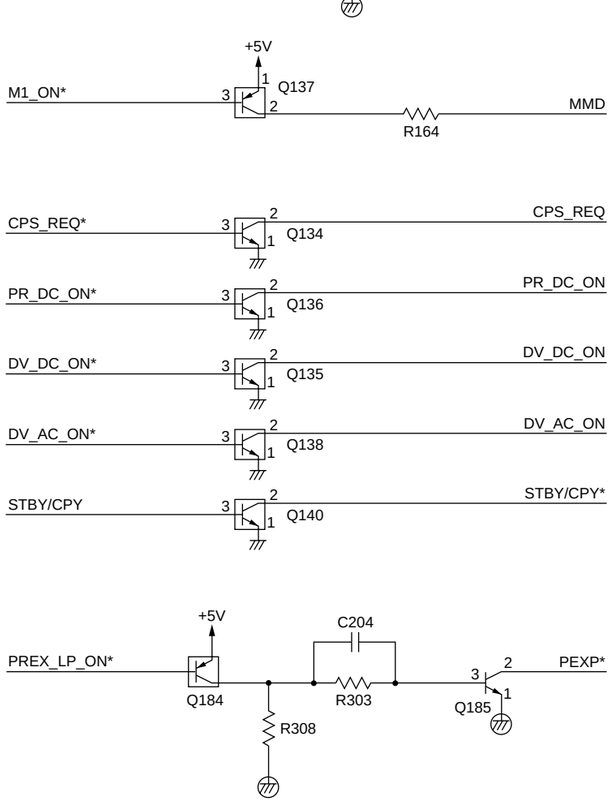


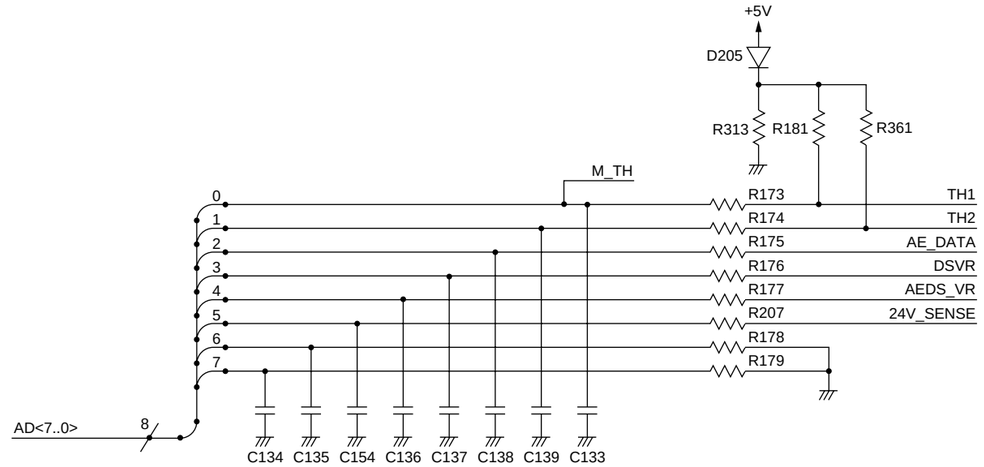


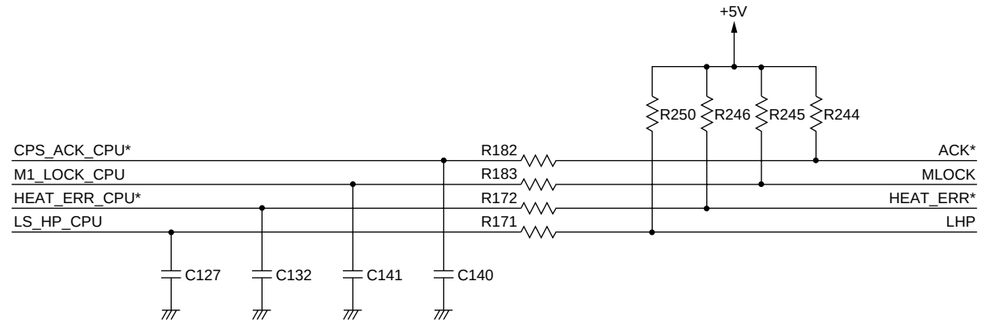
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

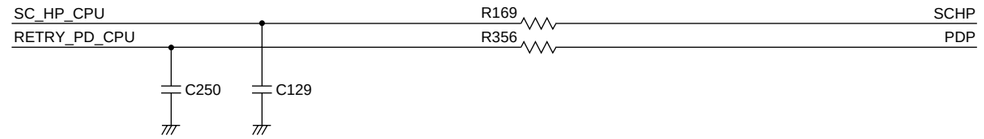
DC Controller Circuit Diagram (6/8)







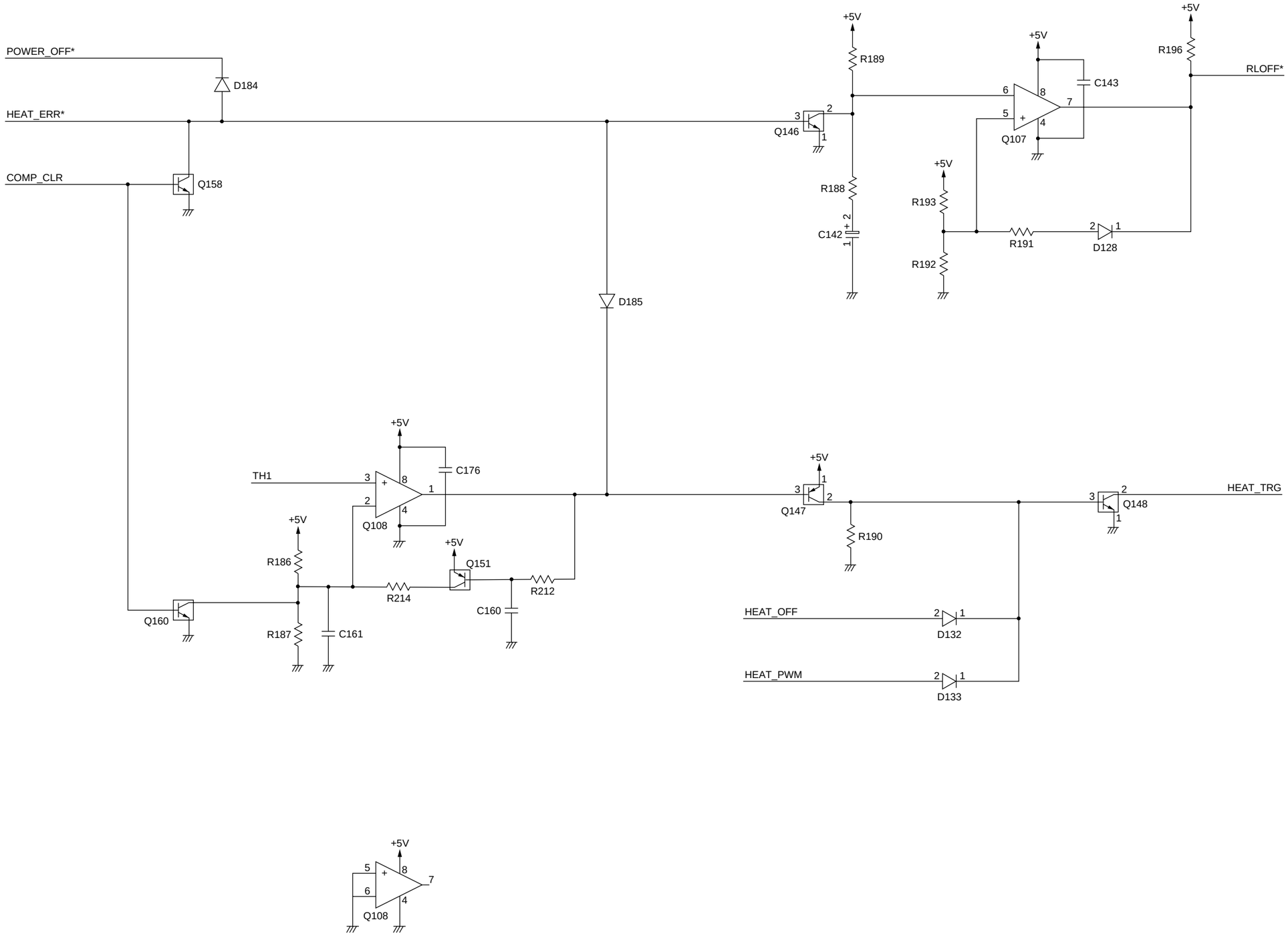




COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

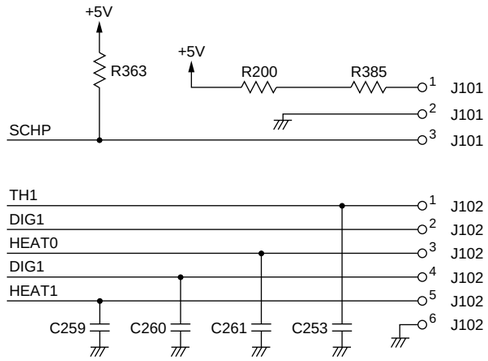
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

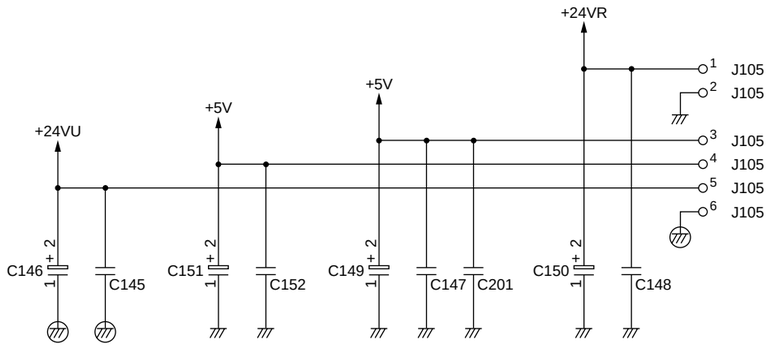
DC Controller Circuit Diagram (7/8)

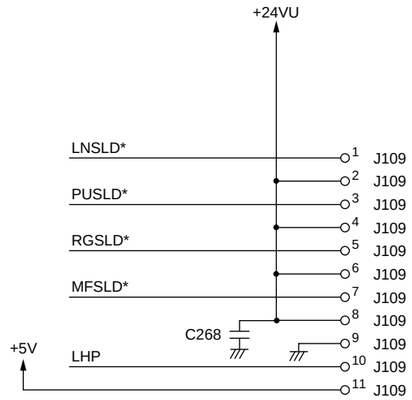


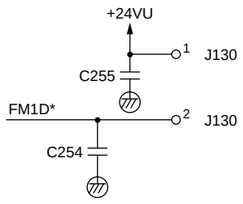
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

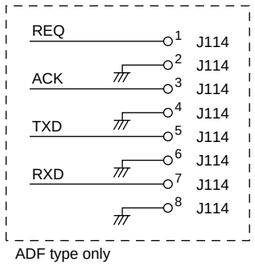
DC Controller Circuit Diagram (8/8)

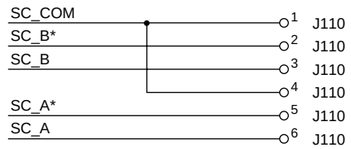


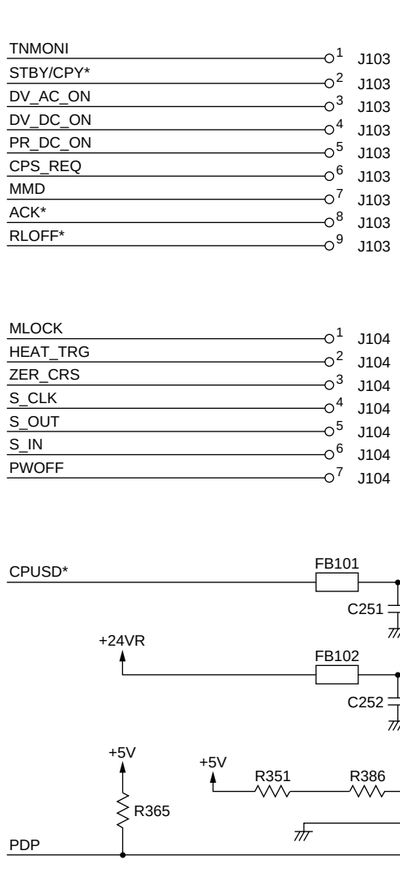


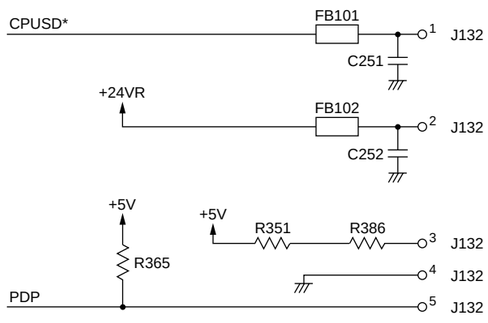


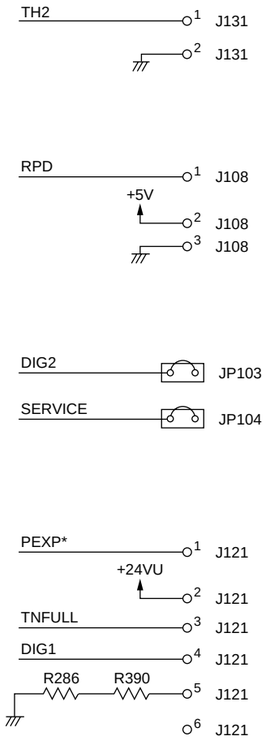


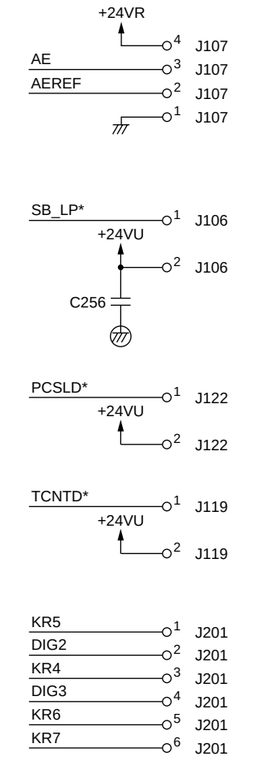


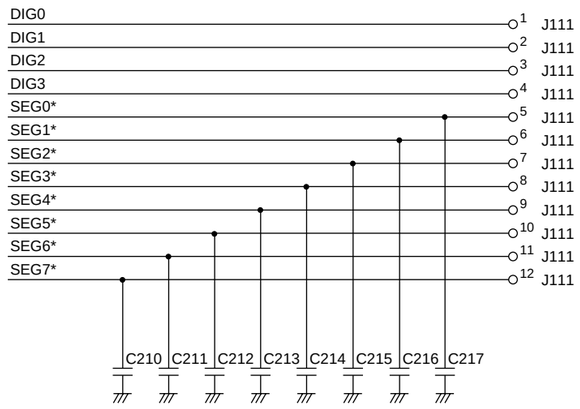


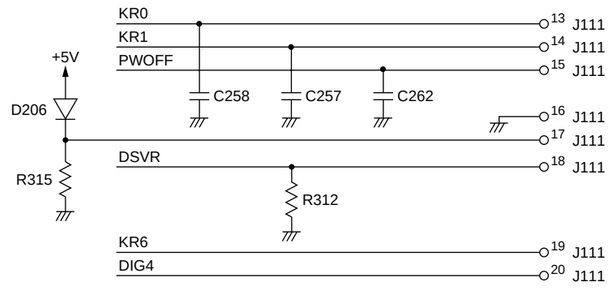










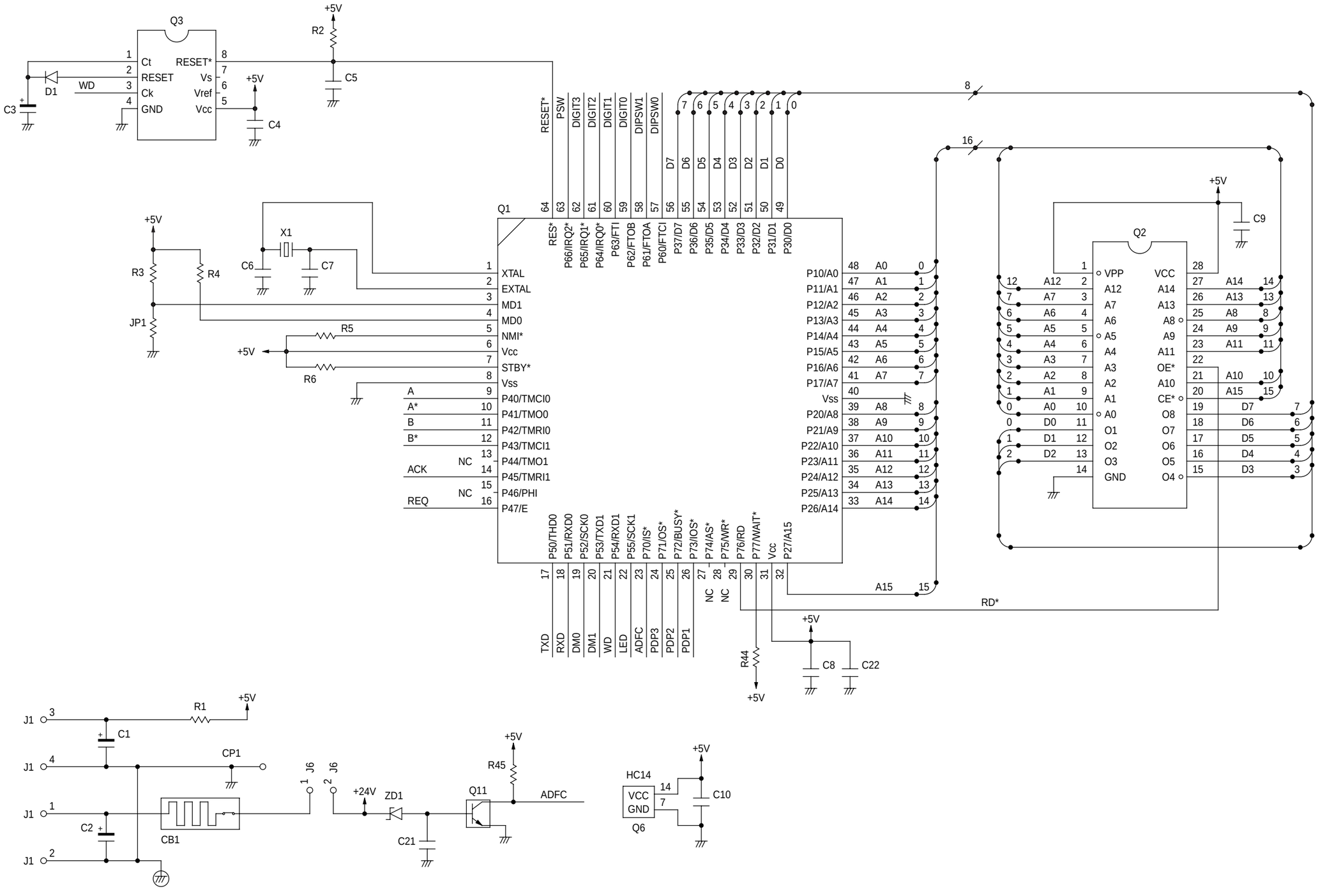


COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

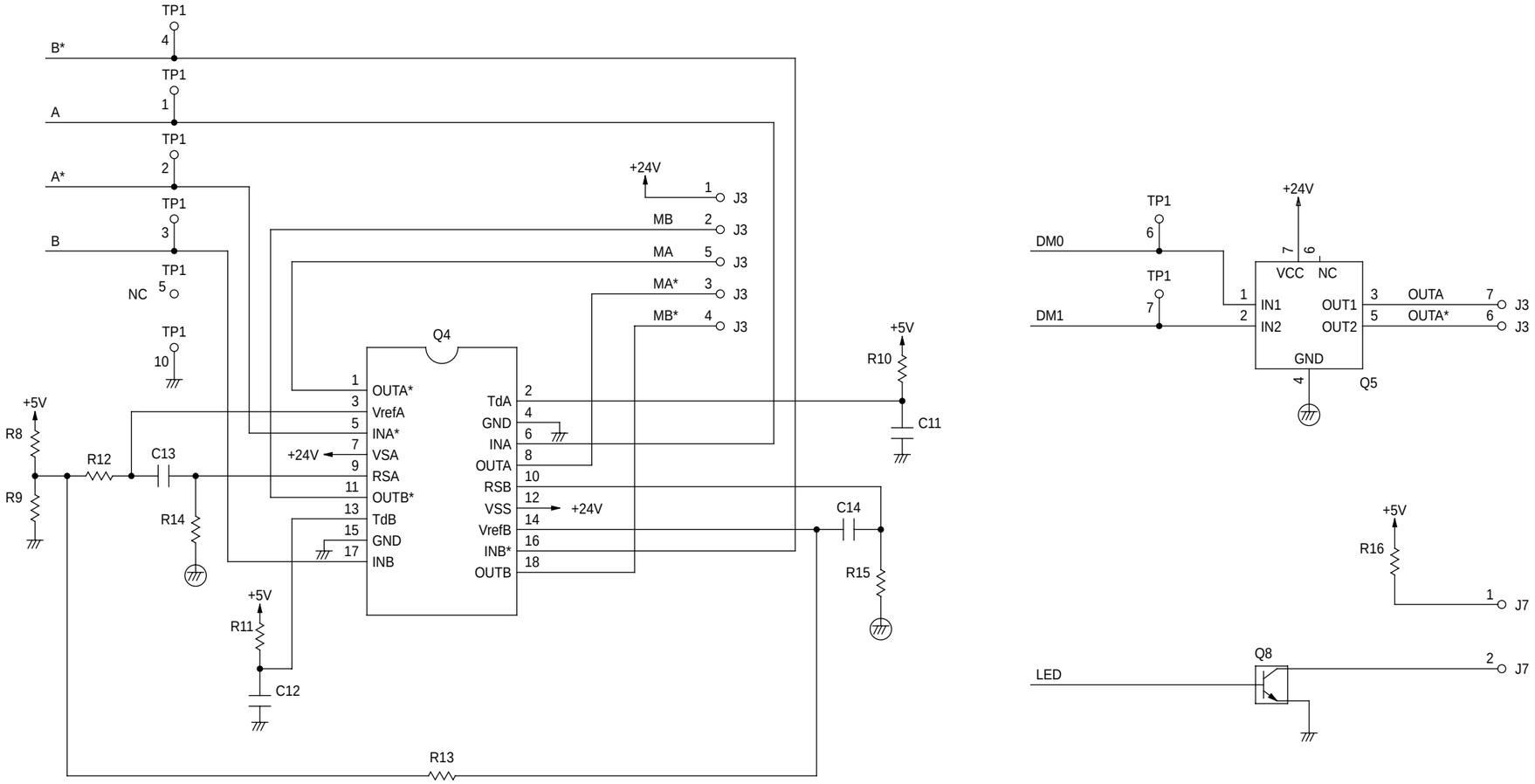
E. ADF CONTROLLER CIRCUIT DIAGRAM

ADF Controller Circuit Diagram (1/3)



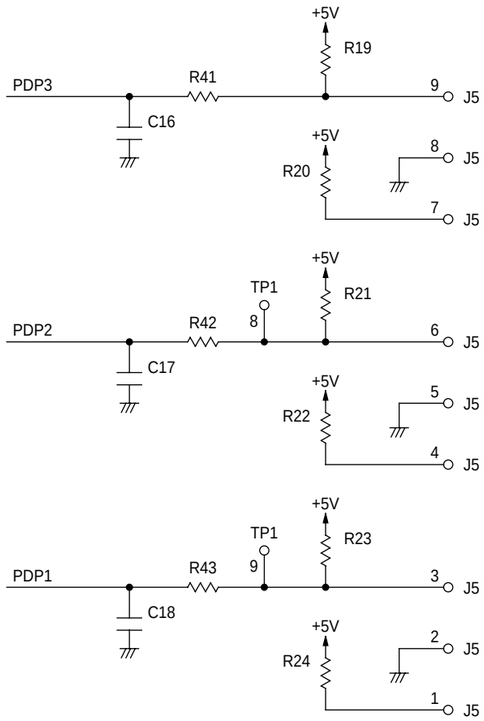
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

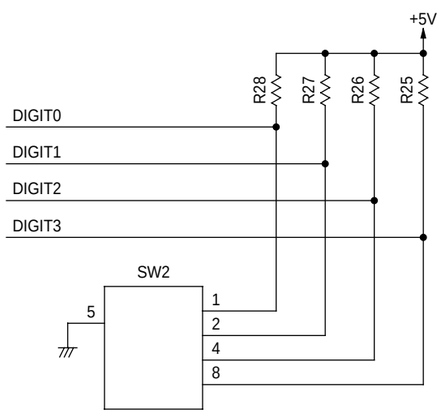
ADF Controller Circuit Diagram (2/3)

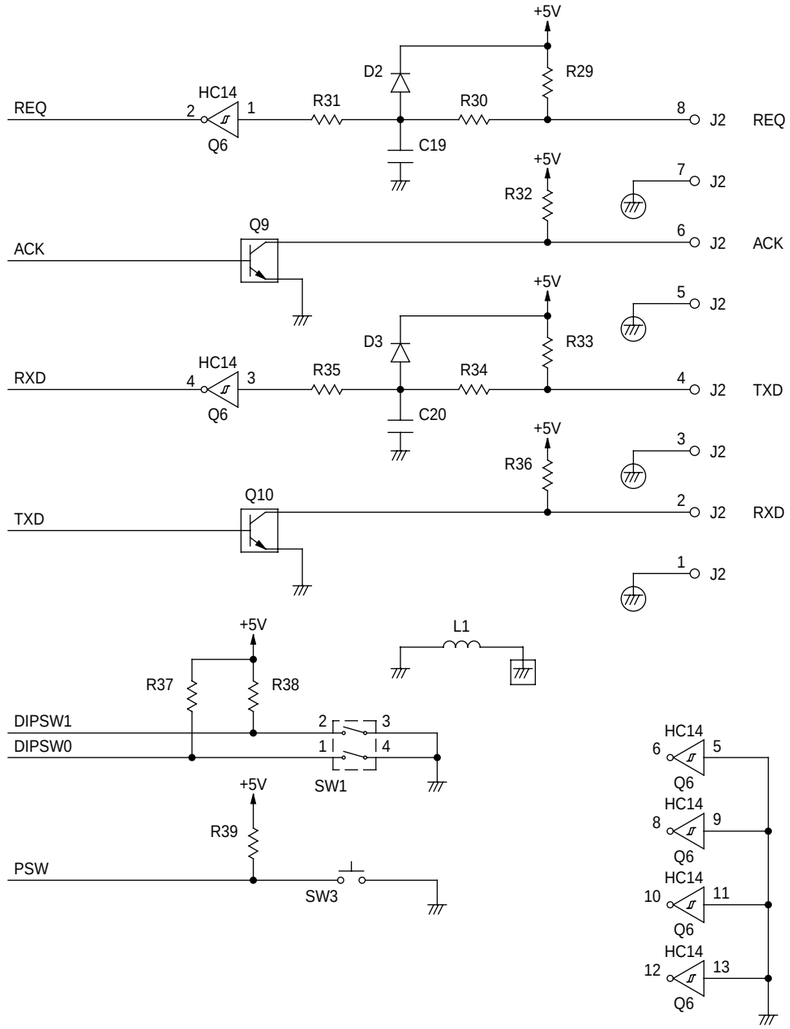


COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)







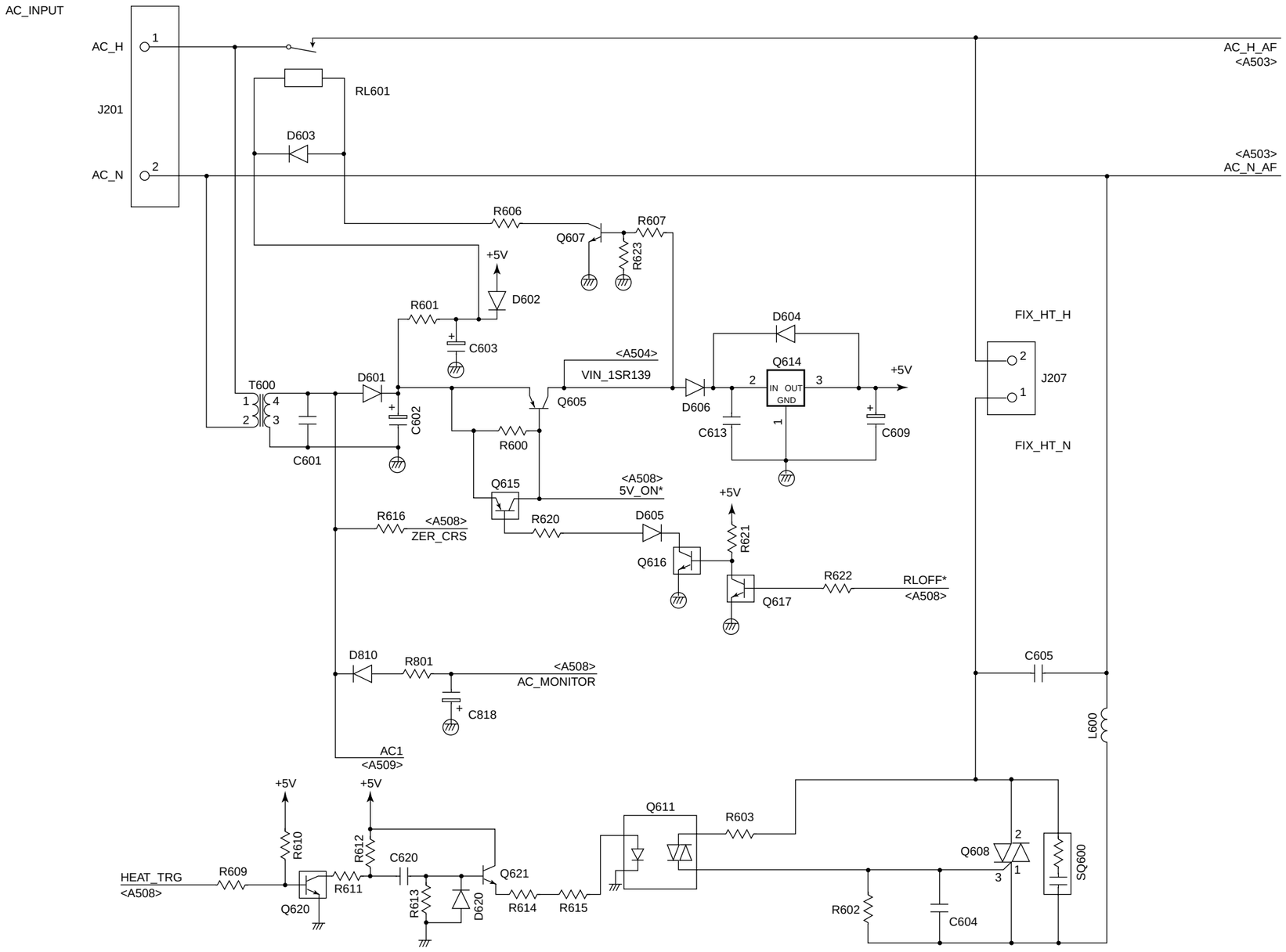
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

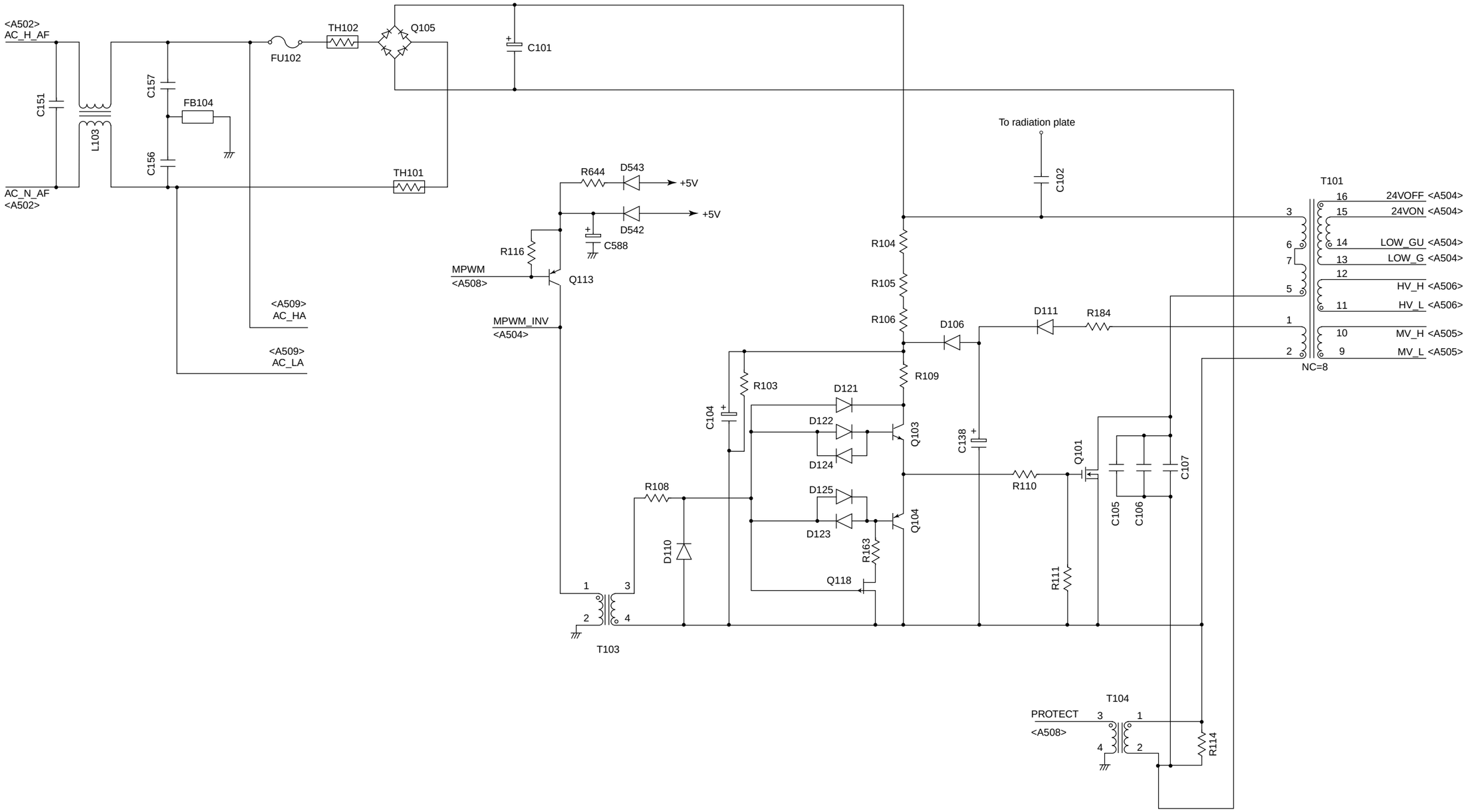
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

F. COMPOSITE POWER SUPPLY CIRCUIT DIAGRAM

Composite Power Supply Circuit Diagram (1/9)
[A502]



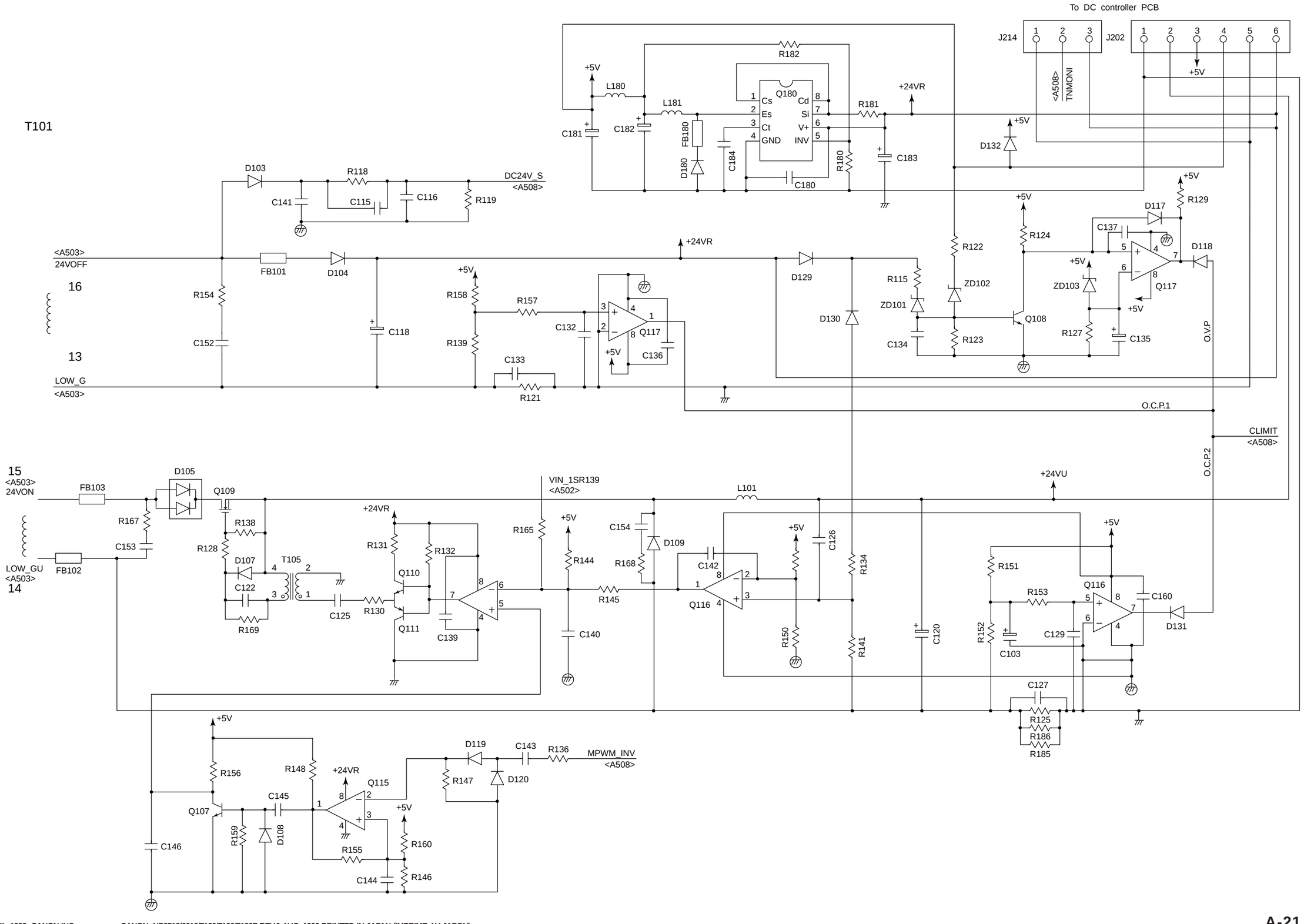
Composite Power Supply Circuit Diagram (2/9)
[A503]



COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

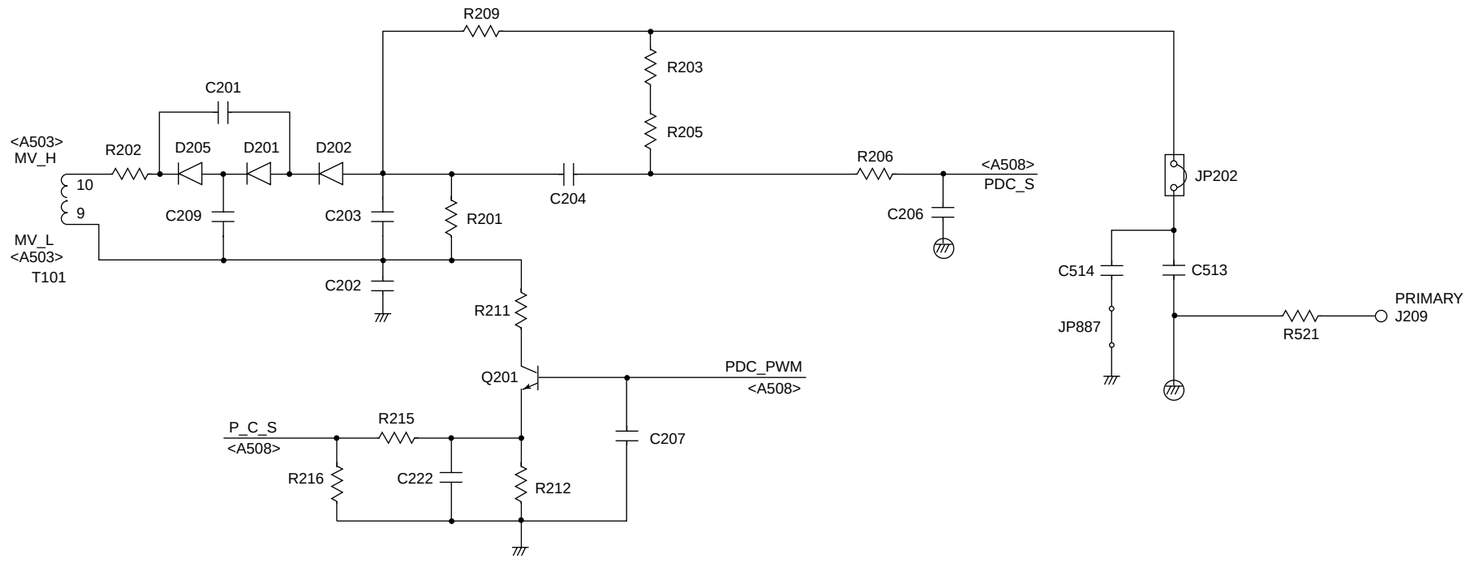
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

Composite Power Supply Circuit Diagram (3/9) [A504]



COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

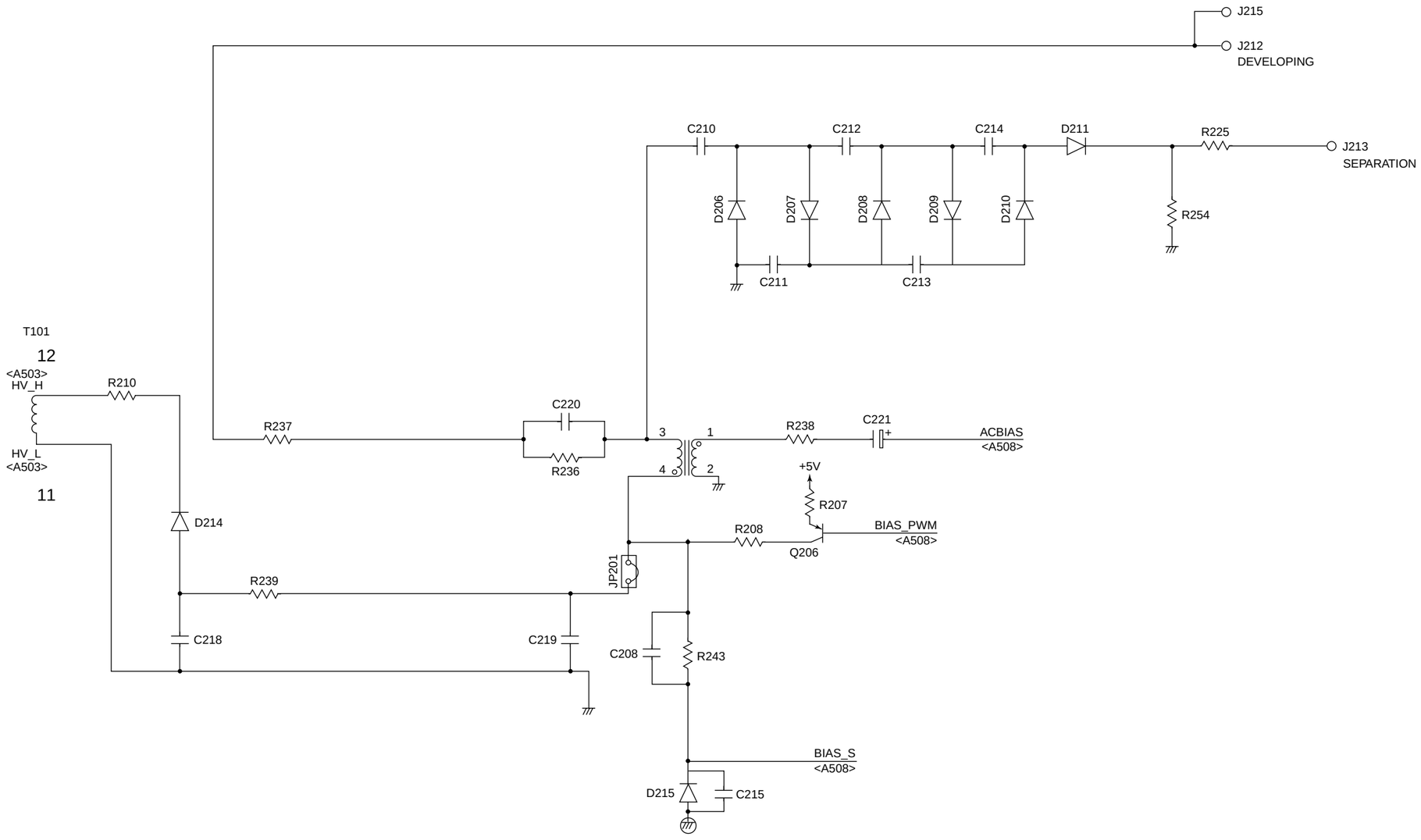
Composite Power Supply Circuit Diagram (4/9)
[A505]



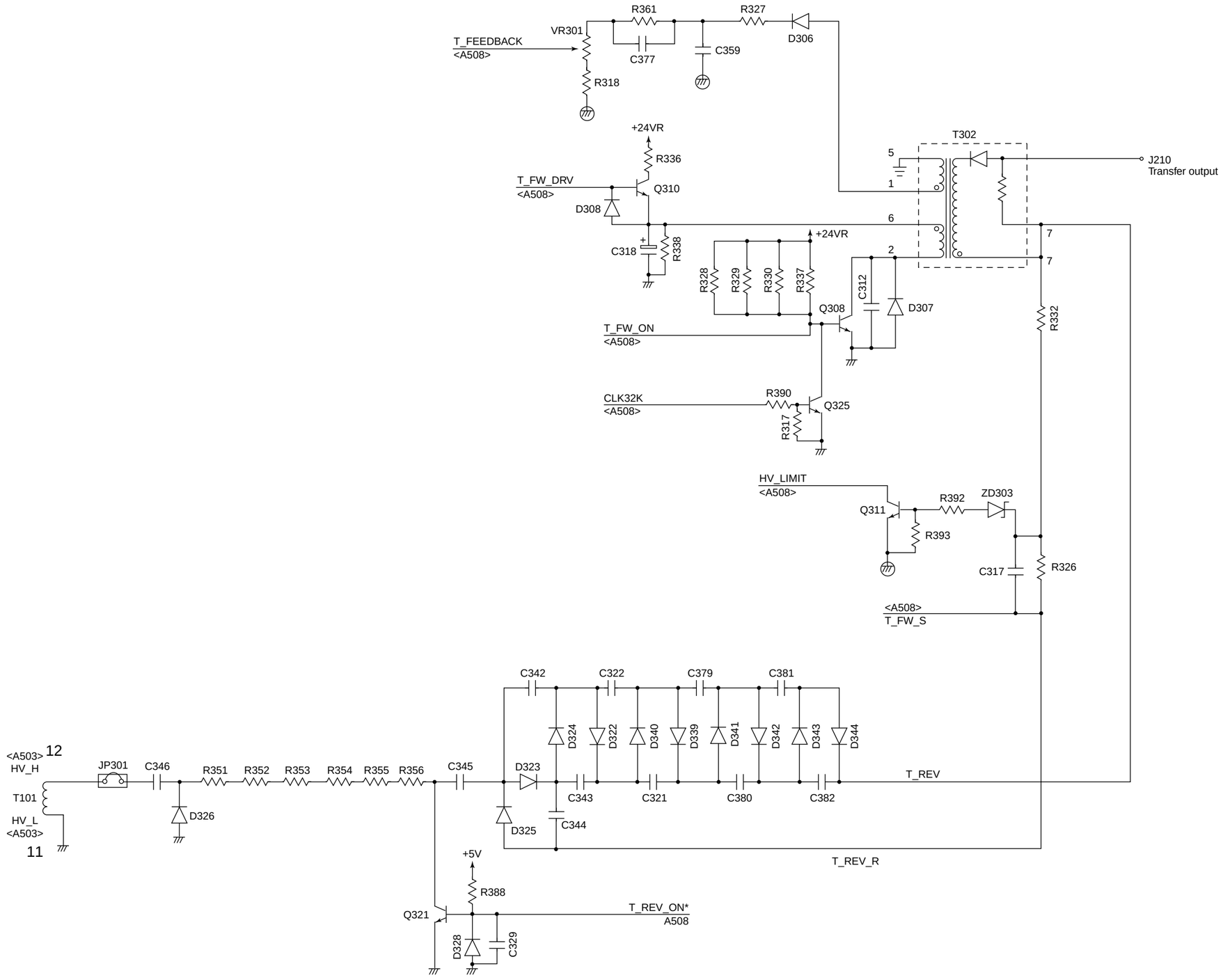
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

Composite Power Supply Circuit Diagram (5/9)
[A506]



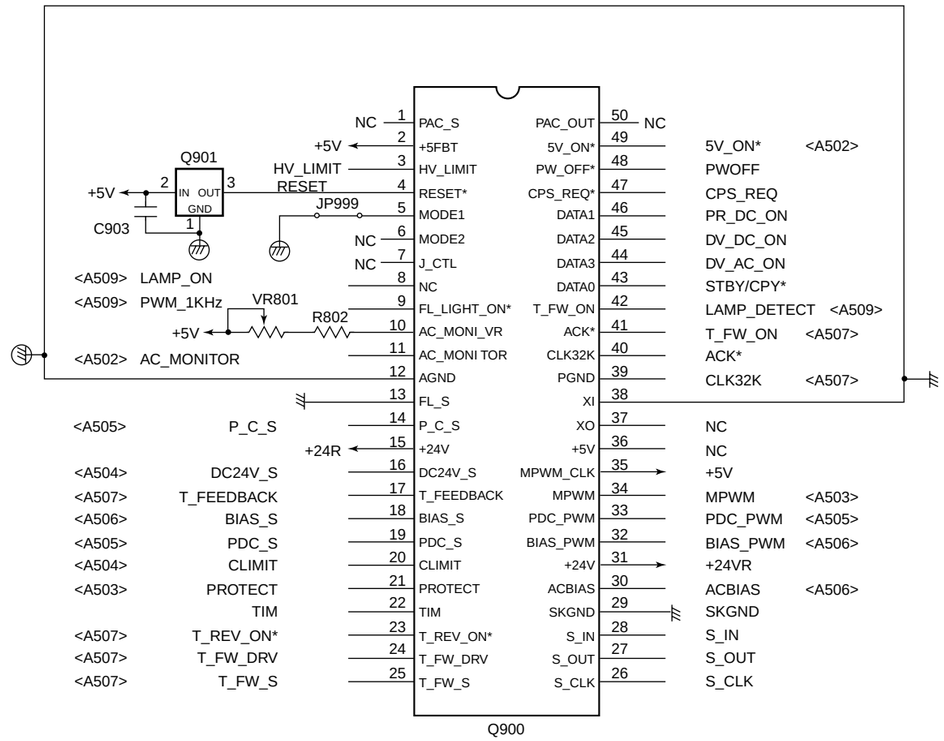
Composite Power Supply Circuit Diagram (6/9)
[A507]

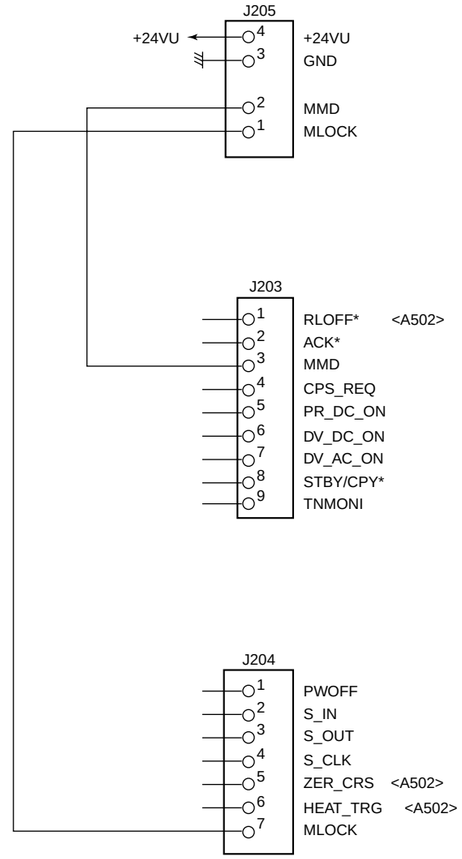


COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

Composite Power Supply Circuit Diagram (7/9)
[A508]

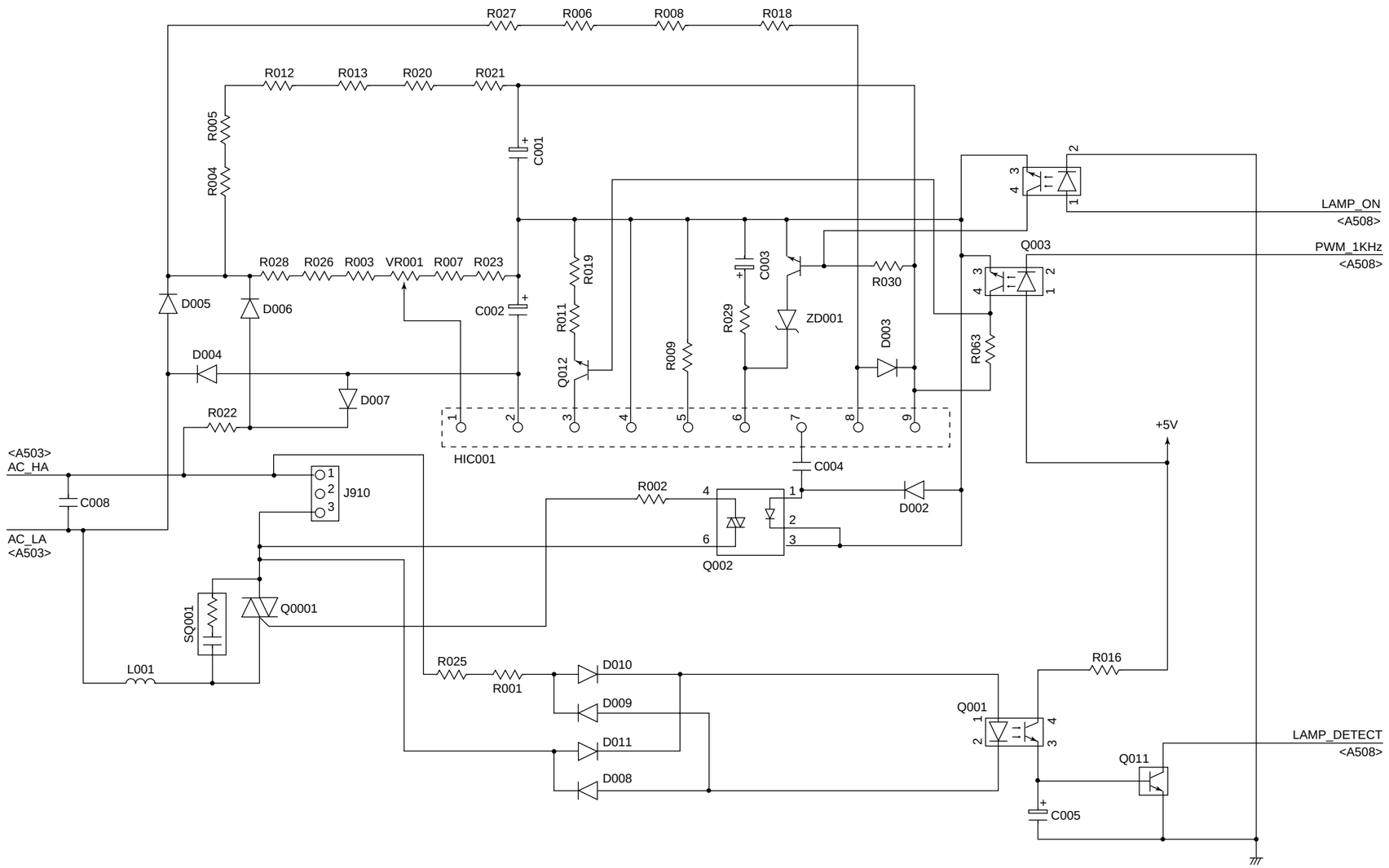




JP999: 220/240V model only

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

Composite Power Supply Circuit Diagram (8/9)
[A509]

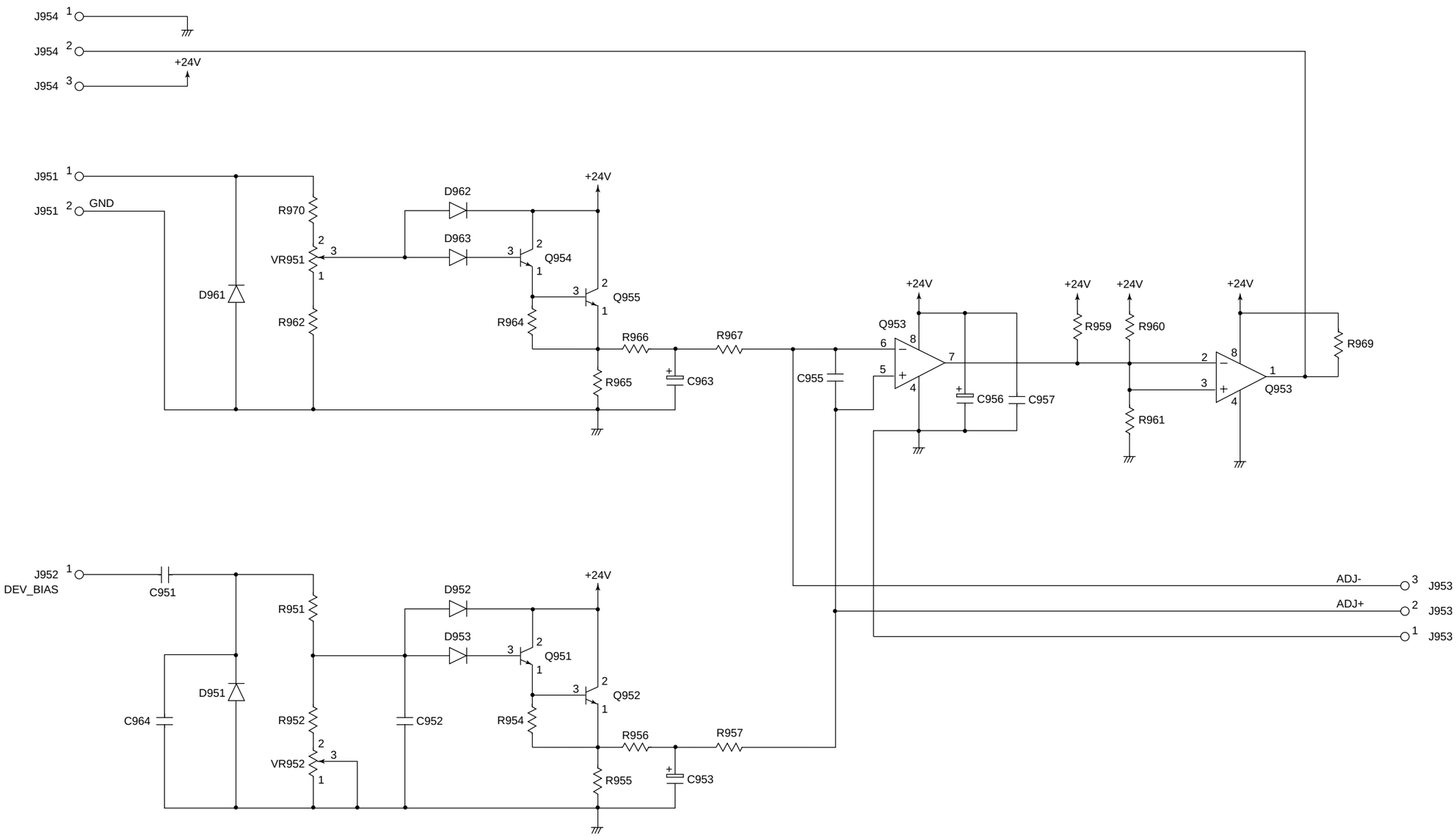


R012, R013, R018, R021: 220/240V model only

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

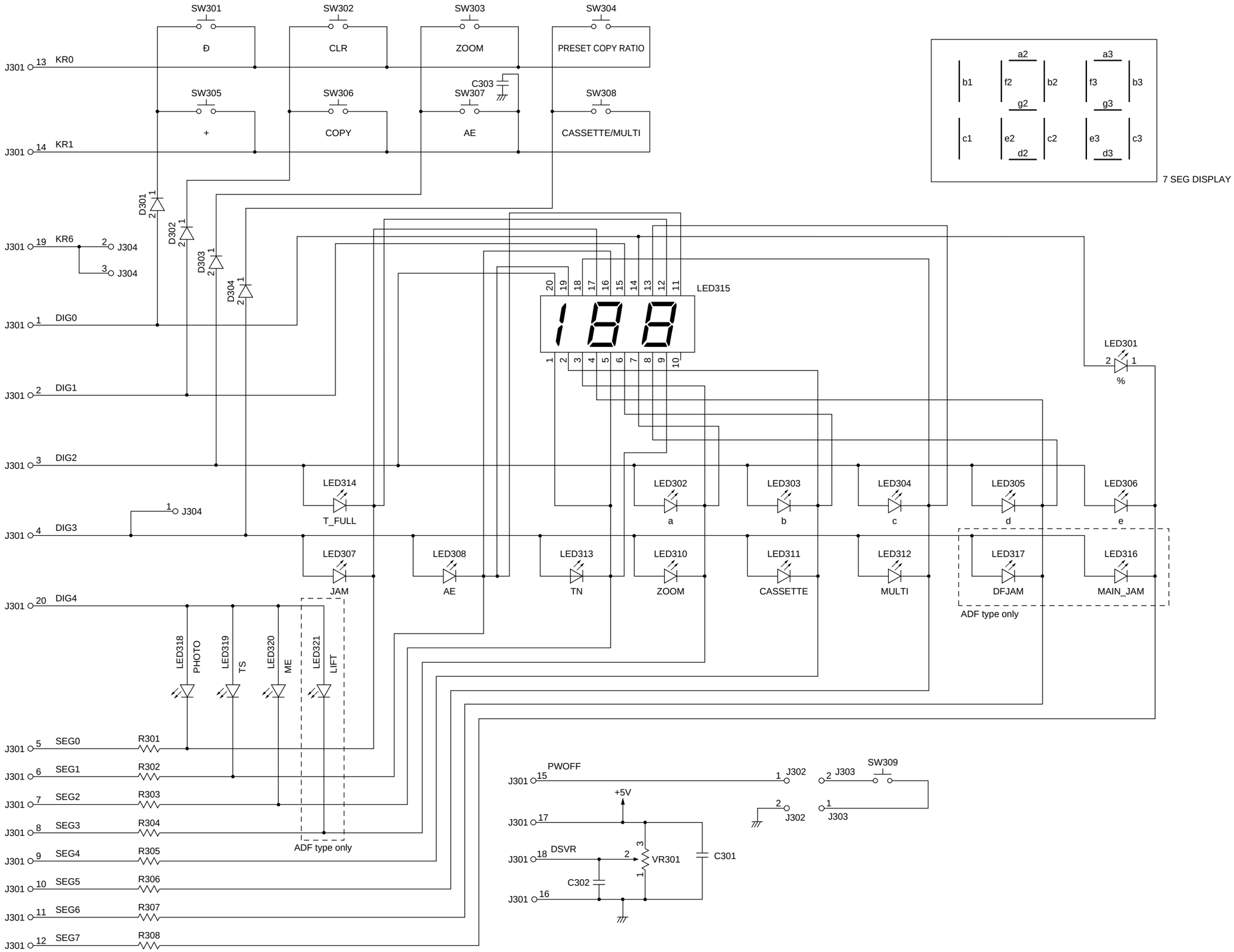
Composite Power Supply Circuit Diagram (9/9)
[A510]



COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

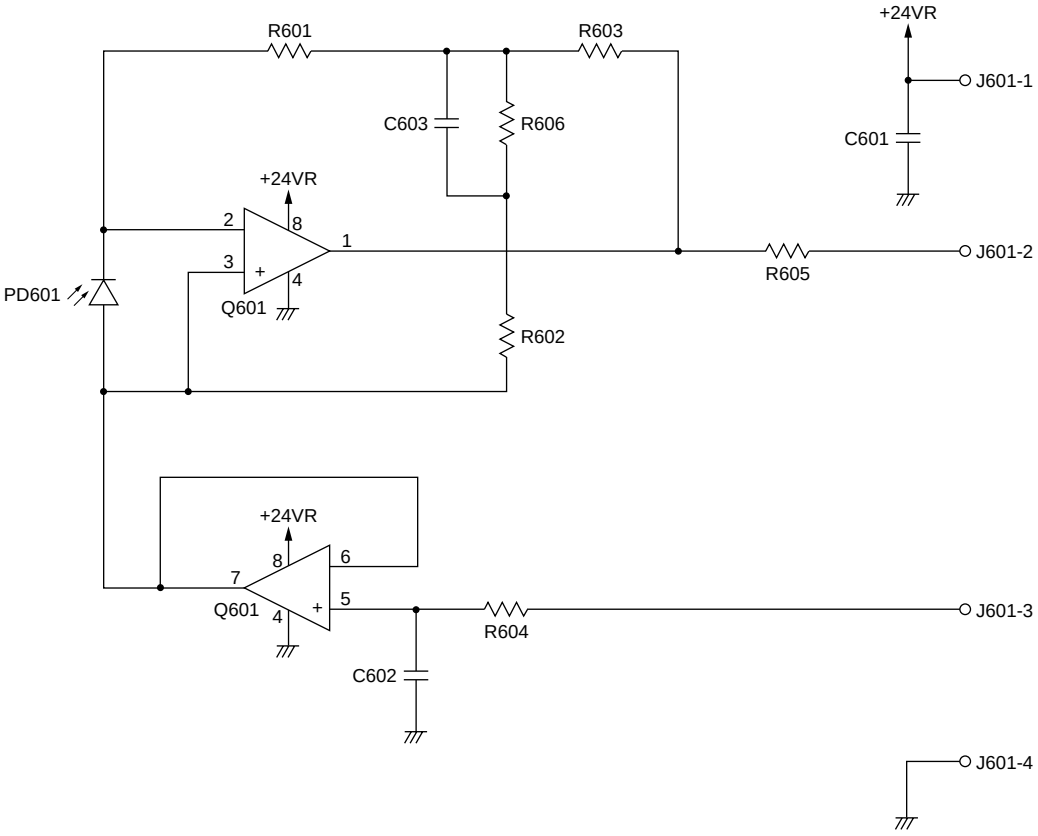
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

G. CONTROL PANEL CIRCUIT DIAGRAM

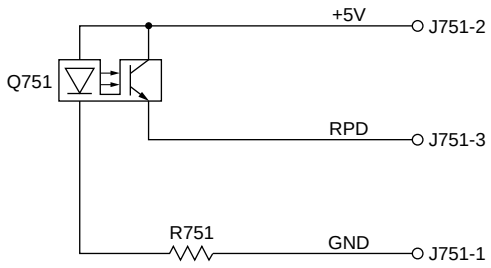


COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

H. AE SENSOR CIRCUIT DIAGRAM

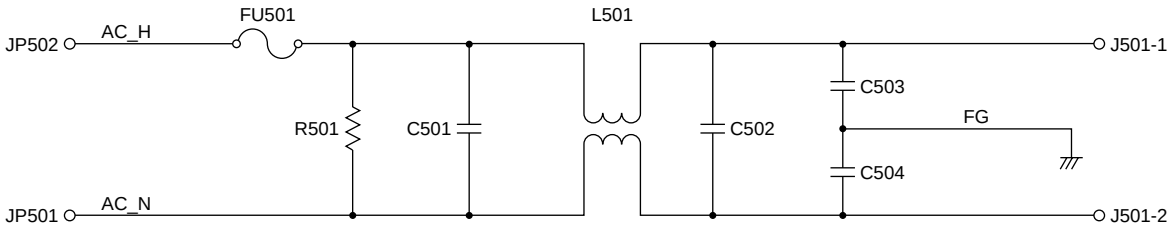


I. SENSOR CIRCUIT DIAGRAM



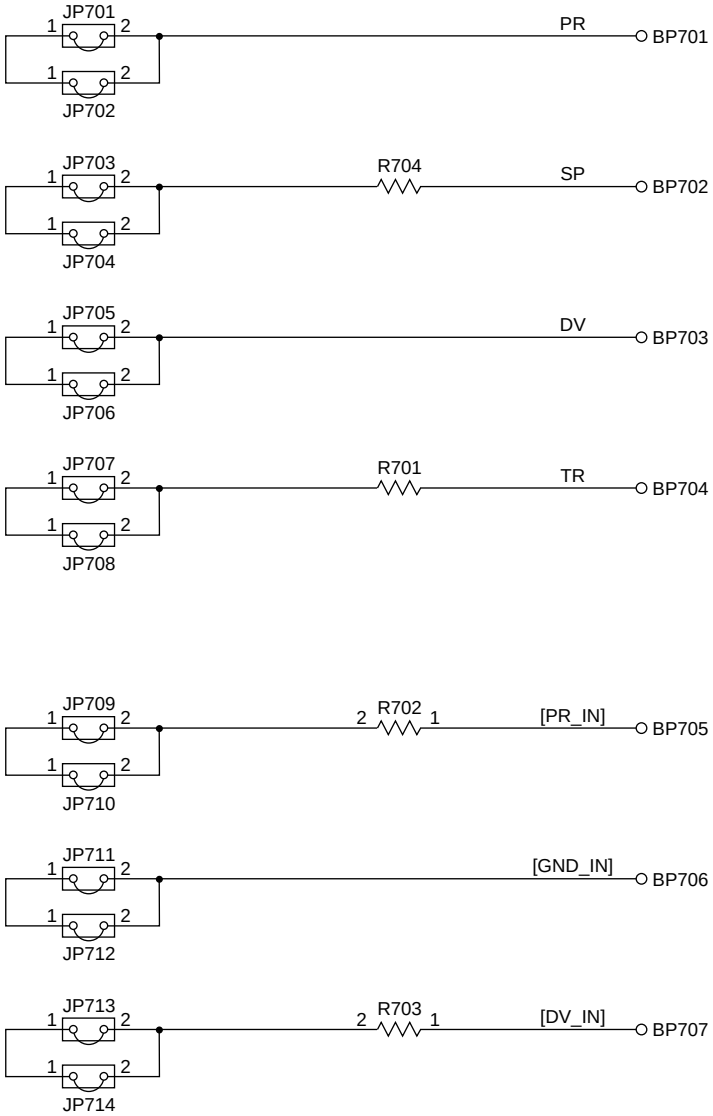
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

J. NOISE FILTER CIRCUIT DIAGRAM



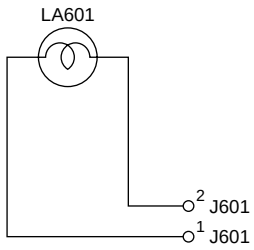
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

K. HIGH VOLTAGE CONTACT CIRCUIT DIAGRAM



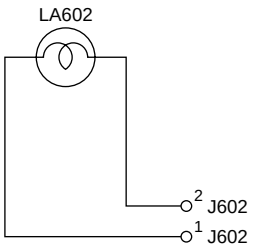
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

L. BLANK EXPOSURE (front) CIRCUIT DIAGRAM



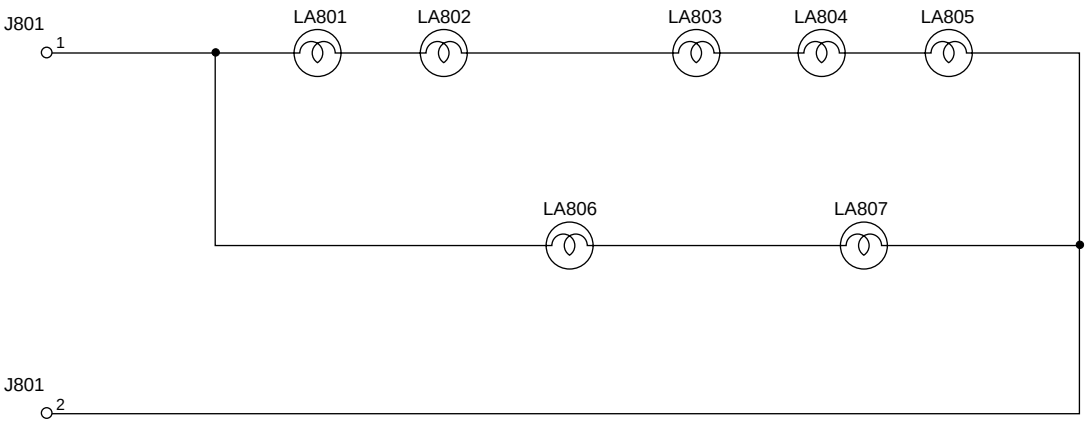
COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

M. BLANK EXPOSURE (rear) CIRCUIT DIAGRAM



COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

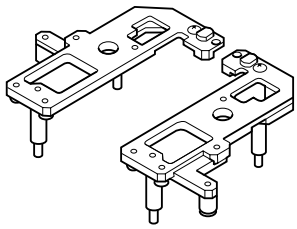
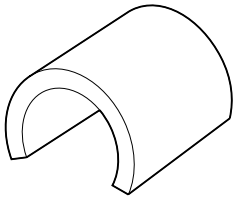
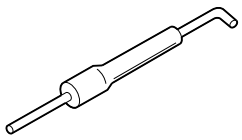
N. PRE-EXPOSURE CIRCUIT DIAGRAM



COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

O. SPECIAL TOOLS

You will need the following special tool(s) in addition to the standard tools set when servicing the machine.

No	Tool	Tool No.	Shape	Rank*	Remarks
1	Mirror positioning tool (pair for front and rear)	FY9-3009		B	For adjusting the distance between the No.1 and No.2 mirrors.
2	Wire clip	FY9-3017		B	For fixing the scanner wire in place while adjusting its tension.
3	Spring gauge	CK-0054		B	For checking the cassette spring pressure Range of measurements: 0 to 1,500g

*Rank:

A: Each service person is expected to carry one.

B: Each five or so service persons is expected to carry one.

C: Each workshop is expected to carry one.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.
CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

P. SOLVENTS/OILS

No.	Name	Uses	Composition	Remarks
1	Alcohol	Cleaning: e.g., glass, plastic, rubber parts; external covers	Hydrocarbon (fluorine family) Alcohol Surface active agent	• Do not bring near fire. • Procure locally. • Isopropyl alcohol may be substituted.
2	Solvent	Cleaning: e.g., metal; oil or toner dirt	Hydrocarbon (fluorine/chlorine family) Alcohol	• Do not bring near fire. • Procure locally.
3	Lubricating oil	Lubricating spring clutch	Mineral oil (paraffin family)	• CK-0451 (100cc)
4	Lubricating oil	Lubricating drive and friction parts, scanner rail	Silicone oil	• CK-0551 (20g)

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

Prepared by
Office Imaging Products Technical Support Division
CANON INC.
Printed in Japan

REVISION 0 (AUG. 1999) (30359/10317)

5-1, Hakusan 7-chome, Toride-shi, Ibaraki 302-8501 Japan

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

Canon

This pubication is printed on
70% reprocessed paper.

PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON) 0899AB1.51-1

NP6512/6612/ 7120/7130/7130F

MODEL OF THE SAME SERIES: NP6412

SERVICE HANDBOOK

REVISION 0

Canon

AUG. 1999 FY8-23B7-000

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC. CANON NP6512/6612/7120/7130/7130F REV.0 AUG. 1999 PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON)

IMPORTANT

THIS DOCUMENTATION IS PUBLISHED BY CANON INC., JAPAN, TO SERVE AS A SOURCE OF REFERENCE FOR WORK IN THE FIELD.
SPECIFICATIONS AND OTHER INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN MAY VARY SLIGHTLY FROM ACTUAL MACHINE VALUES OR THOSE FOUND IN ADVERTISING AND OTHER PRINTED MATTER.

ANY QUESTIONS REGARDING INFORMATION CONTAINED HEREIN SHOULD BE DIRECTED TO THE COPIER SERVICE DEPARTMENT OF THE SALES COMPANY.
THIS DOCUMENTATION IS INTENDED FOR ALL SALES AREAS, AND MAY CONTAIN INFORMATION NOT APPLICABLE TO CERTAIN AREAS.

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

Printed in Japan
Imprimé au Japon

Use of this manual should be strictly supervised to avoid disclosure of confidential information.

Prepared by

OFFICE IMAGING PRODUCTS TECHNICAL SUPPORT DIVISION

CANON INC.

5-1, Hakusan 7-chome, Toride-shi, Ibaraki 302-8501 Japan

- This service handbook covers the models shown in the following table. Be sure to have a good understanding of the difference from model to model before referring to this handbook.

Model	Type code	Default ratio	ADF as standard	Cassette
NP6512	TWA	2R2E		250 sheets
NP6612	TXA	2R2E	√	250 sheets
NP7120	PUB	2R2E		Universal
NP7120	PUC	2R2E		Universal
NP7130	NVF	3R1E		500 sheets
NP7130	PTZ	2R2E		500 sheets
NP7130F	NVH	3R1E	√	500 sheets

The notation "√" indicates that the item in question is available.

CONTENTS

CHAPTER 1 MAINTENANCE AND INSPECTION

A. Periodically Replaced Parts 1-1
B. Durables and Consumables 1-1
C. Scheduled Servicing 1-1
D. Image Adjustment Basic Procedure 1-3
E. Points to Note for Servicing 1-4

CHAPTER 2 STANDARDS AND ADJUSTMENTS

A. Mechanical 2-1
B. ADF 2-26
C. Electrical 2-37

CHAPTER 3 ARRANGEMENT AND FUNCTIONS OF ELECTRICAL PARTS

A. Sensors and Solenoids 3-1
B. Switches 3-2
C. Lamp, Heater, Motor, Etc. 3-3
D. PCBs 3-4
E. ADF 3-5
F. Variable Resistors (VR) and Check Pins by PCB 3-6

CHAPTER 4 SERVICE MODE

A. Outline 4-1
B. Using Service Mode 4-1
C. Adjustment Mode (30) 4-4
D. Operation/Inspection Mode (40) 4-5
E. Machine Settings Mode (50) 4-6
F. Counter Mode (60) 4-6

CHAPTER 5 SELF DIAGNOSIS

A. Self Diagnosis 5-1

APPENDIX

A. General Timing Chart A-1
B. Signals and Abbreviations A-3
C. General Circuit Diagram A-5
D. Special Tools A-7
E. Solvents/Oils A-8
F. Specifications A-9

CHAPTER 1 MAINTENANCE AND INSPECTION

A. Periodically Replaced Parts

The machine does not have parts which must be replaced on a periodical basis.

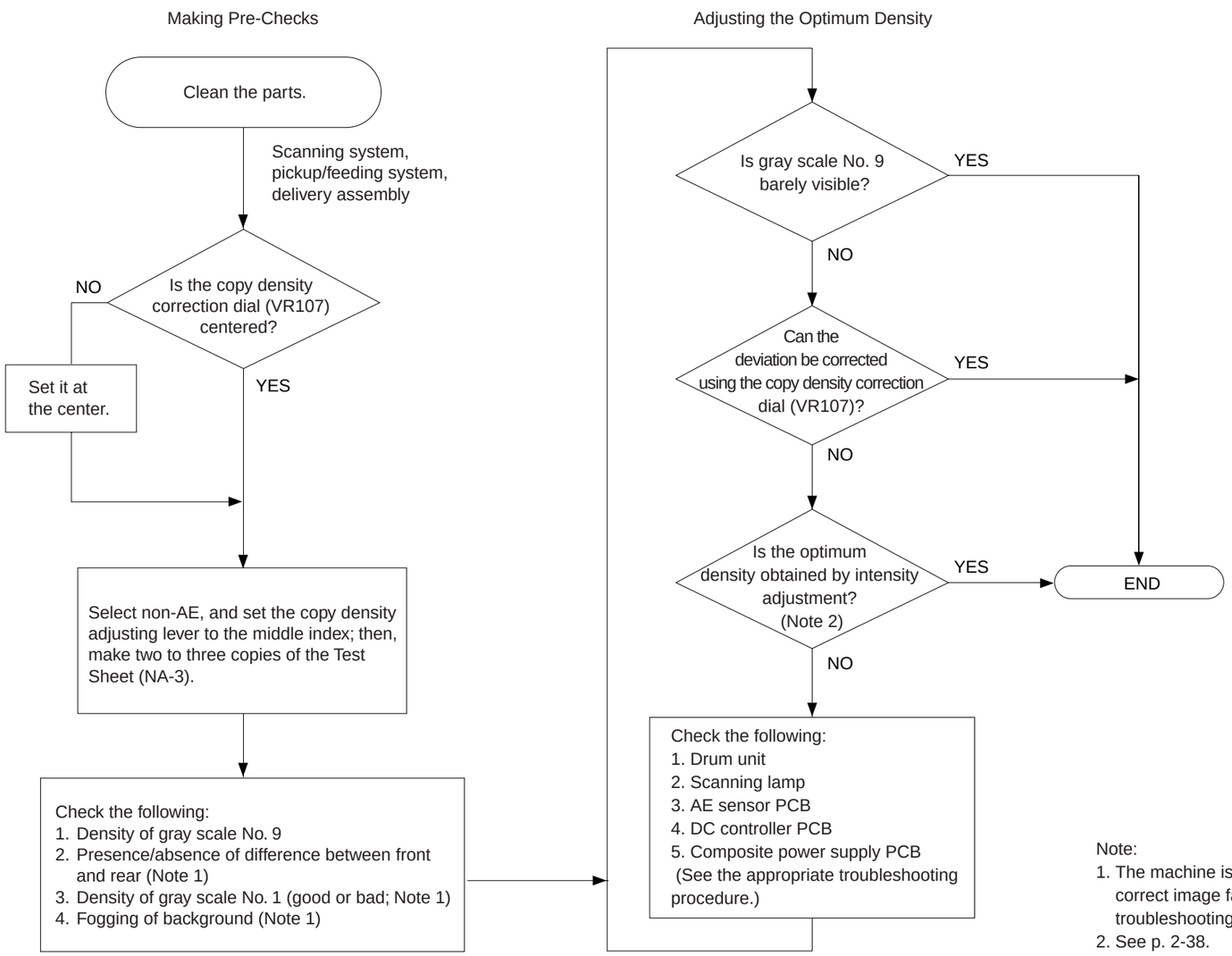
B. Durables and Consumables

The machine does not have items designated as durables or consumables.

C. Scheduled Servicing

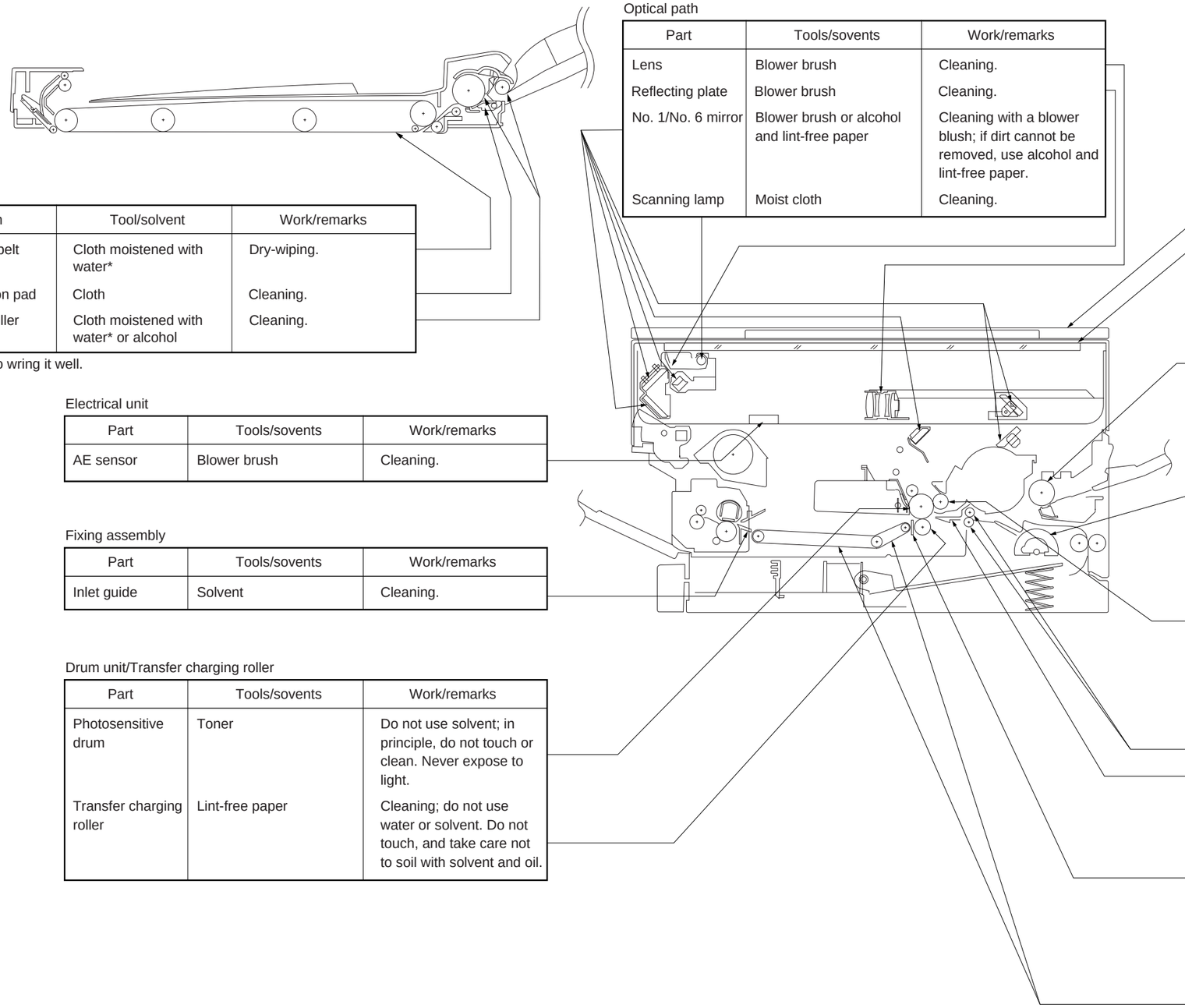
The machine does not have any parts which require scheduled servicing.

D. Image Adjustment Basic Procedure


Making Pre-Checks
Clean the parts.
Scanning system, pickup/feeding system, delivery assembly
Is the copy density correction dial (VR107) centered?
NO
YES
Set it at the center.
Select non-AE, and set the copy density adjusting lever to the middle index; then, make two to three copies of the Test Sheet (NA-3).
Check the following:
1. Density of gray scale No. 9
2. Presence/absence of difference between front and rear (Note 1)
3. Density of gray scale No. 1 (good or bad; Note 1)
4. Fogging of background (Note 1)
Adjusting the Optimum Density
Is gray scale No. 9 barely visible?
YES
NO
Can the deviation be corrected using the copy density correction dial (VR107)?
YES
NO
Is the optimum density obtained by intensity adjustment? (Note 2)
YES
END
NO
Check the following:
1. Drum unit
2. Scanning lamp
3. AE sensor PCB
4. DC controller PCB
5. Composite power supply PCB
(See the appropriate troubleshooting procedure.)

Note:
1. The machine is not equipped with a function to correct image faults. See the appropriate troubleshooting procedure.
2. See p. 2-38.

E. Points to Note for Servicing



ADF

Item	Tool/solvent	Work/remarks
Feeding belt	Cloth moistened with water*	Dry-wiping.
Separation pad	Cloth	Cleaning.
Pickup roller	Cloth moistened with water* or alcohol	Cleaning.

*Be sure to wring it well.

Optical path

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Lens	Blower brush	Cleaning.
Reflecting plate	Blower brush	Cleaning.
No. 1/No. 6 mirror	Blower brush or alcohol and lint-free paper	Cleaning with a blower blush; if dirt cannot be removed, use alcohol and lint-free paper.
Scanning lamp	Moist cloth	Cleaning.

Electrical unit

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
AE sensor	Blower brush	Cleaning.

Fixing assembly

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Inlet guide	Solvent	Cleaning.

Drum unit/Transfer charging roller

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Photosensitive drum	Toner	Do not use solvent; in principle, do not touch or clean. Never expose to light.
Transfer charging roller	Lint-free paper	Cleaning; do not use water or solvent. Do not touch, and take care not to soil with solvent and oil.

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Copyboard cover	Alcohol	Cleaning.
Copyboard glass	Alcohol	Cleaning.

Multifeeder assembly

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Multifeeder pickup roller	Moist cloth (well-wrung) or alcohol	Cleaning.

Cassette pickup assembly

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Cassette pickup roller	Moist cloth (well-wrung) or alcohol	Cleaning.

Developing assembly

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Developing cylinder	Alcohol	Cleaning.

Transfer guide assembly

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Registration roller	Moist cloth	Cleaning.
Transfer guide	Moist cloth	Cleaning.

Static eliminator

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Static eliminator	Special brush	Cleaning.

Feeding assembly

Part	Tools/sovents	Work/remarks
Feed belt	Moist cloth	Cleaning.

CHAPTER 2 STANDARDS AND ADJUSTMENTS

A. Mechanical

1. Copier

a. Leading Edge Non-Image Width

Make adjustments so that the leading edge non-image width is 2.0 ±1.5 mm when the Test Sheet is copied in Direct.

Caution:

If you have performed this adjustment, be sure to adjust the image leading edge margin.

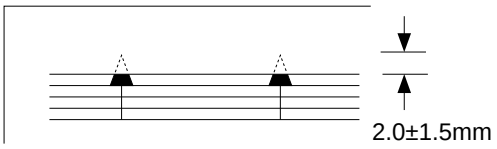


Figure 2-1

Making Adjustments

1) Select '31' in service mode.
   • The display will indicate '31'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   • The existing setting will flash.
3) Change the setting by the +/- key.
   • The setting may be between 0 and 99.
   • For each '1', the non-image width will change by 0.24 mm.
4) Press the AE key.
   • The setting will stop flashing and will remain on, indicating that it has been stored in memory.
5) As necessary, press the Clear/Stop key once to return to item selection; or, press it once again to end service mode.

Relationship between Setting and Leading Edge Non-Image Width

Setting	Leading edge non-image width
Higher	Increases
Lower	Decreases

Table 2-1

b. Image Leading Edge Margin (registration activation timing)

Make adjustments so that the leading edge margin is 2.5 ±1.5 mm when the Test Sheet is copied.

Caution:

Be sure to check that the leading edge non-image width is as indicated before performing this adjustment.

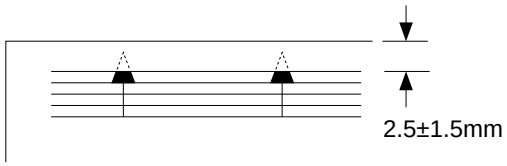


Figure 2-2

Making Adjustments

1) Select '30' in service mode.
   • The display will indicate '30'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   • The existing setting will flash.
3) Change the setting using the +/- key.
   • The setting may be between 0 and 99.
   • The setting will change by 0.24 mm in terms of margin for each '1'.
4) Press the AE key.
   • The setting will stop flashing and will remain on, indicating it has been stored in memory.
5) As necessary, press the Clear/Stop key once to return to item selection; or, press it once again to end service mode.

Relationship between Settings and Image Leading Edge Margin

Setting	Image leading edge margin
Higher	Decreases
Lower	Increases

Table 2-2

c. Adjusting the Mirror Position (optical length between No. 1 mirror and No. 2 mirror)

If you have replaced the scanner drive cable, you must adjust the mirror position, by changing the position of the cable retainer of the No. 1 mirror mount.

Reference:

1. As more and more copies are made, the cable tends to become slack, requiring adjustment.
2. If the optical length between the No. 1 mirror and the No. 2 mirror is not correct, the horizontal reproduction ratio will be wrong, causing poor sharpness or blurred images.

1) Fit the mirror positioning tool (FY9-3009) as shown.

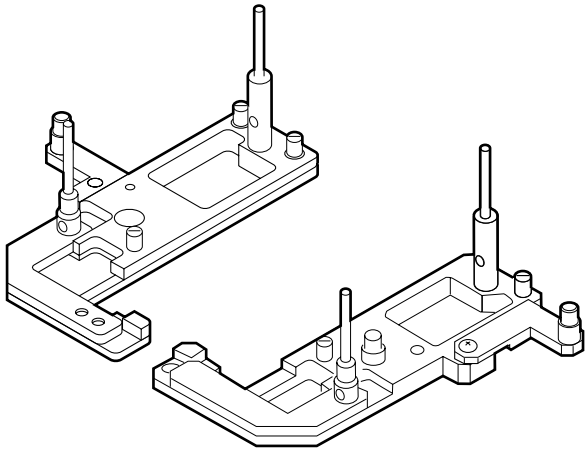


Figure 2-3

2) Remove the copyboard glass.
3) Loosen the screws used to secure the cable retainer at the rear and the front of the No. 1 mirror mount [1].

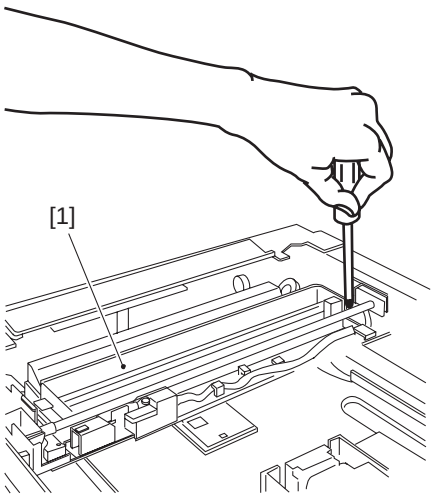


Figure 2-4

4) Turn the cable drive pulley [3] so that the three shafts [2] of the mirror positioning tool for the front and the rear may be arranged as shown.

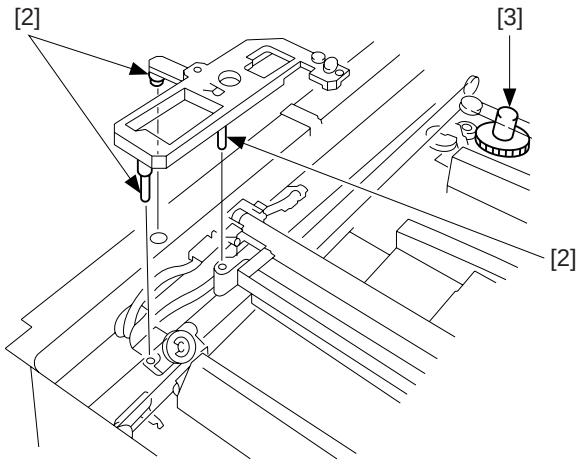


Figure 2-5 (rear)

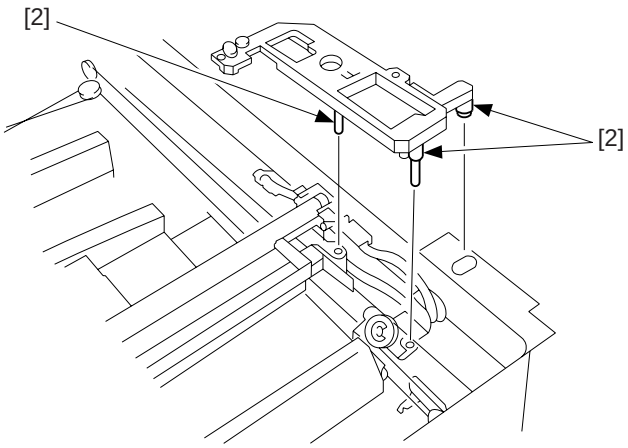


Figure 2-6 (front)

5) While keeping the condition of 4), tighten the positioning screw at the rear and the front of the No. 1 mirror mount [1].

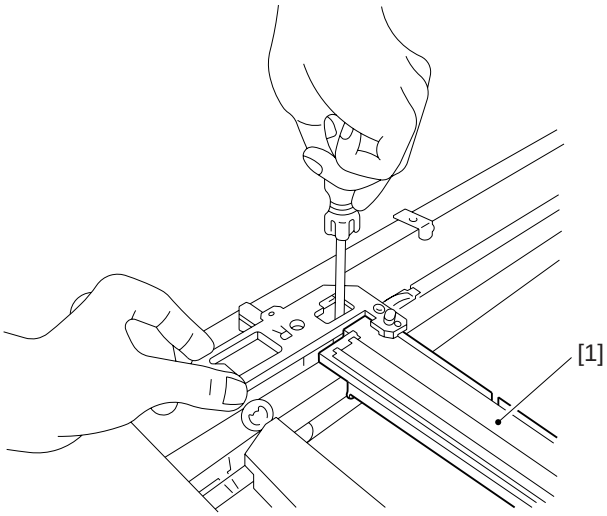


Figure 2-7 (rear)

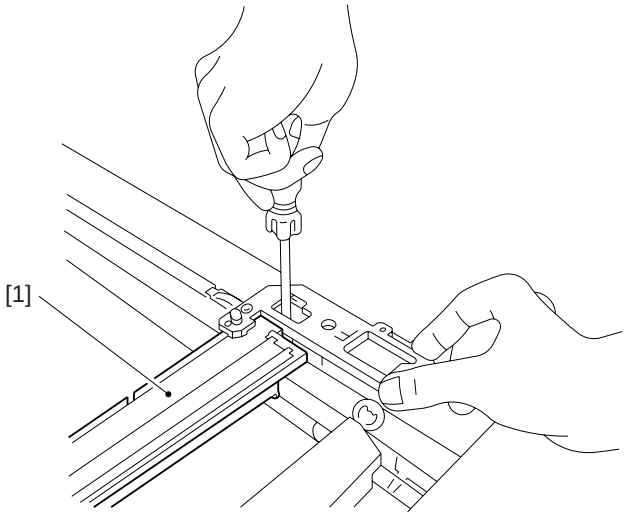


Figure 2-8 (front)

d. Checking the Force of the Cassette Spring

If the force of the spring used to hold up the holding plate of the cassette is not correct, pickup faults or the like can occur.

If a fault is suspected, check the force of the spring using a spring gauge (CK-0054), and replace the spring if it is not as indicated:

Standard: 970 ±150 g

Making Measurements

Push the spring gauge against the middle of the spring as shown, and check to make sure that the reading of the spring gauge is 970 ±150 g when the holding plate is 18 mm away from the bottom of the cassette.

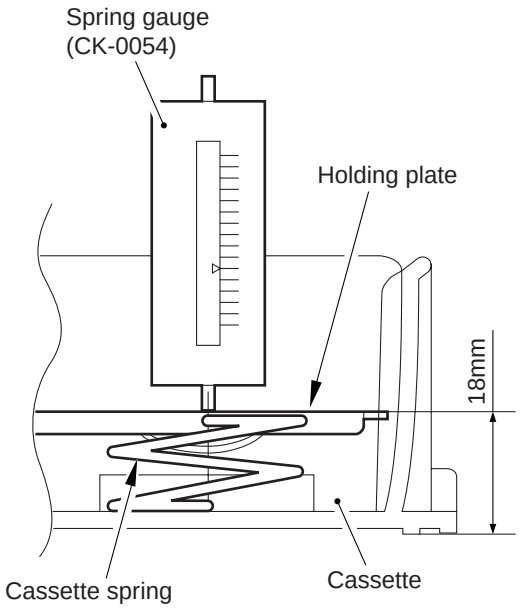


Figure 2-9

e-1. Routing the Scanner Drive Cable

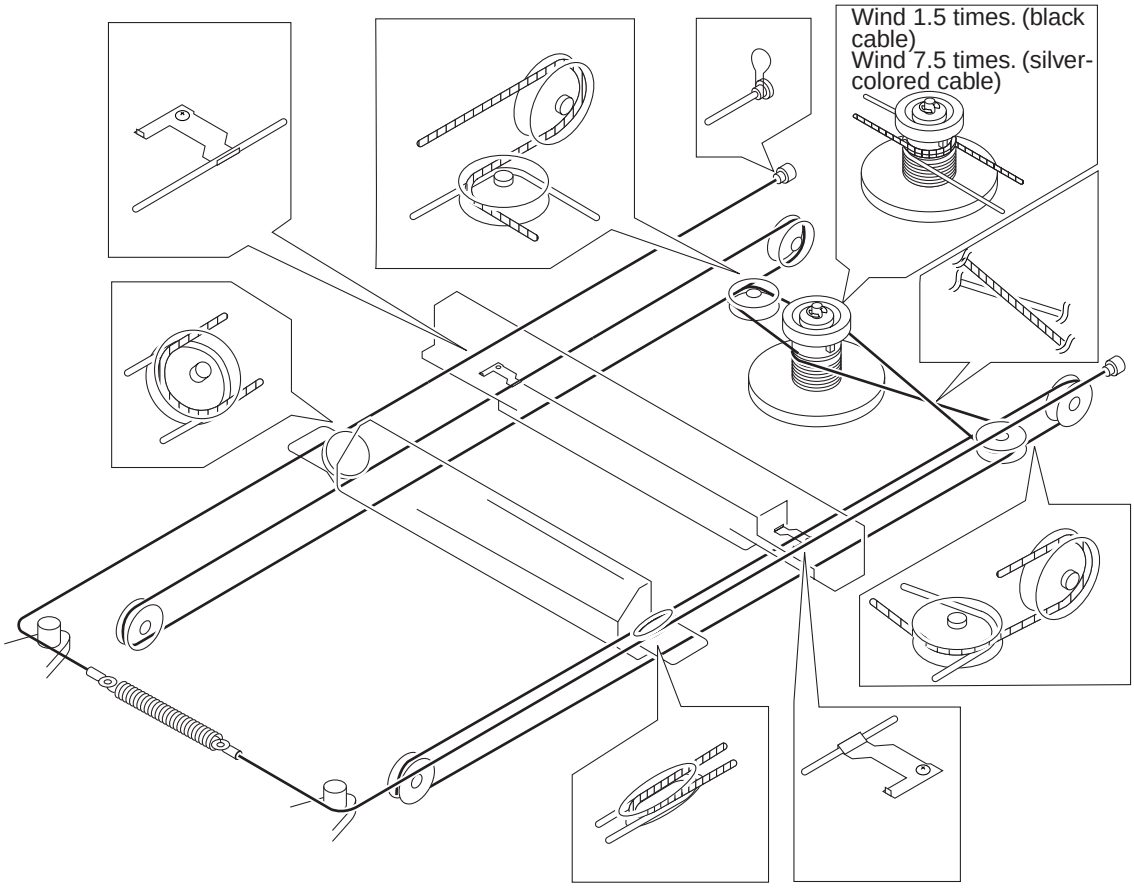


Figure 2-10

e-2. Routing the Scanner Drive Cable

1. Before Starting the Work

Prepare the following:
- Mirror positioning tool (FY9-3009)
- Cable clip (FY9-3017)
- Adhesive tape

1) Set the mirror positioning tool as shown.

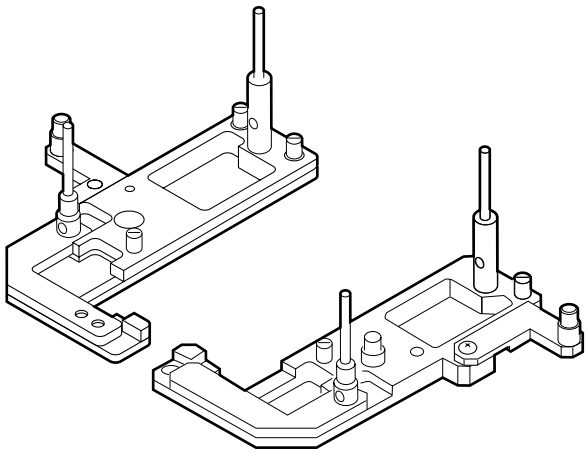


Figure 2-11

2) Prepare about five strips of adhesive tape (each one about 20 x 50 mm).
3) Remove the copyboard glass.
4) Disconnect the connectors (J101, J131) [1] from the DC controller PCB.

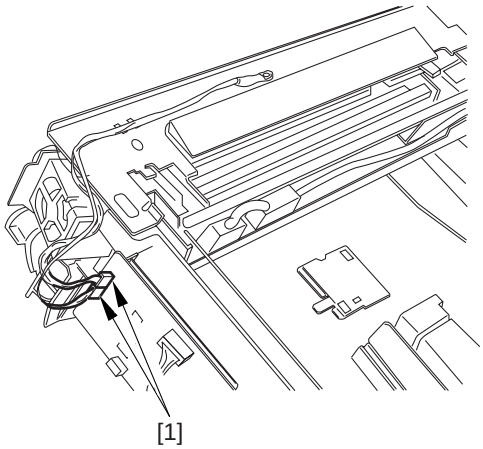


Figure 2-12

5) If the machine is equipped with an ADF, free the hook [2], and disconnect the two relay connectors [3] from the left upper stay [4].

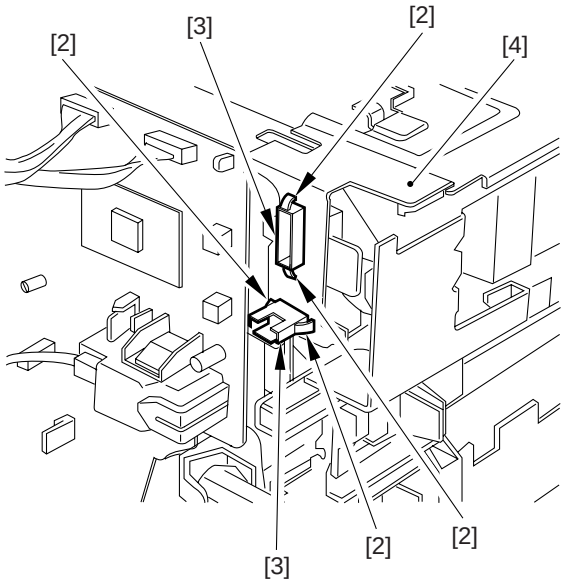


Figure 2-13

6) Remove the three screws [5], and detach the left upper stay [4].

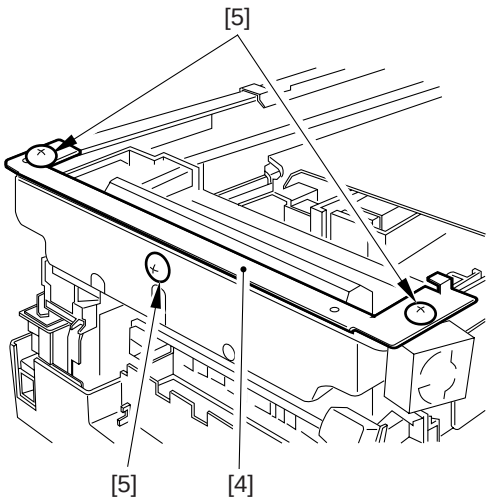


Figure 2-14

7) Remove the four screws [7], and detach the lens cover [8].

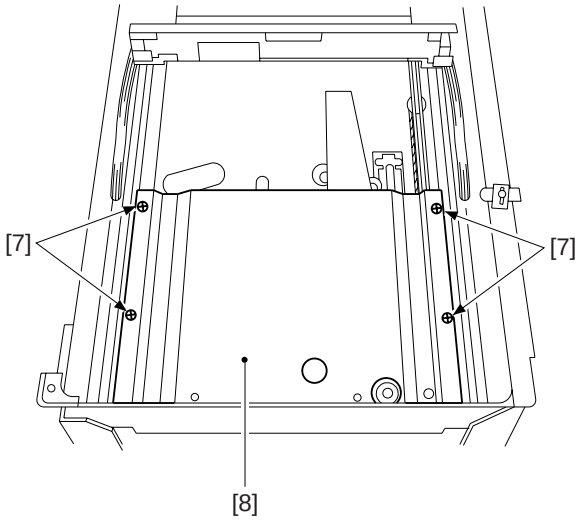


Figure 2-15

2. Routing the Reversing Cable

1) Wind the reversing cables (silver-colored) [2] on the cable drive pulley [1] 7.5 times with the longer of the two on top; then, secure it in position with a cable clip [3].

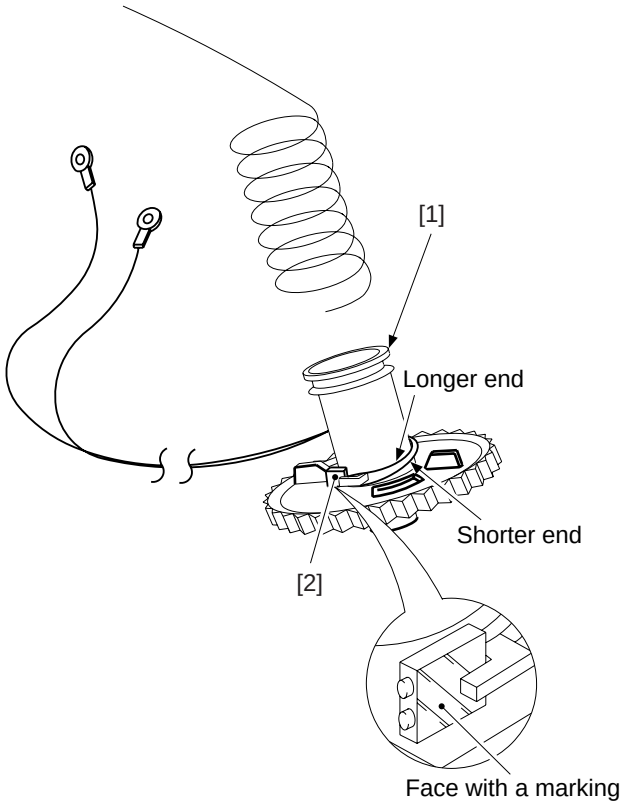


Figure 2-16

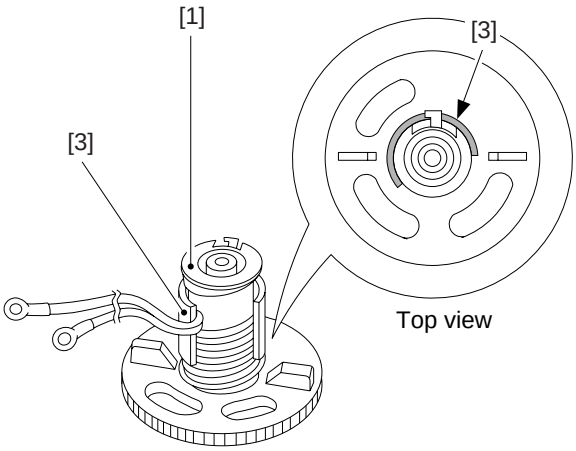


Figure 2-17

2) Put the cable drive pulley [1] into the shaft [4], and secure it in position with an E-ring [5]. When putting the cable drive pulley into the shaft, be sure that the hook is at the front.

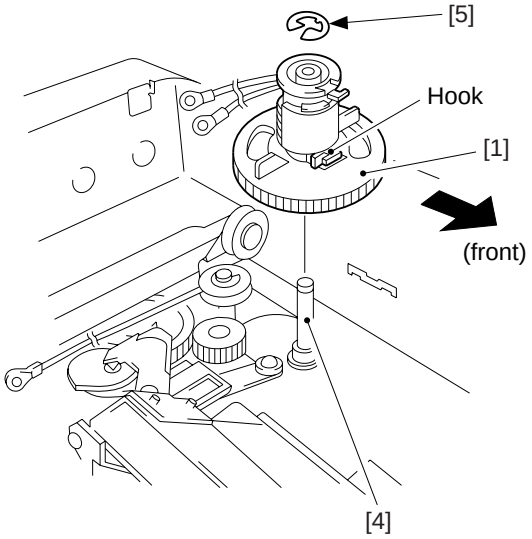


Figure 2-18

3) Hook the shorter end [6] on the pulley [7].

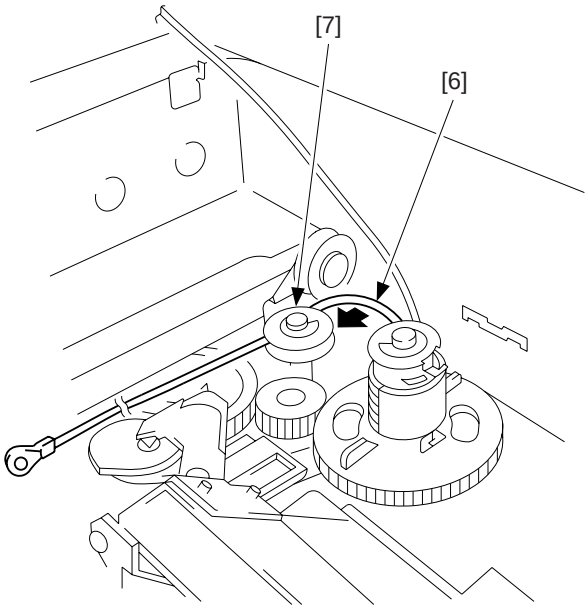


Figure 2-19

4) Lead the shorter end [6] under the No. 1 mirror mount [8] and the No. 2/3 mirror mount [9]; then, hook it on the left rear pulley [10] and the pulley [11] of the No. 2/3 mirror mount.

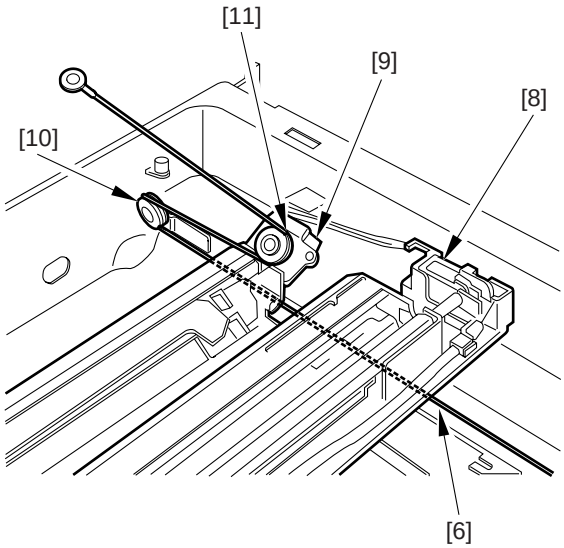


Figure 2-20

5) After fitting the shorter end [6] on the cable hook [12], secure its end with adhesive tape [13]. Be sure that the secured end of the cable is found where the hole in the left side plate and the tip of the cable matches.

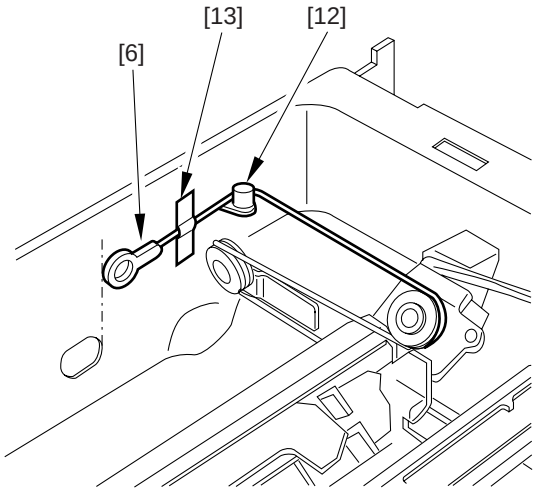


Figure 2-21

6) Lead the longer end [14] along the cable drive pulley [1], and hook it on the pulley [15] on the right front side.

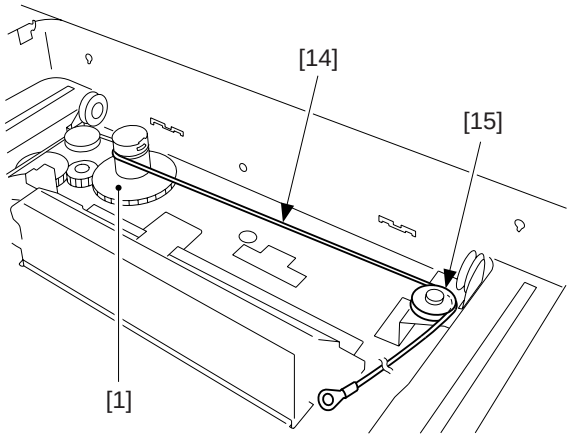


Figure 2-22

7) Lead the longer end [14] under the No. 1 mirror mount [8] and the No. 2/3 mirror mount [9]; then, hook it on the pulley [16] on the left front side and the pulley [17] of the No. 2/3 mirror mount.

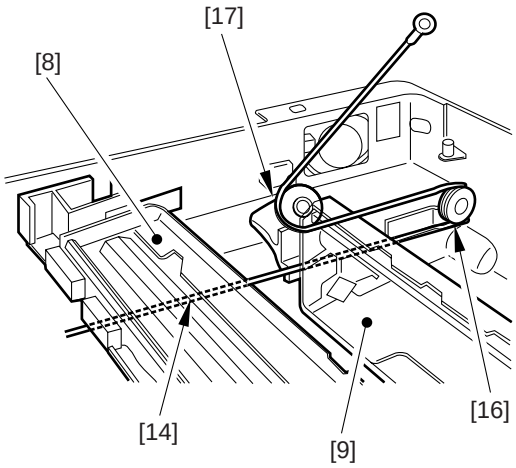


Figure 2-23

8) Hook the longer cable [14] on the cable hook [18]; then, secure its end to the left side with adhesive tape [19].
Be sure that the secured end of the cable is found where the hole in the left side plate and the tip of the cable matches.

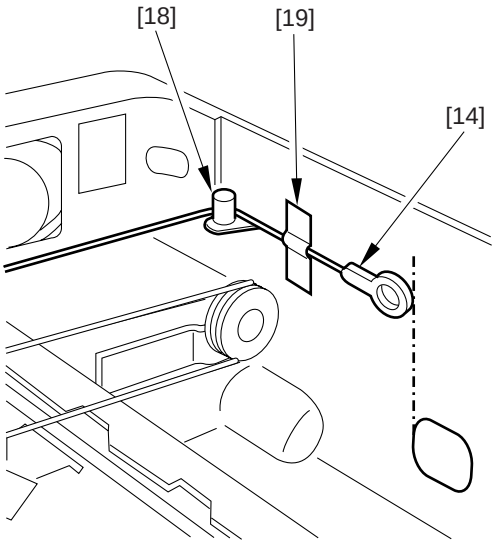


Figure 2-24

3. Routing the Forwarding Cable

1) Fit the longer end forwarding cable (black) [2] on the top hook of the cable drive pulley [1], and wind it 1.5 times. Then, secure the shorter end [3] as shown with adhesive tape [4].

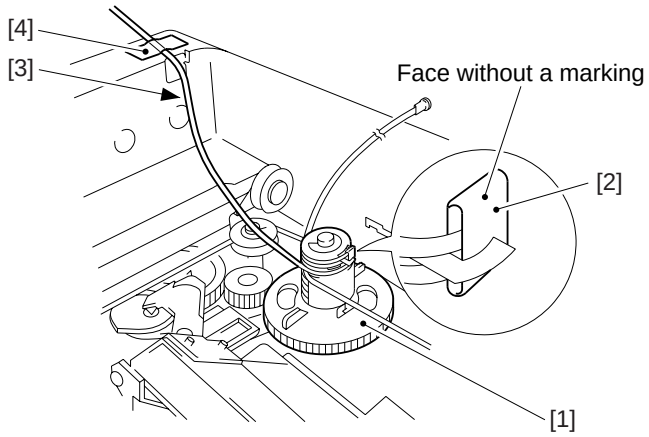


Figure 2-25

2) Lead the longer end [5] along the cable drive pulley [1] as shown, and hook it on the pulley [6] on the right front side.

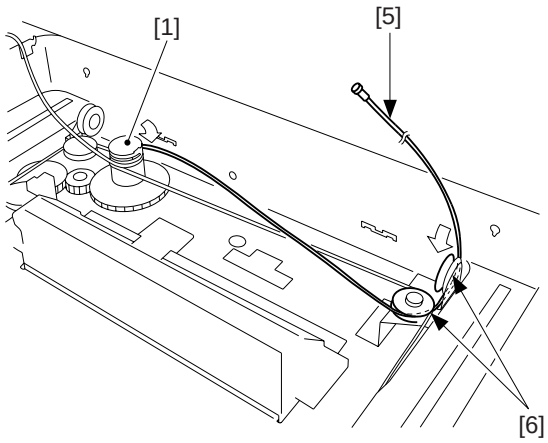


Figure 2-26

3) Lead the longer end [5] under the No. 1 mirror mount [7]; then, hook it on the pulley [8] of the No. 2/3 mirror mount, and lead it between the No. 1 mirror mount [7] and the scanning lamp [9].

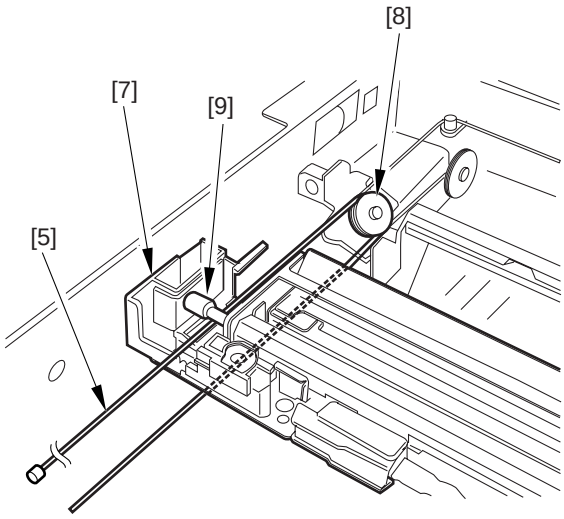


Figure 2-27

4) Hook the end of the longer end [5] on the hole [10] on the right side.

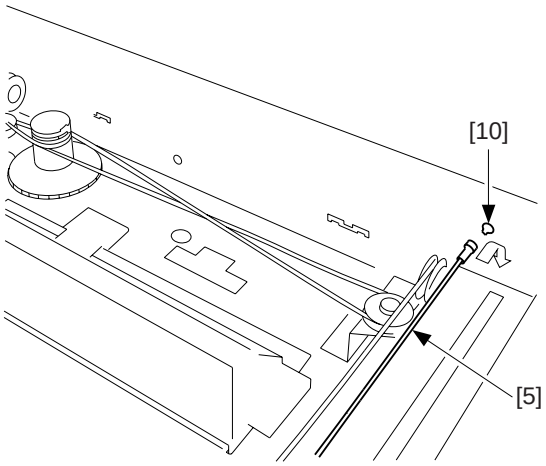


Figure 2-28

5) Free the shorter end [3], and hook it on the pulley [11] on the right rear side.

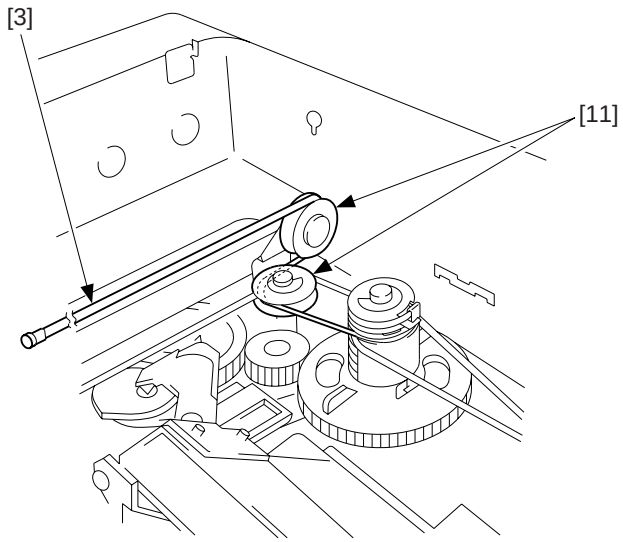


Figure 2-29

6) Lead the shorter end [3] under the No. 1 mirror mount [7], and hook it on the pulley [12] of the No. 2/3 mirror mount as shown; then, lead it between the No. 1 mirror mount [7] and the scanning lamp [9].

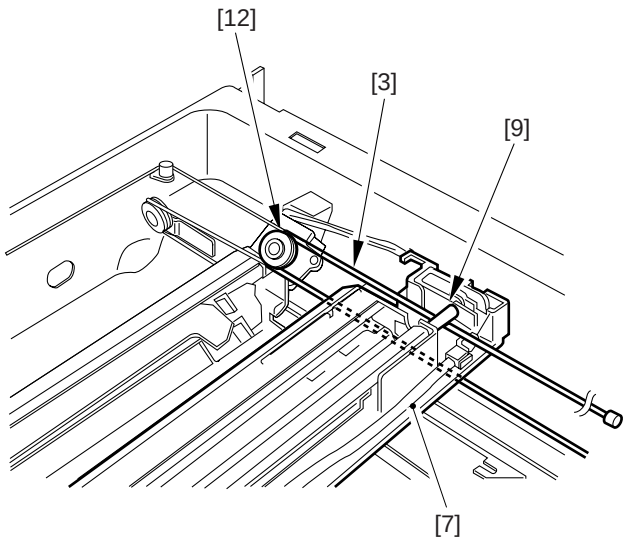


Figure 2-30

7) Hook the end of the shorter end [3] on the hole [13] on the right side.

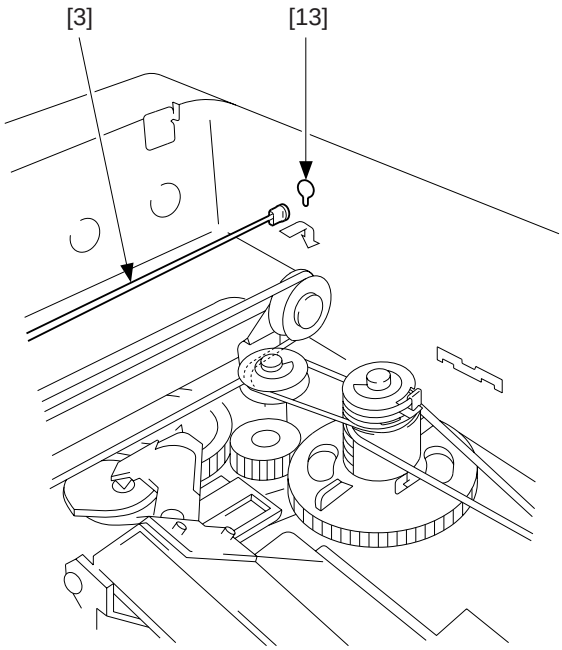


Figure 2-31

8) Free the shorter end [3] and the longer end [5] (reversing cable), and connect both with a spring [14]; then, fit the stopper [15].

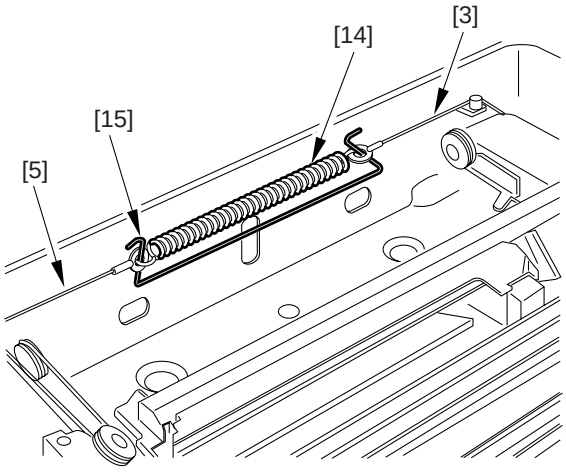


Figure 2-32

9) Detach the pulley clip [16] from the cable drive pulley [1].

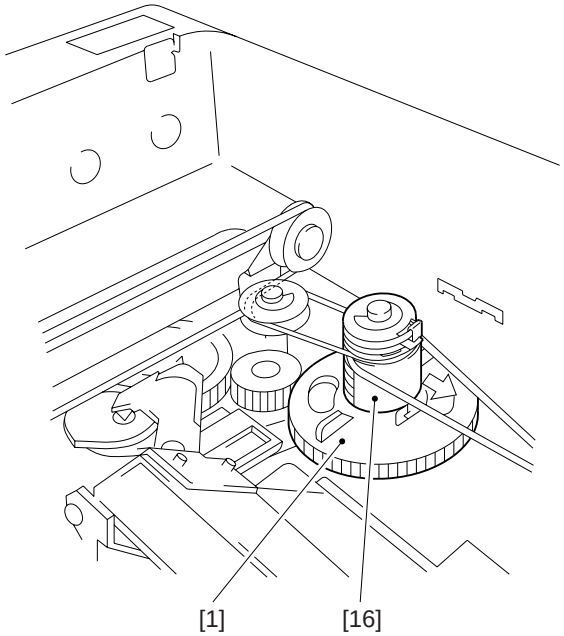


Figure 2-33

4. Positioning the No. 1 Mirror Mount

1) Fix the rear and the front of the No. 1 mirror mount [1] temporarily to the metal fixing [2] of the forwarding cable.

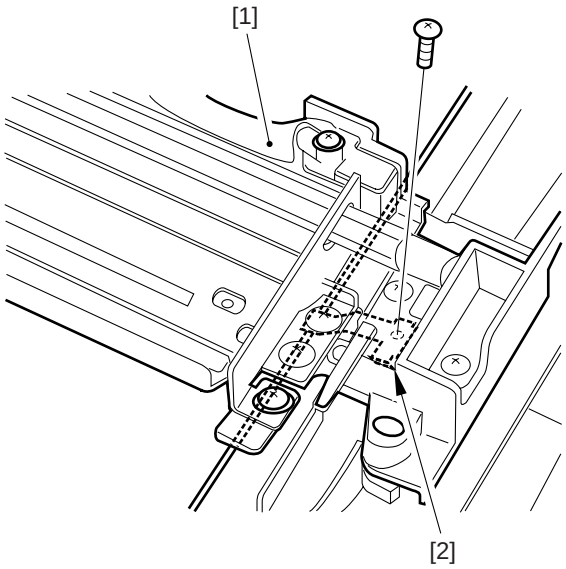


Figure 2-34 (rear)

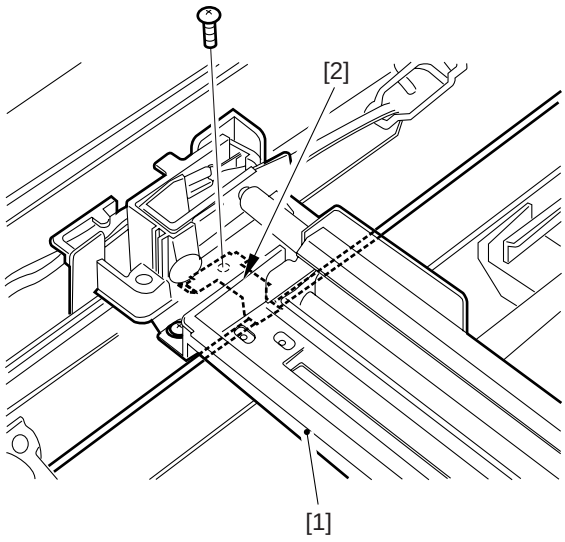


Figure 2-35 (front)

2) Turn the cable drive pulley [4] so that the three shafts [3] of the mirror positioning tool for rear and front is as shown.

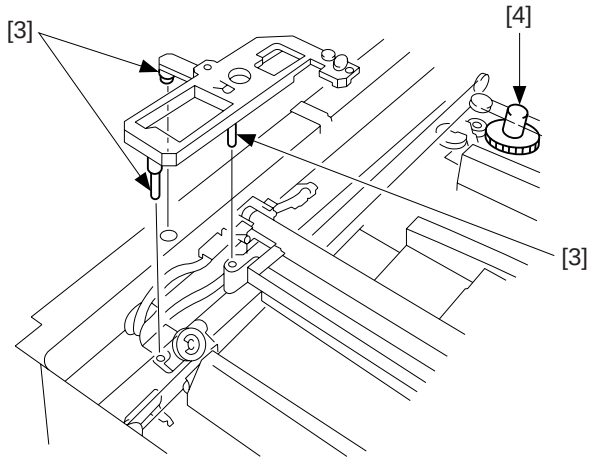


Figure 2-36 (rear)

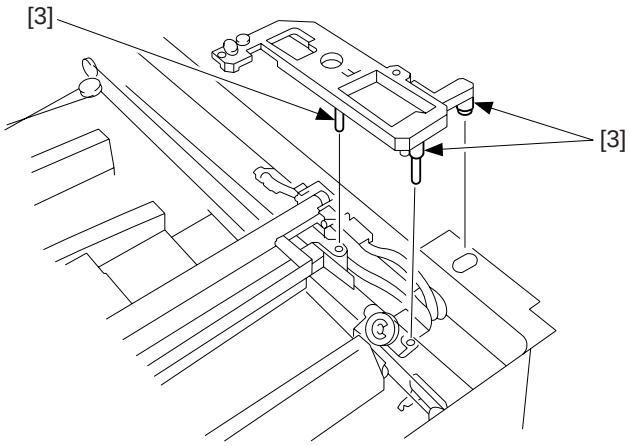


Figure 2-37(front)

3) While keeping the condition of step 2), tighten the positioning screw on the rear and front of the No. 1 mirror mount [1].

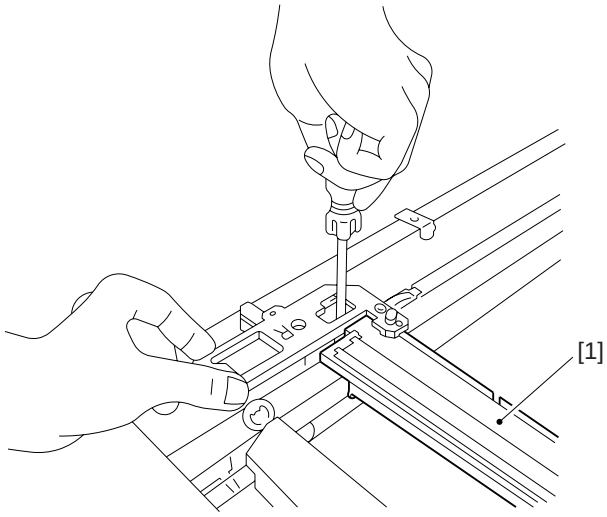


Figure 2-38 (rear)

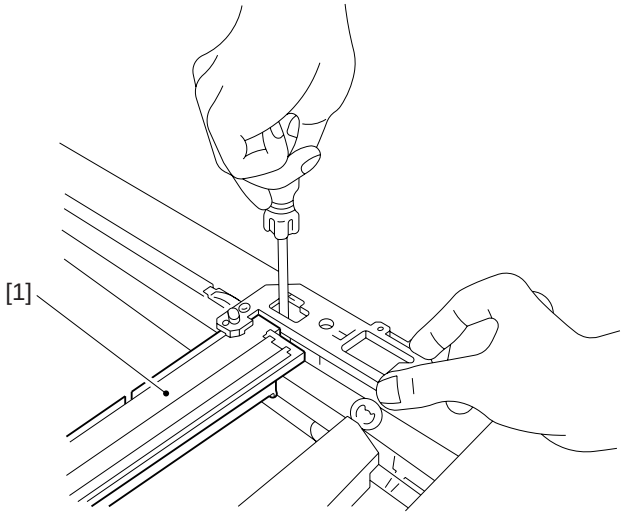


Figure 2-39 (front)

f. Point to Note When Mounting the Scanning Lamp

When mounting the scanning lamp, be sure that its logo mark (manufacturer's name) is toward the front. Further, be sure that the protrusion near its middle is as shown.

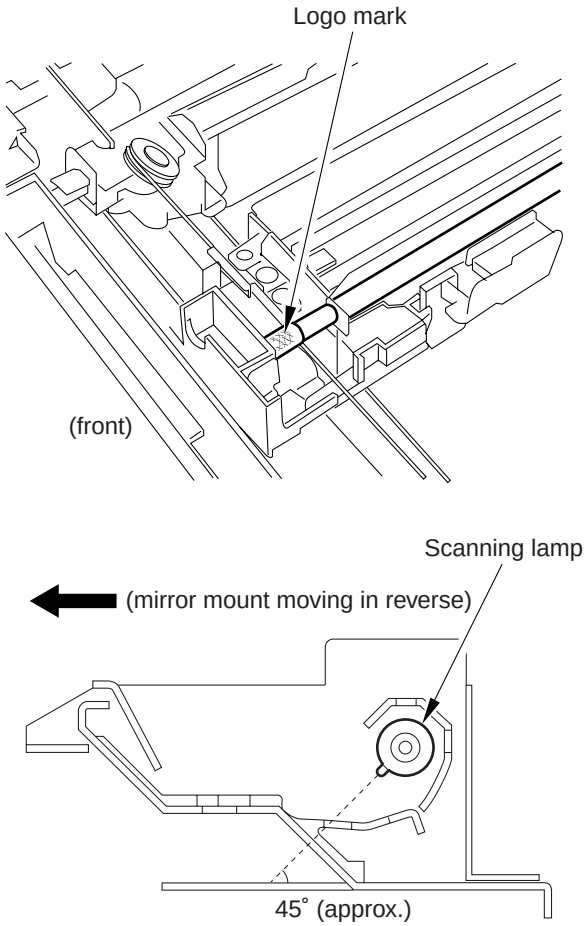


Figure 2-40

Caution:

- If you have replaced the scanning lamp, you must adjust the intensity of the lamp (p. 2-38) and perform AE adjustment.
- Do not touch the lamp when handling it.

g. Points to Note When Mounting the Fuse

When mounting the thermal fuse of the No. 1 mirror mount, be sure that the fuse is oriented as shown.

Make sure that the fuse is in contact with the reflecting plate.

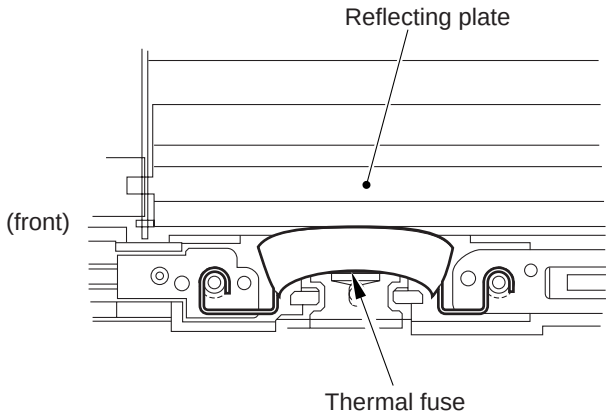


Figure 2-41

B. ADF

1. Adjusting the Original Stop Position

Adjust the original stop position in the following order:

1. Correcting original skew
2. Adjusting the rear/front original stop position
3. Adjusting the original leading edge stop position

2. Correcting Original Skew

1) Obtain a sheet of A4 or LTR white copy paper, and draw two lines as indicated.
   • The sheet will be used as a test sheet.

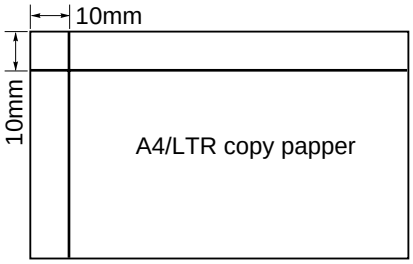


Figure 2-42

2) Turn on the machine, and place the test sheet prepared in step 1) on the original tray.

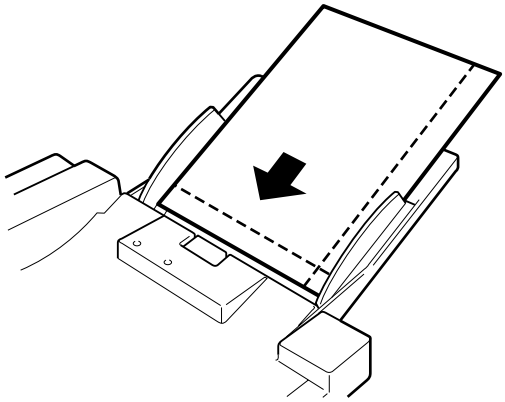


Figure 2-43

3) Press the Copy Start key to make a copy.
4) Check to make sure that the difference between L1 and L2 on the copy is 1.8 mm (standard) or less.

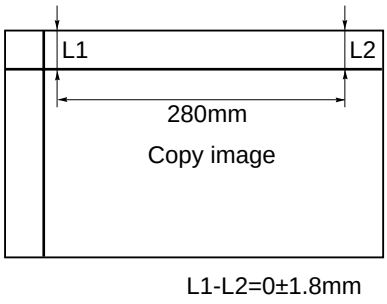


Figure 2-44

5) If the difference is not as specified, turn the adjusting screw found to the side of the left hinge unit to make adjustments.

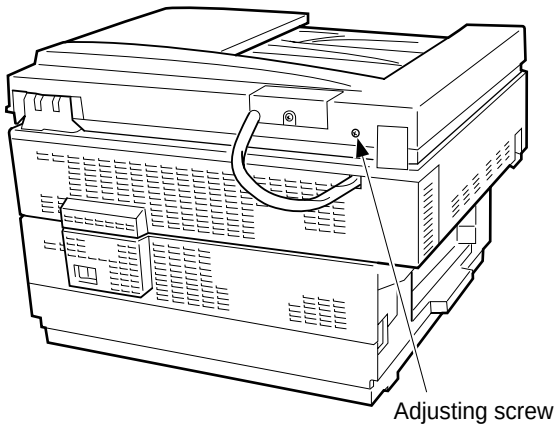


Figure 2-45

Relationship between Adjusting Screw and L1/L2

Direction of turn	Relationship between L1 and L2
Clockwise	L1 > L2
Counterclockwise	L1 < L2

Table 2-3

3. Adjusting the Rear/Front Original Stop Position

You must first correct original skew before adjusting the rear/front original stop position.

1) Obtain a sheet of A4 or LTR white copy paper, and draw two lines as indicated.
   • The sheet will be used as a test sheet.

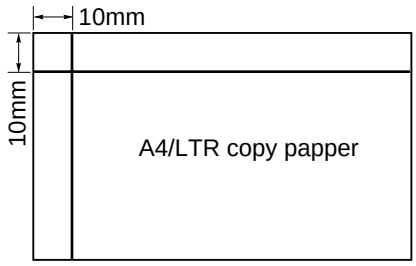


Figure 2-46

2) Remove the original tray cover from below the original tray.

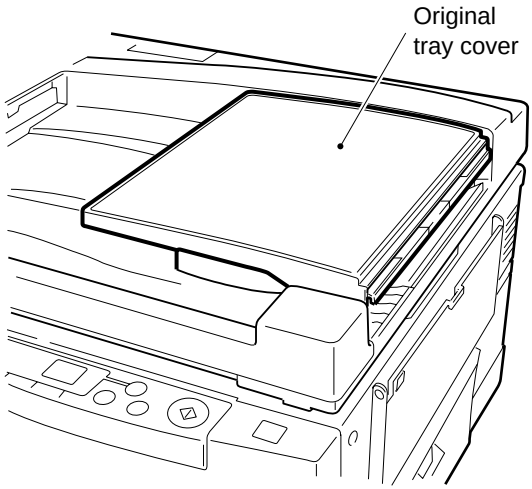


Figure 2-47

3) Turn on the machine, and place the test sheet prepared in step 1) on the original tray.

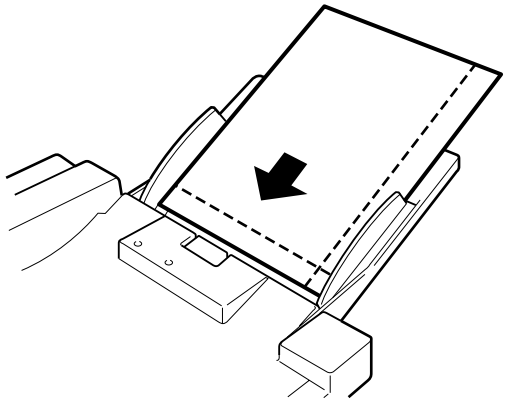


Figure 2-48

4) Press the Copy Start key to make a copy.
5) Check to make sure that the distance L3 on the copy image indicated is 10 ±2.5 mm (standard) or less.

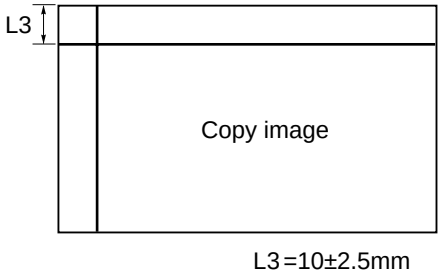


Figure 2-49

6) If the distance is not as specified, loosen the pinion gear positioning screw under the original tray, and adjust the position of the pinion gear.

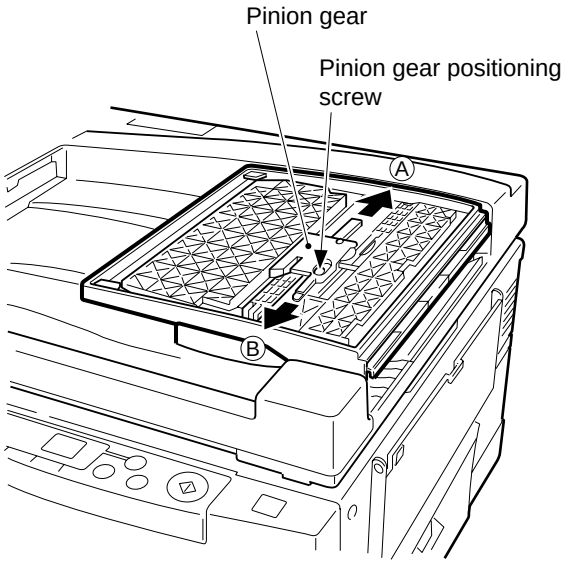


Figure 2-50

Relationship between Pinion Gear Position and L3

Direction of pinion gear	L3
A	Increases
B	Decreases

Table 2-4

4. Adjusting the Original Leading Edge Stop Position

You must first correct original skew and adjust the rear/front original stop position before adjusting the original leading edge stop position.

1) Obtain a sheet of A4 or LTR white copy paper, and draw two lines as indicated.
   • The sheet will be used as a test sheet.

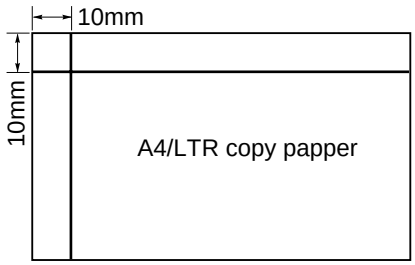


Figure 2-51

2) Remove the screw, and remove the ADF controller cover.

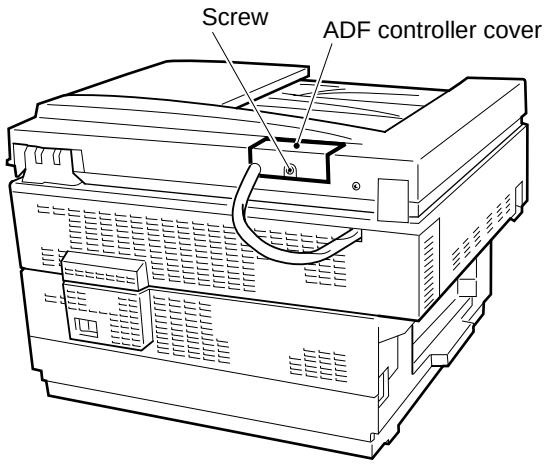


Figure 2-52

3) Turn on the machine, and place the test sheet prepared in step 1) on the original tray.

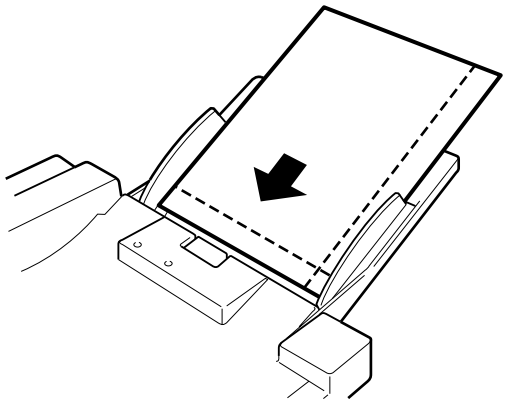


Figure 2-53

4) Press the Copy Start key to make a copy.
5) Check to make sure that the distance L4 on the copy image indicated is 10 +2.0, -2.5 mm (standard) or less.

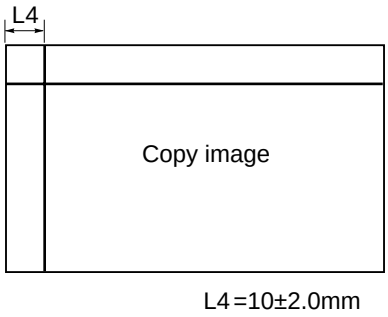


Figure 2-54

6) If the distance is not as specified, shift bit 1 of the DIP switch (SW1) on the ADF controller PCB to ON, and place an A4 or LTR white copy paper on the original tray.

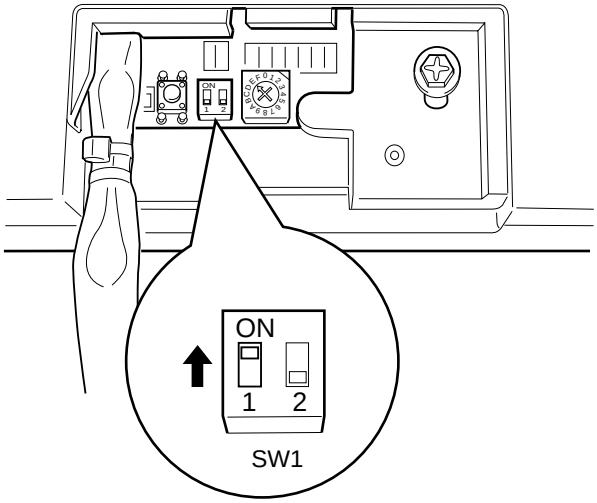


Figure 2-55

7) Press the push switch (PSW) on the ADF controller PCB.
   • The copy paper will be picked up from the original tray and stopped on the copyboard glass.

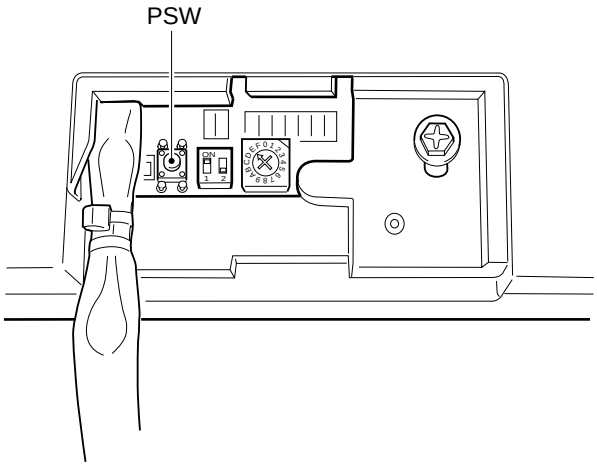


Figure 2-56

8) Use the rotary switch (SW2) on the ADF controller PCB to adjust the original leading edge stop position.
Moving the rotary switch by a single notch changes the original stop position by about 0.3 mm.
Press the push switch (PSW) after deciding on a position to discharge the copy paper and store the optimum value.

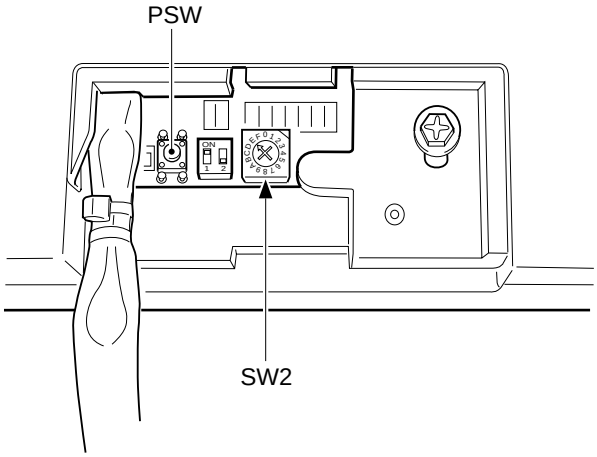


Figure 2-57

Relationship between Rotary Switch Direction and Original Position

Direction of rotary switch	Position (shift) of original
Clockwise	Toward leading edge
Counterclockwise	Toward trailing edge

Table 2-5

Example:

If L4 is 13 mm,

You must shift the original stop position toward the leading edge by 3 mm.

1) Place a sheet of A4 or LTR white copy paper on the original tray.
2) Shift bit 1 of the DIP switch (SW1) on the ADF controller PCB to ON; then, push the push switch (PSW) to pick up the copy paper.

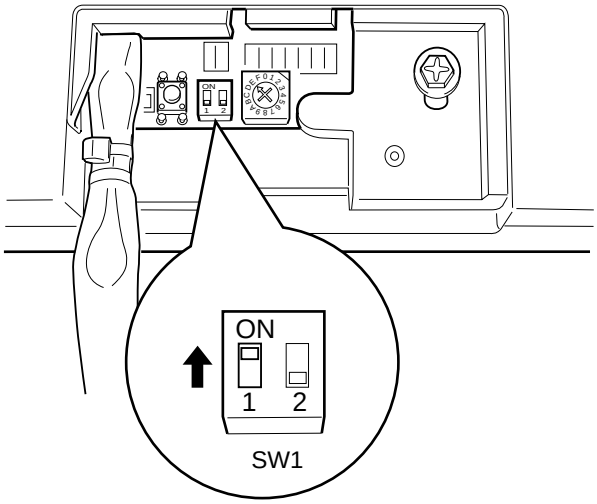


Figure 2-58

3) Turn the rotary switch (SW2) on the ADF controller PCB clockwise by 10 notches.

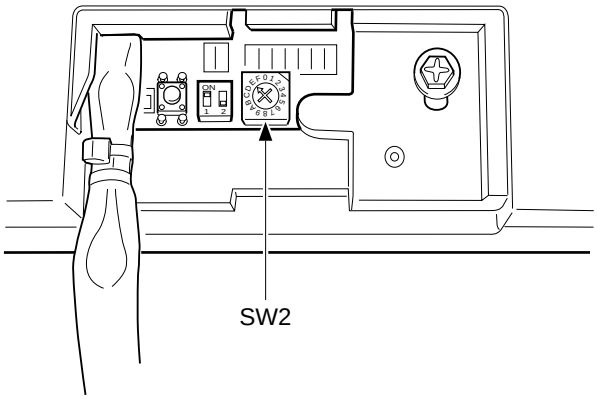


Figure 2-59

4) Press the push switch (PSW) on the ADF controller PCB.
   • The copy paper on the copyboard will be discharged, and the optimum value will be stored.

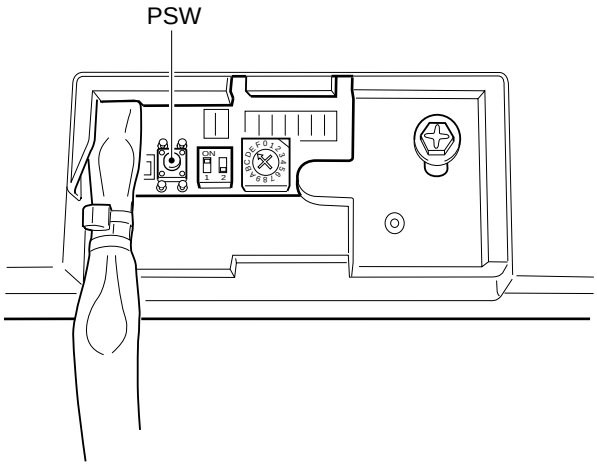


Figure 2-60

C. Electrical

1. After Replacing the Major Parts

Parts	Work
Scanning lamp	1. Scanning lamp intensity adjustment (LAMP_ADJ) 2. AE adjustment
AE sensor PCB	1. AE adjustment
Composite power supply PCB*1	(1. Scanning lamp intensity adjustment (LAMP_ADJ)) (2. AE adjustment) 3. Voltage correction for APVC measurement (PW_OFST) 4. Current correction for APVC measurement (IP_ADJ)
Pre-exposure lamp	1. Pre-exposure lamp output adjustment (PREX_LP)
DC controller PCB	1. Scanning lamp intensity adjustment (LAMP_ADJ) 2. AE adjustment 3. Leading edge non-image width adjustment (LE_BLANK) 4. Image leading edge margin adjustment (REGIST) 5. Primary charging output voltage correction (PRIMARY) 6. APVC measurement current correction (IP_OFST) 7. Voltage correction for measurement of APVC (PW_OFST) 8. Current correction for measurement of APVC (IP_ADJ) 9. Ratio fine adjustment (LENS_ADJ) 10. Pre-exposure lamp output adjustment (PREX_LP)
Drum unit	1. Primary charging output voltage correction (PRIMARY) 2. APVC measurement current correction (IP_OFST)
ADF controller PCB	1. Original leading edge stop position adjustment

*1: If you have replaced the composite power supply PCB, check copy images using the Test Sheet; if (and only if) an image fault is found, adjust the intensity of the scanning lamp and execute AE adjustment.

Table 2-6

2. Adjusting the Intensity of the Scanning Lamp

You must perform this adjustment whenever you have replaced any of the following:

- DC controller PCB
- Composite power supply PCB (See p. 2-37.)
- Scanning lamp

Caution:

If you have performed this adjustment, be sure to perform AE adjustment.

Making Adjustments

- If you have replaced the DC controller PCB or the composite power supply PCB,

1) Select '38' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '38'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value recorded on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new setting.

- If you have replaced the scanning lamp,

1) Set the Density correction dial (VR107) to the middle.

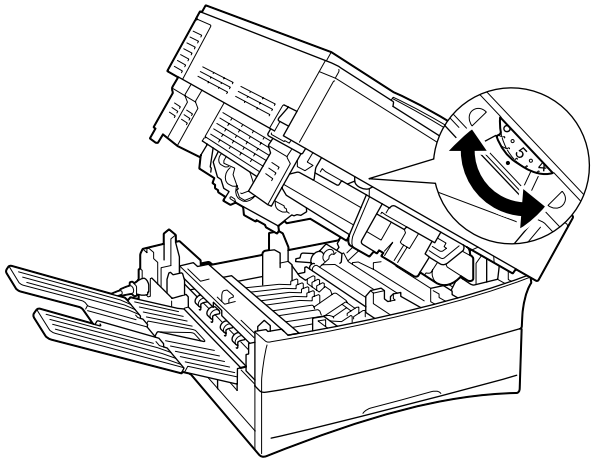


Figure 2-61

2) Turn off the AE mechanism, and set the Copy Density Adjustment lever on the control panel to the middle.
3) Place the Test Sheet on the copyboard.
4) Select '38' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '38'.
5) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.

6) Change the setting using the +/- key until gray scale No. 9 is barely visible by way of adjusting the intensity of the scanning lamp.
   • The setting may be between 0 and 99.
   • For each '1', the lamp supply voltage will change about 0.15 V (for 120V model) or about 0.30 V (for 220/240V model).
   • A higher setting will decrease the intensity of the lamp, thereby making copies darker.
   • A lower setting will increase the intensity of the lamp, thereby making copies lighter.

3. AE Adjustment

Perform this adjustment if you have replaced any of the following:

- DC controller PCB
- Composite power supply PCB (See p.2-37)
- AE sensor PCB
- Scanning lamp

Making Adjustments

Preparatory Work

- Obtain a newspaper which is more or less even in density. (Avoid ones with photos or large text characters.)
- Obtain five sheets of white sheets of paper
- Make sure that the intensity of the scanning lamp has been adjusted when you have replaced the scanning lamp.
- Set the density correction dial (VR107) to the middle setting.

1) Select '40' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '40'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The scanner will move forward, and the scanning lamp will turn on.
3) Turn VR103 on the DC controller PCB fully clockwise.

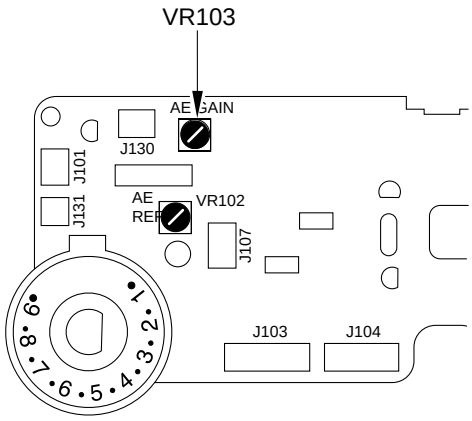


Figure 2-62

4) Place a newspaper on the copyboard, and close the copyboard cover.
5) Turn VR102 so that the reading in the display is 'A3' through 'Ad'.

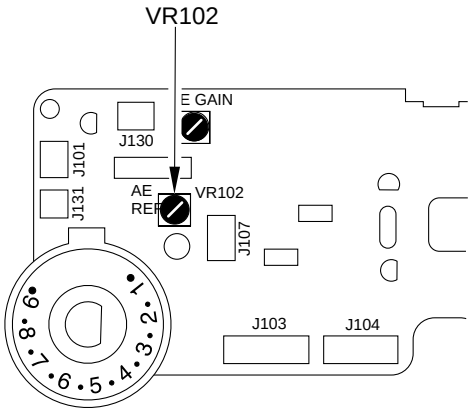


Figure 2-63

6) Remove the newspaper from the copyboard, and place five sheets of copy paper on the copyboard glass in its place; then, close the copyboard cover.
7) Turn VR103 on the DC controller PCB so that the reading on the control panel is '52' through '5c'.

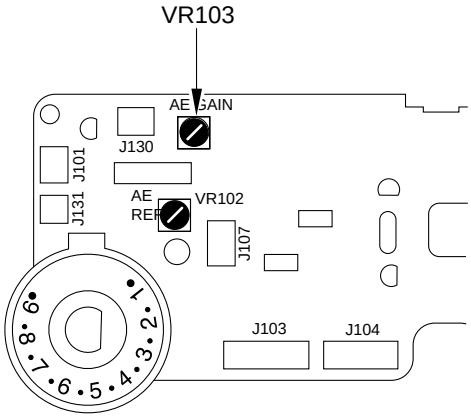


Figure 2-64

8) Repeat steps 4) through 7) so that the values of both VR102 and VR103 are target values.

Caution:

If you cannot set VR102 and VR103 to the target values at the same time, turn VR103 fully counterclockwise, and go back to step 4) and make adjustments once again.

9) Make a copy, and check to make sure that the density of characters is adequate.
   • If the copy is foggy or its characters are too light, go back to step 1) and start over.
   • If there is no change after adjustment for a second time, use the density correction dial (VR107).

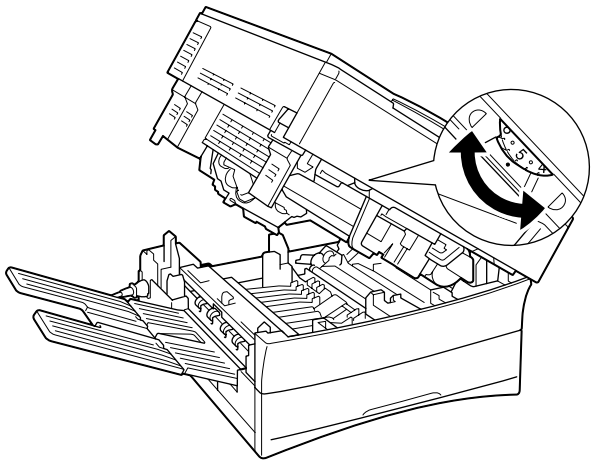


Figure 2-65

4. Primary Charging Output Voltage Correction (PRIMARY)

Perform this adjustment whenever you have replaced any of the following:
- DC controller PCB
- Drum unit

Making Adjustments
- If you have replaced the DC controller PCB,

1) Select '32' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '32'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'PRIMARY' recorded on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new value.

- If you have replaced the drum unit, execute ‘Installation/drum unit replacement mode’ (U7) in the user mode.

5. APVC Measurement Current Correction (IP_OFST)

Perform this adjustment whenever you have replaced any of the following:
- DC controller PCB
- Drum unit

Making Adjustments
- If you have replaced the DC controller PCB,

1) Select '33' in service mode.
   - The display indicate '33'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'IP_OFST' recorded on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new value.

- If you have replaced the drum unit, execute ‘Installation/drum unit replacement mode’ (U7) in the user mode.

6. Voltage Correction for Measurement of APVC (PW_OFST)

Perform this adjustment if you have replaced any of the following:
- DC controller PCB
- Composite power supply PCB

Making Adjustments

1) Select '34' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '34'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'PW_OFST' recorded on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new value.
5) Execute 'U7' in user mode (installation/drum replacement mode).

- If you have replaced the composite power supply PCB,

1) Select '34' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '34'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'PW_OFST' indicated on the new composite power supply PCB using the +/- key.

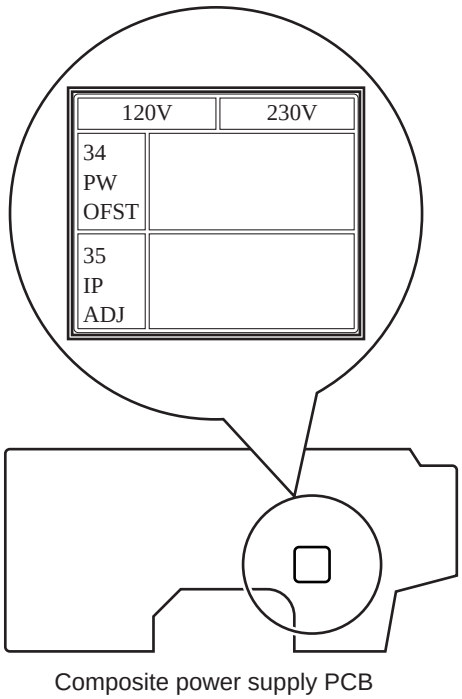


Figure 2-66

4) Press the AE key to store the value.
5) Record the new value on the service label.
6) Execute 'U7' in user mode (installation/drum replacement mode).

7. Current Correction for Measurement of APVC (IP_ADJ)

Perform this adjustment whenever you have replaced any of the following parts:

- DC controller PCB
- Composite power supply PCB

Making Adjustments

- If you have replaced the DC controller PCB,

1) Select '35' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '35'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'IP_ADJ' recorded on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new setting.

- If you have replaced the composite power supply PCB,

1) Select '35' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '35'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'IP_ADJ indicated on the new composite power supply PCB using the +/- key.

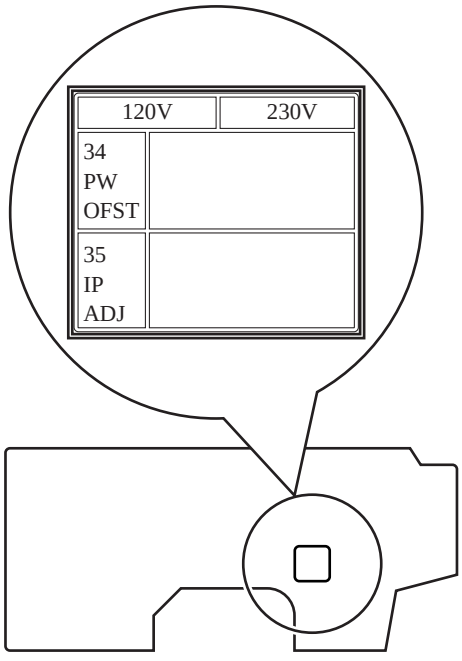


Figure 2-67

4) Enter the AE key to store the new setting.
5) Record the new value on the service label.

8. Ratio Fine Adjustment (LENS_ADJ)

Perform this adjustment whenever you have replaced the following:
- DC controller PCB

Making Adjustments
- When you have adjusted the DC controller PCB,

1) Select '36' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '36'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'LENS_ADJ' indicated on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new value.

9. Pre-Exposure Lamp Output Adjustment (PREX_LP)

Perform this adjustment whenever you have replaced any of the following:
- DC controller PCB
- Pre-exposure lamp

Making Adjustments
- If you have replaced the DC controller PCB,

1) Select '37' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '37'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'PREX_LP' recorded on the service label using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new value.
5) Execute 'U7' in user mode (installation/drum replacement mode).

- If you have replaced the pre-exposure lamp,

1) Select '37' in service mode.
   - The display will indicate '37'.
2) Press the Copy Start key.
   - The existing setting will flash.
3) Enter the value of 'PREX_LP' recorded on the label attached to the new pre-exposure lamp using the +/- key.
4) Press the AE key to store the new value.
5) Execute 'U7' in user mode (installation/drum replacement mode).

10. Checking the Photointerrupters

1) Set the meter range to 12 VDC.
2) Connect the - probe [1] of the meter to the grounding terminal [2].

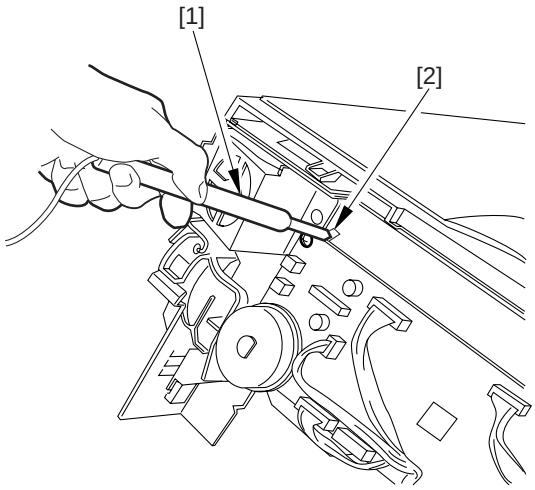


Figure 2-68

3) Make checks as instructed.

Reference:

The photointerrupers other than those shown in Table 2-9 are connected in a matrix, hence the omission from the table.

Sensor	Connector	Checks		Voltage (approx.)
PS1 Scanner home position sensor (SCHP)	J101-3	During standby, move the scanner by hand.	When the light-blocking plate is at PS1, When the light-blocking plate is not at PS1,	5V 0V
PS2 Lens home position sensor (LHP)	J109-10	During standby, move the lens mount by hand.	When the light-blocking plate is at PS2, When the light-blocking plate is not at PS2,	5V 0V
PS4 Vertical path roller paper sensor (PDP)	J132-5	During standby, move the detecting lever by hand.	When the light-blocking plate is at PS4, When the light-blocking plate is not at PS4,	5V 0V
Q751 Pre-registration roller paper sensor (RPD)	J108-1	During standby, move the detecting lever by hand.	When the light-blocking plate is at Q751, When the light-blocking plate is not at Q751,	0V 5V

Table 2-9

CHAPTER 3 ARRANGEMENT AND FUNCTIONS OF ELECTRICAL PARTS

A. Sensors and Solenoids

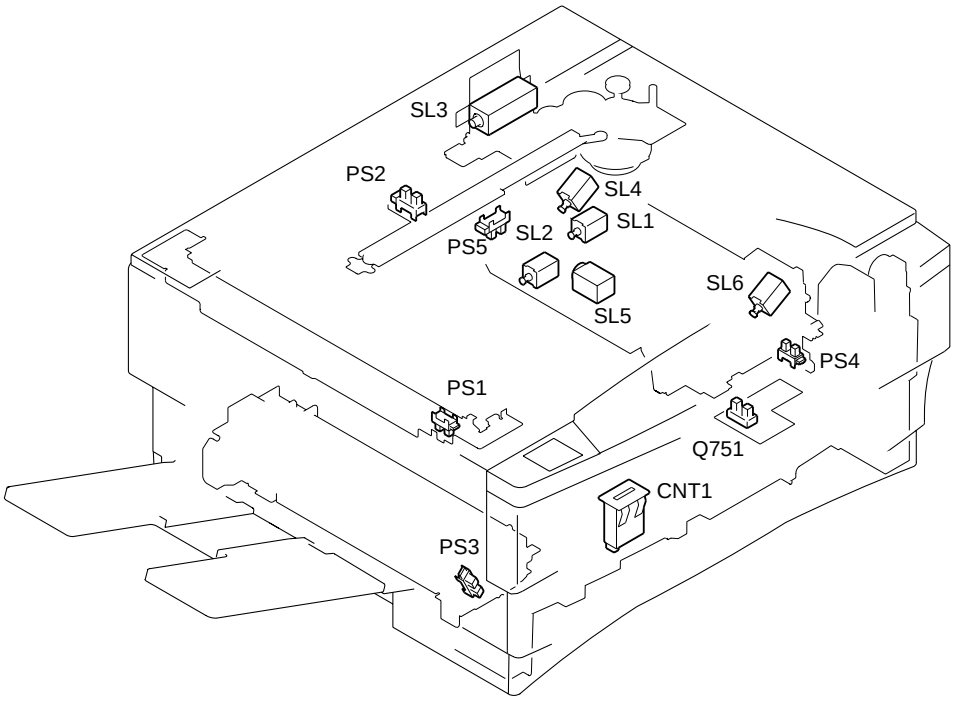


Figure 3-1

Symbol	Name	Notation	Description	Remarks
PS	Photointerrupters	PS1	Scanner home position detection	
		PS2	Lens home position detection	
		PS3	Delivery assembly paper detection	
		PS4	Vertical path assembly paper detection	
		PS5	Waste toner detection	
		Q751	Pre-registration roller paper detection	
CNT	Counter	CNT1	Total copy counter	
SL	Solenoid	SL1	Pickup clutch solenoid	
		SL2	Registration clutch solenoid	
		SL3	Lens solenoid	
		SL4	Multifeeder pickup solenoid	
		SL5	Cassette pickup solenoid	
		SL6	Primary charging roller cleaning solenoid	

B. Switches

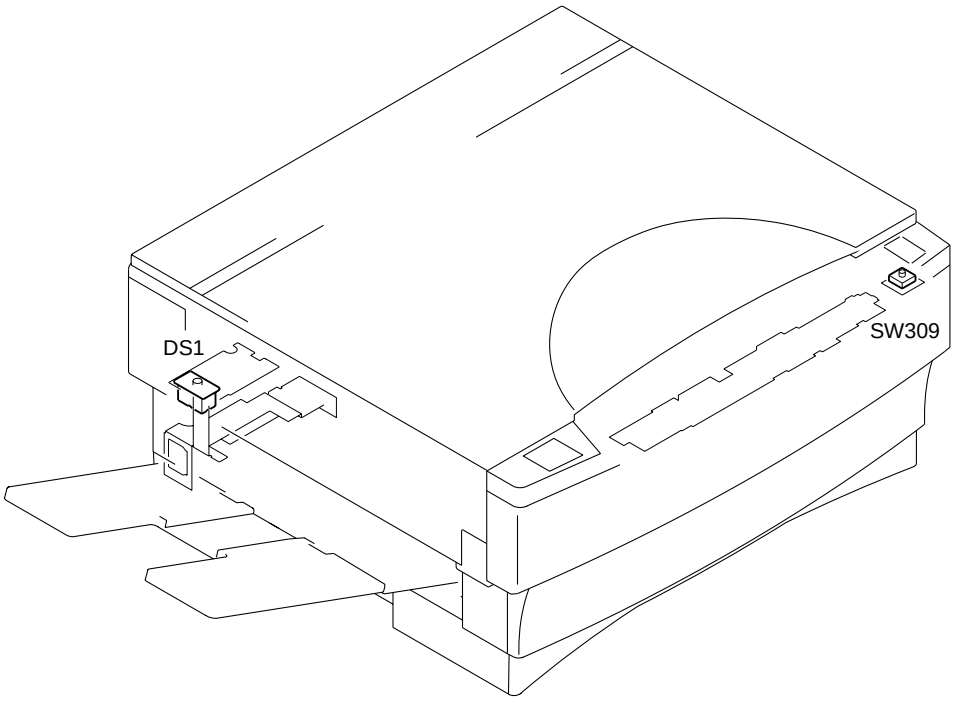
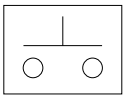


Figure 3-2

Symbol	Name	Notation	Description	Remarks
	Switch	DS1 SW309	Door switch Power switch	

C. Lamp, Heater, Motor, Etc.

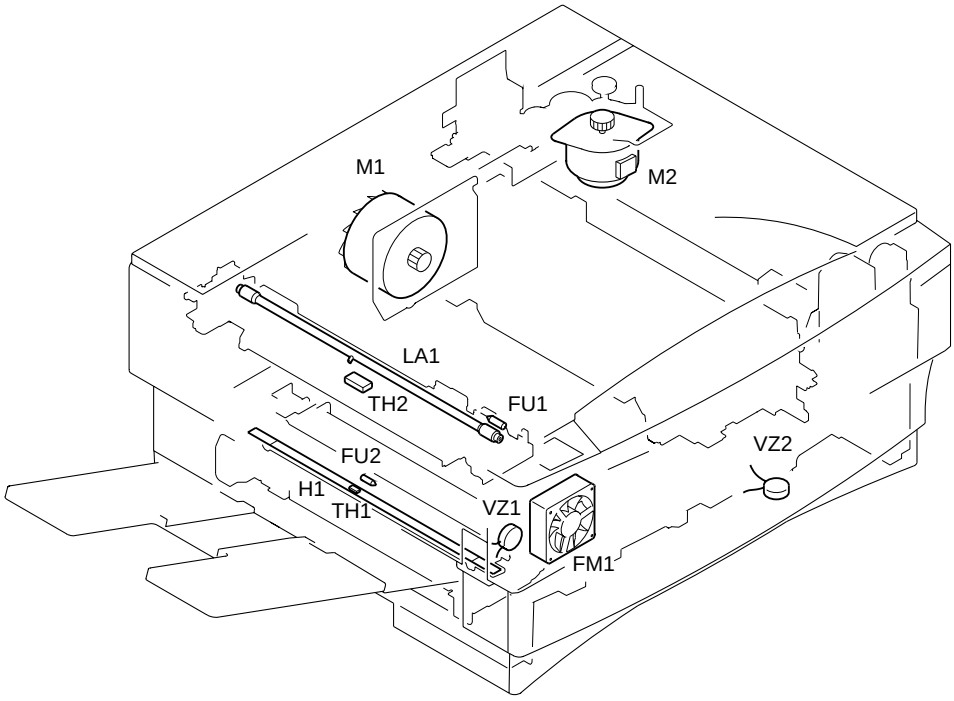


Figure 3-3

Symbol	Name	Notation	Description	Remarks
	Lamp	LA1	Scanning lamp	
	Heater	H1	Fixing heater	
M	Motor	M1 M2	Main motor Scanner/lens drive motor	
	Fan motor	FM1	Scanner cooling fan	
	Thermistor	TH1 TH2	Fixing heater temperature detection Scanner temperature detection	
	Thermal fuse	FU1 FU2	Lamp overheating detection Fixing heater overheating detection	
	Varistor	VZ1 VZ2	Fixing film varistor Transfer guide varistor	

D. PCBs

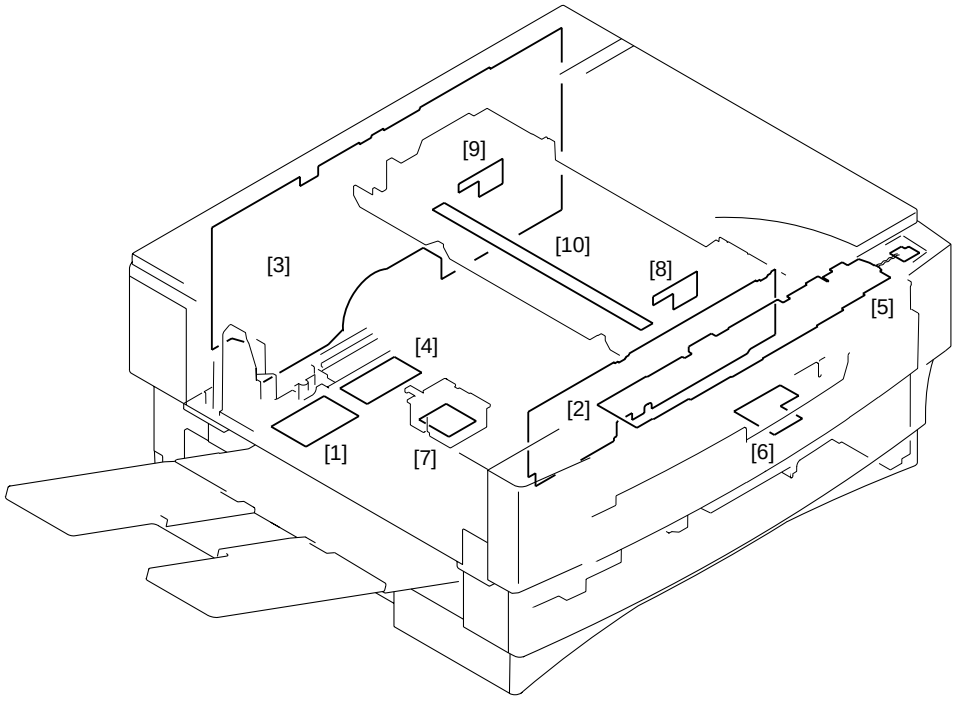


Figure 3-4

Ref.	Name	Description
[1]	Noise filter PCB	Removes noise from the power supply.
[2]	DC controller PCB	Controls sequence of operations.
[3]	Composite power supply PCB	Supplies DC power, generates high voltage, and controls the scanning lamp.
[4]	High-voltage contact PCB	Makes an electrical connection between the machine top and bottom.
[5]	Control panel PCB	Provides copying insurrections/indications.
[6]	Sensor PCB	Detects paper in front of the registration roller.
[7]	AE sensor PCB	Detects the density of originals.
[8]	Blanking PCB (front)	Used for blanking exposure.
[9]	Blanking PCB (rear)	Used for blanking exposure.
[10]	Pre-exposure PCB	Used for pre-exposure.

E. ADF

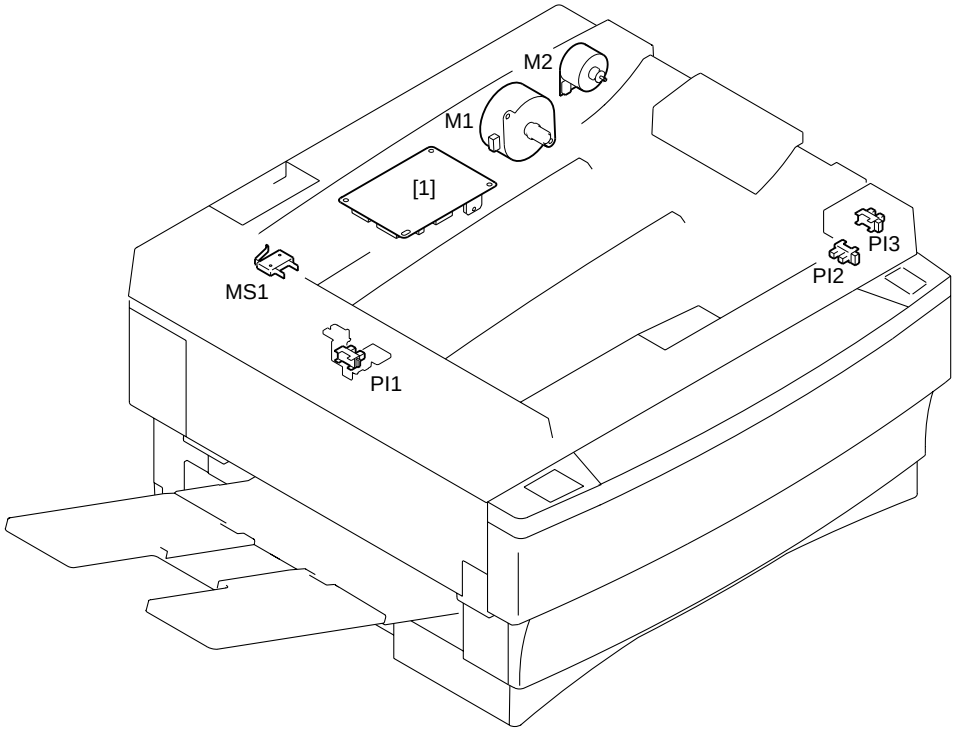


Figure 3-5

Symbol	Name	Notation	Description	Remarks
PS	Photointerrupter	PI1 PI2 PI3	Delivery paper detection Resistration roller paper detection Original placement detection	
	Microswitch	MS1	ADF open/close switch	
M	Motor	M1 M2	Belt motor Pickup motor	
[1]	ADF controller PCB		Controls sequence of operations	

F. Variable Resistors (VR) and Check Pins by PCB

Of the variable resistors (VR) and check pins, those needed in the field are discussed herein. Those not found in the discussions are for the factory only, requiring special tools and adjustment to an extremely accuracy. Do not touch them in the field.

Caution:
VRs that may be used in the field .....
VRs that must not be used in the field .....

1. DC Controller PCB

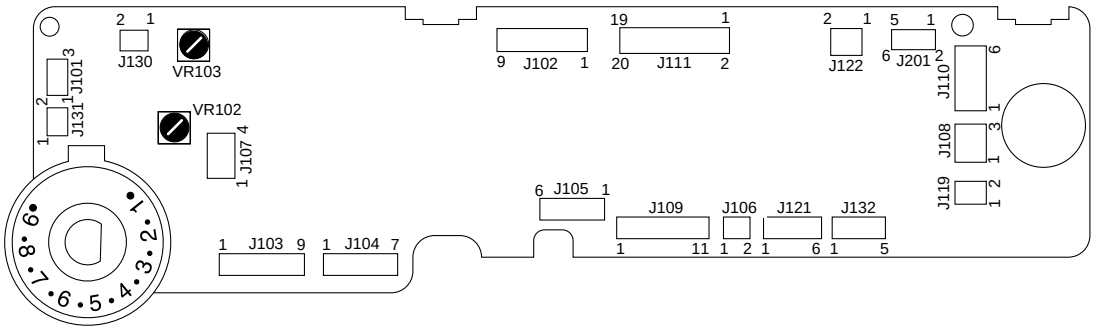


Figure 3-6

2. Composite Power Supply PCB

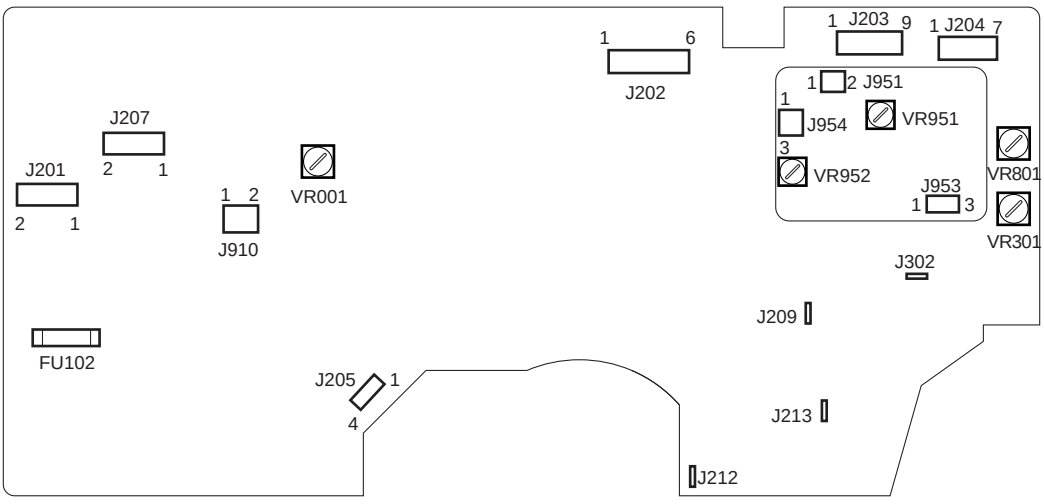


Figure 3-7

3. ADF Controller PCB

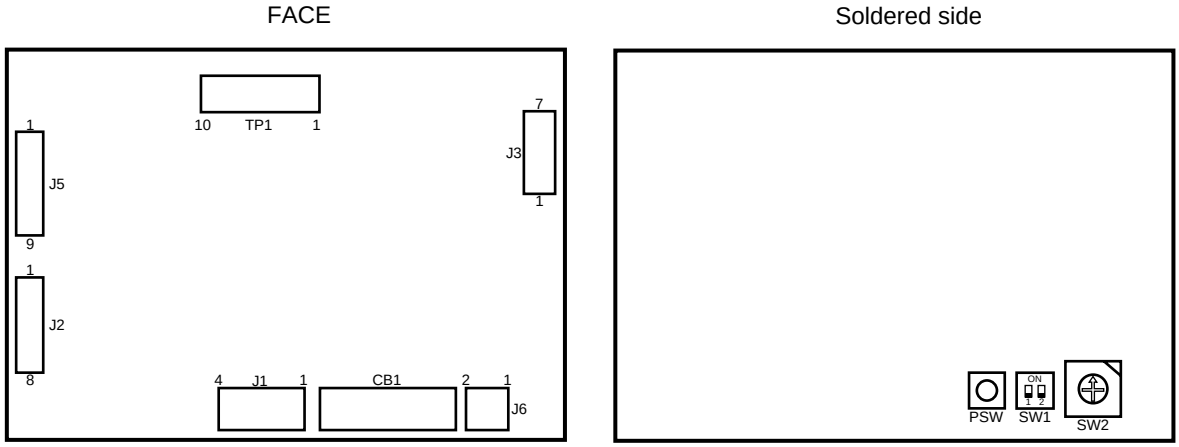


Figure 3-8

CHAPTER 4 SERVICE MODE

A. Outline

The machine's service mode is divided into the following four types:

Notation	Item
30	Adjustment mode
40	Operation/inspection mode
50	Machine settings mode
60	Counter mode

Table 4-1

B. Using Service Mode

1. Starting Service Mode

1) Open the machine's top unit, and remove the two screws [1]; then, detach the front upper cover [2].

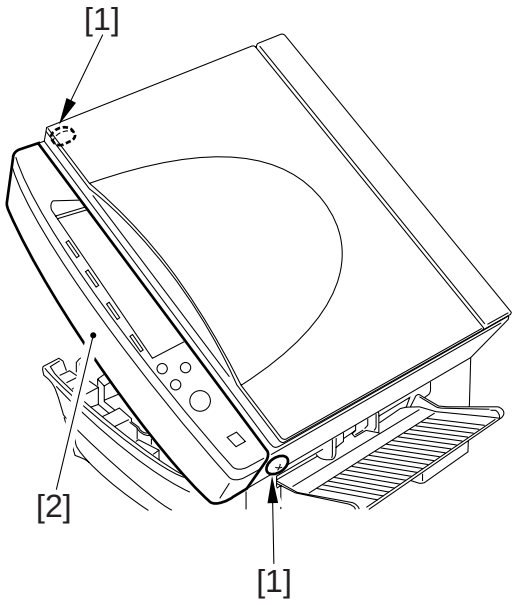


Figure 4-1

Caution:

A flexible cable for the control panel is connected to the front upper cover. Disconnect the cable from the DC controller.

2) Close the machine's top unit, and connect the flexible cable from the control to the DC controller PCB; then, turn on the power switch.
3) Short JP103 and JP104 on the DC controller PCB with a screwdriver.
   • The display will indicate 'F'.

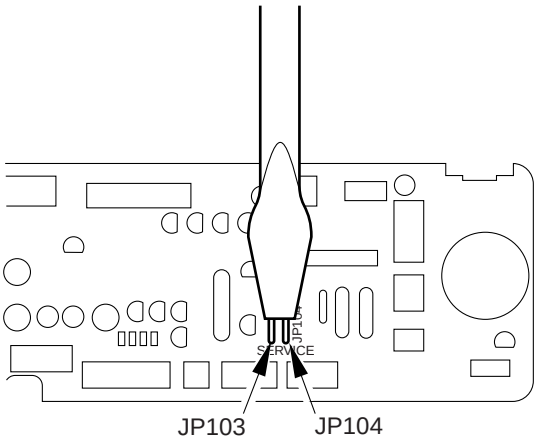


Figure 4-2

4) While the display indicates 'F', stop shorting JP103 and JP104.

2. Ending Service Mode

1) Press the Clear/Stop key.

3. Selecting an Item

1) While the display is indicating 'F', press the +/- key to select the item to check or adjust.
   • The 10s digit will flash.
2) Press the Copy Start key to start the item.

4. Clearing the Error Code from Memory

If 'E000', 'E001', 'E002', or 'E003' is indicated, remove the cause of the error, and clear the memory.

1) Turn on the power while shorting JP103 and JP104 on the DC controller PCB with a screwdriver.
   • The display will indicate 'F'.

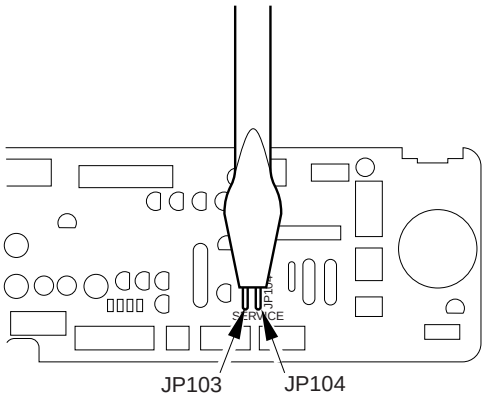


Figure 4-3

2) Turn off and then on the power switch to check the copying operation.

Caution:

When a fault associated with 'E000', 'E001', 'E002', or 'E003' is detected, the power will automatically turn off. It will still turn off even when turned on without removing the fault.
To find out which code turned off the power, disconnect J207 from the composite power supply PCB, and turn on the power.
Figure 4-4 shows the label attached behind the front upper cover. At the factory, each individual machine is adjusted, and its adjustment values are recorded on the label.
If you have entered any new value in the field, be sure to record it on the label. If you have replaced the DC controller PCB, be sure to enter the values recorded on the label in service mode.
If you have replaced the drum unit, composite power supply PCB, or pre-exposure PCB, on the other hand, be sure to enter the values recorded on the label of the appropriate part. Then, record these values on the service label.

30	REGIST				
31	LE_BLANK				
32	PRIMARY				
33	IP_OFST				
34	PW_OFST				
35	IP_ADJ				
36	LENS_ADJ				
37	PREX_LP				
38	LAMP_ADJ				

FB5-2777

Figure 4-4

C. Adjustment Mode (30)

1) Press the +/- key to select an item, and press the Copy Start key.
   • The existing setting of the item will flash.
2) Press the +/- key to change the settings.
3) Press the AE key to store the new setting.
   • The setting will stop flashing and remain on.
   • A press on the Copy Start key will start copying operation.
4) As necessary, press the Clear/Stop key to return to item selection.

Caution:

If you have changed the setting of '34' or '37', be sure to execute 'U7' in user mode (installation/drum replacement mode).

Notation	Item	Settings	Description
30	Leading edge margin adjustment (REGIST)	0-99	A higher setting will delay the copy paper in relation to the image, reducing the margin. Unit: 0.24 mm
31	Leading edge non-image width adjustment (LE_BLANK)	0-99	A higher setting will increase the leading edge non-image width. Unit: 0.24 mm
32	Primary charging output voltage correction (PRIMARY)	0-30	Use it to correct the output voltage determined by APVC. (If you have replaced the drum unit, be sure to enter the value recorded on the label.)
33	APVC measurement current correction (IP_OFST)	0-99	Correct the current value for APVC measurement. (If you have replaced the drum unit, be sure to enter the value recorded on the label.)
34	APVC measurement voltage correction (PW_OFST)	0-30	Use it to correct the level of voltage applied during APVC measurement. (If you have replaced the composite power supply PCB, enter the value recorded on the PCB.)
35	APVC measurement current correction (IP_ADJ)	0-30	Use it to correct the level of current measured during APVC measurement. (If you have replaced the composite power supply PCB, enter the value recorded on the PCB.)
36	Ratio fine adjustment (LENS_ADJ)	0-30	Use it to correct the lens position. (Do not use it in the field.)
37	Pre-exposure lamp output adjustment (PREX_LP)	0-99	Use it to adjust the intensity of the pre-exposure lamp. (If you have replaced the pre-exposure lamp, enter the value recorded on the label attached to the lamp PCB.)
38	Lamp intensity adjustment (LAMP_ADJ)	0-99	Use it to adjust the intensity of the scanning lamp. Unit: 0.15 V (approx.; 120 V) 0.30 V (approx.; 220/240 V)

Table 4-2

D. Operation/Inspection Mode (40)

1) Select an appropriate item using the +/- key; then, press the Copy Start key to execute it.
   • The item is flashed.
   • If the mode is designed to stop automatically, item selection will automatically return at the end.
   • As necessary, press the Clear/Stop key to return item selection.

Notation	Item	Description
40	AE adjustment mode	The main motor rotates, and the scanner moves forward. The halogen lamp will turn on, and the reading of the AE sensor will appear in the display.
41	Toner supply mode	The developing assembly is supplied with toner. (If you have replaced the developing assembly, execute this mode so that toner will be supplied from the toner cartridge to the developing assembly.) • In about 10 to 60 sec, the operation will stop automatically.
42	Back-up RAM clear	(1) Press the +/- key to select '42'. • '4' will flash in the 10s digit. (2) Press the Copy Start key. • '42' will flash. (3) Press the AE key. • The display will indicate 'EE'. (4) Press the Copy Start key. • '4' in the 10s digit will flash. (5) Turn off and then on the power switch. • The back-up RAM will be cleared, and the settings will be returned to defaults. Reference: If you have to stop the RAM clear mechanism, press the Clear/Stop key before starting step (4). The RAM will be cleared when step (4) is executed.

Table 4-3

E. Machine Settings Mode (50)

1) Press the +/- key to select an item, and press the Copy Start key.
   • The setting will flash.
2) Press the +/- key to change the setting.
3) Press the AE key to store the new setting.
   • The setting will stop flashing, and remain on.
4) As necessary, press the Clear/Stop key to return to item selection.

Notation	Item	Description
50	Copy count upper limit setting	The upper limit may be between 1 and 100. Setting: 0 to 99 (If set to '0', however, the upper limit will be 100.)
51	Density adjustment mode at power-on	Select AE mode or manual mode for density adjustment at power-on: • 0: AE • If other than '0', manual mode.

Table 4-4

F. Counter Mode (60)

1) Press the +/- key to select an item, and press the Copy Start key.
   • The counter reading will be indicated.
2) As necessary, press the Clear/Stop key to return to item selection.

Notation	Item	Description
60	Counter for the drum unit currently in use	Unit: 1000 (sheets)
61	Counter for the most recent drum unit	Unit: 1000 (sheets)
62	Counter for the second most recent drum unit	Unit: 1000 (sheets)

Table 4-5

Reference:

When '74' (installation toner stirring mode under 'U7'' of user mode) is executed, the counter reading entered under '73' (preceding mode) will be entered to item 60. The counter readings so far retained will shift to represent their respective previous drum units.

(In other words, the count reading entered when executing 'U7' will be for item 60; count reading for item 60 will be for item 61; count reading for item 61 will be for item 62; count reading for item 62 will be deleted.)

CHAPTER 5 SELF DIAGNOSIS

A. Self Diagnosis

The microprocessor on the machine's DC controller PCB is equipped with a self diagnostic mechanism that checks the condition of the machine (particularly, sensors) and indicates an error code in the count/ratio indicator on the control panel upon detection of a fault.

In the case of 'E001', 'E0' and '01' are flashed alternately.

Code	Cause	Description
E000	• The thermistor (TH1) is faulty. • The fixing heater (H1) is faulty. • The thermal fuse (FU2) has blown. • The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) does not reach 65°C 1.5 sec after the Copy Start key has been pressed. • The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) does not reach 150°C 4 sec after the Copy Start key has been pressed.
E001	• The thermistor (TH1) is faulty. • The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) exceeds 230°C. • The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) exceeds by 30°C or more. • The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) registers an increase of 100°C or more within 1 sec. • The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) registers an increase of 40°C or more after it has reached 100°C during standby.
E002	• The thermistor (TH1) is faulty. • The fixing heater (H1) is faulty. • The thermal fuse (FU2) has blown. • The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) has exeeded 150°C during copy operation and maximum power is applied for 10 to 14 sec thereafter.
E003	• The thermistor (TH1) is faulty. • The fixing heater (H1) is faulty. • The thermal fuse (FU2) has blown. • The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• The temperature detected by the thermistor (TH1) drops to and remains 150°C or lower after it has reached 160°C.
E010	• The main motor (M1) is fault. • The DC controller PCB is faulty.	• The rotation of the main motor deviates (indicated by MLOCK=0) for 1 sec or more while the main motor drive signal (MMD=1) is being generated.
E030	• The counter has an open circuit.	• The counter drive signal is not generated when the counter is driven. • The counter drive signal is not '0' when the counter is not driven.

Code	Cause	Description
E064	• The composite power supply PCB is faulty. • The DC controller PCB is faulty.	• The actual output value of the composite power supply high voltage is different from the setting value twice in succession.
(E202) The keys on the control panel are locked with error code indication.	• The scanner home position sensor (PS1) is faulty. • The scanner/lens drive motor (M2) is faulty. • The DC controller PCB is faulty.	• The scanner home position is not detected within 10 sec after the scanner has turned on. • The scanner does not leave the home position after it has turned on.
E210	• The lens home position sensor (PS2) is faulty. • The scanner/lens drive motor (M2) is faulty. • The lens cable is faulty. • The DC controller PCB is faulty.	• The lens hoe position is not detected after the lens has moved the maximum travel distance. • The lens does not leave the home position after it has turned on.
E220	• The scanning lamp (LA1) is faulty. • The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• The lamp ON detection signal is not detected for 1 sec or more in the presence of the scanning lamp On signal. • The lamp ON detection signal is detected for 1 sec or more in the absence of the scanning lamp ON signal.
E240	• The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• A fault in the communication between DC controller PCB and composite power supply PCB is detected.
E261	• The frequency of the power supply is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• The interval between zero-cross signals is in excess of the allowed interval.
E400	• Data communication between the copier and the ADF (faulty)	• The communication with the copier is interrupted for 5 sec or more; the communication is monitored at all times.
E803	• The DC controller PCB is faulty. • The composite power supply PCB is faulty.	• During a copying run, the +24 V power deviates from the control value by ±20%.

Caution:

1. If the self-diagnosis has turned on, turn off the power switch to reset the machine.
   In the case of 'E000', 'E001', 'E002', or 'E003', however, the machine must be reset as follows: this consideration is to prevent feeding power to the fixing heater otherwise occurring if the thermistor has an open circuit:
2. In the case of 'E000', 'E001', 'E002', 'E003', or 'E220', the machine will turn off in 1.5 sec for 'E000' through 'E003' and in 2 sec for 'E220'.
3. In the case of 'E000', 'E001', 'E002', or 'E003', perform the following steps:
   1) Turn off the power switch, and short circuit JP103 and JP104 on the DC controller PCB with a screwdriver or the like.
      • The count/ratio indicator on the control panel turns on 'F'.

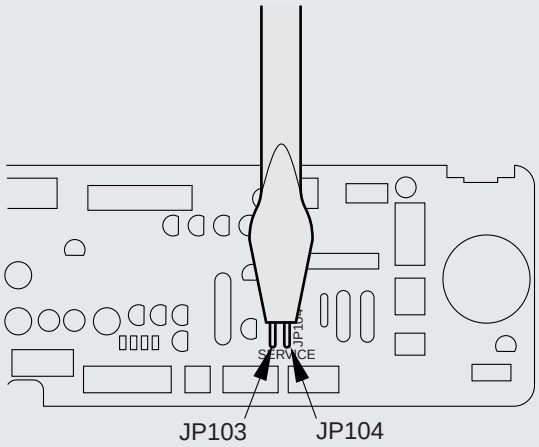


Figure 5-1

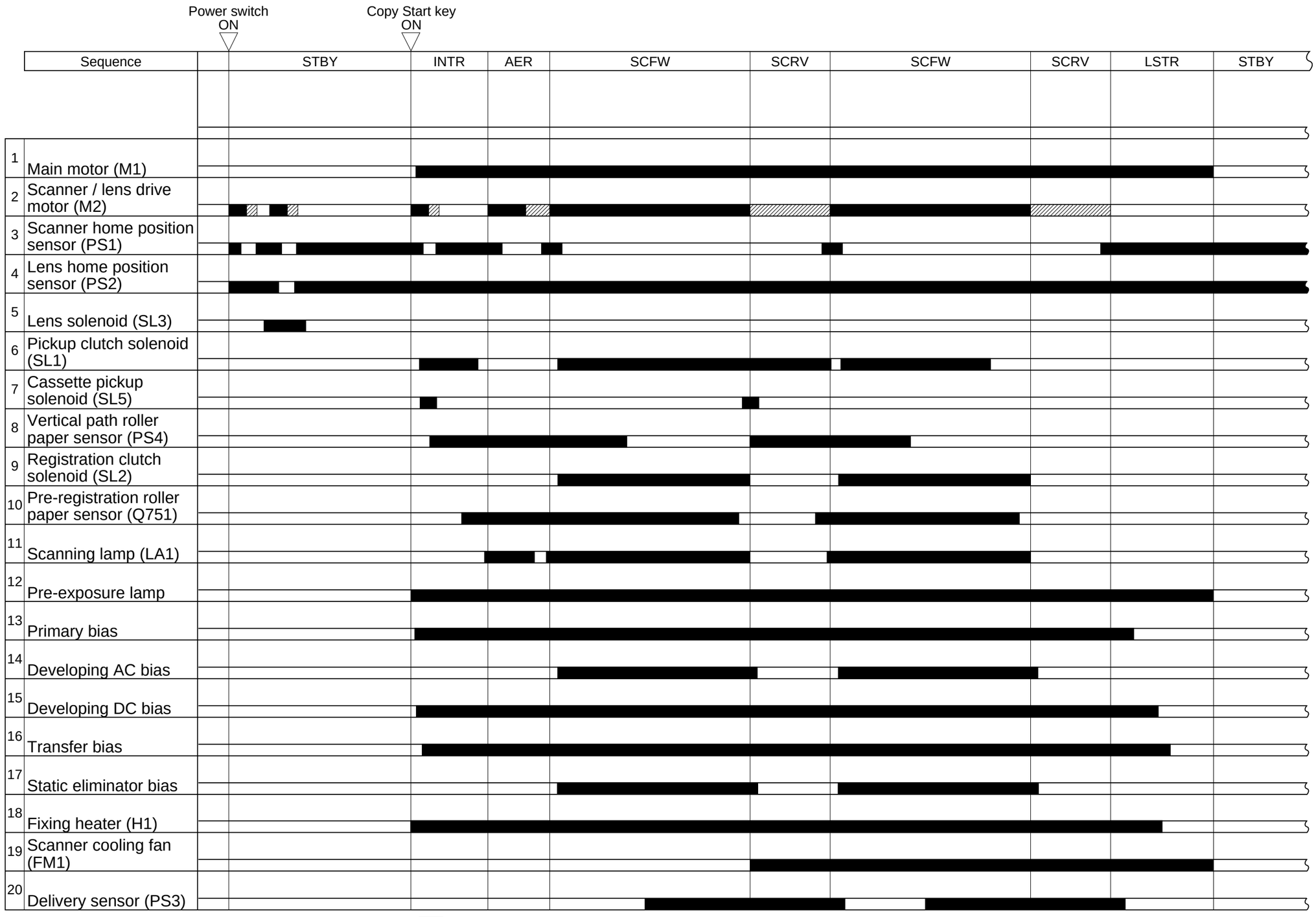
   2) When 'F' has turned on, stop shorting circuit JP103 and JP104.
   3) Turn off and then on the machine.

APPENDIX

A. General Timing Chart

1. Copyboard Type

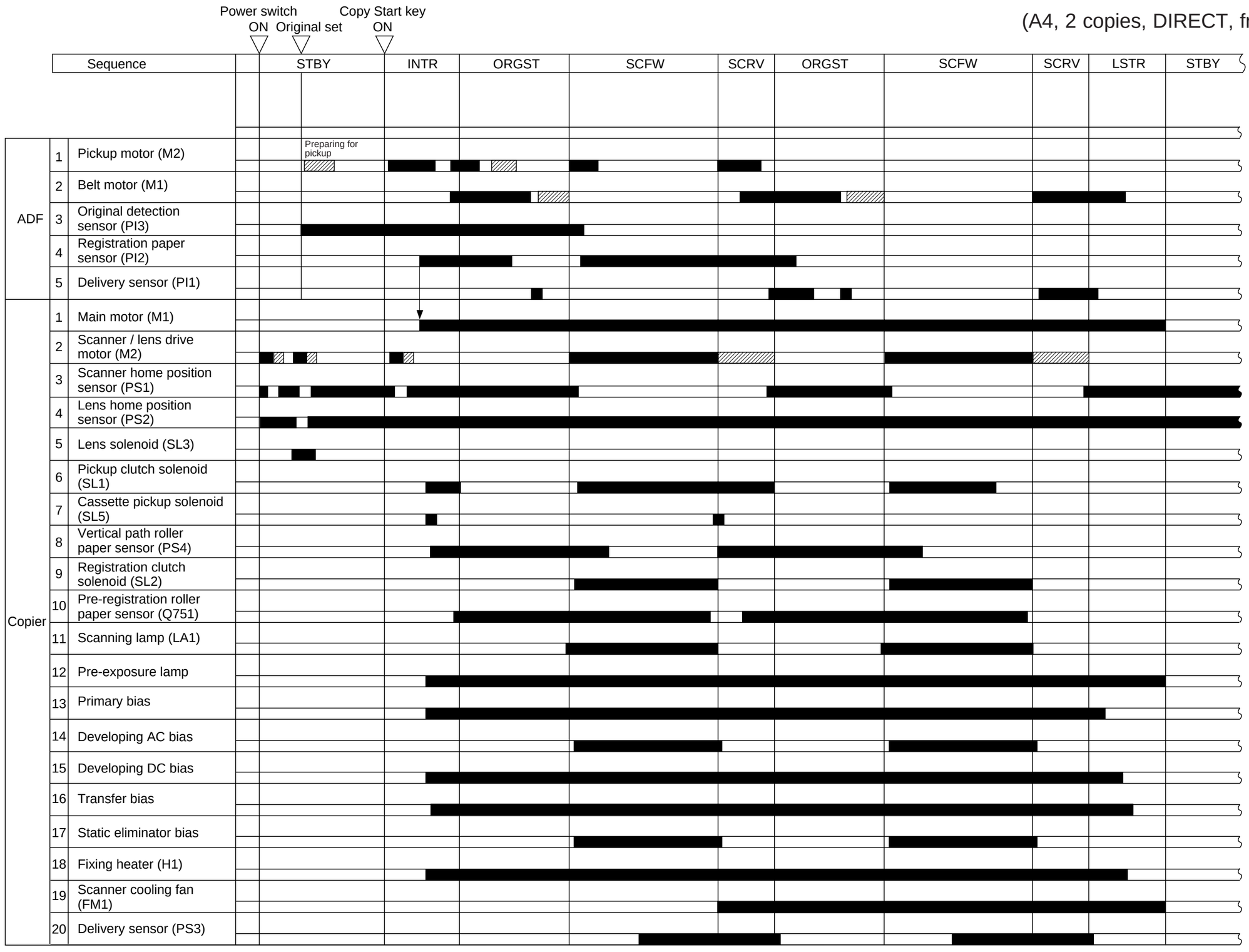
(A4, 2 copies, DIRECT, from cassette)



▨ : Scanner/lens drive motor (reverse)

2. ADF Type

(A4, 2 copies, DIRECT, from cassette)



: Scanner/lens drive motor (reverse)/Pickup motor (reverse)/Belt motor (reverse)

B. Signals and Abbreviations

What follows below is a list of signals and abbreviations used in the chapters of the manual and circuit diagrams.
The abbreviations within parentheses represent analog signals, which cannot be expressed in terms of ‘1’ or ‘0’.

1. Signals

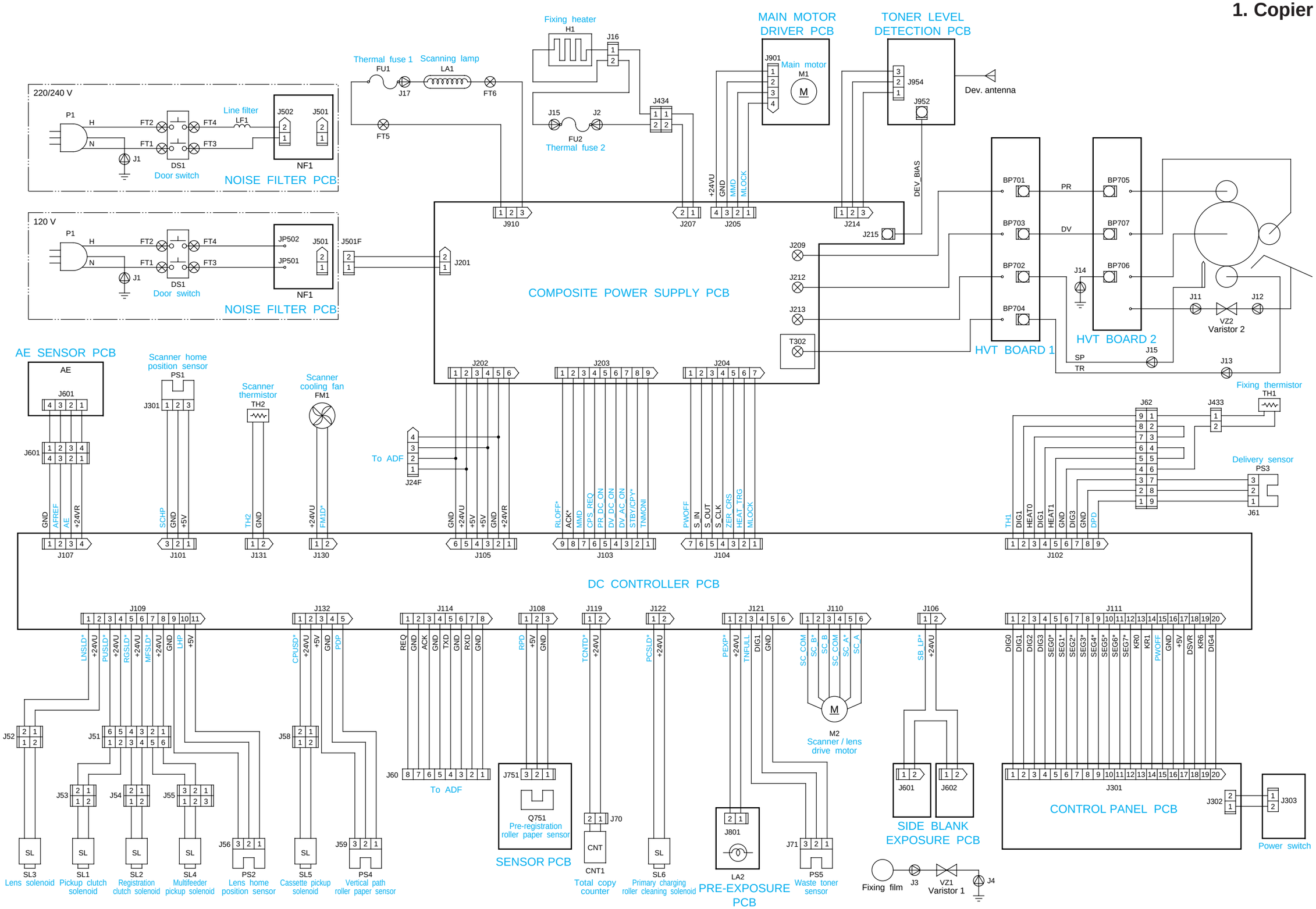
ACBIAS	AC BIAS OSCILLATION signal
[AE]	AE SENSOR OUTPUT signal
AEREF	AE SENSOR REFERENCE signal
BIAS_PWM	DC BIAS CONTROL signal
BIAS_S	DC BIAS MONITOR signal
CLK32K	TRANSFORMER CONTROL signal
CPUSD	CASSETTE PICKUP SOLENOID DRIVE signal
DPD	DELIVERY PAPER DETECTION signal
DV_AC_ON	DEVELOPING AC BIAS ON signal
DV_DC_ON	DEVELOPING DC BIAS ON signal
FM1D	SCANNER COOLING FAN DRIVE signal
HEAT_ERR	FIXING HEATER ERROR signal
HEAT_OFF	FIXING HEATER OFF signal
HEAT_PWM	FIXING HEATER DUTY signal
HEAT_TRG	FIXING HEATER DRIVE signal
LAMP_DETECT	LAMP ACTIVATION DETECTION signal
LAMP_ON	SCANNING LAMP ACTIVATION signal
LHP	LENS HOME POSITION signal
LNSLD	LENS SOLENOID DRIVE signal
MFSLD	MULTIFEEDER PICKUP SOLENOID DRIVE signal
MLOCK	MAIN MOTOR CONSTANT SPEED signal
MMCLK	MAIN MOTOR CLOCK PULSE signal
MMD	MAIN MOTOR DRIVE signal
P_C_S	DC BIAS CURRENT DETECTION signal
PCSLD	DC VOLTAGE MONITOR signal
PDC_PWM	DC BIAS CONTROL signal
PDC_S	DC VOLTAGE MONITOR signal
PDP	VERTICAL PATH ROLLER PAPER DETECTION signal
PEXP	PRE-EXPOSURE LAMP CONTROL signal
PR_DC_ON	PRIMARY CHARGING DC BIAS ON signal
PUSLD	PICKUP CLUTCH SOLENOID DRIVE signal
PWM_1KHz	SCANNING LAMP INTENSITY ADJUSTMENT signal
PWOFF	POWER SWITCH OFF signal
RGSLD	REGISTRATION CLUTCH SOLENOID DRIVE signal
RLOFF	RELAY DRIVE signal
RPD	PRE-REGISTRATION ROLLER PAPER DETECTION signal
SB_LP	SIDE BLANK EXPOSURE LAMP ON signal
SC_A	SCANNER MOTOR PULSE signal A
SC_B	SCANNER MOTOR PULSE signal B
SC_COM	SCANNER MOTOR DRIVE signal
SCHP	SCANNER HOME POSITION signal
TCNTD	TOTAL COPY COUNTER DRIVE signal
T_FEEDBACK	TRANSFER BIAS VOLTAGE DETECTION signal
T_FW_DRV	TRANSFER DC BIAS CONTROL signal
T_FW_ON	TRANSFER DC BIAS ON signal
T_FW_S	TRANSFER CURRENT DETECTION signal
TNFULL	WASTE TONER DETECTION signal
TNMONI	TONER LEVEL signal
T_REV_ON	TRANSFER POSITIVE DC BIAS ON signal
[TH1]	FIXING THERMISTOR signal
[TH2]	SCANNER THERMISTOR signal

2. Abbreviations

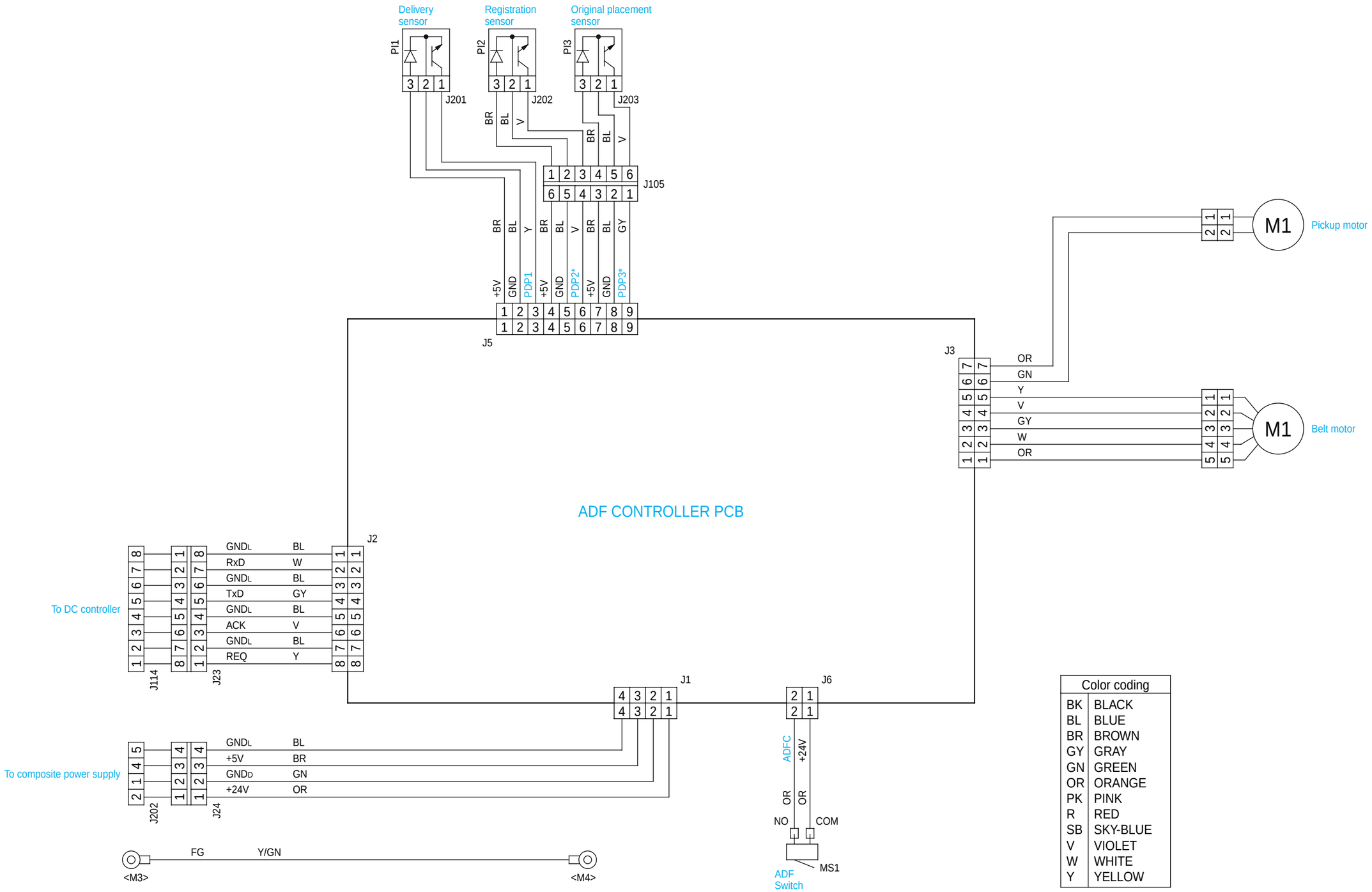
AER	AE (MEASUREMENT) ROTATION
INTR	INITIAL ROTATION
LSTR	LAST ROTATION
SCFW	SCANNER FORWARD
SCRV	SCANNER REVERSE
STBY	STANDBY

C. General Circuit Diagram

1. Copier



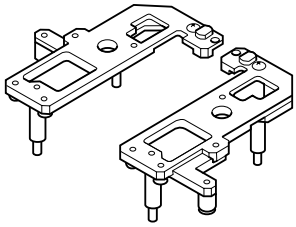
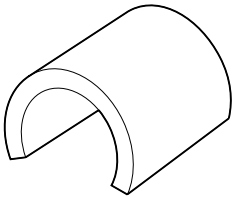
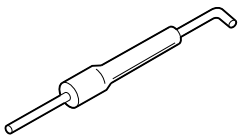
2. ADF



Color coding	
BK	BLACK
BL	BLUE
BR	BROWN
GY	GRAY
GN	GREEN
OR	ORANGE
PK	PINK
R	RED
SB	SKY-BLUE
V	VIOLET
W	WHITE
Y	YELLOW

D. Special Tools

You will need the following special tool(s) in addition to the standard tools set when servicing the machine.

No	Tool	Tool No.	Shape	Rank*	Remarks
1	Mirror positioning tool (pair for front and rear)	FY9-3009		B	For adjusting the distance between the No.1 and No.2 mirrors.
2	Wire clip	FY9-3017		B	For fixing the scanner wire in place while adjusting its tension.
3	Spring gauge	CK-0054		B	For checking the cassette spring pressure Range of measurements: 0 to 1,500g

*Rank:

A: Each service person is expected to carry one.
B: Each five or so service persons is expected to carry one.
C: Each workshop is expected to carry one.

E. Solvents/Oils

No.	Name	Uses	Composition	Remarks
1	Alcohol	Cleaning: e.g., glass, plastic, rubber parts; external covers	Hydrocarbon (fluorine family) Alcohol Surface active agent	• Do not bring near fire. • Procure locally. • Isopropyl alcohol may be substituted.
2	Solvent	Cleaning: e.g., metal; oil or toner dirt	Hydrocarbon (fluorine/chlorine family) Alcohol	• Do not bring near fire. • Procure locally.
3	Lubricating oil	Lubricating spring clutch	Mineral oil (paraffin family)	• CK-0451 (100cc)
4	Lubricating oil	Lubricating drive and friction parts, scanner rail	Silicone oil	• CK-0551 (20g)

F. Specifications

1. Copier

a. Type

Item	Descriptions
Body	Desk top
Copyboard	Fixed
Source of light	Halogen lamp (80 V/110 W for 120V-model; 150 V/160 W for 220/240 V-model)
Lens	Fixed focal point lens
Photosensitive medium	OPC drum (24-mm dia.)

Table A-1

b. Mechanisms

Item	Descriptions
Reproduction	Indirect static reproduction
Charging	Roller (direct charging)
Exposure	Slit (moving light source)
Copy density adjustment	Auto or manual
Development	Dry (toner projection)
Pickup	Cassette (1 pc.) Multifeeder
Separation	Curvature separation + static eliminator
Fixing	Flat heater
Cleaning	Blade
Original orientation	Center reference (copyboard)

Table A-2

c. Performance

Item	Descriptions
Original type	Sheet, book, 3-D object (2kg max.)
Maximum original size	A4 (297 × 210 mm)/LGL (216 × 356 mm)
Reproduction ratio	Inch/AB-configuration: 2R2E Inch-configuration: 3R1E
Zoom	70% to 141% (in 1% increments)
Wait time	0 sec (at 20°C room temperature)
First copy time	10 sec or less (at 20°C room temperature; Direct, non-AE, from the cassette)
Continuous copying	100 (max.)
Copy size	A4/LGL (297 × 210 mm/216 × 356 mm max.) Business card (90 × 55 mm, min.)
Copy paper type	Cassette: Plain paper (64 to 80 g/m^2), tracing paper (SM-1, A4R/B5R), colored paper, recycled paper (64 to 80 g/m^2; A4R/B5R), eco paper (80 g/m^2; A4R) Manual Feeder: Plain paper (52 to 128 g/m^2), tracing paper (SM-1, GNT-80[*1]; A4R/B5R), transparency[*1,*3] (A4R/LTRR[*2]), colored paper, business card (200 g/m^2 or less), label sheet[*1] (A4R/LTRR), recycled paper (64 to 80 g/m^2; A4R/B5R), eco paper (80 g/m^2; A4R), postcard[*2] Double-Sided/Overlay Copying[*4]: Plain paper (64 to 128 g/m^2), colored paper, business card (200 g/m^2 or less), recycled paper (64 to 80 g/m^2; A4R/B5R), eco paper (80 g/m^2; A4R), postcard
Cassette	With claws Universal cassette (250 sheets of 80 g/m^2 paper; A4/LGL to A5/STMT) 250-sheet cassette (250 sheets of 80 g/m^2) 500-sheet cassette (500 sheets of 80 g/m^2)
Multifeeder tray	5 mm deep (approx.; 50 sheets of 80 g/m^2)
Copy tray	100 sheets (A4; 80 g/m^2)
Non-image width	Leading edge: 2.0 ±1.5 mm (Direct; 4.0 mm or less otherwise) Left/right: 0.0 +2.0, -0.0 mm (0 +4.0, -0.0 mm for LTR)
Auto power-off	Provided (5 min, approx.; fixed)[*5]

Table A-3

*1. Applies only to single pickup if the multifeeder is used.
*2. Applies only to vertical feeding.
*3. Upon delivery, be sure to remove each from the copy tray.
*4. Be sure to remove any curling before feeding for a second time.
*5. If stopped because paper ran out during copying operation, 1 hr.

d. Others

Item	Descriptions
Operating condition Temperature Humidity Atmospheric pressure	 7.5°C to 32.5°C/45.5°F to 90.5°F 5% to 85% RH 607.95 to 1013.25 hPa (0.6 to 1 atm)
Power source	120 V 60 Hz 220/240 V 50 Hz
Serial number	NVFxxxxx PTZxxxxx NVHxxxxx PUBxxxxx PUCxxxxx TWAxxxxx TXAxxxxx
Maximum power consumption	0.9 kW or less Standby: 1.2 W (approx.; about 5 min; reference only) Copying: 0.4 kWh (approx.; reference only)
Noise	Standby: - (sound power level by ISO) Copying: 66 dB or less (sound power level by ISO)
Ozone	0.01 ppm or less (average; 0.02 ppm or less, max.)
Dimensions (WxDxH)	Copyboard Type 484.9 × 448.2 × 297.5 mm*1/329.0 mm*2 19.1 in. × 17.6 in. × 11.7 in.*1/13.0 in.*2 ADF Type 484.9 × 448.2 × 358.3 mm*1/389.8 mm*2 19.1 in. × 17.6 in. × 14.1 in.*1/15.3 in.*2
Weight (including the cassette)	Copyboard Type 20.6 kg*1/45.3 lb*1, 22.5 kg*2/49.5 lb*2 ADF Type 24.4 kg*1/53.7 lb*1, 26.3 kg*2/57.9 lb*2
Consumables	Copy paper: Keep wrapped, and protect against humidity. Toner: Avoid direct sunlight, and store at 40°C/104°F, 85% or less.

Table A-4

*1. 250-sheet cassette type
*2. 500-sheet cassette type

e. Default Ratios

Item	2R2E (Inch/AB-configuration)	3R1E (Inch-configuration)
Direct	1:1.000	1:1.000
Reduce I	1:0.707	1:0.707
Reduce II		1:0.786
Reduce III	1:0816	
Reduce IV		1:0.860
Enlarge I	1:1.154	
Enlarge II	1:1.414	1:1.414

Table A-5

f. Copying Speed

Copying speed at Direct	Reproduction ratio	Copy size	Number of copies (Multifeeder*1) (copies/min)
13	Direct	LTRR	13 (9)
		LGL	11 (8)
		STMTR	13 (9)
	Reduce I (70.7%)	MIN	13 (9)
	Reduce II (78.6%)	LGL → LTRR	13 (9)
	Reduce IV (86.0%)	MARJIN	13 (9)
	Enlarge II (141.4%)	MAX	10 (9)
12	Direct	A4R	12 (9)
		B5R	12 (9)
		A5R	12 (9)
	Reduce I (70.7%)	A4R → A5R	12 (9)
	Reduce III (81.6%)	B5R → A5R	12 (9)
	Enlarge I (115.4%)	B5R → A4R	12 (9)
	Enlarge II (141.4%)	A5R→ A4R	10 (9)

Table A-6

*1. The number of copies starting with the pickup operation that follows the delivery of the 19th copy in a continuous copying job.

The specifications are subject to change for product improvement.

2. ADF

Item	Descriptions
Original pickup	Auto pickup/delivery
Original orientation	Face-down
Original position	Center reference
Original separation	Top separation
Original type	Single-sided (50 to 128 g/m^2) A5 (STMT) to A4R (LTRR), LGL Length: 139.7 to 355.6 mm (feeding direction) Width: 139.7 to 215.9 mm
Stack	30 sheets (80 g/m^2 or less; about 3 mm in height)
Original processing mode	Single-sided original to single-sided copy
Original size detection	Yes (in feeding direction)
Mixed original sizes	No
Original detection	Yes
Original feeding speed	446 mm/sec
Communication with host	IPC
Dimensions	Width: 474 mm/18.7 in. (659 mm/25.9 in. with the tray open) Depth: 394 mm/15.5in. Height: 74 mm/2.9 in. (216 mm/8.5 in. with the tray open)
Weight	5 kg/11 lb (approx.)
Power source	24 VDC and 5 VDC (from the host)
Maximum power consumption	40 W or less
Operating environment	Temperature: same as the host Humidity: same as the host

Table A-7

Prepared by
Office Imaging Products Technical Support Division
CANON INC.
Printed in Japan

REVISION 0 (AUG. 1999) (30359/10317)

5-1, Hakusan 7-chome, Toride-shi, Ibaraki 302-8501 Japan

COPYRIGHT © 1999 CANON INC.

Canon

This pubication is printed on
70% reprocessed paper.

PRINTED IN JAPAN (IMPRIME AU JAPON) 0899AB1.11-1

NP6412/6412F

PARTS CATALOG

REVISION 0

NP6412

120V 60Hz	F13-6131	NUM00001-	PGP TYPE
120V 60Hz	F13-6132	NUN00001-	
120V 60Hz	F13-6140	NVE00001-	
220V 50Hz	F13-6141	PTL00001-	

NP6412F

120V 60Hz	F13-6134	NUP00001-	PGP TYPE

Canon

DEC. 1997

FY8-31DH-000

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

PREFACE

This Parts Catalog contains listings of parts used in the NP6412/6412F. Diagrams are provided with the listings to aid the service technician in identifying clearly, the item to be ordered.

Whenever ordering parts, consult this Parts Catalog for all of the information pertaining to each item. Be sure to include, in the Parts Request, the full item description, the item part number and the quantity.

Canon Inc.

Office Imaging Products Technical Support Dept.1
Office Imaging Products Technical Support Div.
5-1, Hakusan 7-chome,
Toride-shi, Ibaraki 302, Japan

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

Printed in Japan
Imprimé au Japon

CONTENTS

A. ASSEMBLY LOCATION DIAGRAM

100. EXTERNAL COVERS, PANELS, ETC.
101. UPPER MAIN BODY
102. LOWER MAIN BODY
130. CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY
160. COPYBOARD COVER ASSEMBLY (NP6412)
161. ADF ASSEMBLY (NP6412F)
162. ADF TRAY ASSEMBLY (NP6412F)

220. SCANNER DRIVE ASSEMBLY
230. MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY
240. DELIVERY DRIVE ASSEMBLY
250. PAPER PICK-UP DRIVE ASSEMBLY
290. ADF DRIVE ASSEMBLY (NP6412F)

300. CASSETTE
340. PAPER PICK-UP ROLLER ASSEMBLY (CASSETTE)
355. ADF DELIVERY ASSEMBLY (NP6412F)

400. MIRROR ASSEMBLY 1
401. MIRROR ASSEMBLY 2
402. ZOOM MIRROR ASSEMBLY
450. BLANK EXPOSURE LAMP ASSEMBLY

530. TRANSFER ASSEMBLY

640. DEVELOPING ASSEMBLY

810. FIXING ASSEMBLY
811. FIXING FILM REPLACEMENT KIT

910. DC POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSEMBLY
915. CONTROL PANEL PCB ASSEMBLY
930. DC CONTROLER PCB ASSEMBLY
935. ADF CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY (NP6412F)
940. NOISE FILTER PCB ASSEMBLY

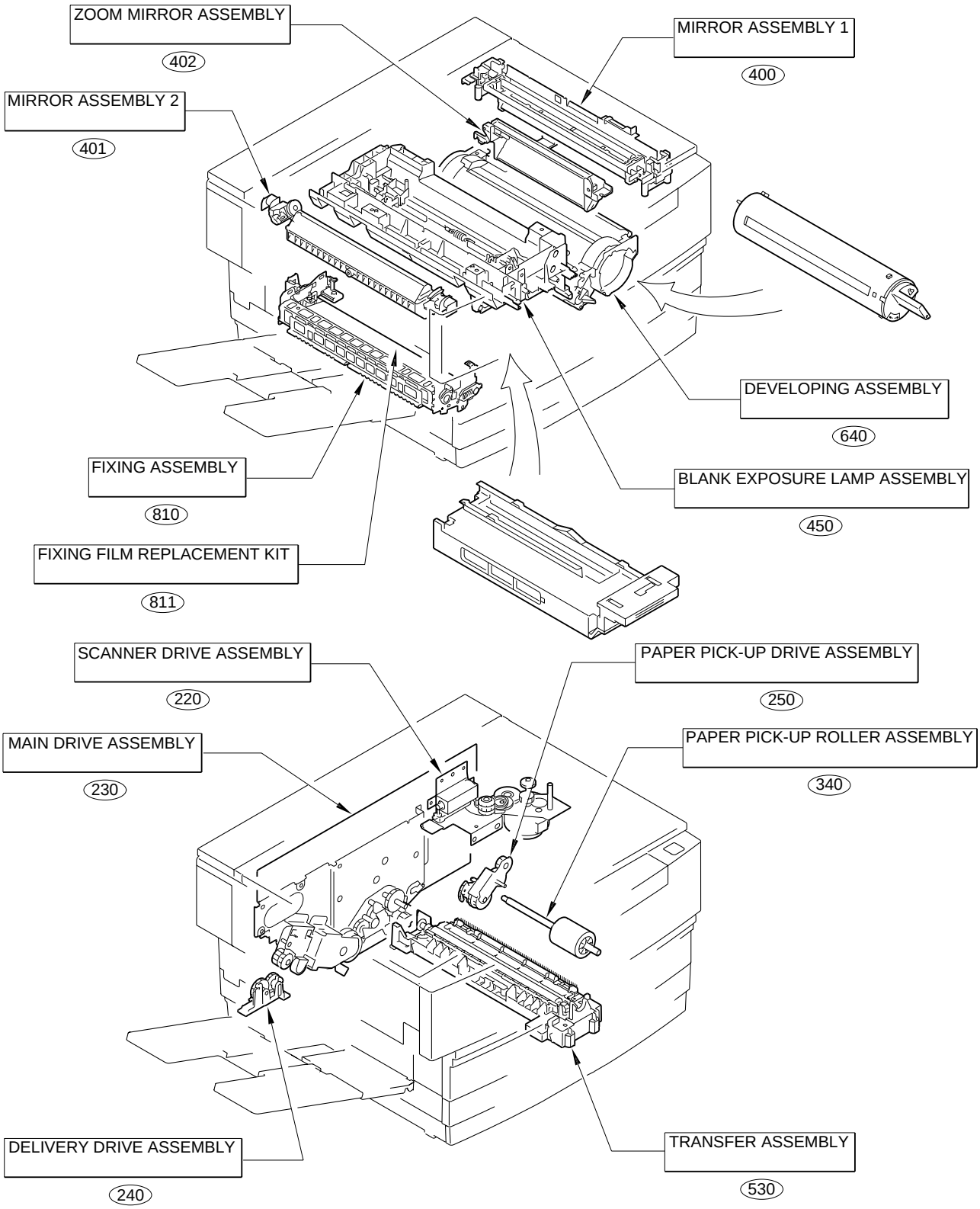
B. LIST OF CONNECTORS

C. LIST OF STANDARD FASTENERS

D. NUMERICAL INDEX

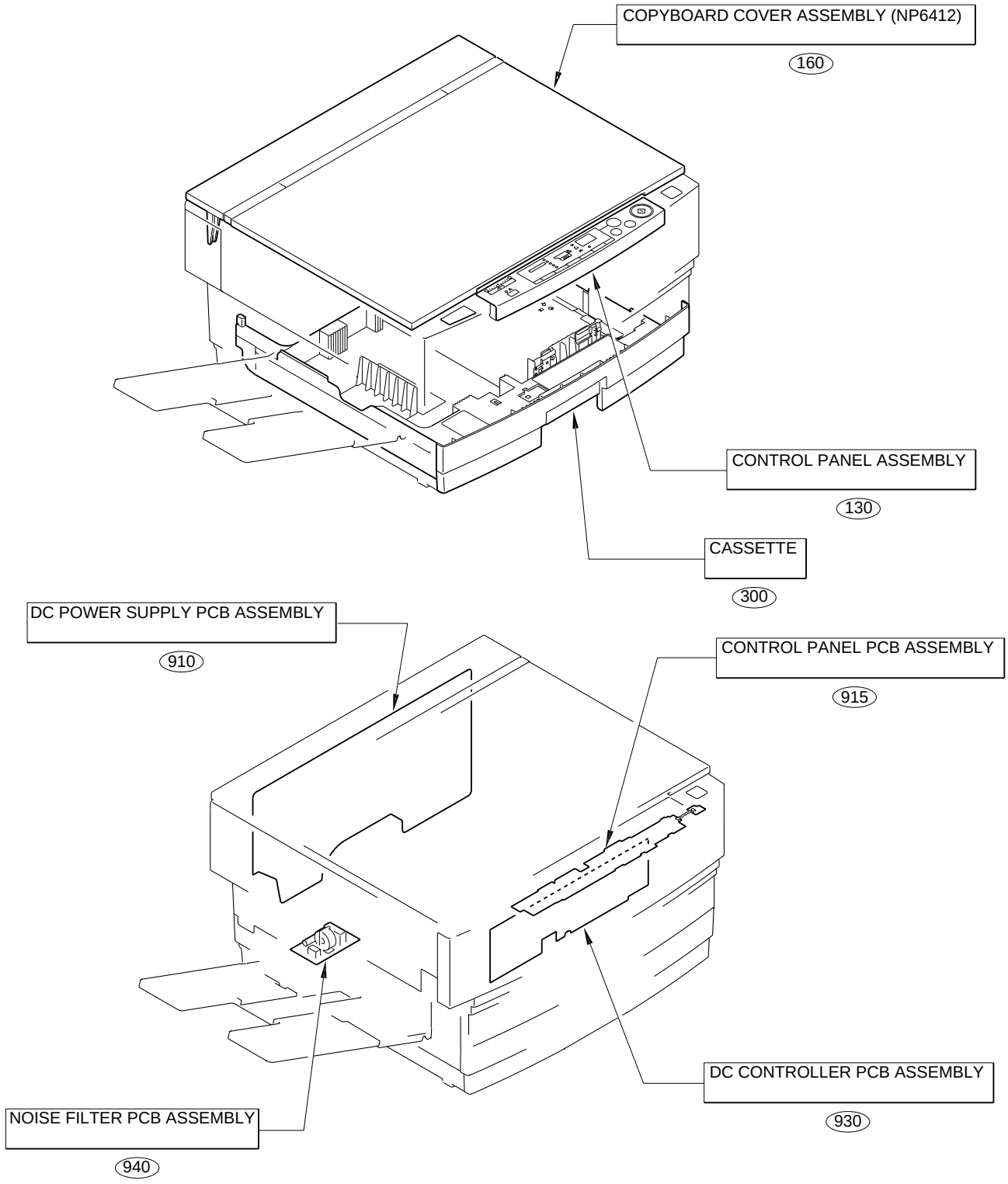
COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE A ASSEMBLY LOCATION DIAGRAM(1/3)



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

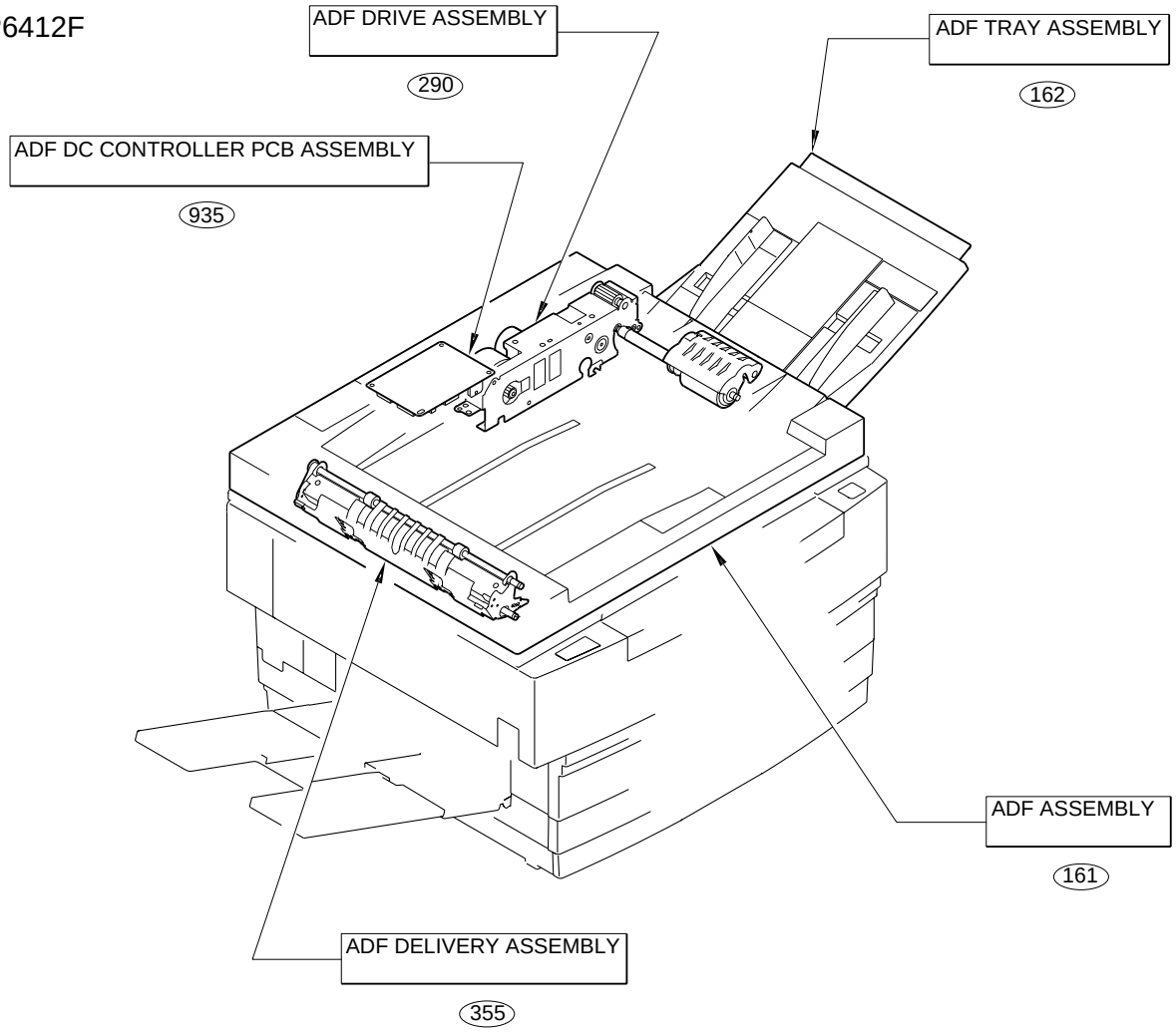
FIGURE A ASSEMBLY LOCATION DIAGRAM(2/3)



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

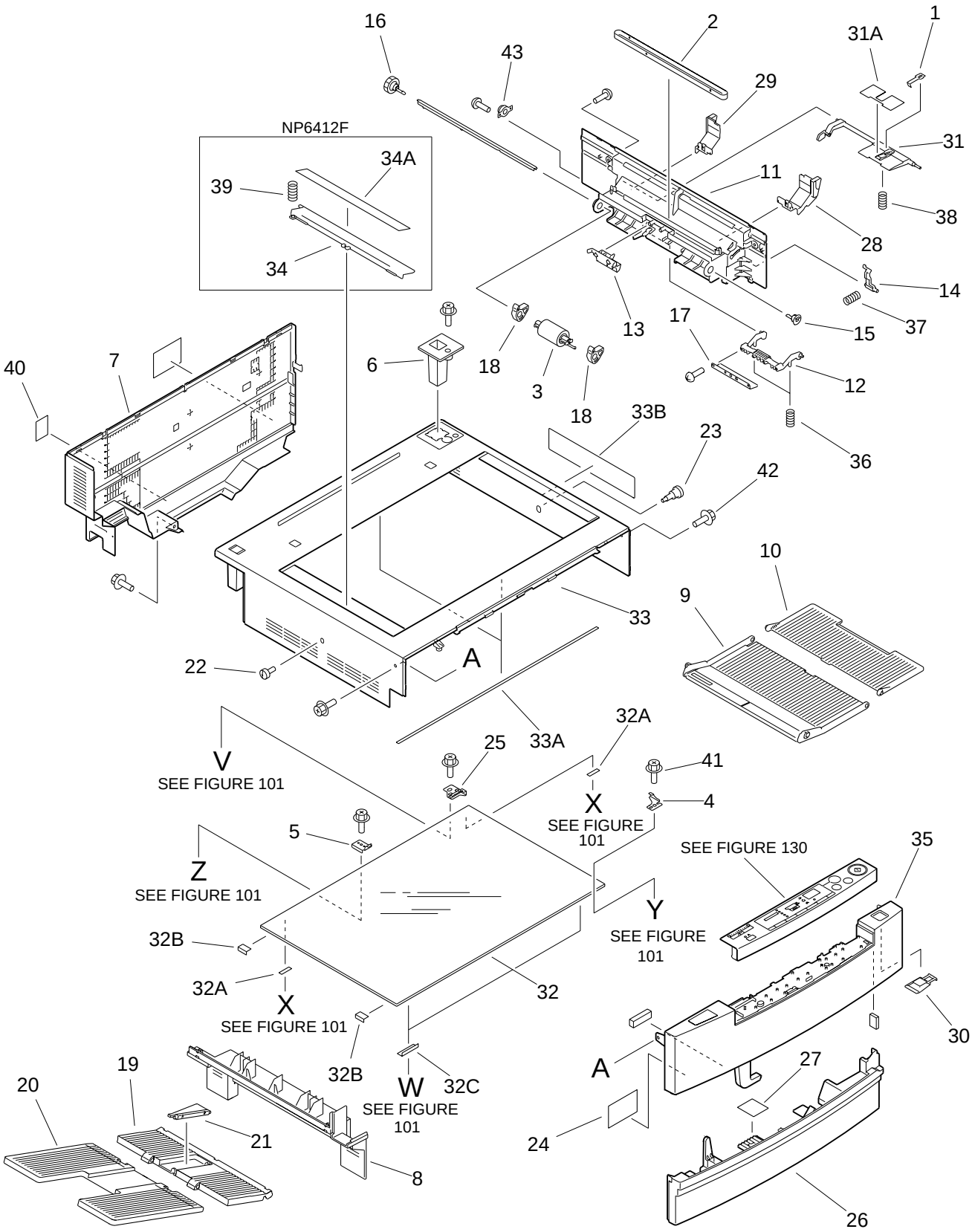
FIGURE A ASSEMBLY LOCATION DIAGRAM(3/3)

NP6412F



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 100 EXTERNAL COVERS, PANELS, ETC.



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

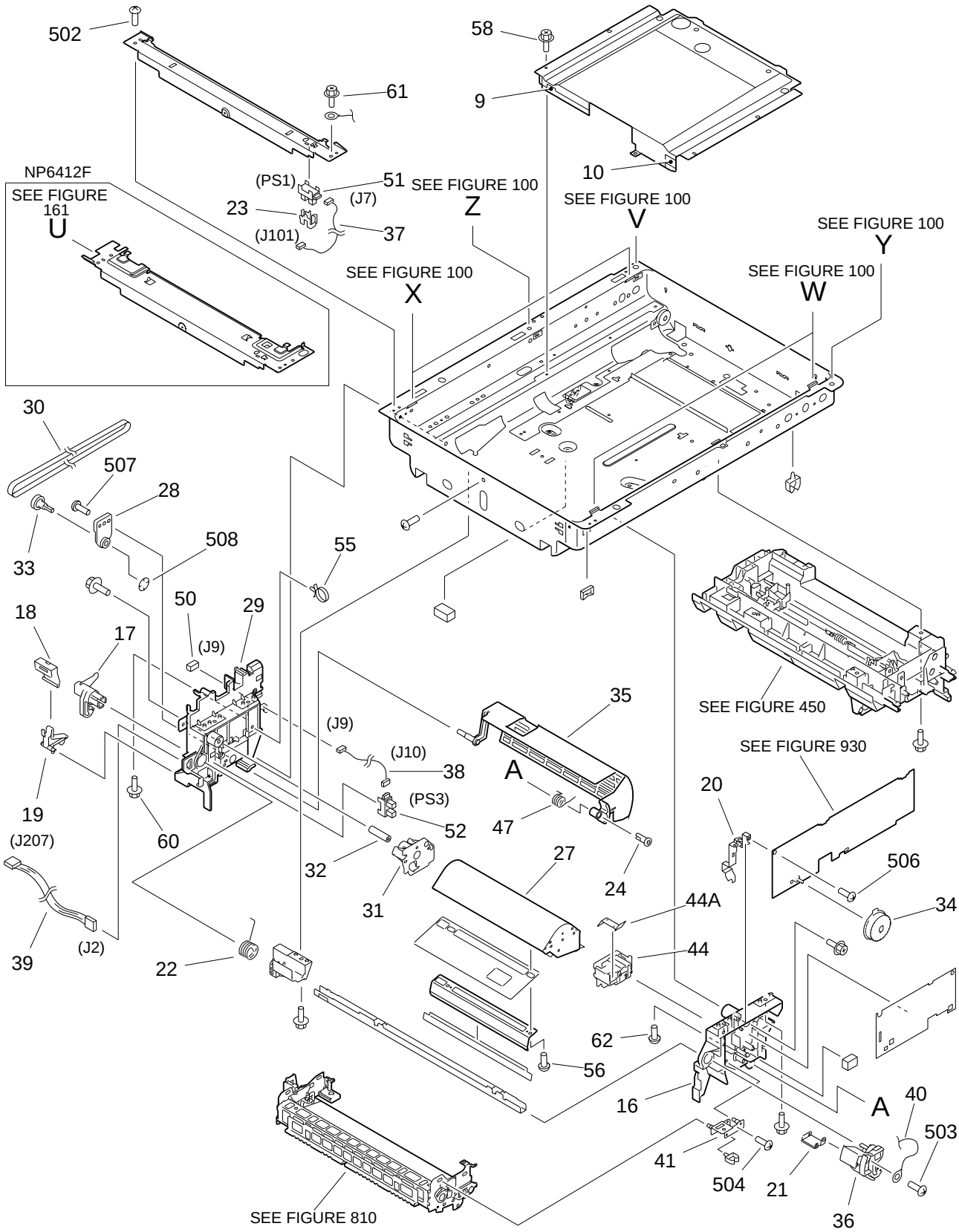
FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
100 -	NPN		RF	EXTERNAL COVERS, PANELS, ETC.	
1	FB1 - 7283 - 000		1	SPRING, LEAF	
2	FB1 - 7403 - 000		1	FILM, SLIDE	
3	FB1 - 9766 - 000		1	ROLLER, PICK-UP	
4	FB2 - 4606 - 000		1	RETAINER, GLASS, 1	
5	FB2 - 4607 - 000		1	RETAINER, GLASS, 2	
6	FB2 - 4785 - 000		1	SUPPORT, COPYBOARD	NP6412
	FB3 - 0839 - 020		1	SUPPORT, ADF	NP6412F
7	FB2 - 5054 - 000		1	PANEL, REAR	NP6412
	FB2 - 5487 - 000		1	PANEL, REAR	NP6412F
8	FB2 - 5055 - 000		1	PANEL, LEFT	
9	FB2 - 5175 - 000		1	TRAY, PICK-UP	
10	FB2 - 5177 - 000		1	TRAY, SUB	
11	FB2 - 5206 - 000		1	PANEL, RIGHT	
12	FB2 - 5210 - 000		1	FLAPPER, SEPARATING	
13	FB2 - 5212 - 000		1	GUIDE, AUXILIALY	
14	FB2 - 5213 - 000		1	LEVER, TRAY	
15	FB2 - 5214 - 020		1	HOLDER, PICK-UP SHAFT	
16	FB2 - 5215 - 020		1	GEAR, 26T	
17	FB2 - 5216 - 000		1	PLATE	
18	FB2 - 5217 - 000		2	ROLLER	
19	FB2 - 5425 - 000		1	TRAY, COPY, 1	
20	FB2 - 5426 - 000		1	TRAY, COPY, 2	
21	FB2 - 5428 - 000		1	TRAY, COPY, SUB	
22	FB2 - 5500 - 000		1	SCREW, M4X12	
23	FB2 - 5502 - 000		1	SCREW, STEPPED	
24	FB3 - 0809 - 000		1	LABEL, SERVICE	
25	FB3 - 0824 - 000		1	RETAINER, GLASS	NP6412
	FF9 - 1514 - 000		1	RETAINER, GLASS	NP6412F
26	FB3 - 0850 - 000		1	PANEL, LOWER, FRONT	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
100 - 27	FB3 - 0867 - 000		1	LABEL, "WARNING"	ENGLISH
	FB3 - 0868 - 000		1	LABEL, "WARNING"	EUROPEAN
28	FB4 - 1195 - 00S		1	PLATE, PAPER STOP END, FRONT	
29	FB4 - 1196 - 00S		1	PLATE, PAPER STOP END, REAR	
30	FB4 - 1197 - 00S		1	KEY TOP, MAIN SWITCH	
31	FF5 - 2875 - 000		1	PLATE, PICK-UP	
31A	FB1 - 7295 - 000		1	SHEET, LIFTER ARM	
32	FF5 - 3728 - 000		1	GLASS, COPYBOARD	NP6412
	FF5 - 3729 - 000		1	GLASS, COPYBOARD	NP6412F
32A	FB2 - 4791 - 000		2	SHEET, GLASS PROTECTIVE	
32B	FB2 - 4793 - 000		2	SHEET, GLASS PROTECTIVE	
32C	FB2 - 4794 - 000		2	SHEET, GLASS PROTECTIVE	
33	FF5 - 3903 - 030		1	COVER, TOP	NP6412
	FF5 - 3920 - 040		1	COVER, TOP	NP6412F
33A	FB2 - 4790 - 020		2	SHEET, GLASS	
33B	FB2 - 5507 - 000		1	LABEL, "WARNING, RIGHT PLATE"	NP6412
34	FF5 - 3905 - 000		1	GUIDE, PAPER JUMP	NP6412F
34A	FB3 - 0817 - 000		1	LABEL, "PAPER SIZE"	NP6412F
35	FF5 - 6741 - 000		1	PANEL, UPPER, FRONT	NP6412
	FF5 - 6742 - 000		1	PANEL, UPPER, FRONT	NP6412F
36	FS5 - 2769 - 000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
37	FS5 - 2770 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
38	FS5 - 2776 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
39	FS6 - 2270 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	NP6412F
40	ME1 - 0059 - 000		1	LABEL, NOISE	PGP TYPE
41	XA9 - 0760 - 000		AR	SCREW,RS,M3X6	
42	XA9 - 0762 - 000		3	SCREW,RS,M3X8	
43	XH9 - 0084 - 000		1	DAMPER UNIT	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 101 UPPER MAIN BODY(1/2)



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 101 UPPER MAIN BODY(2/2)

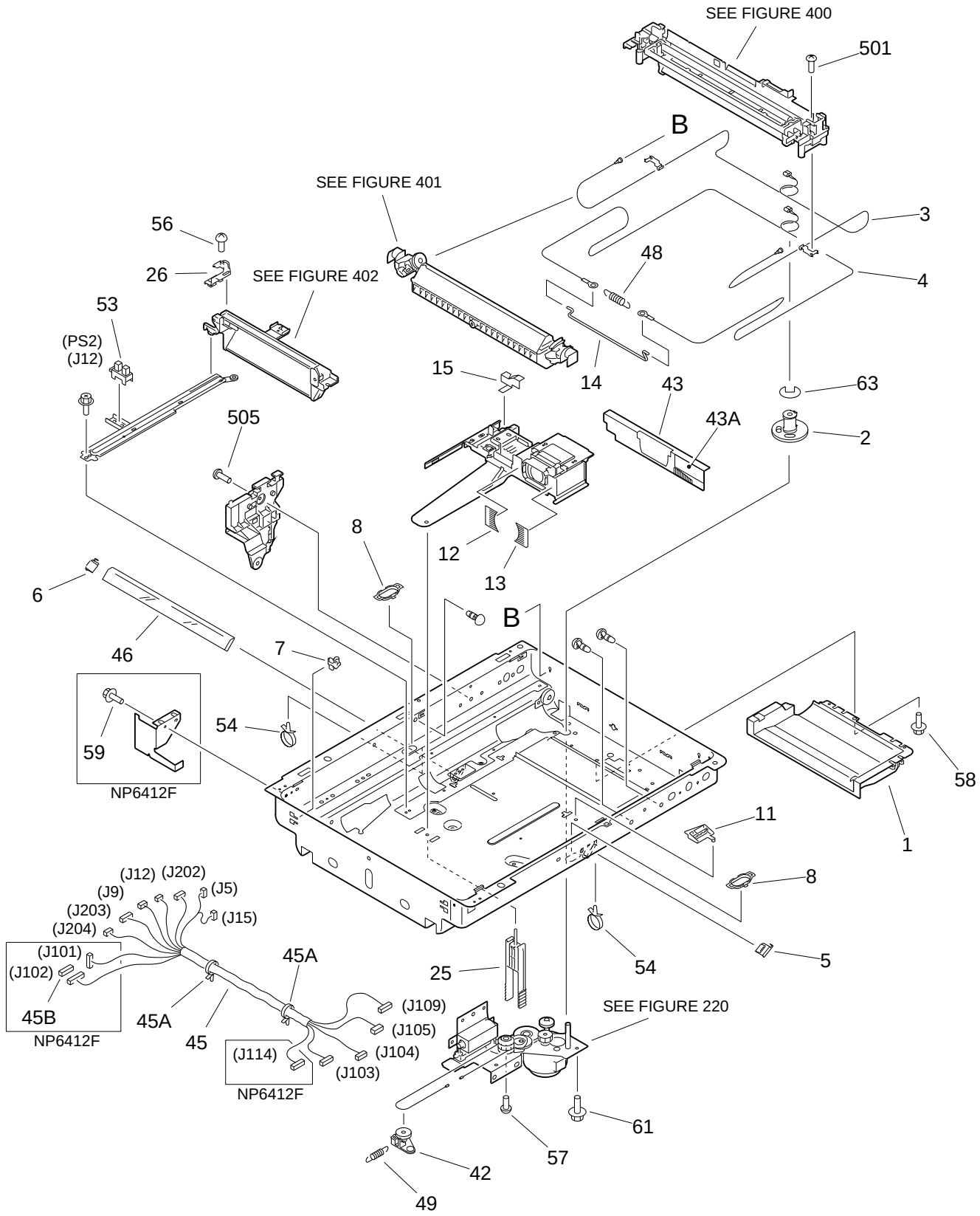


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
101 -	NPN		RF	UPPER MAIN BODY	
1	FB2 - 4603 - 000		1	PLATE, DUST-PROOF	
2	FB2 - 4610 - 000		1	PULLEY, DRIVE	
3	FB2 - 4611 - 000		1	WIRE, MIRROR DRIVE, 1	
4	FB2 - 4612 - 000		1	WIRE, MIRROR DRIVE, 2	
5	FB2 - 4613 - 000		1	RETAINER, MIRROR, 6, FRONT	
6	FB2 - 4614 - 000		1	RETAINER, MIRROR, 6, REAR	
7	FB2 - 4622 - 020		2	HOLDER, WIRE	
8	FB2 - 4626 - 000		2	CAP, EDGE	
9	FB2 - 4627 - 000		1	SHEET, LIGHT-BLOCKING, 1	
10	FB2 - 4628 - 000		1	SHEET, LIGHT-BLOCKING, 2	
11	FB2 - 4629 - 020		1	HOLDER, LENS	
12	FB2 - 4734 - 000		1	SHEET, 1	
13	FB2 - 4736 - 000		1	SHEET, 2	
14	FB2 - 4792 - 000		1	HOOK, WIRE STOPPING	
15	FB2 - 4840 - 000		1	SHEET, 7	
16	FB2 - 4866 - 020		1	BLOCK, HOOK, FRONT	
17	FB2 - 4870 - 000		1	HOOK, REAR	
18	FB2 - 4871 - 000		1	LEVER, SWITCH	
19	FB2 - 4872 - 000		1	ACTUATOR	
20	FB2 - 4873 - 000		1	PLATE, GROUNDING	
21	FB2 - 4875 - 000		1	PLATE, LEVER GROUNDING	
22	FB2 - 4877 - 000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
23	FB2 - 4942 - 000		1	GUIDE, SENSOR	
24	FB2 - 4943 - 000		1	PIN, HOOK	
25	FB2 - 5501 - 030		1	SCREW, M4X15	
26	FB3 - 0570 - 000		1	PLATE, LINK	
27	FB3 - 0623 - 000		1	FAN, EXHAUST	
28	FB3 - 0626 - 000		1	SUPPORT, PULLEY SHAFT	
29	FB3 - 0627 - 000		1	BLOCK, HOOK, REAR	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

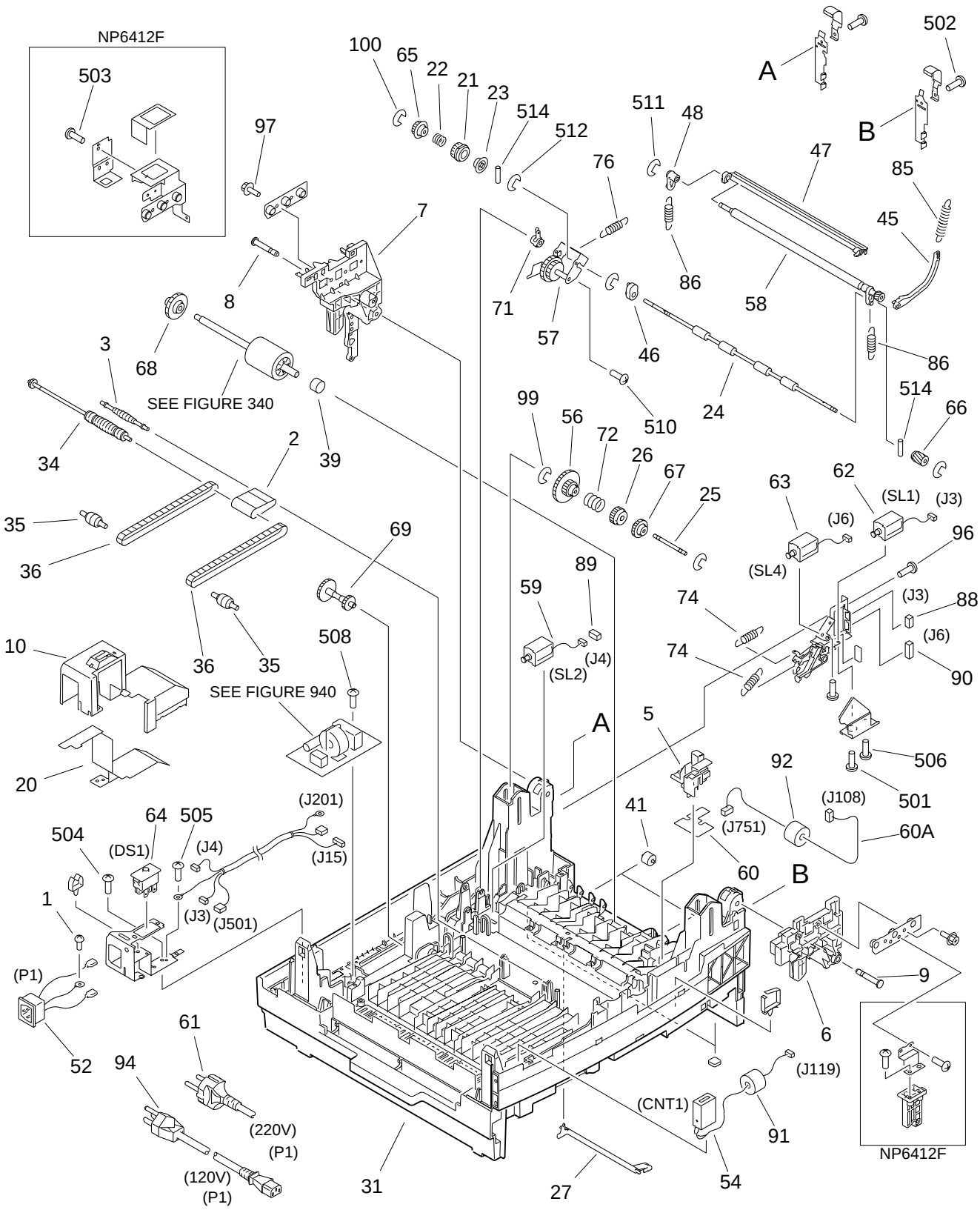
FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
101 - 30	FB3 - 0630 - 000		1	BELT, FAN	
31	FB3 - 0632 - 000		1	SUPPORT, FAN, REAR	
32	FB3 - 0633 - 000		1	JOINT	
33	FB3 - 0639 - 000		1	PULLEY, FAN	
34	FB3 - 0670 - 000		1	DIAL, DENSITY CONTROL	
35	FB3 - 0736 - 030		1	SHUTTER, FIXING	
36	FB4 - 1194 - 00S		1	HOOK, FRONT	
37	FF2 - 9730 - 000		1	CABLE, HOME POSITION SENSOR	J7,101
38	FF2 - 9732 - 000		1	CABLE, DELIVERY SENSOR	J9,10
39	FF2 - 9760 - 000		1	CABLE, FIXING HEATER	J2,207
40	FF2 - 9799 - 000		1	CABLE, GROUNDING	
41	FF5 - 2859 - 000		1	HOLDING PLATE, FIXING ASSEMBLY	
42	FF5 - 2867 - 020		1	PULLEY, IDLER	
43	FF5 - 3716 - 000		1	SHEET, 2	
43A	FB2 - 5058 - 000		1	SHEET, 4	
44	FF5 - 3912 - 000		1	SUPPORT, FAN, FRONT	
44A	FB3 - 0625 - 000		1	PLATE, FAN GROUNDING	
45	FG5 - 3550 - 000		1	DC CONTROLLER CABLE	NP6412
	FG5 - 5509 - 000		1	DC CONTROLLER CABLE	NP6412F
45A	WT2 - 5041 - 000		2	CLAMP, CABLE	
45B	VS1 - 5057 - 008		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	NP6412F J102
46	FN5 - 4021 - 000		1	MIRROR, 6	
47	FS5 - 2797 - 000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
48	FS5 - 2802 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
49	FS5 - 2803 - 020		1	SPRING, TENSION	
50	VS1 - 5057 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	J9
51	WG8 - 5001 - 000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER, TLP1231	PS1 J7
52	WG8 - 5001 - 000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER, TLP1231	PS3 J10

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
101 - 53	WG8 - 5187 - 000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	PS2 J12
54	WT2 - 5041 - 000		3	CLAMP, CABLE	
55	WT2 - 5041 - 000		2	CLAMP, CABLE	
56	XA9 - 0187 - 000		2	SCREW,M3X6	
57	XA9 - 0650 - 000		1	SCREW,M3X6	
58	XA9 - 0760 - 000		16	SCREW,RS,M3X6	
59	XA9 - 0760 - 000		1	SCREW,RS,M3X6	NP6412F
60	XA9 - 0762 - 000		2	SCREW,RS,M3X8	
61	XA9 - 0794 - 000		4	SCREW,RS,M3X6	
62	XA9 - 0813 - 000		1	SCREW,RS,M3X8	
63	XD9 - 0136 - 000		1	RING,E	
501	XB1 - 2300 - 609		3	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X6	
502	XB2 - 7300 - 607		6	SCREW,W/WASHER,M3X6	
503	XB4 - 7300 - 609		1	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X6	
504	XB4 - 7300 - 609		1	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X6	
505	XB4 - 7300 - 809		3	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X8	
506	XB4 - 7300 - 809		1	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X8	
507	XB4 - 7300 - 809		2	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X8	
508	XD2 - 2300 - 502		1	RING,TOOTHED LOCK	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 102 LOWER MAIN BODY(1/2)



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 102 LOWER MAIN BODY(2/2)

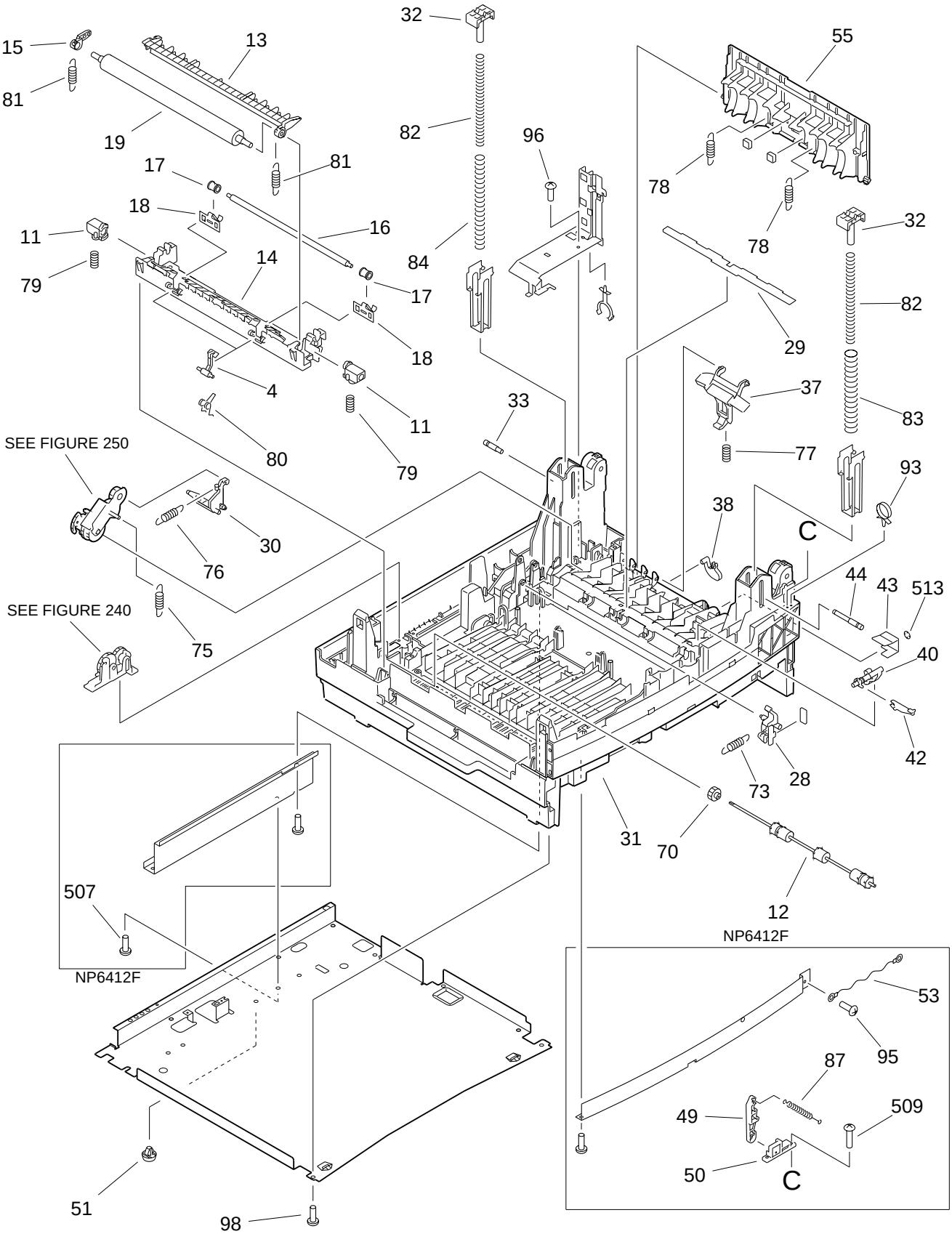


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
102 -	NPN		RF	LOWER MAIN BODY	
1	FA9 - 2568 - 000		1	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD	
2	FB1 - 7267 - 000		1	BELT, PAPER FEED, 1	
3	FB1 - 7270 - 000		1	PULLEY, BELT, 1	
4	FB1 - 7275 - 000		2	CLAW, SEPARATION	
5	FB2 - 4780 - 000		1	COVER, SENSOR PCB	
6	FB2 - 4928 - 020		1	MOUNT, HINGE, FRONT	
7	FB2 - 4929 - 000		1	MOUNT, HINGE, REAR	
8	FB2 - 4930 - 000		1	PIN, HINGE	
9	FB2 - 4930 - 000		1	PIN, HINGE	NP6412
	FB3 - 0833 - 000		1	PIN, HINGE	NP6412F
10	FB2 - 4933 - 000		1	COVER, AC POWER SUPPLY	
11	FB2 - 5030 - 000		2	HOLDER, ROLLER	
12	FB2 - 5031 - 000		1	ROLLER, DELIVERY	
13	FB2 - 5032 - 000		1	GUIDE, ENTRANCE	
14	FB2 - 5033 - 020		1	GUIDE, LOWER, DELIVERY	
15	FB2 - 5034 - 000		1	HOLDER, ENTRANCE GUIDE	
16	FB2 - 5040 - 000		1	ROLLER, CLEANING	
17	FB2 - 5041 - 000		2	BUSHING	
18	FB2 - 5042 - 000		2	SPRING, LEAF	
19	FB2 - 5043 - 000		1	ROLLER, PRESSURE	
20	FB2 - 5060 - 000		1	SHIELD, NOISE	
21	FB2 - 5162 - 000		1	RING, RATCHET	
22	FB2 - 5163 - 000		1	SPRING, CLUTCH	
23	FB2 - 5164 - 000		1	DRUM, CLUTCH	
24	FB2 - 5165 - 000		1	ROLLER, REGISTRATION, LOWER	
25	FB2 - 5182 - 000		1	SHAFT, CLUTCH	
26	FB2 - 5183 - 000		1	RING, RATCHET	
27	FB2 - 5221 - 020		1	LEVER, SENSOR	
28	FB2 - 5222 - 000		1	LEVER, CLUTCH	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
102 - 29	FB2 - 5223 - 000		1	SHEET, GUIDE	
30	FB2 - 5224 - 000		1	ARM, PAPER PICK-UP	
31	FB2 - 5301 - 000	N	1	FRAME, BASE	
32	FB2 - 5304 - 000		2	BLOCK, HINGE SLIDING	
33	FB2 - 5305 - 000		1	PIN, SLIDE, 1	
34	FB2 - 5309 - 000		1	PULLEY, BELT, 2	
35	FB2 - 5310 - 000		2	PULLEY, BELT, 3	
36	FB2 - 5311 - 000		2	BELT, PAPER FEED, 2	
37	FB2 - 5380 - 030		1	PAD, SEPARATION	
38	FB2 - 5381 - 000		1	BLOCK, PAD	
39	FB2 - 5382 - 000		1	HOLDER, ROLLER	
40	FB2 - 5383 - 020		1	FLAG, SENSING, 1	
41	FB2 - 5385 - 000		2	ROLLER	
42	FB2 - 5388 - 000		1	FLAG, SENSING, 2	
43	FB2 - 5392 - 020		1	PLATE, FLAG HOLDING	
44	FB3 - 0732 - 000		1	SHAFT, SLIDE, 2	NP6412
	FB3 - 0837 - 000		1	SHAFT, SLIDE, 2	NP6412F
45	FB3 - 0743 - 000		1	ARM, PRESSURE RELEASE	
46	FB3 - 0744 - 000		1	BUSHING, SWING	
47	FB3 - 0745 - 000		1	GUIDE, REGISTRATION, UPPER	
48	FB3 - 0748 - 000		1	BUSHING, UPPER REGISTRATION	
49	FB3 - 0831 - 000		1	LEVER, SUPPORT	NP6412F
50	FB3 - 0832 - 000		1	HOLDER, LEVER	NP6412F
51	FB3 - 0840 - 000		1	FOOT, AUXILIARY	
52	FF2 - 9789 - 000		1	CABLE, AC INLET	
53	FF2 - 9800 - 000		1	CABLE, GROUNDING	NP6412F
54	FF3 - 1215 - 000		1	COUNTER	CNT1 J119
55	FF5 - 2858 - 000		1	COVER	
56	FF5 - 3714 - 000		1	GEAR, 17T/80T	
57	FF5 - 3927 - 000		1	PLATE, REGIST SWING	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

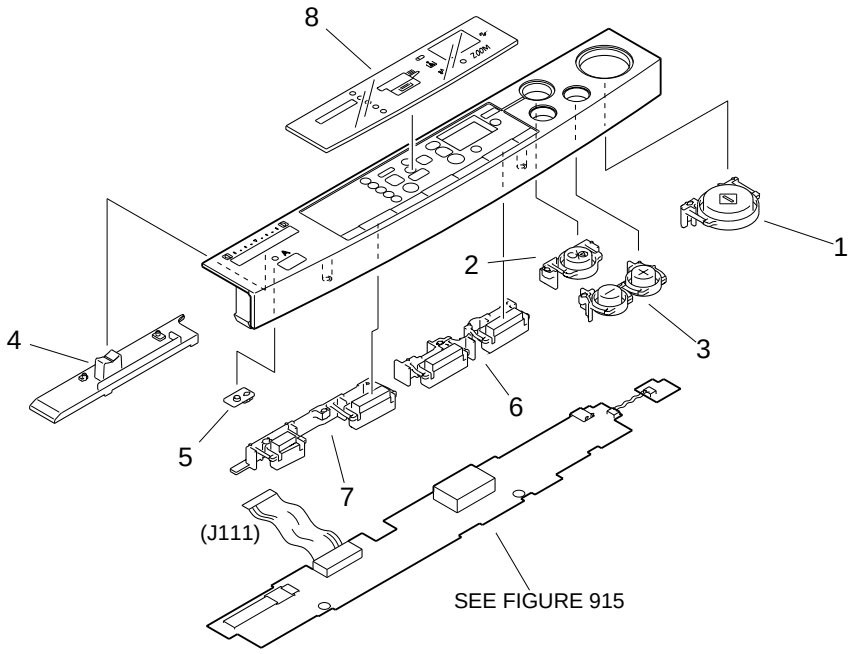
FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
102 - 58	FF5 - 3928 - 020		1	ROLLER, REGISTRATION, UPPER	
59	FF9 - 1504 - 000		1	SOLENOID	SL2 J4
60	FG5 - 5496 - 000		1	SENSOR PCB UNIT	
60A	FF3 - 0479 - 000		1	CABLE, SENSOR PCB UNIT	J108,751
61	FH2 - 5761 - 000		1	CORD, POWER SUPPLY	220V P1
62	FH7 - 5627 - 000		1	SOLENOID, DC24V	SL1 J3
63	FH7 - 5628 - 000		1	SOLENOID, DC24V	SL4 J6
64	FH7 - 6216 - 000		1	SWITCH, INTERLOCK	DS1
65	FS5 - 0883 - 000		1	GEAR, 34T	
66	FS5 - 0885 - 000		1	GEAR, 14T	
67	FS5 - 0887 - 000		1	GEAR, 25T	
68	FS5 - 0903 - 000		1	GEAR, 36T	
69	FS5 - 0913 - 020		1	GEAR, 17T/18T	
70	FS5 - 0915 - 000		1	GEAR, 14T	
71	FS5 - 1440 - 000		1	BUSHING, REGISTRATION, REAR	
72	FS5 - 2351 - 000		1	SPRING, CLUTCH	
73	FS5 - 2767 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
74	FS5 - 2771 - 000		2	SPRING, TENSION	
75	FS5 - 2772 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
76	FS5 - 2773 - 000		2	SPRING, TENSION	
77	FS5 - 2778 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
78	FS5 - 2783 - 000		2	SPRING, TENSION	
79	FS5 - 2798 - 000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
80	FS5 - 2799 - 000		2	SPRING, TORSION	
81	FS5 - 2800 - 000		2	SPRING, TENSION	
82	FS5 - 2806 - 000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION	NP6412
	FS6 - 2234 - 000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION	NP6412F
83	FS6 - 2232 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
84	FS6 - 2233 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	NP6412
	FS6 - 2232 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	NP6412F

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
102 - 85	FS6 - 2239 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
86	FS6 - 2240 - 000		2	SPRING, TENSION	
87	FS6 - 2241 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	NP6412F
88	VS1 - 5057 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	J3
89	VS1 - 5057 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	J4
90	VS1 - 5057 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	J6
91	WE8 - 0087 - 000		1	FERRITE CORE	
92	WE8 - 5093 - 000		1	FERRITE CORE	120V
93	WT2 - 5041 - 000		1	CLAMP, CABLE	
94	WT3 - 5021 - 000		1	CORD, POWER SUPPLY	120V P1
95	XA9 - 0591 - 000		13	SCREW,M3X8	NP6412F
96	XA9 - 0591 - 000		4	SCREW,M3X8	
97	XA9 - 0763 - 000		6	SCREW,RS,M3X11	
98	XA9 - 0773 - 000		9	SCREW,P,M4X12	
99	XD9 - 0134 - 000		6	RING,E	
100	XD9 - 0134 - 000		2	RING,E	
501	XB1 - 2300 - 409		2	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X4	
502	XB1 - 2300 - 509		2	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X5	
503	XB1 - 2300 - 609		5	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X6	NP6412F
504	XB1 - 2300 - 809		2	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X8	
505	XB2 - 7300 - 607		3	SCREW,W/WASHER,M3X6	
506	XB2 - 7300 - 607		1	SCREW,W/WASHER,M3X6	
507	XB2 - 7300 - 607		1	SCREW,W/WASHER,M3X6	NP6412F
508	XB2 - 8300 - 607		1	SCREW,W/WASHER,M3X6	
509	XB4 - 7301 - 009		2	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X10	NP6412F
510	XB6 - 7300 - 609		1	SCREW,TP,M3X6	
511	XD2 - 1100 - 322		5	RING,E	
512	XD2 - 1100 - 502		1	RING,E	
513	XD2 - 2300 - 502		1	RING,TOOTHED LOCK	
514	XD3 - 2160 - 062		2	PIN,DOWEL	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 130 CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY

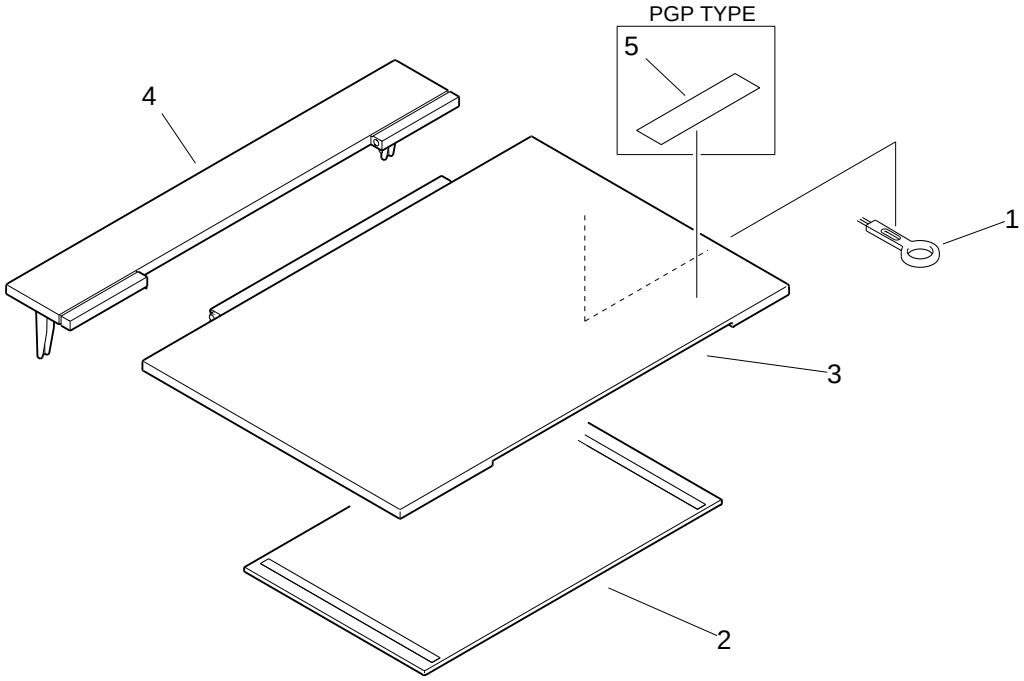


NOTE1:This assembly includes the assembly shown in Figure 915.
NOTE2:This assembly does not include the part shown with key No.8.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
130 -	FG5 - 5450 - 000		1	CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY	NP6412 SEE NOTE 1
	FG5 - 5452 - 000		1	CONTROL PANEL ASSEMBLY	NP6412F SEE NOTE 1
1	FB3 - 0661 - 000		1	KEY TOP, START	
2	FB3 - 0662 - 000		1	KEY TOP, CLEAR/STOP	
3	FB3 - 0663 - 000		1	KEY TOP, NUMBER	
4	FB3 - 0664 - 000		1	KNOB, DENSITY CONTROL	
5	FB3 - 0665 - 000		1	COVER, LED	
6	FB3 - 0666 - 020		1	KEY TOP, FUNCTION, 1	
7	FB3 - 0667 - 020		1	KEY TOP, FUNCTION, 2	
8	FB4 - 1142 - 000		1	PANEL, CLEAR	SEE NOTE 2 NP6412 NUM,NUN
	FB4 - 2419 - 000		1	PANEL, CLEAR	SEE NOTE 2 NP6412 NVE
	FB4 - 1143 - 000		1	PANEL, CLEAR	SEE NOTE 2 NP6412 PTL
	FB4 - 1144 - 000		1	PANEL, CLEAR	SEE NOTE 2 NP6412F NUP

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 160 COPYBOARD COVER ASSEMBLY (NP6412)

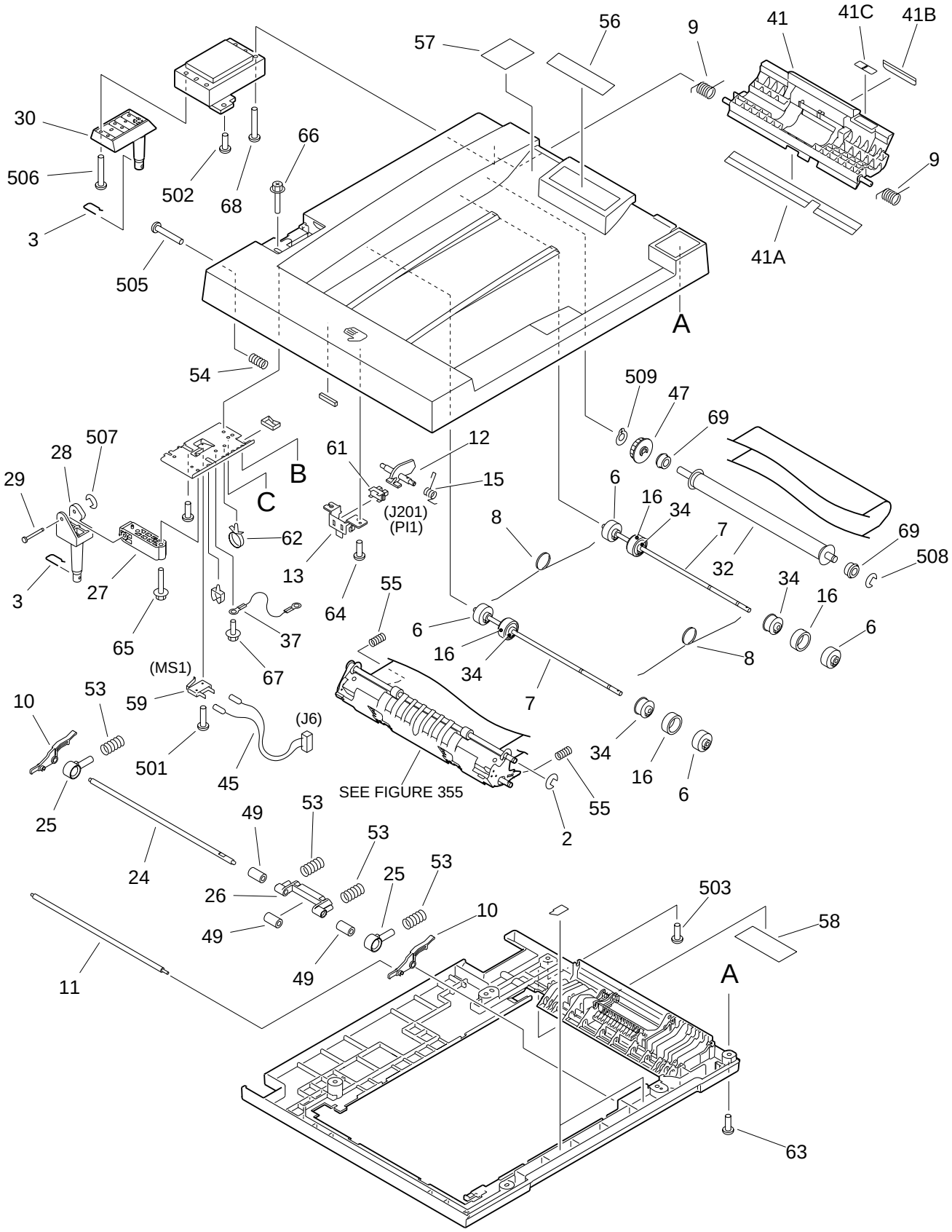


NOTE:This assembly does not include the part shown with key No.5.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
160 -	FG5 - 3532 - 000		1	COPYBOARD COVER ASSEMBLY	NP6412
1	FA9 - 3102 - 000		1	BRUSH, CLEANING	
2	FB1 - 8870 - 000		1	SHEET, COPYBOARD	
3	FB2 - 5423 - 000		1	COVER, COPYBOARD, LARGE	
4	FB2 - 5424 - 000		1	COVER, COPYBOARD, SMALL	
5	FB3 - 3406 - 000		1	LABEL, "CAUTION, DRUM CHANGE"	NP6412 PGP TYPE ENGLISH SEE NOTE
	FB3 - 3407 - 000		1	LABEL, "CAUTION, DRUM CHANGE"	NP6412 PGP TYPE FRENCH/SPANISH SEE NOTE

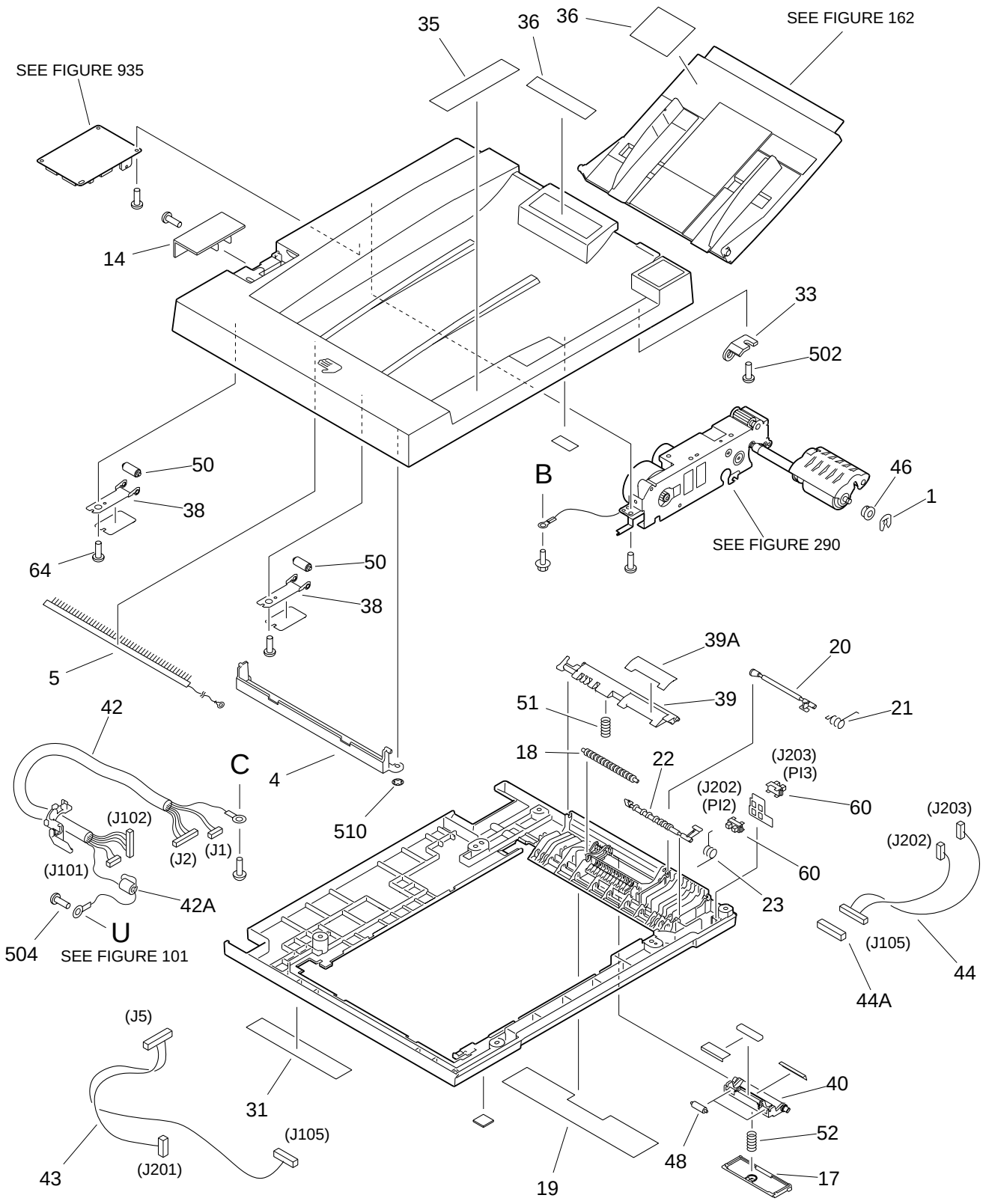
COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 161 ADF ASSEMBLY (NP6412F)(1/2)



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 161 ADF ASSEMBLY (NP6412F)(2/2)



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
161 -	NPN		RF	ADF ASSEMBLY	NP6412F
1	FA5 - 2864 - 020		1	RING, RETAINING	
2	FA9 - 2873 - 000		1	RING, E	
3	FB3 - 0829 - 000		2	PIN, DF SUPPORT	
4	FB3 - 3311 - 000		1	CROSSMEMBER, DELIVERY	
5	FB3 - 3312 - 000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE	
6	FB3 - 3314 - 020		4	ROLLER, BELT, 1	
7	FB3 - 3315 - 020		2	SHAFT, BELT	
8	FB3 - 3316 - 000		2	SPRING, TORSION	
9	FB3 - 3321 - 000		2	SPRING, TORSION	
10	FB3 - 3322 - 000		2	LINK, RELEASE	
11	FB3 - 3323 - 000		1	SHAFT, TENSION	
12	FB3 - 3324 - 000		1	FLAG, SENSOR	
13	FB3 - 3325 - 000		1	MOUNT, SENSOR	
14	FB3 - 3326 - 000		1	COVER, POCKET	
15	FB3 - 3330 - 000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
16	FB3 - 3332 - 000		4	ROLLER, RUBBER	
17	FB3 - 3335 - 000		1	COVER, PAD	
18	FB3 - 3336 - 000		1	ROLLER, GUIDE	
19	FB3 - 3338 - 000		1	SHEET, 2	
20	FB3 - 3342 - 000		1	FLAG, SENSOR, 1	
21	FB3 - 3343 - 000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
22	FB3 - 3344 - 000		1	FLAG, SENSOR, 2	
23	FB3 - 3345 - 000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
24	FB3 - 3346 - 000		1	SHAFT, REGISTRATION	
25	FB3 - 3347 - 000		2	LINK, PRESSURE	
26	FB3 - 3348 - 000		1	LEVER, RELEASE	
27	FB3 - 3356 - 000		1	HINGE, LEFT, UPPER	
28	FB3 - 3357 - 020		1	HINGE, LEFT, LOWER	
29	FB3 - 3358 - 000		1	SHAFT, LEFT HINGE	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

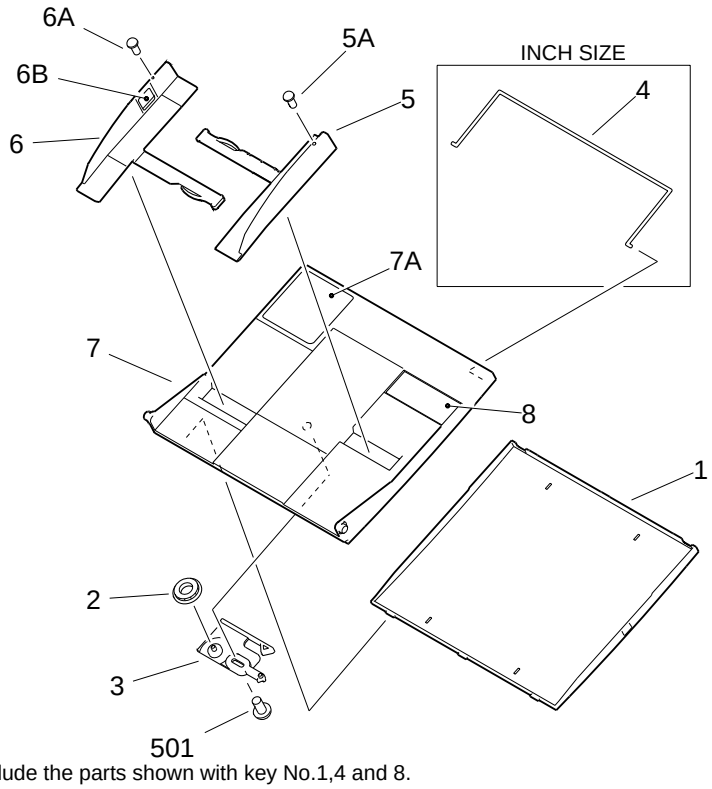
FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
161 - 30	FB3 - 3361 - 000		1	FOOT, HINGE, RIGHT	
31	FB3 - 3364 - 000		1	LABEL, OPERATION, 4	
32	FB3 - 3365 - 000		1	ROLLER, DRIVE	
33	FB3 - 3401 - 000		1	BUSHING, LEVER	
34	FB3 - 3402 - 020		4	ROLLER, BELT, 2	
35	FB3 - 3406 - 000		1	LABEL, "CAUTION, DRUM CHANGE"	ENGLISH
	FB3 - 3407 - 000		1	LABEL, "CAUTION, DRUM CHANGE"	FRENCH/SPANISH
36	FB4 - 1163 - 000		1	LABEL	
37	FF3 - 1070 - 000		1	CABLE, GROUNDING	
38	FF5 - 4674 - 000		2	HOLDER, ROLLER	
39	FF5 - 4677 - 000		1	PLATE, PAPER LIFTER	
39A	FB3 - 3340 - 000		1	SHEET, PAPER LIFTER	
40	FF5 - 4679 - 000		1	FLAPPER	
41	FF5 - 6753 - 000		1	HANDLE, UPPER	
41A	FB3 - 3318 - 000		1	SHEET, FRONT REGISTRATION	
41B	FB4 - 1154 - 000		1	SHEET, INLET	
41C	FS6 - 8091 - 000		1	LABEL, "PUSH"	
42	FG2 - 7467 - 000		1	CABLE, INTERFACE	J1,2,101,102
42A	WE8 - 0098 - 000		1	FERRITE CORE	
43	FG2 - 7469 - 000		1	CABLE, SENSOR, 1	J5,105,201
44	FG2 - 7470 - 000		1	CABLE, SENSOR, 2	J105,202,203
44A	VS1 - 5057 - 006		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	J105
45	FG2 - 7471 - 000		1	CABLE, MICROSWITCH	J6
46	FS1 - 1190 - 000		1	BUSHING	
47	FS5 - 3458 - 000		1	PULLEY, 44T	
48	FS5 - 6453 - 000		2	ROLLER, 1	
49	FS5 - 6454 - 000		3	ROLLER, REGISTRATION	
50	FS5 - 6455 - 000		2	ROLLER, 2	
51	FS6 - 2369 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
52	FS6 - 2370 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
161 - 53	FS6 - 2371 - 000		4	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
54	FS6 - 2373 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
55	FS6 - 2374 - 000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
56	FS6 - 8089 - 000		1	LABEL, OPERATION, 1	
57	FS6 - 8090 - 000		1	LABEL, OPERATION, 2	
58	FS6 - 8195 - 000		1	LABEL, OPERATION, 3	
59	WC4 - 5030 - 000		1	MICROSWITCH	MS1
60	WG8 - 5206 - 010		2	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	PI2,3 J202,203
61	WG8 - 5309 - 000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER	PI1 J201
62	WT2 - 5041 - 000		1	CLAMP, CABLE	
63	XA9 - 0605 - 000		4	SCREW,M4X8	
64	XA9 - 0605 - 000		13	SCREW,M4X8	
65	XA9 - 0632 - 000		1	SCREW,RS,M4X26	
66	XA9 - 0632 - 000		2	SCREW,RS,M4X26	
67	XA9 - 0633 - 000		1	SCREW,RS,M4X8	
68	XA9 - 0976 - 000		4	SCREW,P,M4X16	
69	XG9 - 0237 - 000		2	BEARING, BALL	
501	XB1 - 2301 - 209		1	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X12	
502	XB1 - 2400 - 609		2	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M4X6	
503	XB1 - 2400 - 609		2	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M4X6	
504	XB2 - 6300 - 607		1	SCREW,W/WASHER,M3X6	
505	XB4 - 7301 - 209		5	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X12	
506	XB6 - 7301 - 609		1	SCREW,TP,M3X16	
507	XD2 - 1100 - 322		1	RING,E	
508	XD2 - 1100 - 642		1	RING,E	
509	XD2 - 2100 - 802		1	RING,GRIP	
510	XD2 - 2300 - 502		2	RING,TOOTHED LOCK	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 162 ADF TRAY ASSEMBLY (NP6412F)

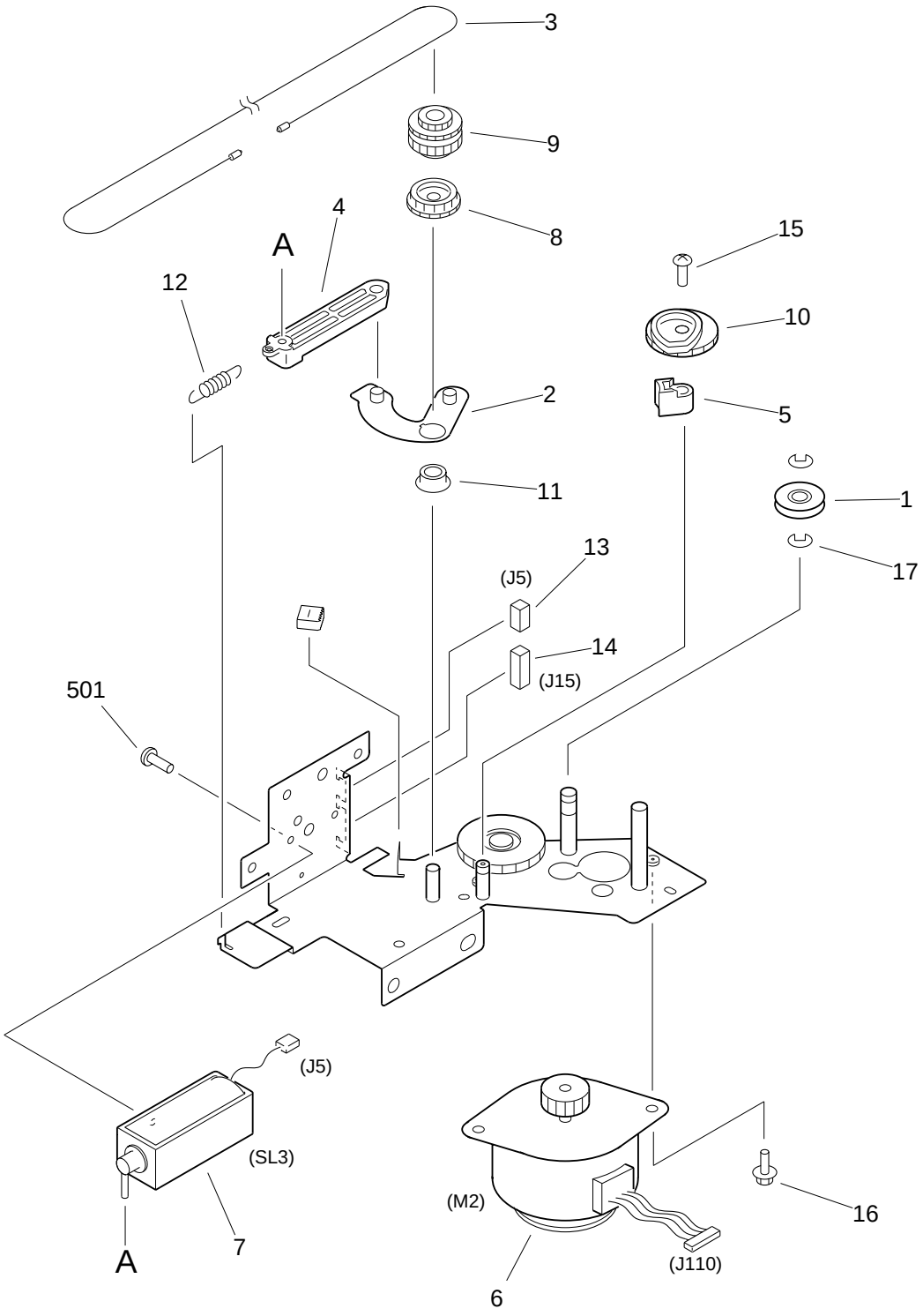


NOTE:This assembly does not include the parts shown with key No.1,4 and 8.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
162 -	FG5 - 6418 - 000		1	ADF TRAY ASSEMBLY	NP6412F
1	FB3 - 3391 - 000		1	COVER, LOWER	NP6412F SEE NOTE
2	FB3 - 3395 - 000		1	GEAR, 20T	
3	FB3 - 3396 - 000		1	PLATE, SLIDE	
4	FB3 - 3397 - 000		1	TRAY, SUB	NP6412F INCH SIZE SEE NOTE
5	FF5 - 6756 - 000		1	GUIDE, SLIDE, FRONT	
5 A	FB3 - 3392 - 000		1	RUBBER, STOP	
6	FF5 - 6757 - 000		1	GUIDE, SLIDE, REAR	
6 A	FB3 - 3392 - 000		1	RUBBER, STOP	
6 B	FS6 - 8196 - 000		1	LABEL, "PAPER HEIGHT"	
7	FF5 - 6758 - 000		1	TRAY, DOCUMENT	
7 A	FS6 - 8092 - 000		1	LABEL, "DOCUMENT SET OPERATE"	
8	FS6 - 8197 - 000		1	LABEL, "PAPER SIZE"	NP6412F SEE NOTE
5 0 1	XB1 - 2400 - 609		1	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M4X6	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 220 SCANNER DRIVE ASSEMBLY



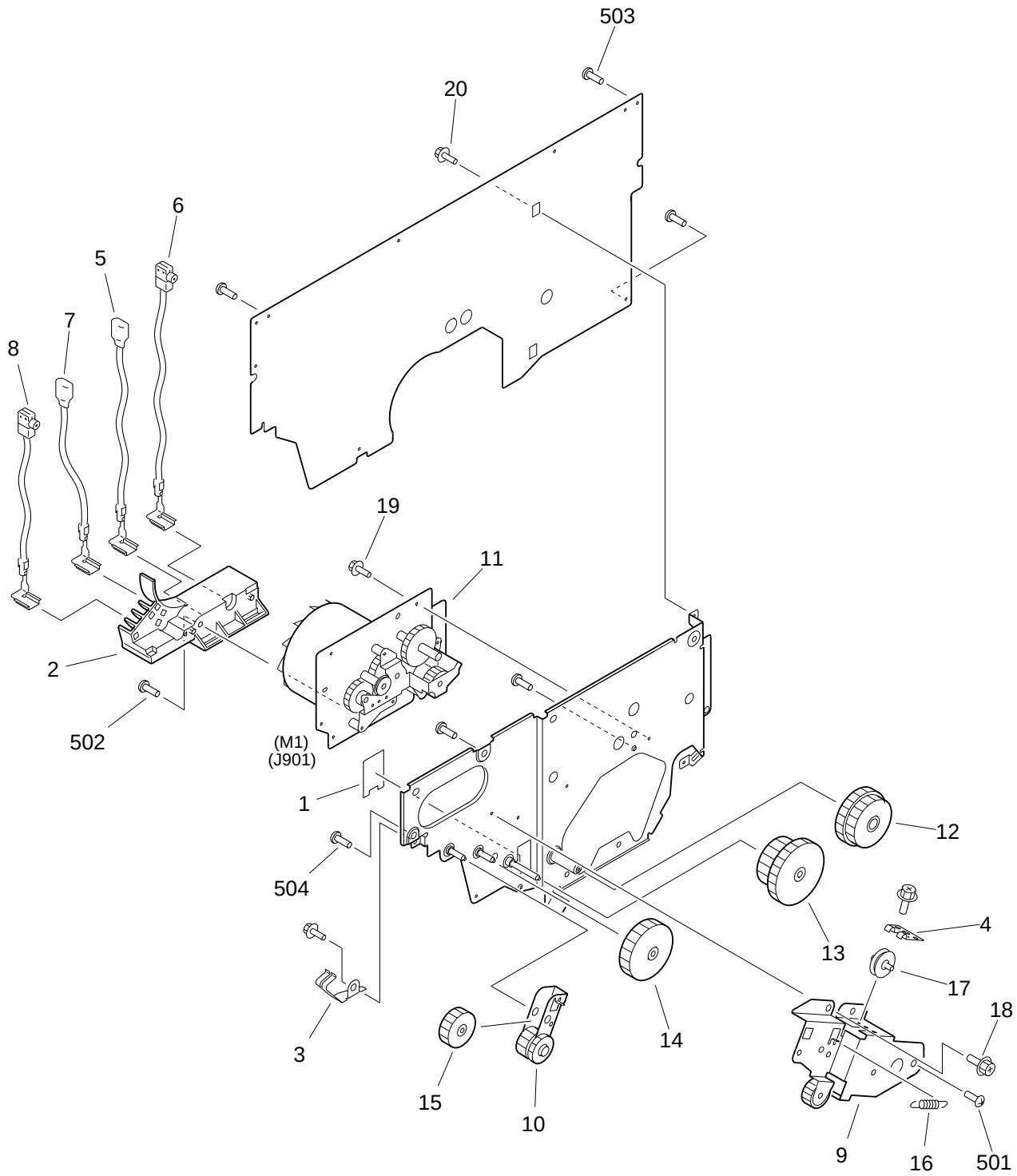
NOTE:This assembly does not include the parts shown with key No.3,5,10 and 15.

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
220 -	FG5 - 3465 - 040		1	SCANNER DRIVE ASSEMBLY	
1	FB2 - 4616 - 000		1	PULLEY	
2	FB2 - 4701 - 020		1	ARM, SOLENOID, 1	
3	FB2 - 4702 - 000		1	WIRE, SCANNER DRIVE	SEE NOTE
4	FB2 - 4703 - 000		1	ARM, SOLENOID, 2	
5	FB2 - 4704 - 000		1	BLOCK, WIRE STOP	SEE NOTE
6	FH6 - 1079 - 000		1	MOTOR, STEPPING	M2 J110
7	FH7 - 5564 - 000		1	SOLENOID, DC24V	SL3 J5
8	FS5 - 0917 - 000		1	GEAR, 40T	
9	FS5 - 0918 - 000		1	GEAR, 24T/39T	
10	FS5 - 0919 - 000		1	GEAR, 53T	SEE NOTE
11	FS5 - 1439 - 000		1	BUSHING	
12	FS5 - 2821 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
13	VS1 - 5057 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	J5
14	VS1 - 5057 - 006		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	J15
15	XA9 - 0187 - 000		1	SCREW,M3X6	SEE NOTE
16	XA9 - 0760 - 000		2	SCREW,RS,M3X6	
17	XD9 - 0136 - 000		2	RING,E	
501	XB1 - 2300 - 409		2	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X4	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 230 MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY



NOTE:This assembly does not include the parts shown with key No.2,3,5,6,7,8,11,19,20,502,503 and 504.

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
230 -	FG5 - 5476 - 000		1	MAIN DRIVE ASSEMBLY	
1	FB2 - 4854 - 000		1	PLATE, BLANKING	
2	FB2 - 4927 - 000		1	MOUNT, TERMINAL, UPPER	SEE NOTE
3	FB3 - 0583 - 000		1	SPRING, LEAF	SEE NOTE
4	FB3 - 0629 - 000		1	PLATE, IDLER HOLDER	
5	FF2 - 9724 - 000		1	CABLE, TERMINAL, PRIMARY	SEE NOTE
6	FF2 - 9725 - 000		1	CABLE, TERMINAL, TRANSFER	SEE NOTE
7	FF2 - 9726 - 000		1	CABLE, TERMINAL	SEE NOTE
8	FF2 - 9727 - 000		1	CABLE, TERMINAL, ELIMINATOR	SEE NOTE
9	FF5 - 2887 - 000	N	1	FRONT PANEL, AUXILIARY	
10	FF5 - 2888 - 000		1	PLATE, SWING	
11	FH6 - 1209 - 000		1	MOTOR, DC24V	SEE NOTE M1 J901
12	FS5 - 0905 - 000		1	GEAR, 58T/35T	
13	FS5 - 0906 - 000		1	GEAR, 48T/34T	
14	FS5 - 0907 - 000		1	GEAR, 41T	
15	FS5 - 0908 - 000		1	GEAR, 25T	
16	FS5 - 2785 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
17	FS5 - 6393 - 000		1	ROLLER, IDLER	
18	XA9 - 0760 - 000		4	SCREW,RS,M3X6	
19	XA9 - 0760 - 000		AR	SCREW,RS,M3X6	SEE NOTE
20	XA9 - 0762 - 000		1	SCREW,RS,M3X8	SEE NOTE
501	XB1 - 2300 - 609		1	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X6	
502	XB1 - 2400 - 609		1	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M4X6	SEE NOTE
503	XB4 - 7400 - 809		3	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M4X8	SEE NOTE
504	XB4 - 7401 - 009		3	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M4X10	SEE NOTE

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 240 DELIVERY DRIVE ASSEMBLY

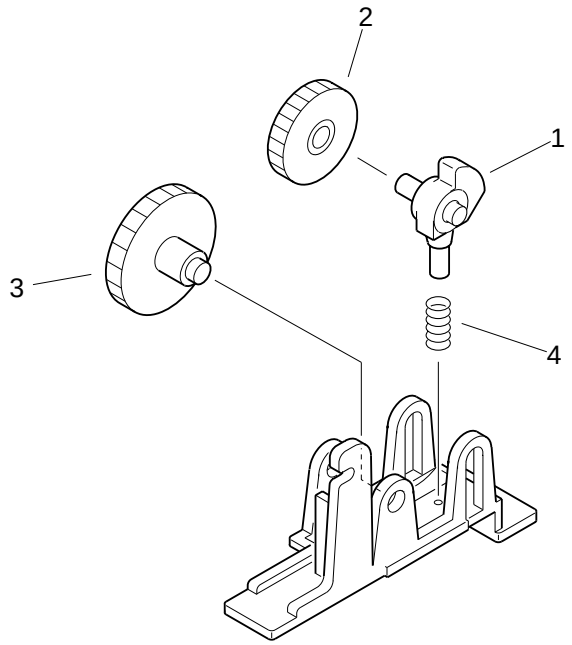


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
240 -	FG5 - 3501 - 000		1	DELIVERY DRIVE ASSEMBLY	
1	FB2 - 5052 - 000		1	SHAFT, GEAR	
2	FS5 - 0911 - 000		1	GEAR, 20T	
3	FS5 - 0912 - 000		1	GEAR, 40T/39T	
4	FS5 - 2786 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 250 PAPER PICK-UP DRIVE ASSEMBLY

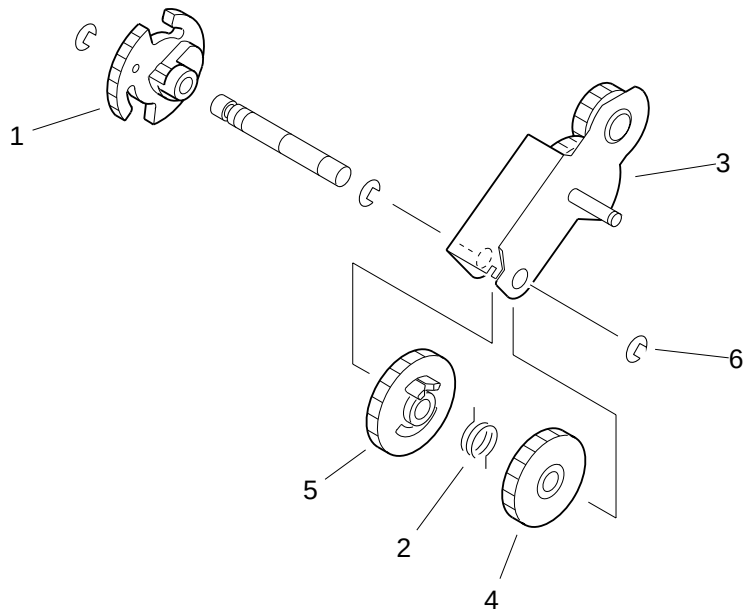
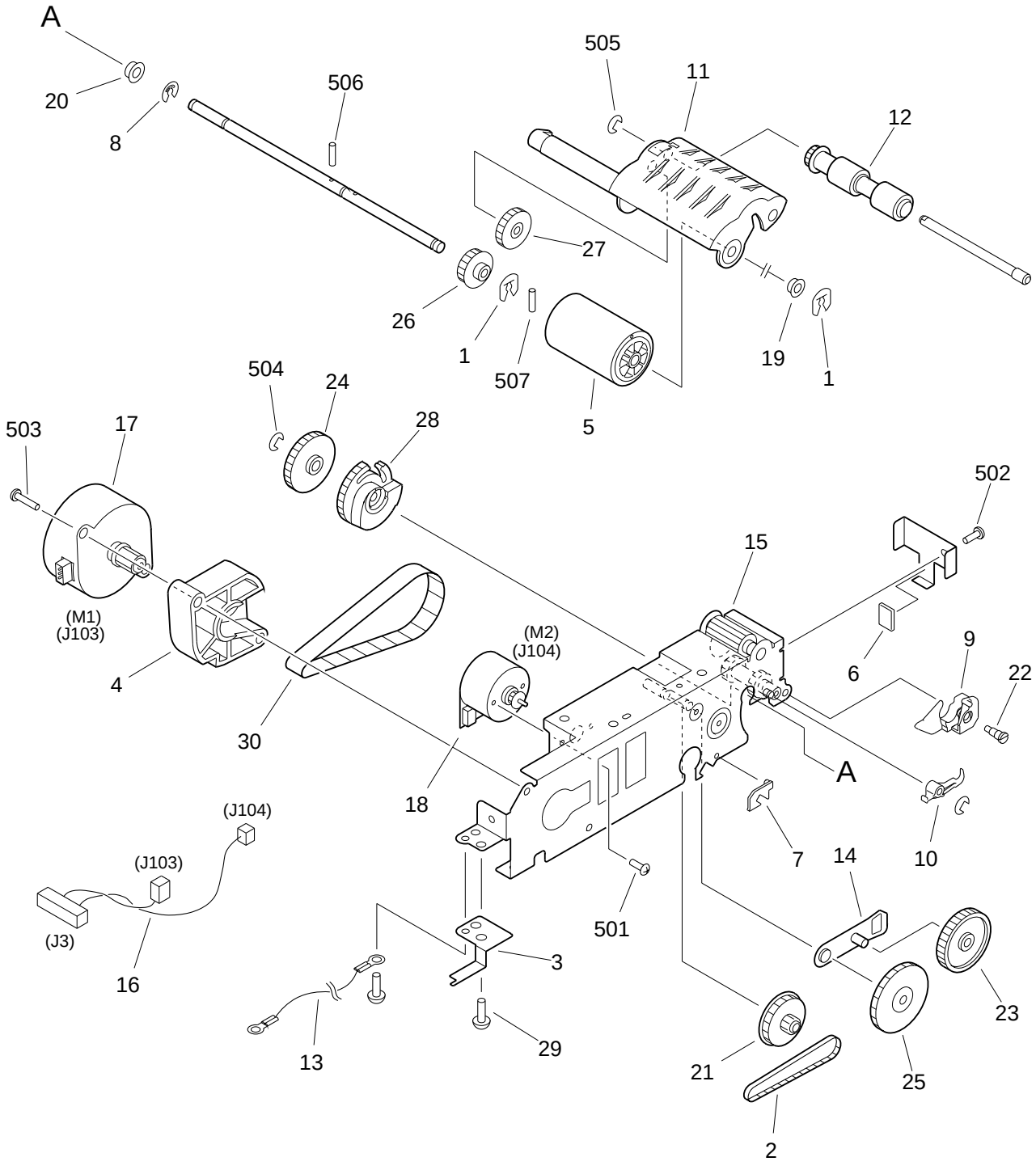


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
250 -	FG5 - 3511 - 000		1	PICK-UP DRIVE ASSEMBLY	
1	FB2 - 5198 - 000		1	GEAR, 32T	
2	FB2 - 5199 - 000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
3	FF5 - 2874 - 000		1	PLATE, SWING	
4	FS5 - 0890 - 000		1	GEAR, 32T	
5	FS5 - 0900 - 000		1	GEAR, 18T	
6	XD9 - 0136 - 000		3	RING,E	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 290 ADF DRIVE ASSEMBLY (NP6412F)



NOTE:This assembly does not include the parts shown with key No.3 and 29.

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

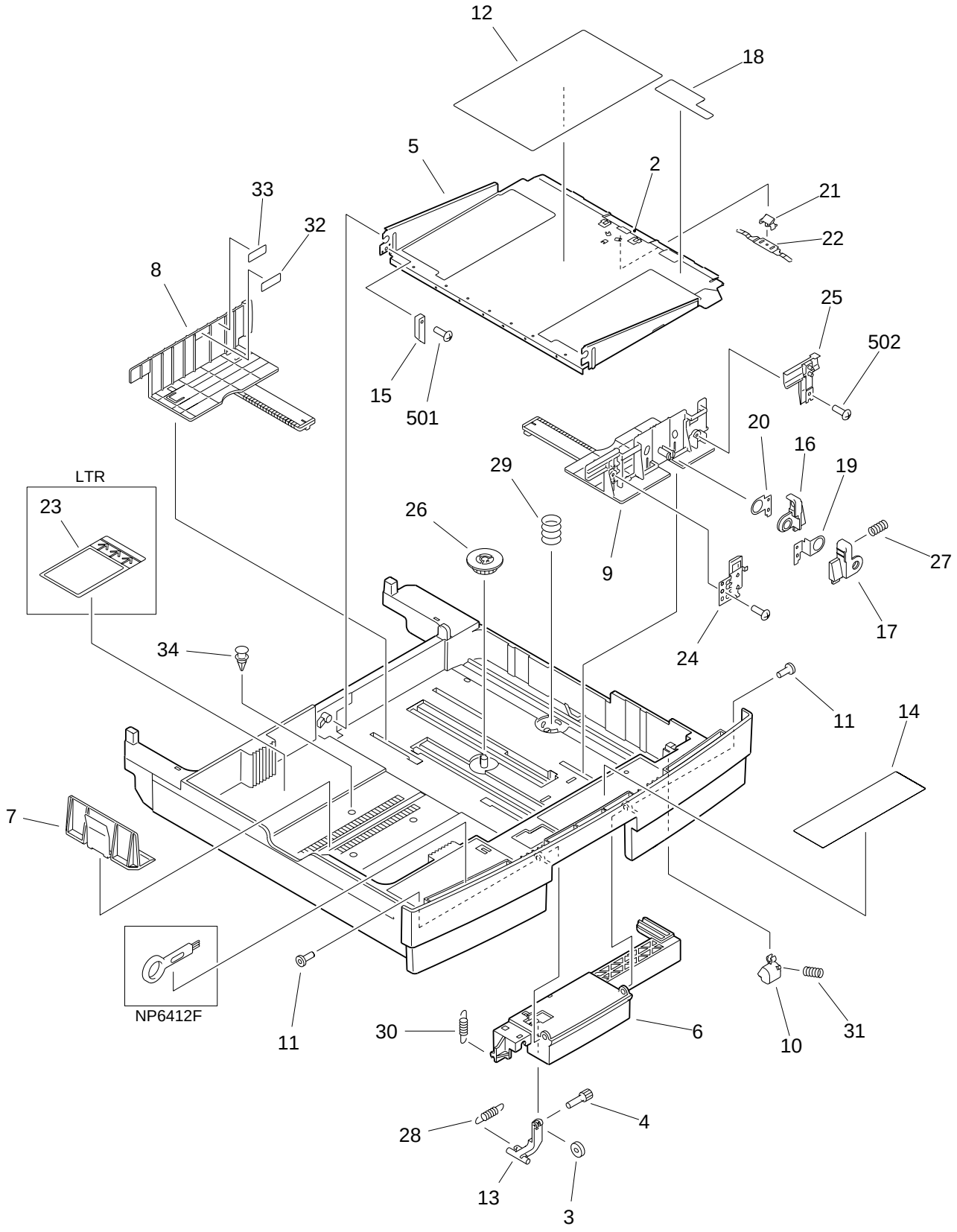
FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
290 -	FG5 - 6416 - 000		1	ADF DRIVE ASSEMBLY	NP6412F
1	FA5 - 2864 - 020		2	RING, RETAINING	
2	FA9 - 3268 - 000		1	BELT, TIMING, COGGED	
3	FB3 - 3353 - 000		1	PLATE, GROUNDING	SEE NOTE
4	FB3 - 3371 - 000		1	MOUNT, MOTOR	
5	FB3 - 3373 - 020		1	ROLLER, PAPER PICK-UP	
6	FB3 - 3375 - 000		1	PAD, TORQUE	
7	FB3 - 3377 - 000		1	SUPPORT, REGIST. SHAFT	
8	FB3 - 3400 - 000		1	RING, E	
9	FB4 - 1148 - 000		1	BLOCK, CAM LINK, 1	
10	FB4 - 1149 - 000		1	BLOCK, CAM LINK, 2	
11	FB4 - 1150 - 000		1	HOLDER, PAPER PICK-UP ROLLER	
12	FB4 - 1151 - 000		1	ROLLER, PAPER PICK-UP	
13	FF3 - 1070 - 000		1	CABLE, GROUNDING	
14	FF5 - 4681 - 000		1	PLATE, CHANGE	
15	FF5 - 6754 - 000		1	MOUNT, DRIVER	
16	FG2 - 7468 - 000		1	CABLE, MOTOR	
17	FH6 - 1237 - 000		1	STEPPING MOTOR, DC24V	
18	FH6 - 1238 - 000		1	MOTOR, DC24V	
19	FS1 - 1190 - 000		1	BUSHING	
20	FS1 - 1213 - 000		1	BUSHING	
21	FS5 - 3457 - 000		1	GEAR, 14T/44T	
22	FS5 - 9362 - 000		1	SCREW,STEPPED,M4	
23	FS6 - 0613 - 000		1	GEAR, 40T	
24	FS6 - 0617 - 000		1	GEAR, PICK-UP, 44T	
25	FS6 - 0618 - 000		1	GEAR, 16T/64T	
26	FS6 - 0619 - 000		1	GEAR, 30T	
27	FS6 - 0620 - 000		1	GEAR, 35T	
28	FS6 - 0622 - 000		1	GEAR, CAM, 44T	
29	XA9 - 0605 - 000		1	SCREW,M4X8	SEE NOTE

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
290 - 30	XF9 - 0350 - 000		1	BELT, TIMING	
501	XA1 - 7260 - 309		2	SCREW,MACH.,PAN HEAD,M2.6X3	
502	XB1 - 2400 - 609		1	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M4X6	
503	XB1 - 2402 - 009		2	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M4X20	
504	XD2 - 1100 - 502		1	RING,E	
505	XD2 - 1200 - 322		2	RING,E	
506	XD3 - 2200 - 122		1	PIN,DOWEL	
507	XD3 - 2200 - 142		1	PIN,DOWEL	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 300 CASSETTE



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
300 -	NPN		RF	CASSETTE	
1	FA9 - 3102 - 000		1	BRUSH, CLEANING	NP6412F
2	FB2 - 2559 - 000		1	SHEET, LIFTING PLATE	
3	FB2 - 4863 - 000		1	ROLLER, HOOK	
4	FB2 - 4864 - 000		1	SHAFT, ROLLER	
5	FB2 - 5402 - 020		1	PLATE, PAPER LIFTING	
6	FB2 - 5403 - 020		1	LATCH, HANDLE	
7	FB2 - 5404 - 020		1	PLATE, SIZE, END	EXCEPT LTR
	FB2 - 5434 - 000		1	PLATE, SIZE, END	LTR
8	FB2 - 5405 - 000		1	PLATE, SIZE, SIDE, REAR	
9	FB2 - 5406 - 020		1	PLATE, SIZE, SIDE, FRONT	
10	FB2 - 5407 - 020		1	CATCH, PAPER, LIFTING	
11	FB2 - 5408 - 000		2	PIN, LEVER	
12	FB2 - 5409 - 000		1	LABEL, PLATE, LIFTING	EXCEPT LTR
	FB2 - 5445 - 000		1	LABEL "INSTRUCTION"	LTR
13	FB2 - 5410 - 000		1	HOOK, LATCH	
14	FB2 - 5412 - 000		1	LABEL, "PAPER WARNING"	
15	FB2 - 5413 - 000		1	BRUSH, GROUNDING	
16	FB2 - 5414 - 020		1	BLOCK, SIDE STOP, RIGHT	
17	FB2 - 5415 - 020		1	BLOCK, SIDE STOP, LEFT	
18	FB2 - 5420 - 000		1	LABEL, "PAPER SIZE"	
19	FB2 - 6043 - 000		1	PLATE, CATCH, 1	
20	FB2 - 6044 - 000		1	PLATE, CATCH, 2	
21	FB3 - 3531 - 000		1	GUIDE, LEAF SPRING	
22	FB3 - 3547 - 000		1	SPRING, LEAF	
23	FB3 - 3548 - 000		1	LABEL, "PAPER END"	LTR
24	FF5 - 2903 - 000		1	SPRING, LEAF, LARGE	
25	FF5 - 2904 - 000		1	SPRING, LEAF, SMALL	
26	FS5 - 0904 - 020		1	GEAR, 20T	
27	FS5 - 2650 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
300 - 28	FS5 - 2780 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
29	FS5 - 2781 - 020		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
30	FS5 - 2782 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
31	FS5 - 2810 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
32	FS6 - 8347 - 000		1	LABEL, "WARNING, PAPER HEIGHT"	
33	FS6 - 8401 - 000		1	LABEL, "WARNING, PAPER HEIGHT"	
34	XZ9 - 0422 - 000		1	SUPPORT, STOP	
501	XB1 - 2300 - 407		1	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X4	
502	XB4 - 7300 - 509		2	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X5	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 340 PAPER PICK-UP ROLLER ASSEMBLY (CASSETTE)

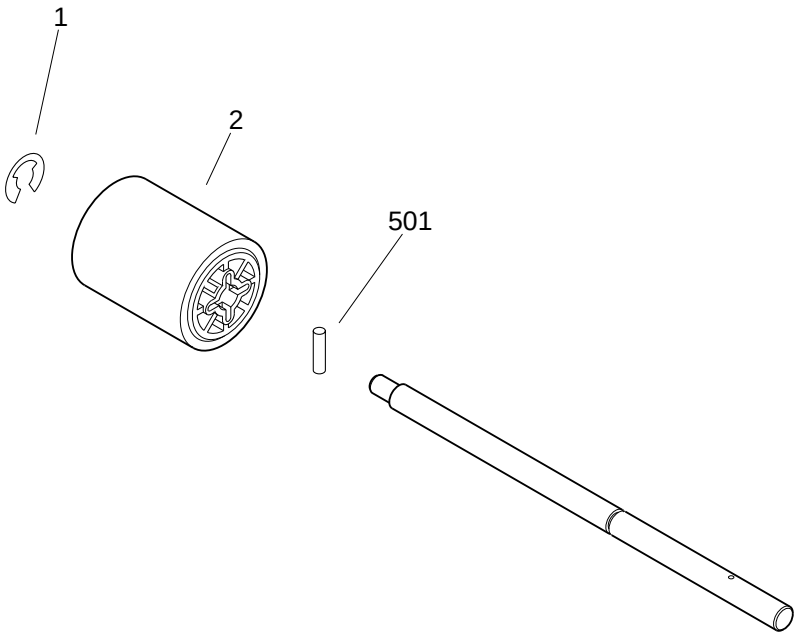
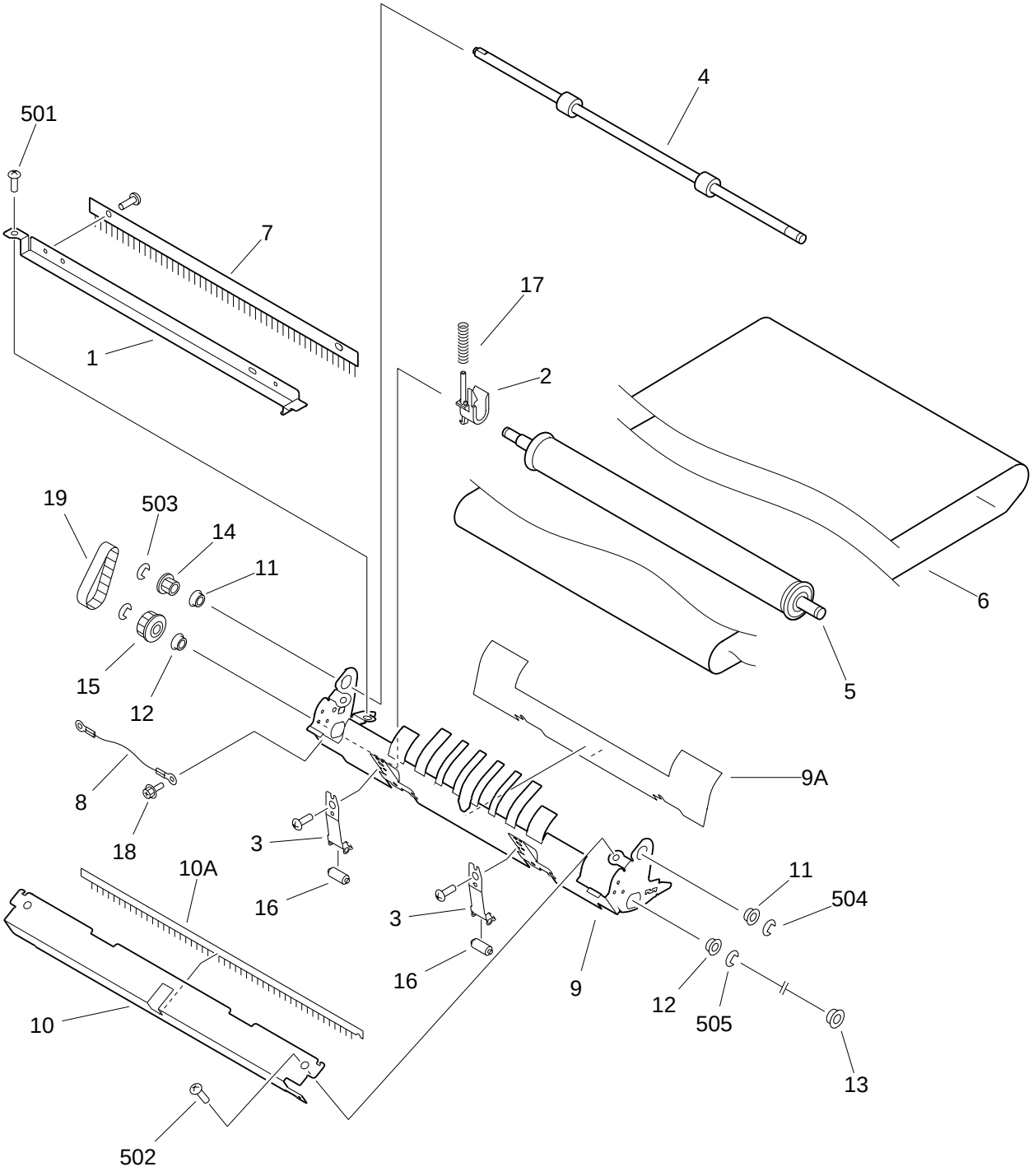


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
340 -	FG5 - 3531 - 000		1	PICK-UP ROLLER ASSEMBLY	CASSETTE
1	FA4 - 1159 - 000		1	RING, RETAINING	
2	FB1 - 8581 - 000		1	ROLLER, MULTI FEED	
501	XD3 - 2160 - 142		1	PIN,DOWEL	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 355 ADF DELIVERY ASSEMBLY (NP6412F)



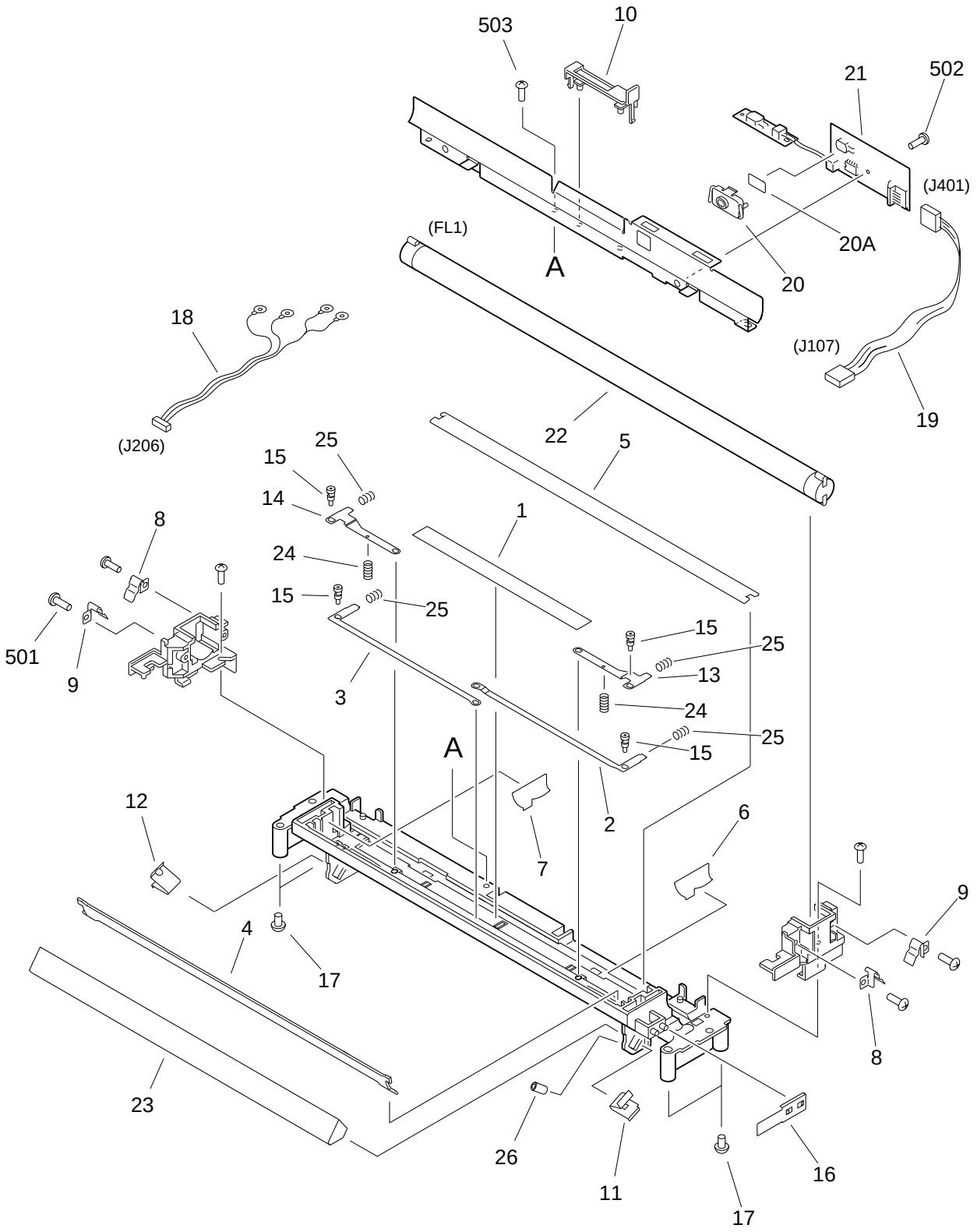
NOTE:This assembly does not include the part shown with key No.18.

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
355 -	FG5 - 6413 - 000		1	ADF DELIVERY ASSEMBLY	NP6412F
1	FB3 - 3379 - 000		1	CROSSMEMBER, ELIMINATOR	
2	FB3 - 3382 - 000		1	SUPPORT, PAPER JUMP GUIDE	
3	FB3 - 3383 - 000		2	PLATE, ROLLER PRESSURE	
4	FB3 - 3385 - 020		1	ROLLER, PAPER DELIVERY	
5	FB3 - 3386 - 000		1	ROLLER, PAPER FEED	
6	FB3 - 3387 - 000		1	BELT, DOCUMENT FEED	
7	FB3 - 3388 - 000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE, 1	
8	FF3 - 1071 - 000		1	CABLE, GROUNDING	
9	FF5 - 4685 - 020		1	FRAME, PAPER DELIVERY	
9A	FB3 - 3381 - 000		1	SHEET, JUMP	
10	FF5 - 4686 - 000		1	PLATE, DELIVERY GUIDE	
10A	FB3 - 3389 - 000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE, 2	
11	FS1 - 1205 - 000		2	BUSHING	
12	FS1 - 1341 - 000		2	BUSHING	
13	FS1 - 1422 - 000		1	BUSHING	
14	FS5 - 3459 - 000		1	PULLEY, 14T	
15	FS5 - 3460 - 000		1	PULLEY, 26T	
16	FS5 - 6455 - 000		2	ROLLER, 2	
17	FS6 - 2375 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
18	XA9 - 0633 - 000		1	SCREW,RS,M4X8	SEE NOTE NP6412F
19	XF9 - 0562 - 000		1	BELT, TIMING	
501	XB1 - 2300 - 609		2	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X6	
502	XB1 - 2400 - 609		6	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M4X6	
503	XD2 - 1100 - 322		1	RING,E	
504	XD2 - 1100 - 502		2	RING,E	
505	XD2 - 1100 - 642		1	RING,E	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 400 MIRROR ASSEMBLY 1



NOTE:This assembly does not include the part shown with key No.22.

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
400 -	FG6 - 0074 - 000	N	1	MIRROR ASSEMBLY 1	
1	FA9 - 3065 - 000		1	SHEET, 5	
2	FB2 - 4650 - 000		1	SHUTTER, FRONT	
3	FB2 - 4651 - 000		1	SHUTTER, REAR	
4	FB2 - 4652 - 000		1	REFLECTOR, 1	
5	FB2 - 4653 - 000		1	REFLECTOR, 2	
6	FB2 - 4654 - 000		1	PLATE, SIDE REFLECTOR, FRONT	
7	FB2 - 4655 - 000		1	PLATE, SIDE REFLECTOR, REAR	
8	FB2 - 4658 - 020		2	SPRING, LEAF, 1	
9	FB2 - 4659 - 020		2	SPRING, LEAF, 2	
10	FB2 - 4660 - 000		1	COVER, SENSOR	
11	FB2 - 4662 - 020		1	SPRING, LEAF, FRONT	
12	FB2 - 4663 - 020		1	SPRING, LEAF, REAR	
13	FB2 - 4664 - 000		1	SHUTTER, SUB, FRONT	
14	FB2 - 4665 - 000		1	SHUTTER, SUB, REAR	
15	FB2 - 4666 - 030		4	SCREW, ADJUSTING	
16	FB2 - 4667 - 020		1	FLAG	
17	FB2 - 4669 - 020		4	BLOCK, RAIL SLIDING	
18	FF2 - 9728 - 000		1	CABLE, MIRROR ASSEMBLY 1	J206
19	FF2 - 9729 - 000		1	CABLE, MIRROR UNIT 1 SENSOR	J107,401
20	FF5 - 2889 - 000		1	COVER, SENSOR	
20A	FB1 - 0715 - 000		1	FILTER, LIGHT DENSITY	
21	FG5 - 3541 - 000		1	INTENSITY/AE SENSOR PCB ASS'Y	
22	FH7 - 3272 - 000		1	LAMP, FLUORESCENT	SEE NOTE FL1
23	FN5 - 4018 - 000		1	MIRROR, 1	
24	FS5 - 2032 - 000		4	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
25	FS5 - 2815 - 000		4	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
26	XA9 - 0911 - 000		1	SETSCREW,M3X8	
501	XB1 - 2300 - 609		4	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X6	
502	XB2 - 8300 - 607		1	SCREW,W/WASHER,M3X6	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
400 - 503	XB4 - 7300 - 809		3	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X8	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 401 MIRROR ASSEMBLY 2

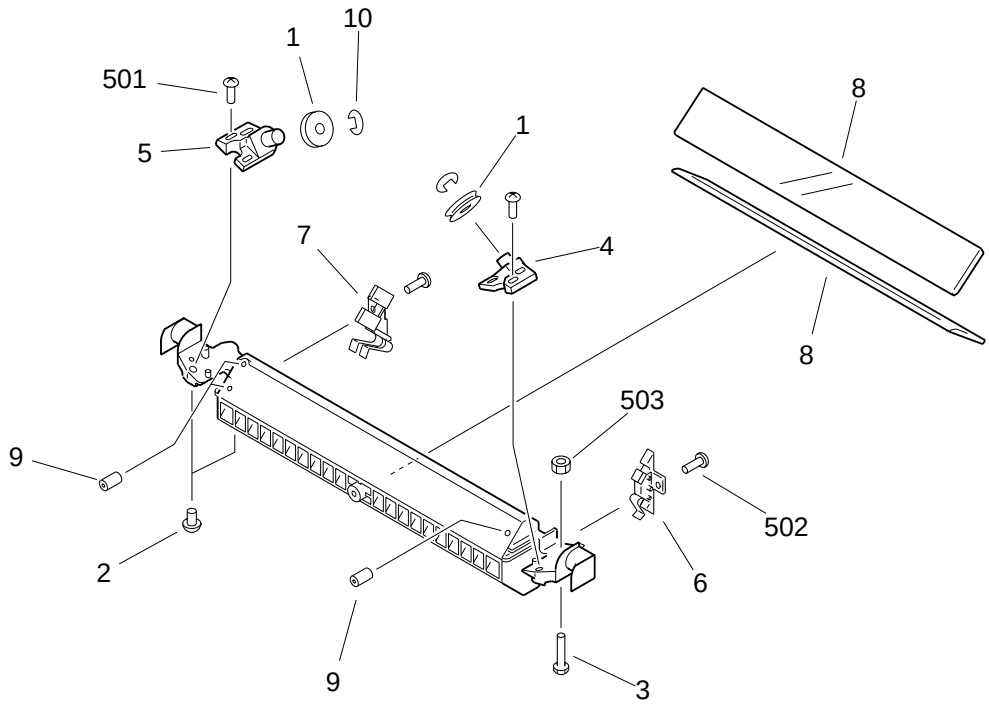


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
401 -	FG5 - 3463 - 000	N	1	MIRROR ASSEMBLY 2	
1	FB2 - 4616 - 000		2	PULLEY	
2	FB2 - 4669 - 020		2	BLOCK, RAIL SLIDING	
3	FB2 - 4676 - 000		1	SCREW, ADJUSTING, M4	
4	FB2 - 4677 - 020		1	PLATE, WIRE POSITIONING, FRONT	
5	FB2 - 4678 - 020		1	PLATE, WIRE POSITIONING, REAR	
6	FF5 - 2899 - 000		1	HOLDER, MIRROR, FRONT	
7	FF5 - 2900 - 000		1	HOLDER, MIRROR, REAR	
8	FN5 - 4019 - 000		2	MIRROR, 2/3	
9	XA9 - 0911 - 000		3	SETSCREW,M3X8	
10	XD9 - 0136 - 000		2	RING,E	
501	XB4 - 7300 - 809		2	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X8	
502	XB4 - 7301 - 009		2	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X10	
503	XB7 - 2200 - 409		1	NUT,HEX,M4	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 402 ZOOM MIRROR ASSEMBLY

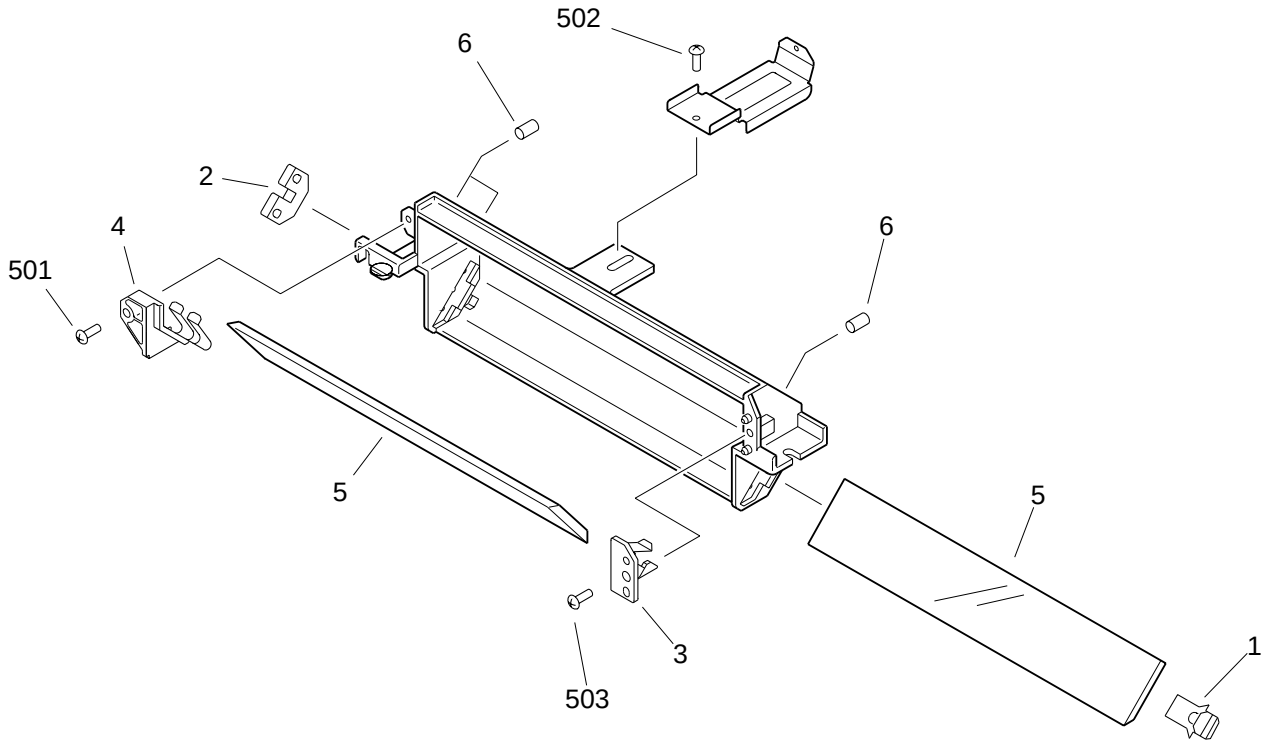
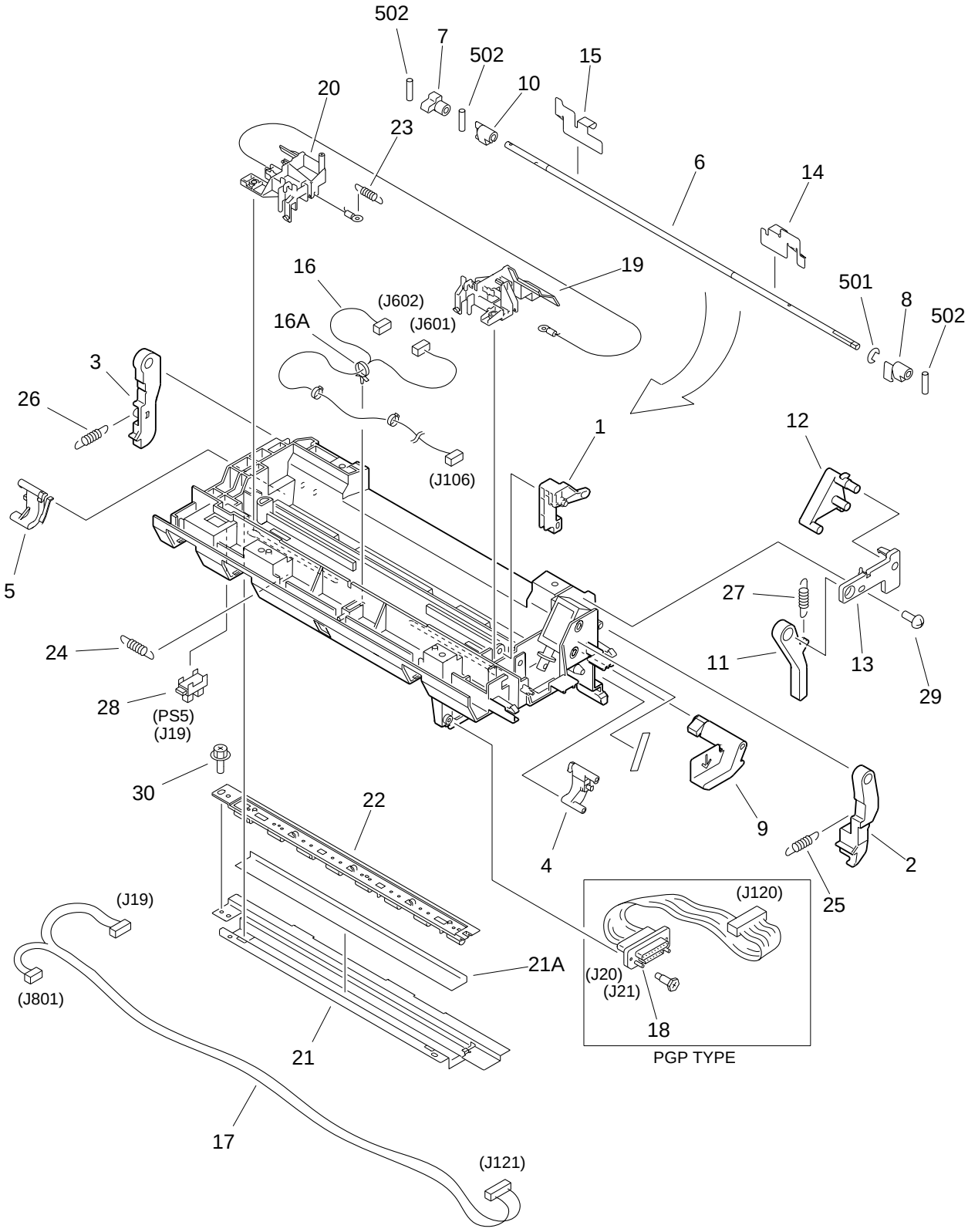


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
402 -	FG5 - 3464 - 000	N	1	ZOOM MIRROR ASSEMBLY	
1	FB2 - 4694 - 020		1	SPRING, LEAF, MIRROR 5, FRONT	
2	FB2 - 4695 - 030		1	SPRING, LEAF, MIRROR 5, REAR	
3	FF5 - 2901 - 000		1	SPRING, LEAF, MIRROR 4, FRONT	
4	FF5 - 2902 - 000		1	SPRING, LEAF, MIRROR 4, REAR	
5	FN5 - 4020 - 000		2	MIRROR, 4/5	
6	XA9 - 0911 - 000		3	SETSCREW,M3X8	
501	XB1 - 2300 - 609		1	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X6	
502	XB1 - 2300 - 809		1	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X8	
503	XB4 - 7300 - 809		1	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X8	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 450 BLANK EXPOSURE LAMP ASSEMBLY



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

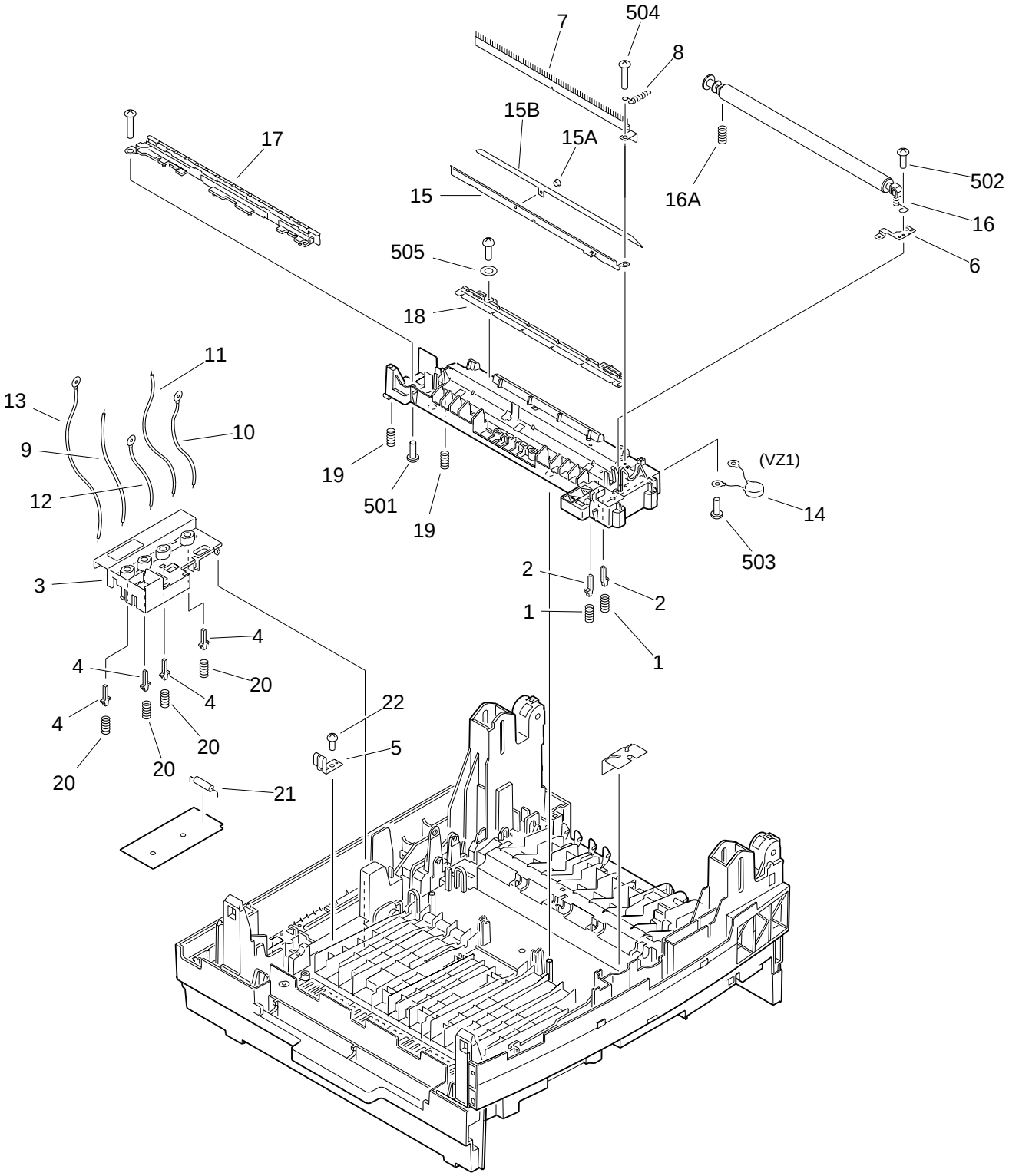
FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
450 -	NPN		RF	BLANK EXPOSURE LAMP ASSEMBLY	
1	FB3 - 0774 - 000		1	ARM, SOLENOID	
2	FB3 - 0775 - 000		1	LEVER, PRESSURE, FRONT	
3	FB3 - 0776 - 000		1	LEVER, PRESSURE, REAR	
4	FB3 - 0777 - 000		1	ARM, PRESSURE, FRONT	
5	FB3 - 0778 - 000		1	ARM, PRESSURE, REAR	
6	FB3 - 0779 - 020		1	SHAFT, PRESSURE	
7	FB3 - 0780 - 000		1	CAM, PRESSURE RELEASE, 1	
8	FB3 - 0781 - 000		1	CAM, PRESSURE RELEASE, 2	
9	FB3 - 0782 - 000		1	HANDLE, PRESSURE	
10	FB3 - 0784 - 000		1	CAM, ARM RELEASE	
11	FB3 - 0805 - 000		1	ARM, FOOL-PROOF	
12	FB3 - 0806 - 000		1	TRIGGER, FOOL-PROOF	
13	FB3 - 0807 - 000		1	SUPPORT, FOOL-PROOF ARM	
14	FB3 - 0811 - 020		1	SPRING, LEAF, FRONT	
15	FB3 - 0815 - 020		1	SPRING, LEAF, REAR	
16	FF2 - 9731 - 000		1	CABLE, BLANK EXPOSURE LAMP	J106,601,602
16A	WT2 - 5041 - 000		1	CLAMP, CABLE	
17	FF3 - 0471 - 000		1	CABLE, EXPO. LAMP/LIMIT SENSOR	J19,121,801
18	FF3 - 0473 - 000		1	CABLE, PGP PCB UNIT	PGP TYPE J20,21,120
19	FF5 - 3901 - 000		1	MOUNT, LAMP, FRONT	
20	FF5 - 3902 - 000		1	MOUNT, LAMP, REAR	
21	FF5 - 3904 - 000		1	COVER, PRE-CONDITIONING	
21A	FB3 - 0791 - 000		1	FILTER, PRE-CONDITIONING	
22	FG5 - 5499 - 000		1	PRE-CONDITIONING LAMP PCB UNIT	
23	FS5 - 2790 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
24	FS6 - 2229 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
25	FS6 - 2230 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
26	FS6 - 2231 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
27	FS6 - 2242 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
450 - 28	WG8 - 5001 - 000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER, TLP1231	PS5 J19
29	XA9 - 0650 - 000		2	SCREW,M3X6	
30	XA9 - 0760 - 000		1	SCREW,RS,M3X6	
501	XD2 - 1100 - 372		1	RING,E	
502	XD3 - 2200 - 062		3	PIN,DOWEL	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 530 TRANSFER ASSEMBLY



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

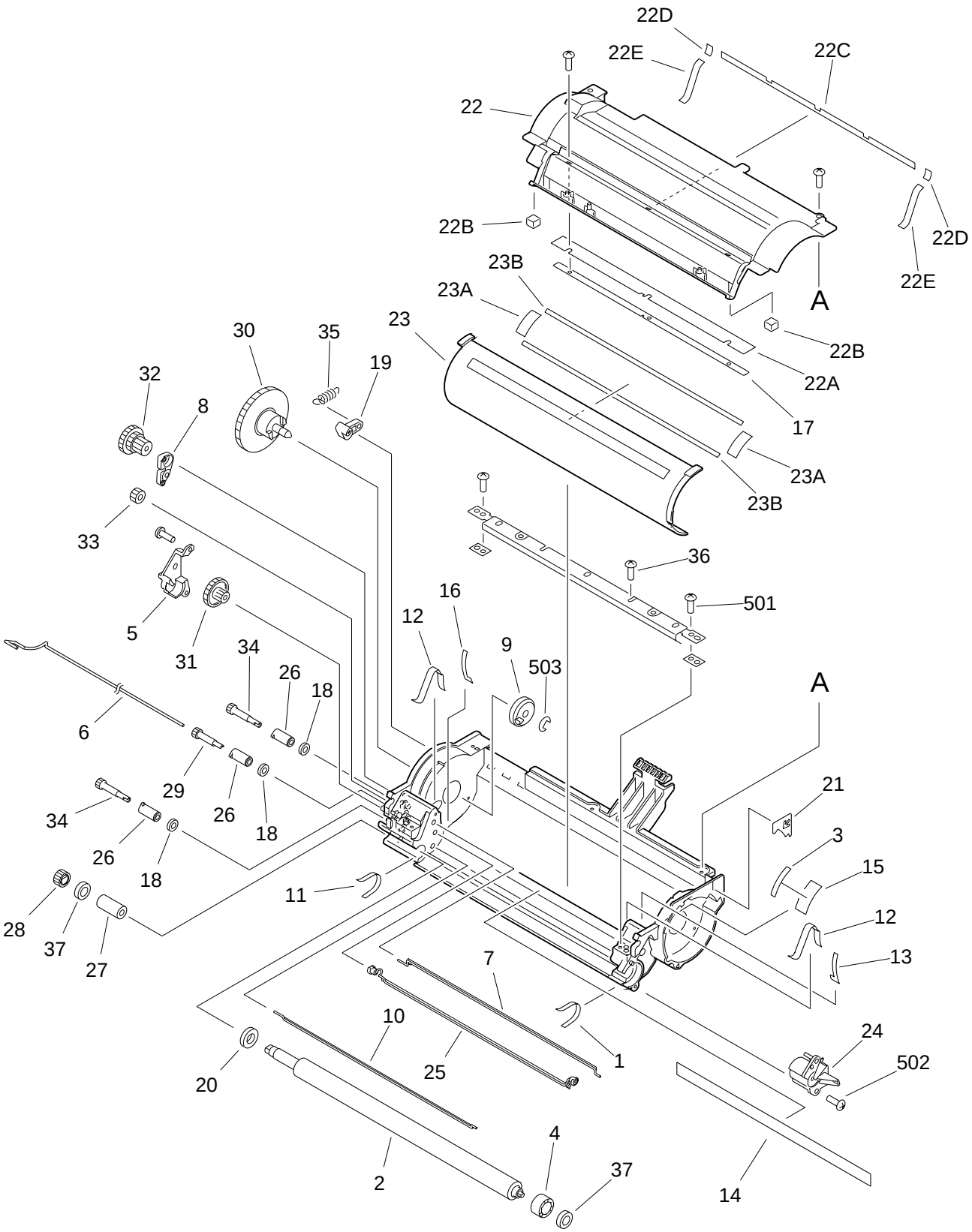
FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
530 -	FG5 - 5460 - 040		1	TRANSFER ASSEMBLY	
1	FB1 - 7427 - 000		2	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
2	FB1 - 7431 - 000		2	PIN	
3	FB2 - 4861 - 000		1	HOUSING	
4	FB2 - 4862 - 000		4	TERMINAL, LOWER	
5	FB2 - 4939 - 000		1	SPRING, LEAF	
6	FB2 - 5156 - 000		1	PLATE, TERMINAL	
7	FB2 - 5159 - 000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE	
8	FB2 - 5169 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
9	FF2 - 9762 - 000		1	CABLE, HV, PRIMARY	
10	FF2 - 9763 - 000		1	CABLE, HV, TRANSFER	
11	FF2 - 9764 - 000		1	CABLE, HV, DEVELOPING	
12	FF2 - 9765 - 000		1	CABLE, HV, ELIMINATOR	
13	FF2 - 9766 - 000		1	WIRE, GROUNDING	
14	FF2 - 9779 - 000		1	VARISTOR	VZ1
15	FF5 - 2870 - 000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE	
15A	FA9 - 3063 - 000		1	BUSHING	
15B	FB2 - 5153 - 000		1	FILM, STATIC ELIMINATOR	
16	FF5 - 2871 - 020		1	ROLLER, TRANSFER	
16A	FS5 - 2335 - 000		1	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
17	FF5 - 3713 - 000		1	ELIMINATOR, STATIC CHARGE	
18	FF5 - 3720 - 000		1	GUIDE, TRANSFORMER	
19	FS5 - 2774 - 000		4	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
20	FS5 - 2784 - 000		4	SPRING, COMPRESSION	
21	VR5 - 2650 - 103		4	RESISTOR, 10KOHM, 1/2W	
22	XA9 - 0187 - 000		1	SCREW,M3X6	
501	XB1 - 2300 - 607		2	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X6	
502	XB1 - 2300 - 609		2	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X6	
503	XB4 - 7300 - 809		4	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X8	
504	XB4 - 7301 - 209		2	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X12	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
530 - 505	XD1 - 2100 - 307		2	WASHER,PLAIN	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 640 DEVELOPING ASSEMBLY



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

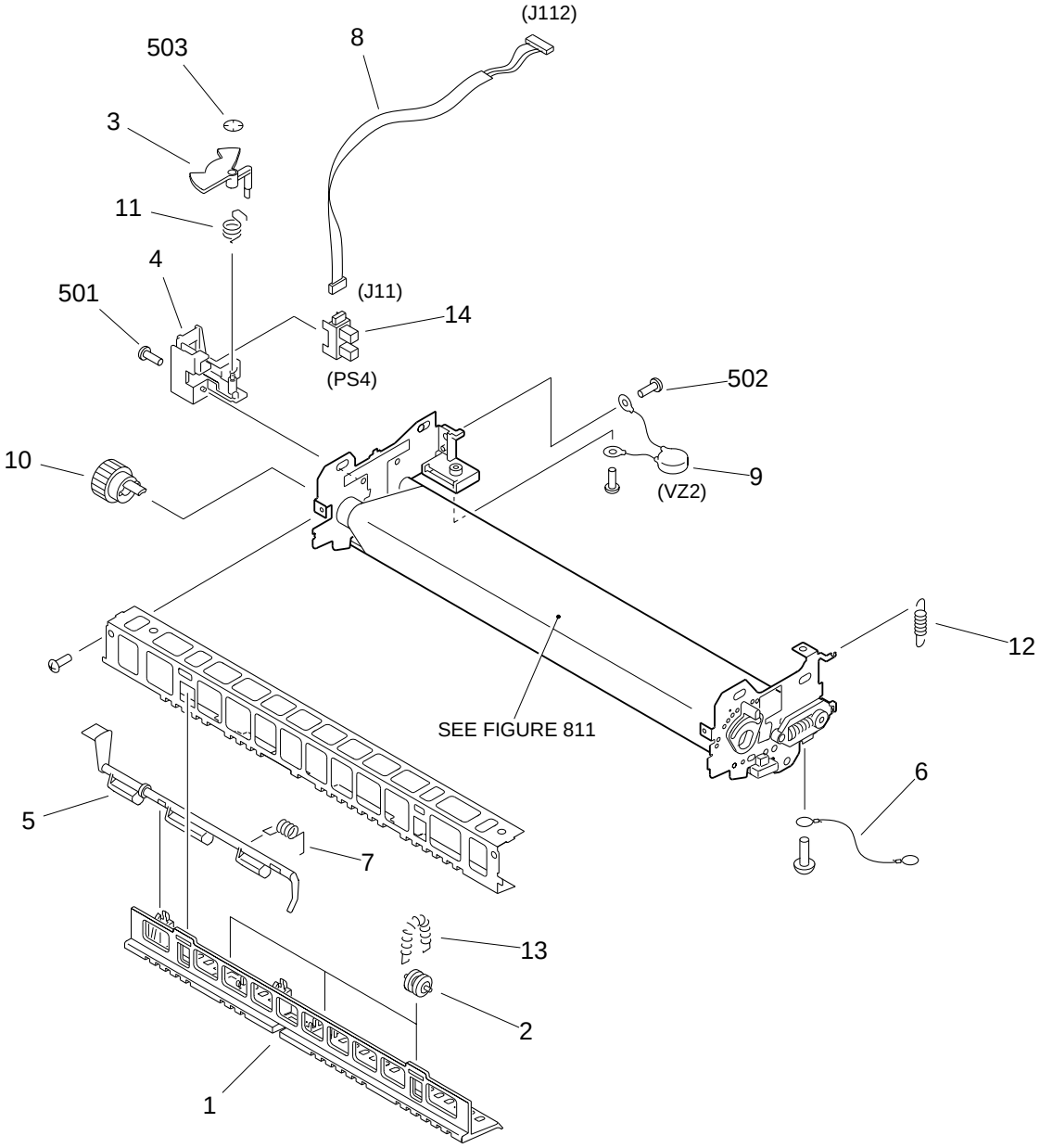
FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
640 -	FG5 - 5465 - 080		1	DEVELOPING ASSEMBLY	
1	FA9 - 3207 - 000		1	SEAL, SIDE, FRONT	
2	FB3 - 0686 - 000		1	SLEEVE, DEVELOPING	
3	FB3 - 0687 - 000		1	SEAL, OPEN GUIDE, 1	
4	FB3 - 0688 - 000		1	ROLLER, FRONT	
5	FB3 - 0691 - 000		1	SUPPORT, DEV. CYLINDER, REAR	
6	FB3 - 0693 - 000		1	ROD, ANTENNA	
7	FB3 - 0694 - 000		1	ROD, STIRRING, UPPER	
8	FB3 - 0695 - 000		1	PLATE, GEAR SUPPORT	
9	FB3 - 0696 - 000		1	JOINT, CARTRIDGE DRIVE	
10	FB3 - 0697 - 000		1	ROD, STIRRING, LOWER	
11	FB3 - 0711 - 000		1	SEAL, SIDE, REAR	
12	FB3 - 0713 - 000		2	SEAL, D-S, VERTICAL	
13	FB3 - 0714 - 000		1	SEAL, D-S, FRONT	
14	FB3 - 0715 - 000		1	SHEET, SHUTTER CLEANING	
15	FB3 - 0716 - 000		1	SEAL, OPEN GUIDE, 2	
16	FB3 - 0718 - 000		1	SEAL, D-S, REAR	
17	FB3 - 0721 - 000		1	PLATE, SEAL GUIDE	
18	FB3 - 0722 - 000		3	SEAL, GEAR	
19	FB3 - 0724 - 000		1	ARM, SHUTTER PRESSURE	
20	FB3 - 0726 - 000		1	ROLLER, REAR	
21	FB3 - 0788 - 000		1	SEAL, POSITIONING	
22	FF5 - 3907 - 020		1	COVER, DEVELOPING	
22A	FB3 - 0712 - 000		1	SEAL, L-S	
22B	FB3 - 0719 - 020		2	SEAL, BLADE	
22C	FB3 - 0725 - 000		1	SEAL, SHUTTER, 1	
22D	FB3 - 0727 - 000		2	SEAL, DEVELOPING COVER	
22E	FB3 - 0728 - 000		2	SEAL, SHUTTER, 2	
23	FF5 - 3908 - 000		1	SHUTTER	
23A	FB3 - 0710 - 000		2	SEAL, SHUTTER, VERTICAL	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
640 - 23B	FB3 - 0720 - 000		2	SEAL, SHUTTER, HORIZONTAL	
24	FF5 - 3910 - 020		1	SUPPORT, DEV. CYLINDER, FRONT	
25	FF5 - 3913 - 000		1	ROD, ANTENA STIRRING	
26	FS5 - 1530 - 000		3	BUSHING	
27	FS5 - 6394 - 000		1	SPACER, SLEEVE	
28	FS6 - 0437 - 000		1	GEAR, 18T	
29	FS6 - 0439 - 000		1	GEAR, 14T	
30	FS6 - 0440 - 000		1	GEAR, 67T	
31	FS6 - 0442 - 000		1	GEAR, 14T/38T	
32	FS6 - 0443 - 000		1	GEAR, 15T/18T/37T	
33	FS6 - 0445 - 000		1	GEAR, 15T	
34	FS6 - 0446 - 000		2	GEAR, 14T	
35	FS6 - 2238 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
36	XA9 - 0942 - 000		3	SCREW,M3X6	
37	XG9 - 0177 - 000		2	BALL BEARING	
501	XB4 - 7300 - 809		7	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X8	
502	XB4 - 7301 - 009		4	SCREW,TAPPING,TRUSS HEAD,M3X10	
503	XD2 - 1100 - 502		1	RING,E	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 810 FIXING ASSEMBLY



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
810 -	FG5 - 3492 - 090		1	FIXING ASSEMBLY	120V
	FG5 - 3493 - 090		1	FIXING ASSEMBLY	220V
1	FB2 - 5015 - 000		1	GUIDE, UPPER, DELIVERY	
2	FB2 - 5016 - 000		3	ROLLER	
3	FB2 - 5019 - 020		1	FLAG, POSITIONING SENSOR	
4	FB2 - 5020 - 000		1	HOLDER, SENSOR	
5	FB2 - 5021 - 000		1	FLAG, PAPER SENSING	
6	FB2 - 5022 - 000		1	WIRE	
7	FB2 - 5070 - 000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
8	FF2 - 9733 - 000		1	CABLE, SENSOR	J11,112
9	FF2 - 9779 - 000		1	VARISTOR	VZ2
10	FS5 - 0914 - 000		1	GEAR, 17T	
11	FS5 - 2794 - 000		1	SPRING, TORSION	
12	FS5 - 2795 - 000		1	SPRING, TENSION	
13	FS5 - 2796 - 000		3	SPRING, TENSION	
14	WG8 - 5001 - 000		1	PHOTO-INTERRUPTER, TLP1231	PS4 J11
501	XB1 - 2300 - 409		6	SCREW,MACH.,TRUSS HEAD,M3X4	
502	XB2 - 6300 - 607		2	SCREW,W/WASHER,M3X6	
503	XD2 - 2300 - 202		1	RING,TOOTHED LOCK	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 811 FIXING FILM REPLACEMENT KIT

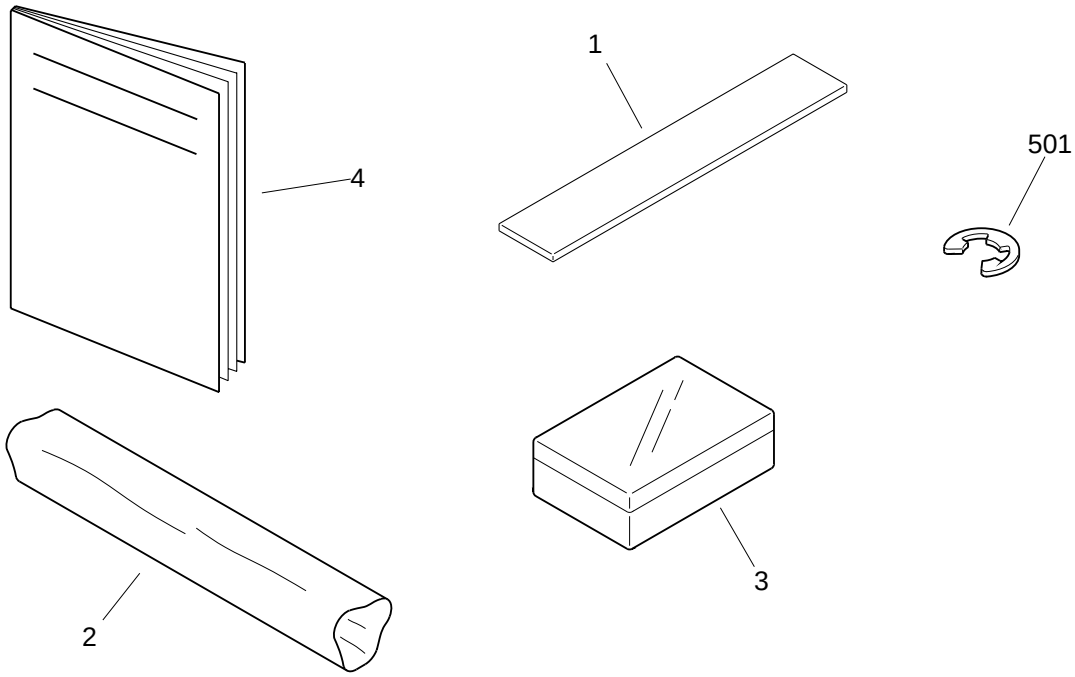
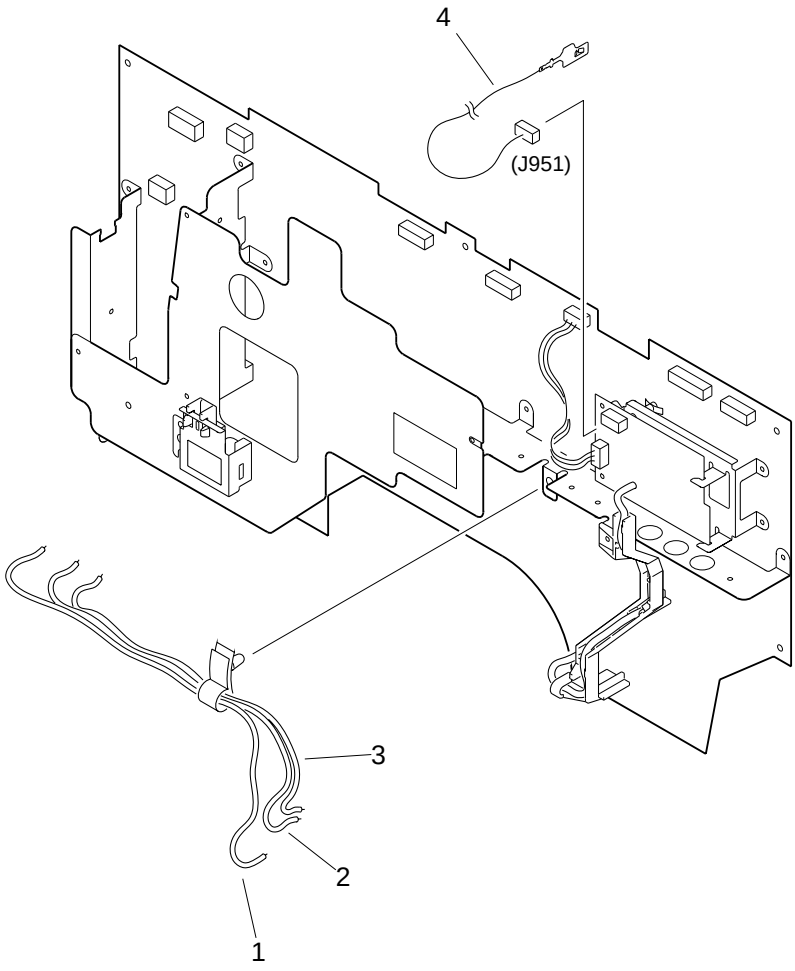


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
811 -	FG5 - 3516 - 000		1	FIXING FILM REPLACEMENT KIT	10 SET / KIT
1	NPN		1	SPATULA	
2	NPN		1	FIXING FILM	
3	NPN		1	COATING GREASE	
4	NPN		1	FILM REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE	
501	XD2 - 1100 - 502		1	RING,E	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 910 DC POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSEMBLY



NOTE:This assembly does not include the part shown with key No.4.

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

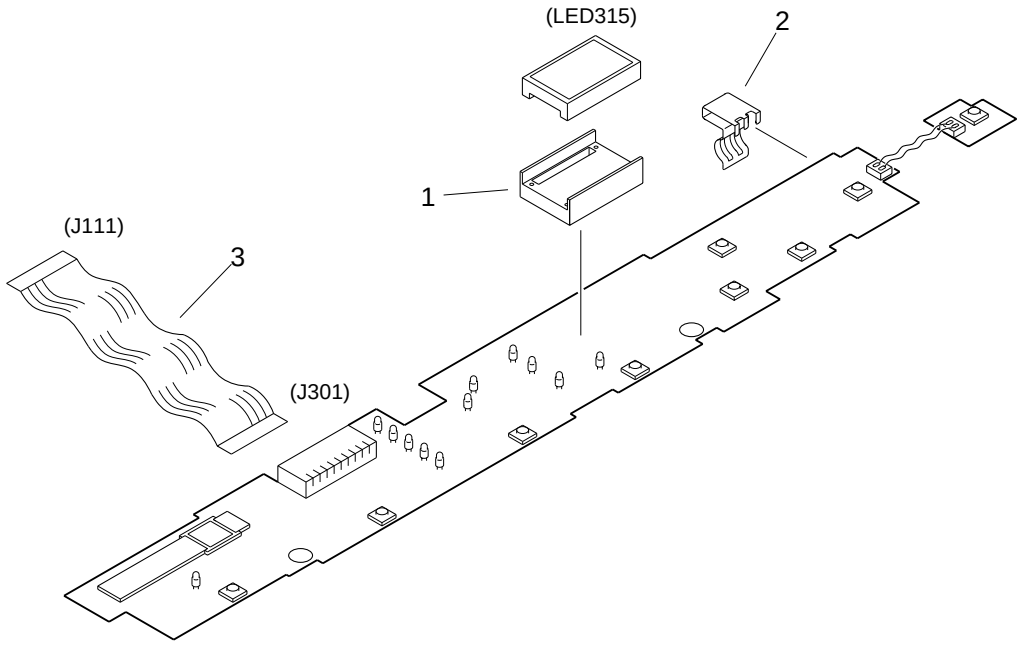
FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
910 -	FG6 - 0076 - 000		1	DC POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSEMBLY	120V
	FG6 - 0077 - 000		1	DC POWER SUPPLY PCB ASSEMBLY	220V
1	FF2 - 9772 - 000		1	CABLE, HIGH VOLTAGE, 1	
2	FF2 - 9773 - 000		1	CABLE, HIGH VOLTAGE, 2	
3	FF2 - 9774 - 000		1	CABLE, HIGH VOLTAGE, 3	
4	FF3 - 0476 - 000		1	CABLE, ANTENNA	SEE NOTE J951
FU102	VD7 - 0215 - 001		1	FUSE, 125V, 5A	120V
	VD7 - 0642 - 501		1	FUSE	220V
	WD9 - 5037 - 000		2	HOLDER, FUSE, H-0060	
J205	FF2 - 9775 - 000		1	CABLE, MOTOR	
J214	FF3 - 0475 - 000		1	CABLE, TONER SENSOR	
J952	FF3 - 0477 - 000		1	CABLE, BIAS	
L101	FH3 - 7170 - 000		1	COIL, CHOKE	120V
	FH3 - 7195 - 000		1	CHOKE COIL, SN14-8000	220V
L401	FH3 - 7169 - 000		1	COIL, CHOKE	
Q501	FF3 - 0416 - 000		1	IC, UPD18001GC-120-3BH, HYBRID	
R303	FH4 - 9169 - 000		1	RESISTOR, 44MOHM, 0.091W	
R306	RH6 - 3069 - 000		1	RESISTOR, 40MOHM, 0.625W	
R313	FH9 - 0367 - 000		1	RESISTOR, 100 OHM, 1W	
R316	FH9 - 0367 - 000		1	RESISTOR, 100 OHM, 1W	
R322	FH4 - 9163 - 000		1	RESISTOR, 2MOHM, 0.85W	
R328	FH4 - 9186 - 000		1	RESISTOR, 16.9MOHM, 1/10W	
R413	RH6 - 3069 - 000		1	RESISTOR, 40MOHM, 0.625W	
R414	RH6 - 3069 - 000		1	RESISTOR, 40MOHM, 0.625W	
RL101	FH7 - 6197 - 000		1	RELAY	
T101	FH3 - 0732 - 000		1	TRANSFORMER, AC	120V
	FH3 - 0733 - 000		1	TRANSFORMER, AC	220V
T102	FH3 - 0779 - 000		1	TRANSFORMER, CONVERTER	120V
	FH3 - 0780 - 000		1	TRANSFORMER, CONVERTER	220V
T103	FH3 - 0667 - 000		1	TRANSFORMER	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
910 - T104	FH3 - 0665 - 000		1	TRANSFORMER	120V
	FH3 - 0666 - 000		1	TRANSFORMER	220V
T201	FH3 - 0668 - 000		1	TRANSFORMER	
T301	FH3 - 0569 - 000		1	TRANSFORMER, INVERTER	
T302	FH3 - 0660 - 000		1	TRANSFORMER	
T401	FH3 - 0734 - 000		1	TRANSFORMER, TRANSFER	
T402	FH3 - 0735 - 000		1	TRANSFORMER	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE 915 CONTROL PANEL PCB ASSEMBLY



NOTE1:This assembly is included in the assembly shown in Figure 130.
NOTE2:This assembly does not include the part shown with key No.3.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
915 -	FG5 - 5497 - 000		1	CONTROL PANEL PCB ASSEMBLY	NP6412 SEE NOTE 1
	FG5 - 5469 - 000		1	CONTROL PANEL PCB ASSEMBLY	NP6412F SEE NOTE 1
1	FB2 - 4900 - 000		1	SPACER	
2	FB2 - 4901 - 000		1	PLATE, GROUNDING	
3	FH2 - 6231 - 000		1	CABLE, FLAT	SEE NOTE 2
LED315	FH7 - 3277 - 000		1	LED, 7 SEGMENT	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 930 DC CONTROLER PCB ASSEMBLY

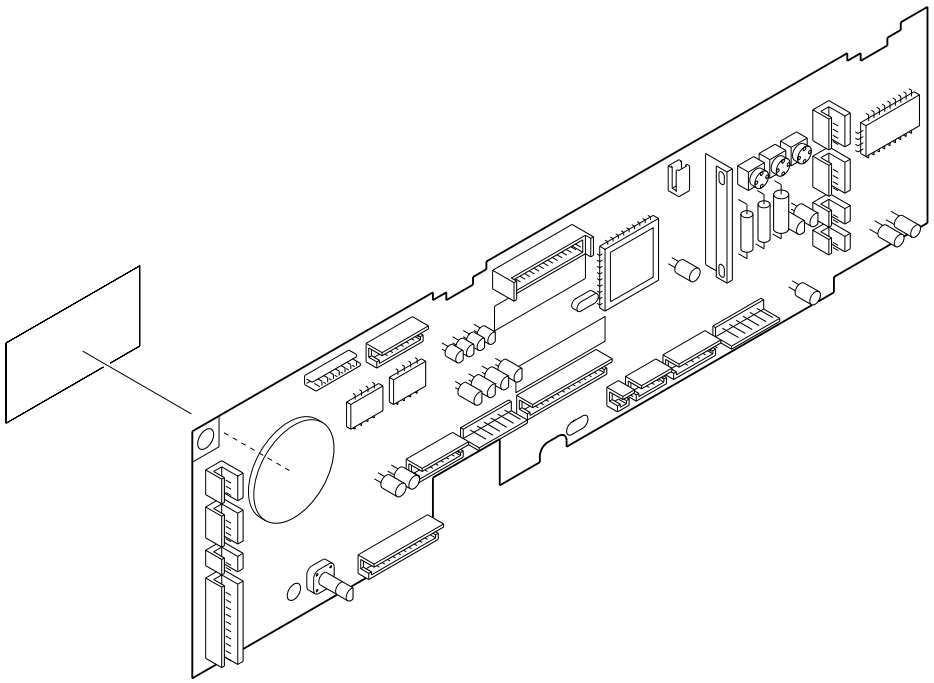


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
930 -	FG5 - 5505 - 020		1	DC CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY	NP6412 120V
	FG5 - 5490 - 020		1	DC CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY	NP6412 120V PGP TYPE
	FG5 - 5489 - 020		1	DC CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY	NP6412 220V
	FG5 - 5507 - 020		1	DC CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY	NP6412F 120V PGP TYPE
BAT1	WK1 - 0082 - 000		1	BATTERY, LITIUM	
Q101	FH4 - 1251 - 090		1	IC, HD6433042T12F, CPU	
Q142	FH9 - 0483 - 000		1	TRANSISTOR, 2SD1929	
Q143	FH9 - 0483 - 000		1	TRANSISTOR, 2SD1929	
Q144	FH9 - 0483 - 000		1	TRANSISTOR, 2SD1929	
Q145	FH9 - 0483 - 000		1	TRANSISTOR, 2SD1929	
Q163	FH9 - 0483 - 000		1	TRANSISTOR, 2SD1929	
Q164	FH9 - 0483 - 000		1	TRANSISTOR, 2SD1929	
Q180	FH9 - 0483 - 000		1	TRANSISTOR, 2SD1929	
Q185	FH9 - 0483 - 000		1	TRANSISTOR, 2SD1929	
X101	FH6 - 3494 - 000		1	OSCILLATOR, CRYSTAL	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 935 ADF CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY (NP6412F)

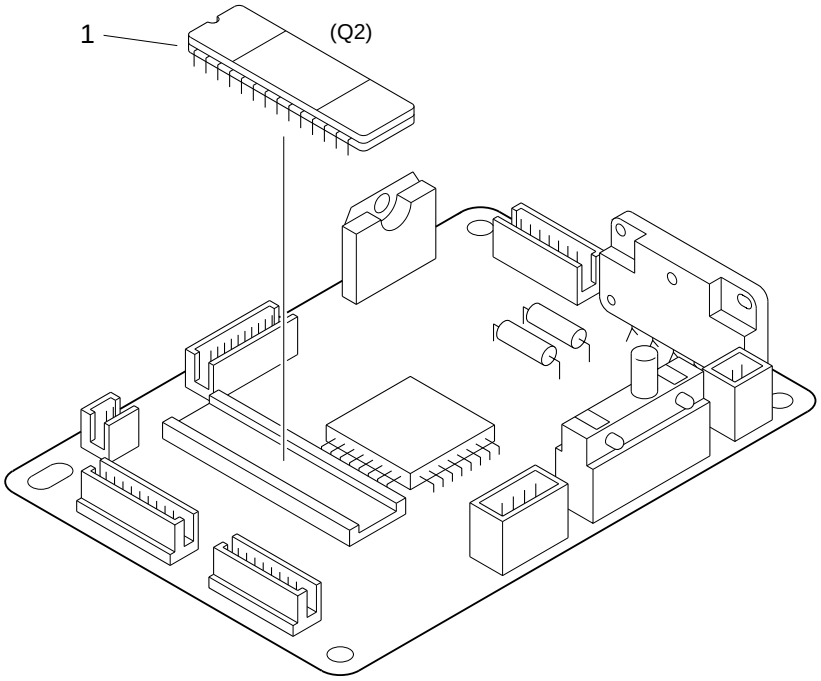


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
935 -	FG2 - 9891 - 000		1	ADF DC CONTROLLER PCB ASSEMBLY	NP6412F
1	FF3 - 3126 - 000		1	IC, M27C256B-15F1, EP-ROM	Q2

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE 940 NOISE FILTER PCB ASSEMBLY

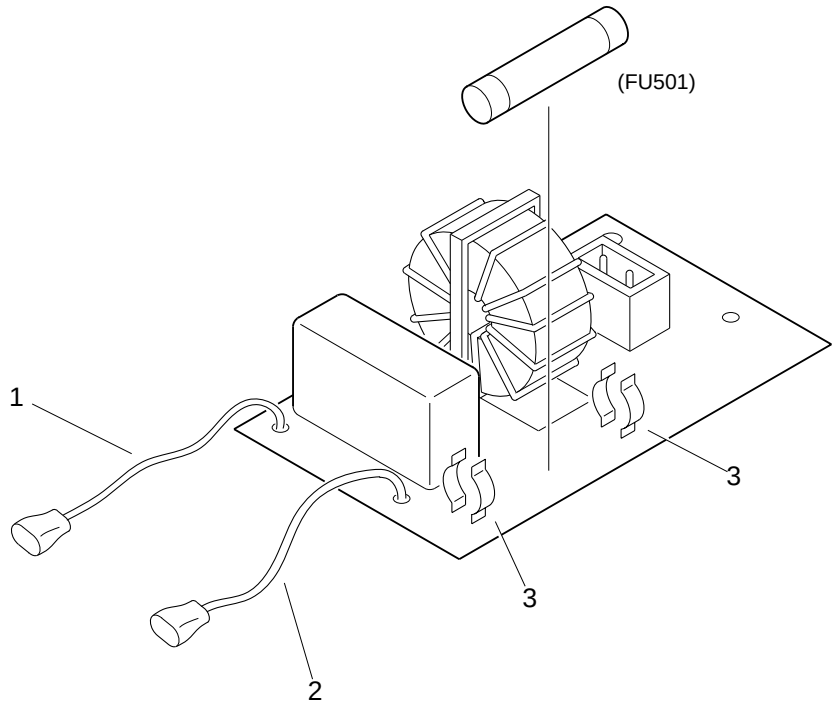
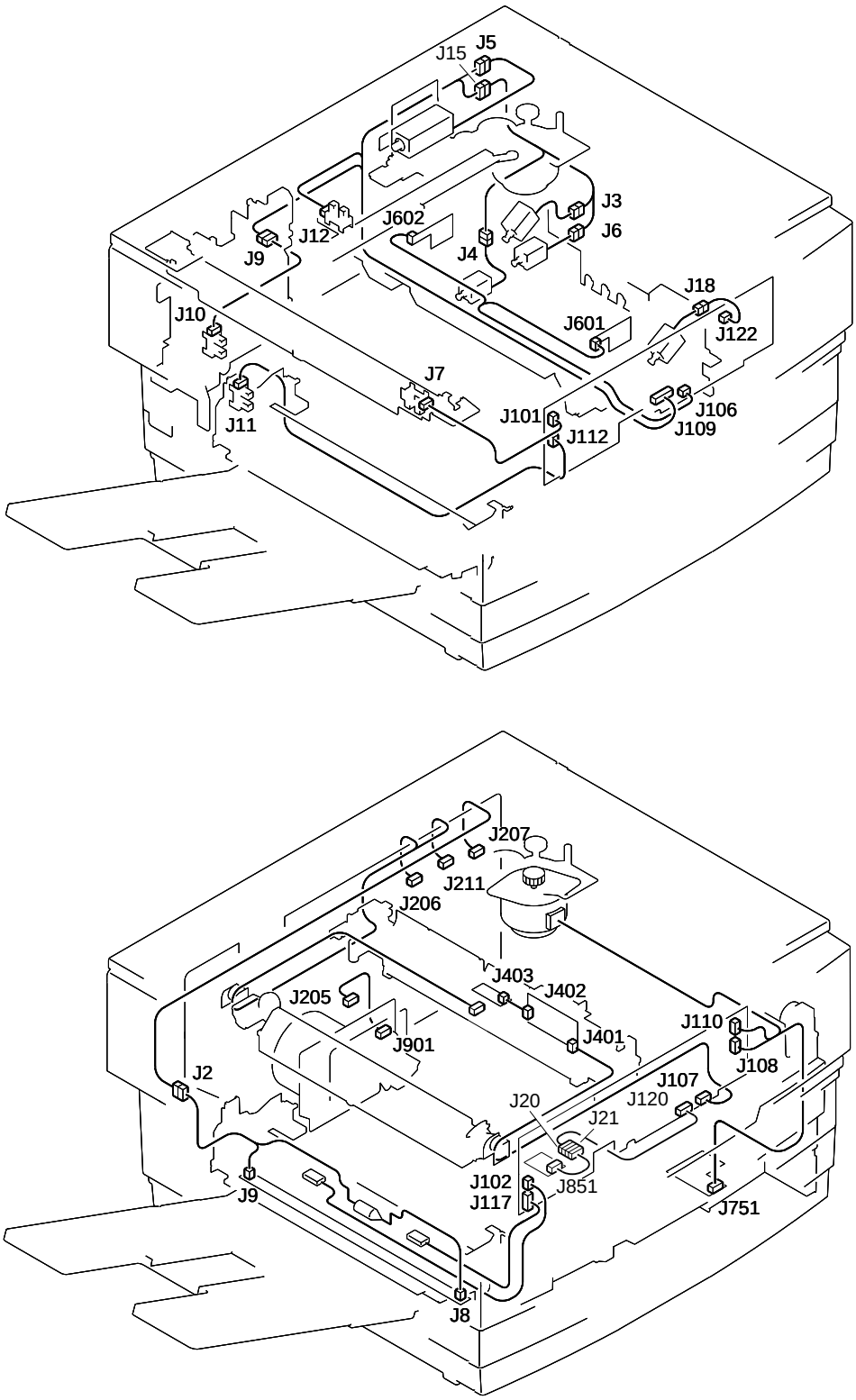


FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
940 -	FG5 - 3543 - 000		1	NOISE FILTER PCB ASSEMBLY	120V
	FG5 - 3544 - 000		1	NOISE FILTER PCB ASSEMBLY	220V
1	FF2 - 9769 - 000		1	CABLE, INLET, 1	
2	FF2 - 9770 - 000		1	CABLE, INLET, 2	
3	WD9 - 5028 - 000		2	HOLDER, FUSE	
FU501	VD7 - 0461 - 202		1	FUSE, 125V, 12A	120V
	VD7 - 1506 - 301		1	FUSE, 250V, 6.3A	220V
L501	FH9 - 0484 - 000		1	NOISE FILTER, NCN012	120V
	VL5 - 0390 - 086		1	NOISE FILTER, SC-05-80J	220V

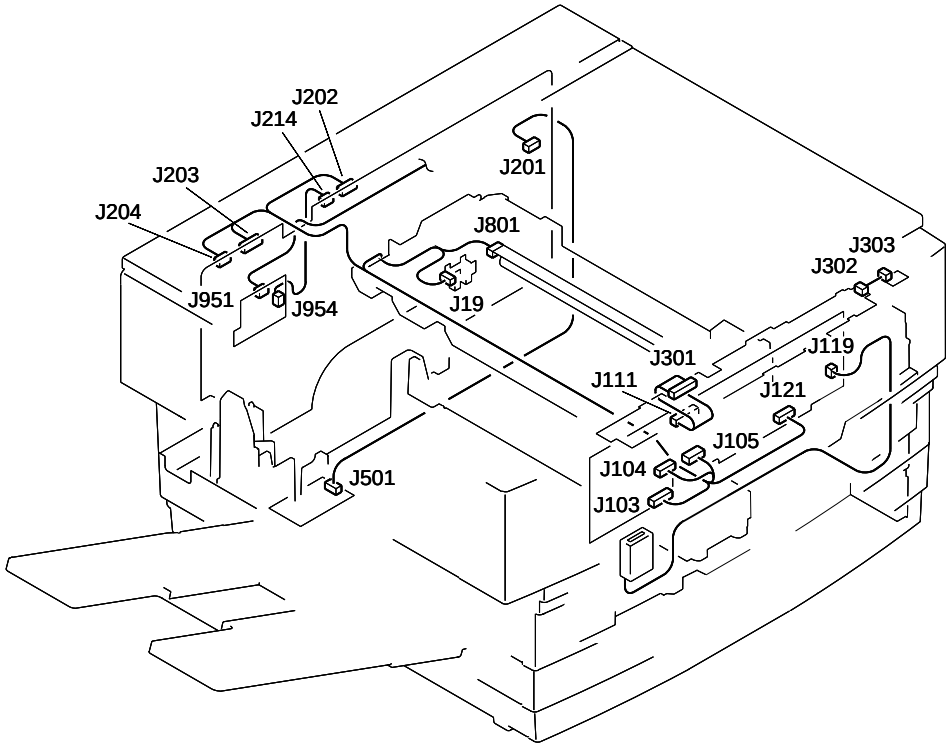
COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE B LIST OF CONNECTORS(1/2)

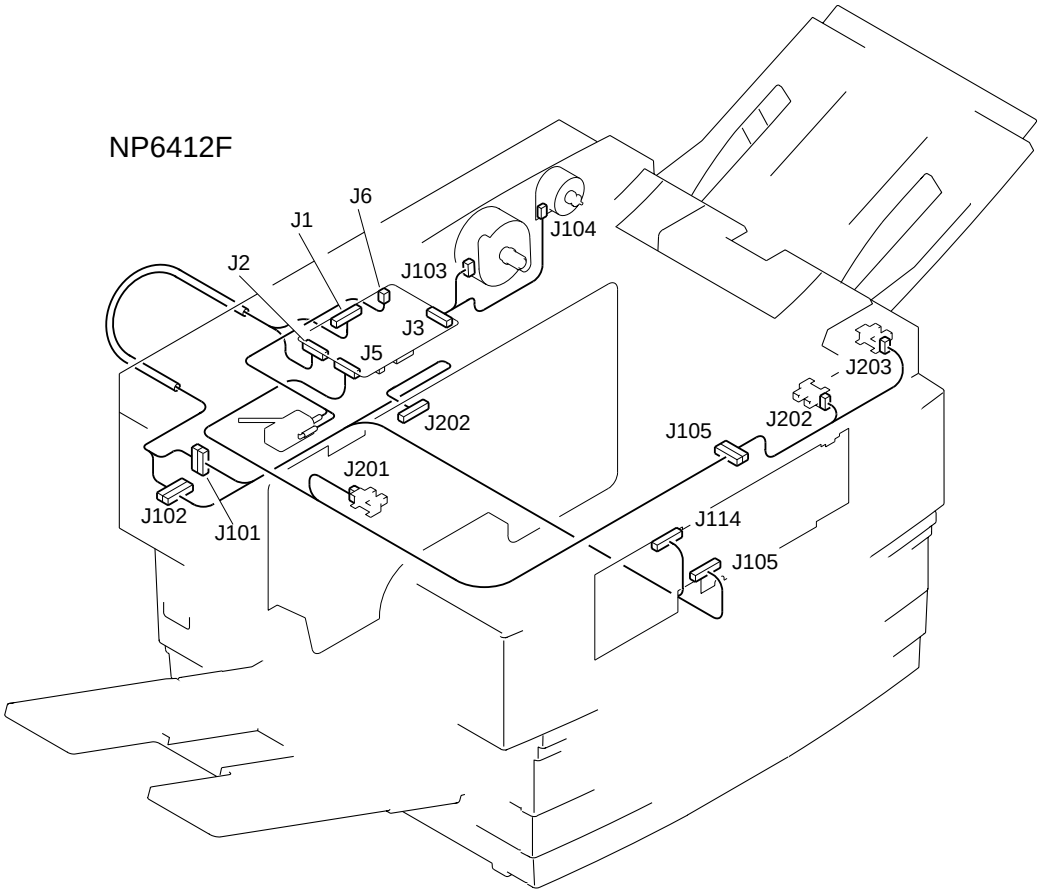


COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE B LIST OF CONNECTORS(2/2)



NP6412F



COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
B -	NPN		RF	LIST OF CONNECTORS	
J 1	PCB			ADF CONTROLLER	NP6412F
	VS3 - 5083 - 004		1	CONNECTOR, 4P, FEMALE	NP6412F
	WS3 - 5160 - 000		4	SOCKET CONTACT, 18-24AWG	NP6412F
J 2	WS3 - 5174 - 000		2	SOCKET CONTACT, 16-20AWG	
	WS3 - 5352 - 000		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	
	WS3 - 5353 - 000		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, MALE	
	WS3 - 5354 - 000		2	PIN CONTACT, 16-20AWG	
	PCB			ADF CONTROLLER	NP6412F
	VS1 - 0842 - 008		1	CONNECTOR, 8P, FEMALE	NP6412F
J 3	NPN			PAPER PICK-UP CLUTCH SOLENOID	SL1
	VS1 - 0842 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	
	VS1 - 5057 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	
	PCB			ADF CONTROLLER	NP6412F
	VS1 - 0842 - 007		1	CONNECTOR, 7P, FEMALE	NP6412F
J 4	NPN			REGIST. CLUTCH SOLENOID	SL2
	VS1 - 0842 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	
	VS1 - 5057 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	
J 5	NPN			LENS DRIVE SOLENOID	SL3
	VS1 - 0842 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	
	VS1 - 5057 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	
	PCB			ADF CONTROLLER	NP6412F
	VS1 - 0842 - 009		1	CONNECTOR, 9P, FEMALE	NP6412F
J 6	NPN			MULTI FEED P. PICK-UP SOLENOID	SL4
	VS1 - 0842 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	
	VS1 - 5057 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	
	PCB			ADF CONTROLLER	NP6412F
	VS3 - 5083 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	NP6412F
	WS3 - 5160 - 000		2	SOCKET CONTACT, 18-24AWG	NP6412F
J 7	NPN			SCANNER HOME POSITION SENSOR	PS1

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
B - J 7	VS1 - 0842 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	
J 8	NPN			FIXING HEATER	H1
	FH2 - 5795 - 000		1	SOCKET CONTACT, 18-22AWG	
	FH2 - 5796 - 000		1	SLEEVE, CONTACT	
J 9	VS1 - 0842 - 003		2	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	
	VS1 - 5057 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	
	NPN			FIXING HEATER	H1
	FH2 - 5795 - 000		1	SOCKET CONTACT, 18-22AWG	
	FH2 - 5796 - 000		1	SLEEVE, CONTACT	
J 10	NPN			PAPER DELIVERY SENSOR	PS3
	VS1 - 0842 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	
J 11	NPN			FIXING FILM SENSOR	PS4
	VS1 - 0842 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	
J 12	NPN			LENS HOME POSITION SENSOR	PS2
	VS1 - 0842 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	
J 15	VS1 - 0842 - 006		2	CONNECTOR, 6P, FEMALE	
	VS1 - 5057 - 006		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	
J 19	NPN			WASTE TONER SENSOR	PS5
	VS1 - 0842 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	
J 20	VS1 - 0842 - 007		1	CONNECTOR, 7P, FEMALE	PGP TYPE
	WS6 - 5092 - 000		1	CONNECTOR, 14P, MALE	PGP TYPE
J 21	VS1 - 0842 - 011		1	CONNECTOR, 7P, FEMALE	PGP TYPE
	WS6 - 5092 - 000		1	CONNECTOR, 14P, MALE	PGP TYPE
J101	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	VS1 - 0842 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	
	VS1 - 0279 - 004		1	CONNECTOR, 4P, FEMALE	NP6412F
	VS3 - 0108 - 004		1	CONNECTOR, 4P, MALE	NP6412F
	WS3 - 0885 - 000		4	PIN CONTACT, 20-30AWG	NP6412F
	WS4 - 0181 - 000		4	PIN CONTACT	NP6412F
J102	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
B - J102	NPN			CENTER FIXING THERMISTOR	TH1
	VS1 - 0842 - 008		2	CONNECTOR, 8P, FEMALE	NP6412F
	VS1 - 5057 - 008		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	NP6412F
J103	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	VS1 - 0842 - 012		1	CONNECTOR, 12P, FEMALE	
	NPN			BELT DRIVE MOTOR	NP6412F M1
	VS1 - 0842 - 005		1	CONNECTOR, 5P, FEMALE	NP6412F
J104	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	VS1 - 0842 - 007		1	CONNECTOR, 7P, FEMALE	
	NPN			PICK-UP DRIVE MOTOR	NP6412F M2
	VS1 - 0842 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	NP6412F
J105	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	VS1 - 0279 - 006		1	CONNECTOR, 6P, FEMALE	
	WS3 - 0437 - 000		6	SOCKET CONTACT, 20-30AWG	
	VS1 - 0842 - 006		2	CONNECTOR, 6P, FEMALE	NP6412F
	VS1 - 5057 - 006		1	CONNECTOR, SNAP TIGHT	NP6412F
J106	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	VS1 - 5824 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	
	WS3 - 5358 - 000		2	SOCKET CONTACT, 22-26AWG	
J107	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	VS1 - 0279 - 005		1	CONNECTOR, 5P, FEMALE	
	WS3 - 0437 - 000		5	SOCKET CONTACT, 20-30AWG	
J108	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	VS1 - 0842 - 005		1	CONNECTOR, 5P, FEMALE	
J109	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	VS1 - 0842 - 014		1	CONNECTOR, 14P, FEMALE	
J110	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	NPN			SCANNER MOTOR	M2
J111	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	FH2 - 6231 - 000		1	CABLE, FLAT	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
B - J112	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	VS1 - 0842 - 004		1	CONNECTOR, 4P, FEMALE	
J114	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	NP6412F
	VS1 - 0842 - 008		1	CONNECTOR, 8P, FEMALE	NP6412F
J117	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	NPN			FIXING SIDE THERMISTOR	TH2
J119	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	NPN			TOTAL COUNTER	CNT1
J120	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	VS1 - 0842 - 006		1	CONNECTOR, 6P, FEMALE	
J121	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	VS1 - 0842 - 005		1	CONNECTOR, 5P, FEMALE	
J122	PCB			DC CONTROLLER	
	NPN			BLANK EXPOSURE SOLENOID	SL5
J201	PCB			DC POWER SUPPLY	
	WS3 - 5174 - 000		2	SOCKET CONTACT, 16-20AWG	
	WS3 - 5175 - 000		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	
	NPN			PAPER DELIVERY SENSOR	NP6412F PI1
	VS1 - 0842 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	NP6412F
J202	PCB			DC POWER SUPPLY	
	VS3 - 5083 - 006		1	CONNECTOR, 6P, FEMALE	
	WS3 - 5160 - 000		6	SOCKET CONTACT, 18-24AWG	
	NPN			REGISTRATION SENSOR	NP6412F PI2
	VS1 - 0842 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	NP6412F
J203	PCB			DC POWER SUPPLY	
	VS1 - 0842 - 012		1	CONNECTOR, 12P, FEMALE	
	NPN			PAPER PICK-UP SENSOR	NP6412F PI3
	VS1 - 0852 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	NP6412F
J204	PCB			DC POWER SUPPLY	
	VS1 - 0842 - 007		1	CONNECTOR, 7P, FEMALE	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
B - J205	PCB			DC POWER SUPPLY	
	VS1 - 0861 - 006		1	CONNECTOR, 6P, MALE	
J206	PCB			DC POWER SUPPLY	
	VS1 - 0279 - 006		1	CONNECTOR, 6P, FEMALE	
	WS3 - 0437 - 000		4	SOCKET CONTACT, 20-30AWG	
J207	PCB			DC POWER SUPPLY	
	WS3 - 5174 - 000		2	SOCKET CONTACT, 16-20AWG	
	WS3 - 5175 - 000		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	
J211	PCB			DC POWER SUPPLY	
	VS3 - 5083 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	
	WS3 - 5160 - 000		2	SOCKET CONTACT, 18-24AWG	
J214	PCB			DC POWER SUPPLY	
	VS1 - 0861 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	
J301	PCB			CONTROL PANEL	
	FH2 - 6231 - 000		1	CABLE, FLAT	
J302	PCB			CONTROL PANEL	
	VS1 - 0978 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, MALE	
J303	PCB			CONTROL PANEL	
	VS1 - 0978 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, MALE	
J401	PCB			INTENSITY / AE SENSOR	
	VS1 - 0279 - 005		1	CONNECTOR, 5P, FEMALE	
	WS3 - 0437 - 000		5	SOCKET CONTACT, 20-30AWG	
J402	PCB			INTENSITY / AE SENSOR	
	VS1 - 0978 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, MALE	
J403	PCB			INTENSITY / AE SENSOR	
	VS1 - 0978 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, MALE	
J501	PCB			NOISE FILTER	
	WS3 - 5174 - 000		2	SOCKET CONTACT, 16-20AWG	
	WS3 - 5175 - 000		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	
J601	PCB			SIDE BLANK	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412 / 6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

FIGURE & KEY NO.	PART NUMBER	RANK	Q'TY	DESCRIPTION	SERIAL NUMBER / REMARKS
B - J601	VS1 - 5824 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	
	WS3 - 5358 - 000		2	SOCKET CONTACT, 22-26AWG	
J602	PCB			SIDE BLANK	
	VS1 - 5824 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	
	WS3 - 5358 - 000		2	SOCKET CONTACT, 22-26AWG	
J751	PCB			SENSOR BOARD	
	VS1 - 0842 - 005		1	CONNECTOR, 5P, FEMALE	
J801	PCB			BLANK EXPOSURE LAMP	
	VS1 - 0842 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	
J851	PCB			PGP BOARD	PGP TYPE
	VS1 - 0861 - 006		1	CONNECTOR, 6P, MALE	PGP TYPE
J901	NPN			MAIN MOTOR	M1
	VS1 - 0842 - 006		1	CONNECTOR, 6P, FEMALE	
J951	PCB			TONER SENSING	
	VS1 - 5824 - 002		1	CONNECTOR, 2P, FEMALE	
	WS3 - 5358 - 000		2	SOCKET CONTACT, 22-26AWG	
J954	PCB			TONER SENSING	
	VS1 - 0842 - 003		1	CONNECTOR, 3P, FEMALE	

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

D NUMERICAL INDEX

PART NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.
FA4 - 1159 - 000	340 - 1
FA5 - 2864 - 020	161 - 1
	290 - 1
FA9 - 2568 - 000	102 - 1
FA9 - 2873 - 000	161 - 2
FA9 - 3063 - 000	530 - 15A
FA9 - 3065 - 000	400 - 1
FA9 - 3102 - 000	160 - 1
	300 - 1
FA9 - 3207 - 000	640 - 1
FA9 - 3268 - 000	290 - 2
FB1 - 0715 - 000	400 - 20A
FB1 - 7267 - 000	102 - 2
FB1 - 7270 - 000	102 - 3
FB1 - 7275 - 000	102 - 4
FB1 - 7283 - 000	100 - 1
FB1 - 7295 - 000	100 - 31A
FB1 - 7403 - 000	100 - 2
FB1 - 7427 - 000	530 - 1
FB1 - 7431 - 000	530 - 2
FB1 - 8581 - 000	340 - 2
FB1 - 8870 - 000	160 - 2
FB1 - 9766 - 000	100 - 3
FB2 - 2559 - 000	300 - 2
FB2 - 4603 - 000	101 - 1
FB2 - 4606 - 000	100 - 4
FB2 - 4607 - 000	100 - 5
FB2 - 4610 - 000	101 - 2
FB2 - 4611 - 000	101 - 3
FB2 - 4612 - 000	101 - 4
FB2 - 4613 - 000	101 - 5
FB2 - 4614 - 000	101 - 6
FB2 - 4616 - 000	220 - 1
	401 - 1
FB2 - 4622 - 020	101 - 7
FB2 - 4626 - 000	101 - 8
FB2 - 4627 - 000	101 - 9
FB2 - 4628 - 000	101 - 10
FB2 - 4629 - 020	101 - 11
FB2 - 4650 - 000	400 - 2
FB2 - 4651 - 000	400 - 3
FB2 - 4652 - 000	400 - 4
FB2 - 4653 - 000	400 - 5
FB2 - 4654 - 000	400 - 6
FB2 - 4655 - 000	400 - 7
FB2 - 4658 - 020	400 - 8
FB2 - 4659 - 020	400 - 9
FB2 - 4660 - 000	400 - 10
FB2 - 4662 - 020	400 - 11
FB2 - 4663 - 020	400 - 12
FB2 - 4664 - 000	400 - 13
FB2 - 4665 - 000	400 - 14
FB2 - 4666 - 030	400 - 15
FB2 - 4667 - 020	400 - 16
FB2 - 4669 - 020	400 - 17
	401 - 2
FB2 - 4676 - 000	401 - 3
FB2 - 4677 - 020	401 - 4
FB2 - 4678 - 020	401 - 5
FB2 - 4694 - 020	402 - 1
FB2 - 4695 - 030	402 - 2
FB2 - 4701 - 020	220 - 2
FB2 - 4702 - 000	220 - 3
FB2 - 4703 - 000	220 - 4
FB2 - 4704 - 000	220 - 5
FB2 - 4734 - 000	101 - 12
FB2 - 4736 - 000	101 - 13
FB2 - 4780 - 000	102 - 5
FB2 - 4785 - 000	100 - 6
FB2 - 4790 - 020	100 - 33A
FB2 - 4791 - 000	100 - 32A
FB2 - 4792 - 000	101 - 14
FB2 - 4793 - 000	100 - 32B
FB2 - 4794 - 000	100 - 32C
FB2 - 4840 - 000	101 - 15
FB2 - 4854 - 000	230 - 1
FB2 - 4861 - 000	530 - 3
FB2 - 4862 - 000	530 - 4
FB2 - 4863 - 000	300 - 3
FB2 - 4864 - 000	300 - 4
FB2 - 4866 - 020	101 - 16
FB2 - 4870 - 000	101 - 17
FB2 - 4871 - 000	101 - 18
FB2 - 4872 - 000	101 - 19
FB2 - 4873 - 000	101 - 20

PART NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.
FB2 - 4875 - 000	101 - 21
FB2 - 4877 - 000	101 - 22
FB2 - 4900 - 000	915 - 1
FB2 - 4901 - 000	915 - 2
FB2 - 4927 - 000	230 - 2
FB2 - 4928 - 020	102 - 6
FB2 - 4929 - 000	102 - 7
FB2 - 4930 - 000	102 - 8
	102 - 9
FB2 - 4933 - 000	102 - 10
FB2 - 4939 - 000	530 - 5
FB2 - 4942 - 000	101 - 23
FB2 - 4943 - 000	101 - 24
FB2 - 5015 - 000	810 - 1
FB2 - 5016 - 000	810 - 2
FB2 - 5019 - 020	810 - 3
FB2 - 5020 - 000	810 - 4
FB2 - 5021 - 000	810 - 5
FB2 - 5022 - 000	810 - 6
FB2 - 5030 - 000	102 - 11
FB2 - 5031 - 000	102 - 12
FB2 - 5032 - 000	102 - 13
FB2 - 5033 - 020	102 - 14
FB2 - 5034 - 000	102 - 15
FB2 - 5040 - 000	102 - 16
FB2 - 5041 - 000	102 - 17
FB2 - 5042 - 000	102 - 18
FB2 - 5043 - 000	102 - 19
FB2 - 5052 - 000	240 - 1
FB2 - 5054 - 000	100 - 7
FB2 - 5055 - 000	100 - 8
FB2 - 5058 - 000	101 - 43A
FB2 - 5060 - 000	102 - 20
FB2 - 5070 - 000	810 - 7
FB2 - 5153 - 000	530 - 15B
FB2 - 5156 - 000	530 - 6
FB2 - 5159 - 000	530 - 7
FB2 - 5162 - 000	102 - 21
FB2 - 5163 - 000	102 - 22
FB2 - 5164 - 000	102 - 23
FB2 - 5165 - 000	102 - 24
FB2 - 5169 - 000	530 - 8
FB2 - 5175 - 000	100 - 9
FB2 - 5177 - 000	100 - 10
FB2 - 5182 - 000	102 - 25
FB2 - 5183 - 000	102 - 26
FB2 - 5198 - 000	250 - 1
FB2 - 5199 - 000	250 - 2
FB2 - 5206 - 000	100 - 11
FB2 - 5210 - 000	100 - 12
FB2 - 5212 - 000	100 - 13
FB2 - 5213 - 000	100 - 14
FB2 - 5214 - 020	100 - 15
FB2 - 5215 - 020	100 - 16
FB2 - 5216 - 000	100 - 17
FB2 - 5217 - 000	100 - 18
FB2 - 5221 - 020	102 - 27
FB2 - 5222 - 000	102 - 28
FB2 - 5223 - 000	102 - 29
FB2 - 5224 - 000	102 - 30
FB2 - 5301 - 000	102 - 31
FB2 - 5304 - 000	102 - 32
FB2 - 5305 - 000	102 - 33
FB2 - 5309 - 000	102 - 34
FB2 - 5310 - 000	102 - 35
FB2 - 5311 - 000	102 - 36
FB2 - 5380 - 030	102 - 37
FB2 - 5381 - 000	102 - 38
FB2 - 5382 - 000	102 - 39
FB2 - 5383 - 020	102 - 40
FB2 - 5385 - 000	102 - 41
FB2 - 5388 - 000	102 - 42
FB2 - 5392 - 020	102 - 43
FB2 - 5402 - 020	300 - 5
FB2 - 5403 - 020	300 - 6
FB2 - 5404 - 020	300 - 7
FB2 - 5405 - 000	300 - 8
FB2 - 5406 - 020	300 - 9
FB2 - 5407 - 020	300 - 10
FB2 - 5408 - 000	300 - 11
FB2 - 5409 - 000	300 - 12
FB2 - 5410 - 000	300 - 13
FB2 - 5412 - 000	300 - 14
FB2 - 5413 - 000	300 - 15
FB2 - 5414 - 020	300 - 16

PART NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.
FB2 - 5415 - 020	300 - 17
FB2 - 5420 - 000	300 - 18
FB2 - 5423 - 000	160 - 3
FB2 - 5424 - 000	160 - 4
FB2 - 5425 - 000	100 - 19
FB2 - 5426 - 000	100 - 20
FB2 - 5428 - 000	100 - 21
FB2 - 5434 - 000	300 - 7
FB2 - 5445 - 000	300 - 12
FB2 - 5487 - 000	100 - 7
FB2 - 5500 - 000	100 - 22
FB2 - 5501 - 030	101 - 25
FB2 - 5502 - 000	100 - 23
FB2 - 5507 - 000	100 - 33B
FB2 - 6043 - 000	300 - 19
FB2 - 6044 - 000	300 - 20
FB3 - 0570 - 000	101 - 26
FB3 - 0583 - 000	230 - 3
FB3 - 0623 - 000	101 - 27
FB3 - 0625 - 000	101 - 44A
FB3 - 0626 - 000	101 - 28
FB3 - 0627 - 000	101 - 29
FB3 - 0629 - 000	230 - 4
FB3 - 0630 - 000	101 - 30
FB3 - 0632 - 000	101 - 31
FB3 - 0633 - 000	101 - 32
FB3 - 0639 - 000	101 - 33
FB3 - 0661 - 000	130 - 1
FB3 - 0662 - 000	130 - 2
FB3 - 0663 - 000	130 - 3
FB3 - 0664 - 000	130 - 4
FB3 - 0665 - 000	130 - 5
FB3 - 0666 - 020	130 - 6
FB3 - 0667 - 020	130 - 7
FB3 - 0670 - 000	101 - 34
FB3 - 0686 - 000	640 - 2
FB3 - 0687 - 000	640 - 3
FB3 - 0688 - 000	640 - 4
FB3 - 0691 - 000	640 - 5
FB3 - 0693 - 000	640 - 6
FB3 - 0694 - 000	640 - 7
FB3 - 0695 - 000	640 - 8
FB3 - 0696 - 000	640 - 9
FB3 - 0697 - 000	640 - 10
FB3 - 0710 - 000	640 - 23A
FB3 - 0711 - 000	640 - 11
FB3 - 0712 - 000	640 - 22A
FB3 - 0713 - 000	640 - 12
FB3 - 0714 - 000	640 - 13
FB3 - 0715 - 000	640 - 14
FB3 - 0716 - 000	640 - 15
FB3 - 0718 - 000	640 - 16
FB3 - 0719 - 020	640 - 22B
FB3 - 0720 - 000	640 - 23B
FB3 - 0721 - 000	640 - 17
FB3 - 0722 - 000	640 - 18
FB3 - 0724 - 000	640 - 19
FB3 - 0725 - 000	640 - 22C
FB3 - 0726 - 000	640 - 20
FB3 - 0727 - 000	640 - 22D
FB3 - 0728 - 000	640 - 22E
FB3 - 0732 - 000	102 - 44
FB3 - 0736 - 030	101 - 35
FB3 - 0743 - 000	102 - 45
FB3 - 0744 - 000	102 - 46
FB3 - 0745 - 000	102 - 47
FB3 - 0748 - 000	102 - 48
FB3 - 0774 - 000	450 - 1
FB3 - 0775 - 000	450 - 2
FB3 - 0776 - 000	450 - 3
FB3 - 0777 - 000	450 - 4
FB3 - 0778 - 000	450 - 5
FB3 - 0779 - 020	450 - 6
FB3 - 0780 - 000	450 - 7
FB3 - 0781 - 000	450 - 8
FB3 - 0782 - 000	450 - 9
FB3 - 0784 - 000	450 - 10
FB3 - 0788 - 000	640 - 21
FB3 - 0791 - 000	450 - 21A
FB3 - 0805 - 000	450 - 11
FB3 - 0806 - 000	450 - 12
FB3 - 0807 - 000	450 - 13
FB3 - 0809 - 000	100 - 24
FB3 - 0811 - 020	450 - 14
FB3 - 0815 - 020	450 - 15

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

D NUMERICAL INDEX

PART NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.
FB3 - 0817 - 000	100 - 34A
FB3 - 0824 - 000	100 - 25
FB3 - 0829 - 000	161 - 3
FB3 - 0831 - 000	102 - 49
FB3 - 0832 - 000	102 - 50
FB3 - 0833 - 000	102 - 9
FB3 - 0837 - 000	102 - 44
FB3 - 0839 - 020	100 - 6
FB3 - 0840 - 000	102 - 51
FB3 - 0850 - 000	100 - 26
FB3 - 0867 - 000	100 - 27
FB3 - 0868 - 000	100 - 27
FB3 - 3311 - 000	161 - 4
FB3 - 3312 - 000	161 - 5
FB3 - 3314 - 020	161 - 6
FB3 - 3315 - 020	161 - 7
FB3 - 3316 - 000	161 - 8
FB3 - 3318 - 000	161 - 41A
FB3 - 3321 - 000	161 - 9
FB3 - 3322 - 000	161 - 10
FB3 - 3323 - 000	161 - 11
FB3 - 3324 - 000	161 - 12
FB3 - 3325 - 000	161 - 13
FB3 - 3326 - 000	161 - 14
FB3 - 3330 - 000	161 - 15
FB3 - 3332 - 000	161 - 16
FB3 - 3335 - 000	161 - 17
FB3 - 3336 - 000	161 - 18
FB3 - 3338 - 000	161 - 19
FB3 - 3340 - 000	161 - 39A
FB3 - 3342 - 000	161 - 20
FB3 - 3343 - 000	161 - 21
FB3 - 3344 - 000	161 - 22
FB3 - 3345 - 000	161 - 23
FB3 - 3346 - 000	161 - 24
FB3 - 3347 - 000	161 - 25
FB3 - 3348 - 000	161 - 26
FB3 - 3353 - 000	290 - 3
FB3 - 3356 - 000	161 - 27
FB3 - 3357 - 020	161 - 28
FB3 - 3358 - 000	161 - 29
FB3 - 3361 - 000	161 - 30
FB3 - 3364 - 000	161 - 31
FB3 - 3365 - 000	161 - 32
FB3 - 3371 - 000	290 - 4
FB3 - 3373 - 020	290 - 5
FB3 - 3375 - 000	290 - 6
FB3 - 3377 - 000	290 - 7
FB3 - 3379 - 000	355 - 1
FB3 - 3381 - 000	355 - 9A
FB3 - 3382 - 000	355 - 2
FB3 - 3383 - 000	355 - 3
FB3 - 3385 - 020	355 - 4
FB3 - 3386 - 000	355 - 5
FB3 - 3387 - 000	355 - 6
FB3 - 3388 - 000	355 - 7
FB3 - 3389 - 000	355 - 10A
FB3 - 3391 - 000	162 - 1
FB3 - 3392 - 000	162 - 5A
	162 - 6A
FB3 - 3395 - 000	162 - 2
FB3 - 3396 - 000	162 - 3
FB3 - 3397 - 000	162 - 4
FB3 - 3400 - 000	290 - 8
FB3 - 3401 - 000	161 - 33
FB3 - 3402 - 020	161 - 34
FB3 - 3406 - 000	160 - 5
	161 - 35
FB3 - 3407 - 000	160 - 5
	161 - 35
FB3 - 3531 - 000	300 - 21
FB3 - 3547 - 000	300 - 22
FB3 - 3548 - 000	300 - 23
FB4 - 1142 - 000	130 - 8
FB4 - 1143 - 000	130 - 8
FB4 - 1144 - 000	130 - 8
FB4 - 1148 - 000	290 - 9
FB4 - 1149 - 000	290 - 10
FB4 - 1150 - 000	290 - 11
FB4 - 1151 - 000	290 - 12
FB4 - 1154 - 000	161 - 41B
FB4 - 1163 - 000	161 - 36
FB4 - 1194 - 00S	101 - 36
FB4 - 1195 - 00S	100 - 28
FB4 - 1196 - 00S	100 - 29
FB4 - 1197 - 00S	100 - 30
FB4 - 2419 - 000	130 - 8
FF2 - 9724 - 000	230 - 5
FF2 - 9725 - 000	230 - 6
FF2 - 9726 - 000	230 - 7
FF2 - 9727 - 000	230 - 8
FF2 - 9728 - 000	400 - 18
FF2 - 9729 - 000	400 - 19
FF2 - 9730 - 000	101 - 37
FF2 - 9731 - 000	450 - 16
FF2 - 9732 - 000	101 - 38
FF2 - 9733 - 000	810 - 8
FF2 - 9760 - 000	101 - 39
FF2 - 9762 - 000	530 - 9
FF2 - 9763 - 000	530 - 10
FF2 - 9764 - 000	530 - 11
FF2 - 9765 - 000	530 - 12
FF2 - 9766 - 000	530 - 13
FF2 - 9769 - 000	940 - 1
FF2 - 9770 - 000	940 - 2
FF2 - 9772 - 000	910 - 1
FF2 - 9773 - 000	910 - 2
FF2 - 9774 - 000	910 - 3
FF2 - 9775 - 000	910 - J205
FF2 - 9779 - 000	530 - 14
	810 - 9
FF2 - 9789 - 000	102 - 52
FF2 - 9799 - 000	101 - 40
FF2 - 9800 - 000	102 - 53
FF3 - 0416 - 000	910 - Q501
FF3 - 0471 - 000	450 - 17
FF3 - 0473 - 000	450 - 18
FF3 - 0475 - 000	910 - J214
FF3 - 0476 - 000	910 - 4
FF3 - 0477 - 000	910 - J952
FF3 - 0479 - 000	102 - 60A
FF3 - 1070 - 000	161 - 37
	290 - 13
FF3 - 1071 - 000	355 - 8
FF3 - 1215 - 000	102 - 54
FF3 - 3126 - 000	935 - 1
FF5 - 2858 - 000	102 - 55
FF5 - 2859 - 000	101 - 41
FF5 - 2867 - 020	101 - 42
FF5 - 2870 - 000	530 - 15
FF5 - 2871 - 020	530 - 16
FF5 - 2874 - 000	250 - 3
FF5 - 2875 - 000	100 - 31
FF5 - 2887 - 000	230 - 9
FF5 - 2888 - 000	230 - 10
FF5 - 2889 - 000	400 - 20
FF5 - 2899 - 000	401 - 6
FF5 - 2900 - 000	401 - 7
FF5 - 2901 - 000	402 - 3
FF5 - 2902 - 000	402 - 4
FF5 - 2903 - 000	300 - 24
FF5 - 2904 - 000	300 - 25
FF5 - 3713 - 000	530 - 17
FF5 - 3714 - 000	102 - 56
FF5 - 3716 - 000	101 - 43
FF5 - 3720 - 000	530 - 18
FF5 - 3728 - 000	100 - 32
FF5 - 3729 - 000	100 - 32
FF5 - 3901 - 000	450 - 19
FF5 - 3902 - 000	450 - 20
FF5 - 3903 - 030	100 - 33
FF5 - 3904 - 000	450 - 21
FF5 - 3905 - 000	100 - 34
FF5 - 3907 - 020	640 - 22
FF5 - 3908 - 000	640 - 23
FF5 - 3910 - 020	640 - 24
FF5 - 3912 - 000	101 - 44
FF5 - 3913 - 000	640 - 25
FF5 - 3920 - 040	100 - 33
FF5 - 3927 - 000	102 - 57
FF5 - 3928 - 020	102 - 58
FF5 - 4674 - 000	161 - 38
FF5 - 4677 - 000	161 - 39
FF5 - 4679 - 000	161 - 40
FF5 - 4681 - 000	290 - 14
FF5 - 4685 - 020	355 - 9
FF5 - 4686 - 000	355 - 10
FF5 - 6741 - 000	100 - 35
FF5 - 6742 - 000	100 - 35
FF5 - 6753 - 000	161 - 41
FF5 - 6754 - 000	290 - 15
FF5 - 6756 - 000	162 - 5
FF5 - 6757 - 000	162 - 6
FF5 - 6758 - 000	162 - 7
FF9 - 1504 - 000	102 - 59
FF9 - 1514 - 000	100 - 25
FG2 - 7467 - 000	161 - 42
FG2 - 7468 - 000	290 - 16
FG2 - 7469 - 000	161 - 43
FG2 - 7470 - 000	161 - 44
FG2 - 7471 - 000	161 - 45
FG2 - 9891 - 000	935 -
FG5 - 3463 - 000	401 -
FG5 - 3464 - 000	402 -
FG5 - 3465 - 040	220 -
FG5 - 3492 - 090	810 -
FG5 - 3493 - 090	810 -
FG5 - 3501 - 000	240 -
FG5 - 3511 - 000	250 -
FG5 - 3516 - 000	811 -
FG5 - 3531 - 000	340 -
FG5 - 3532 - 000	160 -
FG5 - 3541 - 000	400 - 21
FG5 - 3543 - 000	940 -
FG5 - 3544 - 000	940 -
FG5 - 3550 - 000	101 - 45
FG5 - 5450 - 000	130 -
FG5 - 5452 - 000	130 -
FG5 - 5460 - 040	530 -
FG5 - 5465 - 080	640 -
FG5 - 5469 - 000	915 -
FG5 - 5476 - 000	230 -
FG5 - 5489 - 020	930 -
FG5 - 5490 - 020	930 -
FG5 - 5496 - 000	102 - 60
FG5 - 5497 - 000	915 -
FG5 - 5499 - 000	450 - 22
FG5 - 5505 - 020	930 -
FG5 - 5507 - 020	930 -
FG5 - 5509 - 000	101 - 45
FG5 - 6413 - 000	355 -
FG5 - 6416 - 000	290 -
FG5 - 6418 - 000	162 -
FG6 - 0074 - 000	400 -
FG6 - 0076 - 000	910 -
FG6 - 0077 - 000	910 -
FH2 - 5761 - 000	102 - 61
FH2 - 5795 - 000	B - J 8
	B - J 9
FH2 - 5796 - 000	B - J 8
	B - J 9
FH2 - 6231 - 000	915 - 3
	B - J111
	B - J301
FH3 - 0569 - 000	910 - T301
FH3 - 0660 - 000	910 - T302
FH3 - 0665 - 000	910 - T104
FH3 - 0666 - 000	910 - T104
FH3 - 0667 - 000	910 - T103
FH3 - 0668 - 000	910 - T201
FH3 - 0732 - 000	910 - T101
FH3 - 0733 - 000	910 - T101
FH3 - 0734 - 000	910 - T401
FH3 - 0735 - 000	910 - T402
FH3 - 0779 - 000	910 - T102
FH3 - 0780 - 000	910 - T102
FH3 - 7169 - 000	910 - L401
FH3 - 7170 - 000	910 - L101
FH3 - 7195 - 000	910 - L101
FH4 - 1251 - 090	930 - Q101
FH4 - 9163 - 000	910 - R322
FH4 - 9169 - 000	910 - R303
FH4 - 9186 - 000	910 - R328
FH6 - 1079 - 000	220 - 6
FH6 - 1209 - 000	230 - 11
FH6 - 1237 - 000	290 - 17
FH6 - 1238 - 000	290 - 18
FH6 - 3494 - 000	930 - X101
FH7 - 3272 - 000	400 - 22
FH7 - 3277 - 000	915 - LED315
FH7 - 5564 - 000	220 - 7
FH7 - 5627 - 000	102 - 62
FH7 - 5628 - 000	102 - 63
FH7 - 6197 - 000	910 - RL101
FH7 - 6216 - 000	102 - 64

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

D NUMERICAL INDEX

PART NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.
FH9 - 0367 - 000	910 - R313
	910 - R316
FH9 - 0483 - 000	930 - Q142
	930 - Q143
	930 - Q144
	930 - Q145
	930 - Q163
	930 - Q164
	930 - Q180
	930 - Q185
FH9 - 0484 - 000	940 - L501
FN5 - 4018 - 000	400 - 23
FN5 - 4019 - 000	401 - 8
FN5 - 4020 - 000	402 - 5
FN5 - 4021 - 000	101 - 46
FS1 - 1190 - 000	161 - 46
	290 - 19
FS1 - 1205 - 000	355 - 11
FS1 - 1213 - 000	290 - 20
FS1 - 1341 - 000	355 - 12
FS1 - 1422 - 000	355 - 13
FS5 - 0883 - 000	102 - 65
FS5 - 0885 - 000	102 - 66
FS5 - 0887 - 000	102 - 67
FS5 - 0890 - 000	250 - 4
FS5 - 0900 - 000	250 - 5
FS5 - 0903 - 000	102 - 68
FS5 - 0904 - 020	300 - 26
FS5 - 0905 - 000	230 - 12
FS5 - 0906 - 000	230 - 13
FS5 - 0907 - 000	230 - 14
FS5 - 0908 - 000	230 - 15
FS5 - 0911 - 000	240 - 2
FS5 - 0912 - 000	240 - 3
FS5 - 0913 - 020	102 - 69
FS5 - 0914 - 000	810 - 10
FS5 - 0915 - 000	102 - 70
FS5 - 0917 - 000	220 - 8
FS5 - 0918 - 000	220 - 9
FS5 - 0919 - 000	220 - 10
FS5 - 1439 - 000	220 - 11
FS5 - 1440 - 000	102 - 71
FS5 - 1530 - 000	640 - 26
FS5 - 2032 - 000	400 - 24
FS5 - 2335 - 000	530 - 16A
FS5 - 2351 - 000	102 - 72
FS5 - 2650 - 000	300 - 27
FS5 - 2767 - 000	102 - 73
FS5 - 2769 - 000	100 - 36
FS5 - 2770 - 000	100 - 37
FS5 - 2771 - 000	102 - 74
FS5 - 2772 - 000	102 - 75
FS5 - 2773 - 000	102 - 76
FS5 - 2774 - 000	530 - 19
FS5 - 2776 - 000	100 - 38
FS5 - 2778 - 000	102 - 77
FS5 - 2780 - 000	300 - 28
FS5 - 2781 - 020	300 - 29
FS5 - 2782 - 000	300 - 30
FS5 - 2783 - 000	102 - 78
FS5 - 2784 - 000	530 - 20
FS5 - 2785 - 000	230 - 16
FS5 - 2786 - 000	240 - 4
FS5 - 2790 - 000	450 - 23
FS5 - 2794 - 000	810 - 11
FS5 - 2795 - 000	810 - 12
FS5 - 2796 - 000	810 - 13
FS5 - 2797 - 000	101 - 47
FS5 - 2798 - 000	102 - 79
FS5 - 2799 - 000	102 - 80
FS5 - 2800 - 000	102 - 81
FS5 - 2802 - 000	101 - 48
FS5 - 2803 - 020	101 - 49
FS5 - 2806 - 000	102 - 82
FS5 - 2810 - 000	300 - 31
FS5 - 2815 - 000	400 - 25
FS5 - 2821 - 000	220 - 12
FS5 - 3457 - 000	290 - 21
FS5 - 3458 - 000	161 - 47
FS5 - 3459 - 000	355 - 14
FS5 - 3460 - 000	355 - 15
FS5 - 6393 - 000	230 - 17
FS5 - 6394 - 000	640 - 27
FS5 - 6453 - 000	161 - 48
FS5 - 6454 - 000	161 - 49
FS5 - 6455 - 000	161 - 50
	355 - 16
FS5 - 9362 - 000	290 - 22
FS6 - 0437 - 000	640 - 28
FS6 - 0439 - 000	640 - 29
FS6 - 0440 - 000	640 - 30
FS6 - 0442 - 000	640 - 31
FS6 - 0443 - 000	640 - 32
FS6 - 0445 - 000	640 - 33
FS6 - 0446 - 000	640 - 34
FS6 - 0613 - 000	290 - 23
FS6 - 0617 - 000	290 - 24
FS6 - 0618 - 000	290 - 25
FS6 - 0619 - 000	290 - 26
FS6 - 0620 - 000	290 - 27
FS6 - 0622 - 000	290 - 28
FS6 - 2229 - 000	450 - 24
FS6 - 2230 - 000	450 - 25
FS6 - 2231 - 000	450 - 26
FS6 - 2232 - 000	102 - 83
	102 - 84
FS6 - 2233 - 000	102 - 84
FS6 - 2234 - 000	102 - 82
FS6 - 2238 - 000	640 - 35
FS6 - 2239 - 000	102 - 85
FS6 - 2240 - 000	102 - 86
FS6 - 2241 - 000	102 - 87
FS6 - 2242 - 000	450 - 27
FS6 - 2270 - 000	100 - 39
FS6 - 2369 - 000	161 - 51
FS6 - 2370 - 000	161 - 52
FS6 - 2371 - 000	161 - 53
FS6 - 2373 - 000	161 - 54
FS6 - 2374 - 000	161 - 55
FS6 - 2375 - 000	355 - 17
FS6 - 8089 - 000	161 - 56
FS6 - 8090 - 000	161 - 57
FS6 - 8091 - 000	161 - 41C
FS6 - 8092 - 000	162 - 7A
FS6 - 8195 - 000	161 - 58
FS6 - 8196 - 000	162 - 6B
FS6 - 8197 - 000	162 - 8
FS6 - 8347 - 000	300 - 32
FS6 - 8401 - 000	300 - 33
ME1 - 0059 - 000	100 - 40
RH6 - 3069 - 000	910 - R306
	910 - R413
	910 - R414
VD7 - 0215 - 001	910 - FU102
VD7 - 0461 - 202	940 - FU501
VD7 - 0642 - 501	910 - FU102
VD7 - 1506 - 301	940 - FU501
VL5 - 0390 - 086	940 - L501
VR5 - 2650 - 103	530 - 21
VS1 - 0279 - 004	B - J101
VS1 - 0279 - 005	B - J107
	B - J401
VS1 - 0279 - 006	B - J105
	B - J206
VS1 - 0842 - 002	B - J 3
	B - J 4
	B - J 5
	B - J104
	B - J801
VS1 - 0842 - 003	B - J 6
	B - J 7
	B - J 9
	B - J 10
	B - J 11
	B - J 12
	B - J 19
	B - J101
	B - J201
	B - J202
	B - J954
VS1 - 0842 - 004	B - J112
VS1 - 0842 - 005	B - J103
	B - J108
	B - J121
	B - J751
VS1 - 0842 - 006	B - J 15
	B - J105
	B - J120
	B - J901
VS1 - 0842 - 007	B - J 3
VS1 - 0842 - 007	B - J 20
	B - J104
	B - J204
VS1 - 0842 - 008	B - J 2
	B - J102
	B - J114
VS1 - 0842 - 009	B - J 5
VS1 - 0842 - 011	B - J 21
VS1 - 0842 - 012	B - J103
	B - J203
VS1 - 0842 - 014	B - J109
VS1 - 0852 - 003	B - J203
VS1 - 0861 - 003	B - J214
VS1 - 0861 - 006	B - J205
	B - J851
VS1 - 0978 - 002	B - J302
	B - J303
	B - J402
	B - J403
VS1 - 5057 - 002	102 - 88
	102 - 89
	220 - 13
	B - J 3
	B - J 4
	B - J 5
VS1 - 5057 - 003	101 - 50
	102 - 90
	B - J 6
	B - J 9
VS1 - 5057 - 006	161 - 44A
	220 - 14
	B - J 15
	B - J105
VS1 - 5057 - 008	101 - 45B
	B - J102
VS1 - 5824 - 002	B - J106
	B - J601
	B - J602
	B - J951
VS3 - 0108 - 004	B - J101
VS3 - 5083 - 002	B - J 6
VS3 - 5083 - 003	B - J211
VS3 - 5083 - 004	B - J 1
VS3 - 5083 - 006	B - J202
WC4 - 5030 - 000	161 - 59
WD9 - 5028 - 000	940 - 3
WD9 - 5037 - 000	910 - FU102
WE8 - 0087 - 000	102 - 91
WE8 - 0098 - 000	161 - 42A
WE8 - 5093 - 000	102 - 92
WG8 - 5001 - 000	101 - 51
	101 - 52
	450 - 28
	810 - 14
WG8 - 5187 - 000	101 - 53
WG8 - 5206 - 010	161 - 60
WG8 - 5309 - 000	161 - 61
WK1 - 0082 - 000	930 - BAT1
WS3 - 0437 - 000	B - J105
	B - J107
	B - J206
	B - J401
WS3 - 0885 - 000	B - J101
WS3 - 5160 - 000	B - J 1
	B - J 6
	B - J202
	B - J211
WS3 - 5174 - 000	B - J 2
	B - J201
	B - J207
	B - J501
WS3 - 5175 - 000	B - J201
	B - J207
	B - J501
WS3 - 5352 - 000	B - J 2
WS3 - 5353 - 000	B - J 2
WS3 - 5354 - 000	B - J 2
WS3 - 5358 - 000	B - J106
	B - J601
	B - J602
	B - J951
WS4 - 0181 - 000	B - J101
WS6 - 5092 - 000	B - J 20
	B - J 21
WT2 - 5041 - 000	101 - 45A

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.

D NUMERICAL INDEX

PART NUMBER	FIGURE & KEY NO.
WT2 - 5041 - 000	101 - 54
	101 - 55
	102 - 93
	161 - 62
	450 - 16A
WT3 - 5021 - 000	102 - 94
XA1 - 7260 - 309	290 - 501
XA9 - 0187 - 000	101 - 56
	220 - 15
	530 - 22
XA9 - 0591 - 000	102 - 95
	102 - 96
XA9 - 0605 - 000	161 - 63
	161 - 64
	290 - 29
XA9 - 0632 - 000	161 - 65
	161 - 66
XA9 - 0633 - 000	161 - 67
	355 - 18
XA9 - 0650 - 000	101 - 57
	450 - 29
XA9 - 0760 - 000	100 - 41
	101 - 58
	101 - 59
	220 - 16
	230 - 18
	230 - 19
	450 - 30
XA9 - 0762 - 000	100 - 42
	101 - 60
	230 - 20
XA9 - 0763 - 000	102 - 97
XA9 - 0773 - 000	102 - 98
XA9 - 0794 - 000	101 - 61
XA9 - 0813 - 000	101 - 62
XA9 - 0911 - 000	400 - 26
	401 - 9
	402 - 6
XA9 - 0942 - 000	640 - 36
XA9 - 0976 - 000	161 - 68
XB1 - 2300 - 407	300 - 501
XB1 - 2300 - 409	102 - 501
	220 - 501
	810 - 501
XB1 - 2300 - 509	102 - 502
XB1 - 2300 - 607	530 - 501
XB1 - 2300 - 609	101 - 501
	102 - 503
	230 - 501
	355 - 501
	400 - 501
	402 - 501
	530 - 502
XB1 - 2300 - 809	102 - 504
	402 - 502
XB1 - 2301 - 209	161 - 501
XB1 - 2400 - 609	161 - 502
	161 - 503
	162 - 501
	230 - 502
	290 - 502
	355 - 502
XB1 - 2402 - 009	290 - 503
XB2 - 6300 - 607	161 - 504
	810 - 502
XB2 - 7300 - 607	101 - 502
	102 - 505
	102 - 506
	102 - 507
XB2 - 8300 - 607	102 - 508
	400 - 502
XB4 - 7300 - 509	300 - 502
XB4 - 7300 - 609	101 - 503
	101 - 504
XB4 - 7300 - 809	101 - 505
	101 - 506
	101 - 507
	400 - 503
	401 - 501
	402 - 503
	530 - 503
	640 - 501
XB4 - 7301 - 009	102 - 509
	401 - 502
	640 - 502
XB4 - 7301 - 209	161 - 505
	530 - 504
XB4 - 7400 - 809	230 - 503
XB4 - 7401 - 009	230 - 504
XB6 - 7300 - 609	102 - 510
XB6 - 7301 - 609	161 - 506
XB7 - 2200 - 409	401 - 503
XD1 - 2100 - 307	530 - 505
XD2 - 1100 - 322	102 - 511
	161 - 507
	355 - 503
XD2 - 1100 - 372	450 - 501
XD2 - 1100 - 502	102 - 512
	290 - 504
	355 - 504
	640 - 503
	811 - 501
XD2 - 1100 - 642	161 - 508
	355 - 505
XD2 - 1200 - 322	290 - 505
XD2 - 2100 - 802	161 - 509
XD2 - 2300 - 202	810 - 503
XD2 - 2300 - 502	101 - 508
	102 - 513
	161 - 510
XD3 - 2160 - 062	102 - 514
XD3 - 2160 - 142	340 - 501
XD3 - 2200 - 062	450 - 502
XD3 - 2200 - 122	290 - 506
XD3 - 2200 - 142	290 - 507
XD9 - 0134 - 000	102 - 99
	102 - 100
XD9 - 0136 - 000	101 - 63
	220 - 17
	250 - 6
	401 - 10
XF9 - 0350 - 000	290 - 30
XF9 - 0562 - 000	355 - 19
XG9 - 0177 - 000	640 - 37
XG9 - 0237 - 000	161 - 69
XH9 - 0084 - 000	100 - 43
XZ9 - 0422 - 000	300 - 34

COPYRIGHT © 1997 CANON INC.
CANON NP6412/6412F REV.0 DEC. 1997 PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]

Prepared by
OFFICE IMAGING PRODUCTS TECHNICAL SUPPORT DEPT.1
OFFICE IMAGING PRODUCTS TECHNICAL SUPPORT DIV.
CANON INC.
Printed in Japan

REVISION 0 [DEC. 1997]

5-1, Hakusan 7-chome, Toride-shi, Ibaraki 302, Japan

Canon

PRINTED IN JAPAN [IMPRIME AU JAPON]